



3 1761 06141332 4

HANDBOUND
AT THE



UNIVERSITY OF
TORONTO PRESS

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2010 with funding from
University of Toronto





MURRAY'S STUDENT'S MANUALS :

A SERIES OF HISTORICAL CLASS BOOKS FOR ADVANCED SCHOLARS.

'This series of "STUDENT'S MANUALS," edited for the most part by DR. Wm. SMITH, and published by Mr. MURRAY, possess several distinctive features which render them singularly valuable as educational works. While there is an utter absence of flippancy in them, there is thought in every page which cannot fail to excite thought in those who study them, and we are glad of an opportunity of directing the attention of such teachers as are not familiar with them to these admirable school-books.'—*The Museum*.

I.—SCRIPTURE AND CHURCH HISTORY.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. FROM THE CREATION TO THE RETURN OF THE JEWS FROM CAPTIVITY. With an Introduction to the Books of the Old Testament. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 50 Maps and Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY. With an Introduction, containing the connection of the Old and New Testaments. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 40 Maps and Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY. A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH FROM THE TIMES OF THE APOSTLES TO THE FULL ESTABLISHMENT OF THE HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE AND THE PAPAL POWER. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH CHURCH HISTORY. FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VIII. TO THE SILENCING OF CONVOCATION IN THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY. By G. G. PERRET, M.A., Canon of Lincoln. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

II.—ANCIENT HISTORY.

THE STUDENT'S ANCIENT HISTORY OF THE EAST. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE CONQUESTS OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT, including Egypt, Assyria, Babylonia, Media, Persia, Asia Minor, Phœnicia, &c. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

III.—ROME.

(1) *The Republic.*

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF ROME. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By DEAN LIDDELL. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

(2) *The Empire.*

THE STUDENT'S GIBBON; AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF THE DECLINE AND FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE. Incorporating the Researches of recent Historians. By EDWARD GIBBON. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

IV.—GREECE.

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF GREECE. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ROMAN CONQUEST. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

* * * QUESTIONS ON THE 'STUDENT'S GREECE.' 12mo. 2s.

V.—GEOGRAPHY.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY. By REV. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY, MATHEMATICAL, PHYSICAL, and DESCRIPTIVE. By REV. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

STUDENT'S MANUALS--continued.

VI.—EUROPE.

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF THE MIDDLE AGES.
INCLUDING THE SUPPLEMENTAL NOTES. By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. With the
Author's latest Corrections and Additions. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

VII.—ENGLAND.

**THE STUDENT'S HUME; A HISTORY OF ENGLAND, FROM THE
EARLIEST TIMES TO THE REVOLUTION IN 1688.** By DAVID HUME. Incorporating
the Corrections of recent Historians, and continued to 1868. Woodcuts. Post 8vo.
7s. 6d.

•• QUESTIONS ON THE 'STUDENT'S HUME.' 12mo. 2s.

**THE STUDENT'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENG-
LAND. FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII. TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE II.**
By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. With the Author's latest Additions and Corrections.
Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

VIII.—FRANCE.

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF FRANCE. FROM THE EARLIEST
TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE SECOND EMPIRE, 1852.** With Notes and
Illustrations on the Institutions of the Country. By Rev. W. H. JERVIS, M.A.
Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

IX.—LANGUAGE, LITERATURE, ETC.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.
By GEORGE P. MARSH. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.
By T. B. SHAW, M.A. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.
Selected from the CHIEF WRITERS. By THOS. B. SHAW, M.A. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

X.—PHILOSOPHY AND LAW.

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY, with
Quotations and References.** By WILLIAM FLEMING, D.D. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE STUDENT'S BLACKSTONE. A SYSTEMATIC ABRIDGMENT
OF THE ENTIRE COMMENTARIES ADAPTED TO THE PRESENT STATE OF THE LAW.**
By R. MALCOLM KERR, LL.D. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

XI.—SCIENCE.

THE STUDENT'S ELEMENTS OF GEOLOGY. By Sir CHARLES
LYELL, F.R.S. With 600 Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 9s.

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

Lat. Gr
S6642g

The Student's Latin Grammar.

A GRAMMAR

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE.

BY WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.,

AND

THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A.,

FELLOW OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON.

For the Use of Colleges and the Upper Forms in Schools.

NINTH EDITION.

LONDON:

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

1878.

Uniform with the present Volume.

THE STUDENT'S GREEK GRAMMAR. By DR. GEORGE CURTIUS, Professor in the University of Leipzig. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. Post 8vo. 6s.

THE STUDENT'S FRENCH GRAMMAR: A PRACTICAL AND HISTORICAL GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE. By C. HERON-WALL, late Assistant-Master at Brighton College. With an Introduction by M. LITTRE. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

The special aim of this Grammar is to produce a book which will work well in schools where Latin and Greek form the principal subjects of study. In its preparation all the latest books in French philology have been carefully studied.

2156
—
22/4/1890

ℓ

PREFACE.

THIS Latin Grammar is intended to supply a twofold want. 1. It is designed, in the first place, to occupy an intermediate position between the elaborate works of Zumpt and Madvig, and the elementary treatises which still continue to be used even in the higher forms of our public and private schools. Our object has been to provide a Manual of convenient size, and easy of reference for the class room; but at the same time presenting a fuller account of the forms and structure of the language than the ordinary grammars, and containing, as far as possible, all that is really needful for the Student. 2. In the second place the Work is designed to introduce the Student to some of the linguistic discoveries of modern philologists; and more especially to make him acquainted with the laws which regulate the changes of the letters, and the formation of the Cases and Tenses, upon which subjects so much light has been thrown by the study of Comparative Grammar.

The Work consists of four parts:—

I. The *First Part* contains the ACCIDENCE, in which the inflexions are set forth as simply and fully as in a purely elementary work. It has been considered the wiser course

to retain the usual arrangement and nomenclature, which has been in use for so many centuries, and to introduce alterations only where some clear and positive advantage was to be gained; as, for instance, in the classification of the Substantives of the Third Declension according to the final letter of the stem. But though the ordinary arrangement of the Accidence has been retained, nothing is inserted which the pupil will have afterwards to *unlearn*; he is taught from the beginning to distinguish between the stem and the inflexional element, and is gradually introduced to a knowledge of the laws regulating the formation of the Cases and Tenses, of which a full account is given in the Fourth Part. In drawing up the Accidence our great object has been practical utility. By taking great pains with the arrangement of the page, and the use of different forms of type, the Declensions and Conjugations are presented in a clearer and more distinct form than in any other grammar with which we are acquainted. This portion of the work ends with a chapter on the *Formation of Words*—an important subject, but one omitted in most elementary grammars in use in our country.

II. The *Second Part* contains the SYNTAX, in which care has been taken to present such an explanation of the structure of the language as experience has shown to be most suitable to Students, and in particular to give as clear and full a treatment as possible of the Subjunctive Mood. It has been thought desirable to arrange the Syntax in two parts: the ordinary, and the extraordinary or *Syntaxis Ornata*. The latter subject furnishes an opportunity for noticing various peculiarities of construction or style

which ought to be known to the accurate Student, while the substantial structure of the language is, for the most part, independent of them. In this portion, several valuable sections have been derived from the excellent work of Nägelsbach—*Lateinische Stilistik*. To this part are added an entirely new chapter on the Order of Words, and some remarks on the styles of the principal prose writers. In the chapter on the Order of Words, it is stated, in opposition to Zumpt and Madvig, that the more emphatic position of an Attributive Adjective is *after* rather than before its Substantive. The question is a somewhat difficult one, but it is believed that examination will serve to establish the rule given. Also, with reference to the expression of *Questions* in the Oratio Obliqua, a different view of the use of the Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods in such cases has been presented from that of those Grammarians. But in a field so thoroughly worked as that of Latin Grammar, the proper merits of treatment to be looked for in a new work, are clearness and logical arrangement rather than any novelty. And throughout the Syntax, especially, the assistance of the eminent Grammarians referred to, as also that of Silcher (author of a School Grammar on a somewhat similar scale to the present, widely used in Germany) has been freely, though it is believed fairly, used. Many of the examples, in particular, have been taken from the afore-mentioned and similar works: but such have been carefully selected and revised; while a large number, especially of those intended to illustrate the more delicate points, are quite new. The English has in almost every case been given;

partly because it is desirable that illustrative sentences should be themselves as clear as possible, and partly with a view to the formation of a good style of translation.

III. The *Third Part* contains the PROSODY, which has been treated at sufficient length to dispense with the necessity of a separate work on the subject. It is mainly derived from an excellent treatise by Habenicht, published in 1860.

IV. The *Fourth Part*, which is entitled ETYMOLOGY, is designed for the more advanced Student, and treats at length of the Latin Alphabet, and of the formation of the Cases and Tenses; with constant reference, as already remarked, to the results obtained by the study of Comparative Philology. In this part we are specially indebted to Corssen's admirable works, 'Ueber Aussprache, Vokalismus, und Betonung der Lateinischen Sprache' (1858-1859), and 'Kritische Beiträge zur Lateinischen Formenlehre' (1863), which are a perfect storehouse of information respecting the forms of the Latin language.

Short Appendices are added upon the Latin Authors, the Roman Calendar, Money, Names, and ancient and modern Abbreviations.

The present edition has been carefully revised, and many alterations and improvements introduced: the chapters in the Fourth Part on the formation of the Cases and Tenses are entirely new.

CONTENTS.



PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

CHAP.	PAGE
I. THE ALPHABET	1
II. PARTS OF SPEECH, INFLEXION, STEM	3
III. THE SUBSTANTIVE	4
IV. THE FIRST DECLENSION	5
V. THE SECOND DECLENSION	6
VI. THE THIRD DECLENSION	8
VII. REMARKS ON THE CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (INCLUDING ADJECTIVES)	17
VIII. GREEK SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION	20
IX. THE FOURTH DECLENSION	22
X. THE FIFTH DECLENSION	23
XI. IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES	24
XII. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES	26
XIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	29
XIV. THE NUMERALS	32
XV. THE PRONOUNS	36
XVI. THE VERB	41
XVII. THE VERB SUM AND THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS..	44
XVIII. DEONENT VERBS	64
XIX. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.. .. .	66
XX. STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND PECULIAR FORMS	67
XXI. IRREGULAR VERBS	74
XXII. DEFECTIVE VERBS	82
XXIII. IMPERSONAL VERBS	84
XXIV. ADVERBS	85
XXV. PREPOSITIONS	91
XXVI. CONJUNCTIONS.. .. .	93
XXVII. INTERJECTIONS.. .. .	94
XXVIII. APPENDIX A.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES	95
XXIX. APPENDIX B.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF VERBS	102

PART I.—ACCIDENT—continued.

CHAP.	PAGE
XXX. FORMATION OF WORDS. DERIVATION OF SUB- STANTIVES	121
XXXI. DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES	127
XXXII. DERIVATION OF VERBS	130
XXXIII. DERIVATION OF ADVERBS	132
XXXIV. COMPOSITION OF WORDS	133

PART II.—SYNTAX.

BOOK I.

XXXV. OF SENTENCES	135
XXXVI. CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT	137
XXXVII. THE NOMINATIVE CASE	142
XXXVIII. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE	143
XXXIX. THE GENITIVE	152
XL. THE DATIVE	162
XLI. THE ABLATIVE	170
XLII. THE VOCATIVE	179
XLIII. ADJECTIVES	180
XLIV. PRONOUNS	185
XLV. THE VERB : INDICATIVE MOOD	193
XLVI. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD	198
XLVII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	200
XLVIII. THE INFINITIVE MOOD	223
XLIX. PARTICIPLES	228
L. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE	231
LI. THE SUPINES	234
LII. ADVERBS	235
LIII. PREPOSITIONS	237
LIV. CONJUNCTIONS	248

BOOK II.—SYNTAXIS ORNATA.

LV.	PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF SUBSTANTIVES	..	255
LVI.	DITTO	DITTO OF ADJECTIVES	.. 260
LVII.	DITTO	DITTO OF PRONOUNS	.. 261
LVIII.	DITTO	DITTO OF VERES	.. .. 266
LIX.	DITTO	DITTO { OF ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS }	271
LX.	CONJUNCTIONS AND OTHER WORDS AS PARTICLES		273
LXI.	ON THE ORDER OF WORDS		.. .. 276

BOOK III.—STYLES OF AUTHORS.

CHAP.	PAGE
LXII. STYLE OF SALLUST	284
LXIII. STYLE OF CAESAR	287
LXIV. STYLE OF CICERO	288
LXV. STYLE OF LIVY	290
LXVI. STYLE OF TACITUS	292

PART III.—PROSODY.

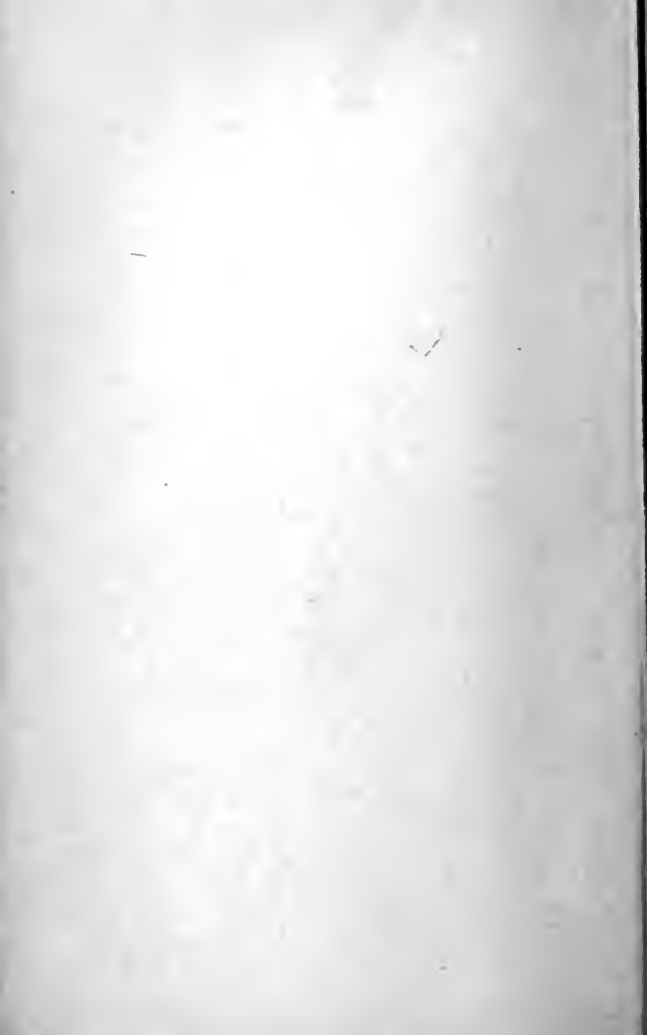
LXVII. QUANTITY	297
LXVIII. METRE	305

PART IV.—ETYMOLOGY.

LXIX. THE ALPHABET	329
LXX. FORMATION OF THE CASES	350
LXXI. FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE	364
LXXII. FORMATION OF THE PERSONS AND TENSES OF THE VERBS	365

APPENDICES.

I. LATIN AUTHORS	374
II. THE CALENDAR	377
III. MONEY	380
IV. ROMAN NAMES	381
V. ABBREVIATIONS	382
INDEX	384



THE STUDENT'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER I.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 1. The Latin Language was the language of *Latium*, of which Rome was the chief city. The conquests of the Romans caused it to spread over the rest of Italy, and over the greater part of France and Spain. The Latin Language is no longer spoken, but the French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese languages are mainly derived from it.

§ 2. The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, being the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,
Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

Obs. 1. Originally *i* was used to express also the semivowel *j*, and *v* to denote both the vowel sound *u* and the semivowel sound *v*.

Obs. 2. The letters *y* and *z* occur only in words borrowed from the Greek. (For a full discussion of the alphabet, see Part IV.)

§ 3. The letters are divided into Vowels, which can be sounded by themselves; and Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a Vowel.

§ 4. The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*.

§ 5. Consonants are divided into Mutes, Liquids, Sibilants, and Semivowels.

The *Mutes* are divided according to the vocal organ which is chiefly employed in pronouncing them.

	Sharp or Thin.	Flat or Medial.	Aspirated.
<i>Labials</i> (lip-letters)	<i>p</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>f</i>
<i>Gutturals</i> (throat-letters)	<i>c</i> (<i>k, q</i>)	<i>g</i>	<i>h</i>
<i>Dentals</i> (teeth-letters)	<i>t</i>	<i>d</i>	(none).

The *Liquids* are *l, m, n, r*.

The *Sibilants* are *s, x, and z*. *X* is compounded of *cs* or *gs*: *as, dux* = *ducs, a leader*; *rex* = *regs, a king*. *X* and *z* are sometimes called double consonants.

The *Semivowels* are *j* and *v*.

Obs. 1. *K* is used only before *a* at the beginning of a few words: *as, Kalendariae, the Calends*.

Obs. 2. *Q* is used only before *u*: *as, sequor, I follow*.

§ 6. A *Diphthong* is the blended sound of two vowels meeting in one syllable. The diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use; and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

Obs. The diphthongs *ae (æ), oe (œ)*, are pronounced as *ē*.

§ 7. A *Syllable* consists of one or more letters pronounced together, and having only one vowel sound.

A Syllable is either *short, long, or doubtful*, according as the vowel belonging to it is pronounced rapidly, or slowly, or sometimes rapidly and sometimes slowly. This characteristic of a vowel or syllable is called its *quantity*.

A *short vowel* is marked by (*˘*): *as, pater, a father*.

Obs. A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: *as, pater, a boy*.

A *long vowel* is marked by (*ˉ*), and may be either long by nature: *as, mater, a mother*; or long by position: *as, mensa, a table*; *dūx, a leader*. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants or by a double consonant.

Obs. 1. These marks of Quantity were not used by the Latin writers; serving only for grammatical purposes.

Obs. 2. All diphthongs are long by nature: *as, auræ, breezes*.

A *doubtful vowel* is sometimes short, sometimes long: *as, amō or amō, I love, tenēbrae or tenēbrae, darkness*.

Obs. A vowel is doubtful when followed by a mute and a liquid, especially *o* or *r*: *as, duplex or duplex, twofold; tenēbrae or tenēbrae, darkness*.

§ 8. *Accent*.—In words of two syllables the accent is on the first syllable: *as, mūsa, a muse, dōlus, deceit*.

In words of three or more syllables the accent is on the last syllable but one, if this syllable is long: *as, Rōmānus, a Roman*; or on the last syllable but two, if the last syllable but one is short: *as, dōmīnus, a lord*.

CHAPTER II.—PARTS OF SPEECH. INFLEXION. STEM.

§ 9. There are eight parts of speech :

I. The NOUN SUBSTANTIVE, or simply SUBSTANTIVE, is the name (Nōmen) of a person or thing: as, *Caesār, Caesar*; *vir, a man*; *dōmūs, a house*; *virtūs, valour*.

Obs. Names of persons and places are called *Proper Nouns*: all other Substantives are called *Common Nouns* or *Appellatives*.

II. The NOUN ADJECTIVE, or simply ADJECTIVE (Adjectivum, *joined to*), is joined to a Substantive to express its quality or nature: as, *bōnus vir, a good man*.

III. The PRONOUN (Prōnōmen) is used instead of a Substantive: as, *ēgo, I*; *tū, thou*.

IV. The VERB (Verbum, *word*) is the word by which we make an assertion about something: as, *ēquus currit, the horse runs*; *vir sēdet, the man sits*.

V. The ADVERB (Adverbium) is joined to Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs, to qualify their meaning: as, *cēlērīter currit, he runs quickly*; *māgis pius, more dutiful*; *sātis diū, long enough*.

VI. The PREPOSITION (Praepōsitio) is placed before Substantives to mark their relation to other words: as, *in, in*; *hābito in urbē, I dwell in the city*.

VII. The CONJUNCTION (Conjunctio) unites words and sentences: as, *et, and*; *ūt, in order that*: *vir et fēmīna, the man and the woman*; *ēdimūs ūt vivāmus, we eat in order that we may live*.

VIII. The INTERJECTION (Interjectio) is a word of exclamation: as, *heu, alas*!

§ 10. There is no article in the Latin language: thus *dōmus* may be translated by either *house*, or *a house*, or *the house*.

§ 11. Substantives, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs are inflected: that is, their final syllables are changed in order to mark their number or relation to other words.

The inflexion of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called *Declension* (Dēclensio): the inflexion of Verbs is called *Conjugation* (Conjūgatio).

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected, and are frequently called PARTICLES.

§ 12. The Stem of inflected words is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away: thus, in *trab-s, a plank*, *trāb-is, of a plank*, *trāb-i, to a plank*, the Stem is *trāb*: and in *lēg-o, I read*, *lēg-is, thou readest*, the Stem is *lēg*. (See § 179.)

CHAPTER III.—THE SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 13. There are three *Genders*: the *Masculine* (Masculinum), the *Feminine* (Femininum), and the *Neuter* (Neutrum).

Obs. Substantives which are either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*. The rules for the Genders are collected in §§ 141-148.

§ 14. There are two *Numbers* (Nūmēri): the *Singular* (Singulāris), which designates one, and the *Plural* (Plūrālis), which designates more than one.

§ 15. There are six *Cases* (Cāsūs):

I. The *Nominative* (Nōmīnātīvus) Case answers the question *Who?* or *What?* denoting the Subject of a sentence: as, māgister dōcēt, *the master teaches*; dōmus est amplā, *the house is large*.

II. The *Genitive* (Gēnītīvus) Case answers the question *Whose?* or *of What?* as, māgistri dōmus, *the master's house*; fōlia arbōrum, *the leaves of trees*.

III. The *Dative* (Dātīvus) Case answers the question *To* or *for whom?* *To* or *for what?* as, dō librum māgistro, *I give the book to the master*.

IV. The *Accusative* (Accūsātīvus) Case answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* as, āmo māgistrum, *I love the master*. It also signifies motion *towards*: as, eo Rōmam, *I go to Rome*.

V. The *Vocative* (Vōcātīvus) Case is used for addressing as, O māgistēr, *O master!*

VI. The *Ablative* (Ablātīvus) Case answers the questions *By* or *with what?* *When?* &c.: as, Hastā interfectūs est, *he was killed with a spear*; aestātē, *in the summer*. It also signifies motion or separation *from*: as, ābeo Rōmā, *I depart from Rome*.

§ 16. All the Substantives in the Latin language are arranged in five classes, called *Declensions*, which may be distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing.	ae	ī	is	ūs	ei
Gen. Plur.	ā-rum	o-rum	-um i-um	ū-um	ē-rum

The *Stems* of Substantives can generally be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in:—

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
a	o	consonant or i	u	e

CHAPTER IV.—THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION.

§ 17. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the First Declension, with the exception of a few Greek nouns, ends in *ā*.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Mens-ā, a table	Mens-ae,	tables
Gen.	Mens-ae, of a table	Mens-ārum,	of tables
Dat.	Mens-ae, to or for a table	Mens-is,	to or for tables
Acc.	Mens-am, a table	Mens-ās,	tables
Voc.	Mens-ā, O table [table.]	Mens-ae,	O tables
Abi.	Mens-ā, by, with, or from a	Mens-is,	by, with, or from tables.

Obs. The meanings here and in subsequent examples assigned to the *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Ablative* cases are the usual ones; but it must not be supposed that these cases can always be thus translated.

GENDER.—All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: as, *nauta* (masc.), a sailor.

Examples for Declension.

ala,	a wing.	hōra,	an hour.	silva,	a wood.
barba,	a beard.	poena,	a punishment.	stella,	a star.
causa,	a cause.	fēmīna,	a woman.	vīa,	a way.
coena,	a supper.	porta,	a gate.	victōria,	a victory.

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the first declension end in *a*.

Obs. 2. The *Genitive Singular* ended originally in *ās* (a contraction of *a-is*). This ending is kept in *fāmīlia*, when compounded with *pāter*, *māter*, *filius* or *filia*: as, *pāterfāmīliās*, the father of a family; *Gen. patris fāmīliās*; *Dat. patrīfāmīliās*, &c. In poetry the old form of the *Genitive ai* instead of *ais*, is sometimes found: as, *aquāi*, of the water; *terrāi*, of the earth.

Obs. 3. The *Genitive Plural* of some substantives ends in *um* instead of *arum*. The ending in *um* is found in the compounds of *cōlū* and *gēnū*: as *coellicōlum* from *coellicōla*, an inhabitant of heaven; *terrīgēnum* from *terrīgēna*, earth-born: also in *drachmum*, *amphōrum*, from *drachma*, *amphōra* (with numerals): and in Greek patronymics: as, *Aeneādum*, from *Aeneādēs*, a descendant of *Aeneas*.

Obs. 4. The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* of some words end in *abus*: as, *deābus* from *dea*, a goddess; *filīabus* from *filia*, a daughter. This ending distinguishes them from corresponding masculine substantives of the second declension: as, *deis* from *deus*, a god; *filīs* from *filius*, a son. So likewise *duabus* from *duae*, two; *ambabus* from *ambae*, both. See § 68.

§ 18. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin end in *ē*, as, *ēs* in the Nominative Singular, and are thus declined:—

Feminine.	Masculine.	Masculine.
Nom. Ēpītōm-ē, abridgment	Aenē-ās (proper name)	Anchīs-ēs (proper name)
Gen. Ēpītōm-ēs	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Dat. Ēpītōm-ae	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Acc. Ēpītōm-ēn	Aenē-ān (am)	Anchīs-ēn (am)
Voc. Ēpītōm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ā, ā)
Abi. Ēpītōm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ā).

CHAPTER V—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

§ 19. The Nominative Singular of Masculine Substantives of the Second Declension ends in *ūs* and *ēr* (*ir*), and a Neuter Substantives in *um*.

A. Masculine.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	<i>Dōmīn-ūs</i> , a lord	<i>Dōmīn-ī</i> ,	<i>lords</i>
Gen.	<i>Dōmīn-ī</i> , of a lord	<i>Dōmīn-ōrum</i> ,	<i>of lords</i>
Dat.	<i>Dōmīn-ō</i> , to or for a lord	<i>Dōmīn-īs</i> ,	<i>to or for lords</i>
Acc.	<i>Dōmīn-um</i> , a lord	<i>Dōmīn-ōs</i> ,	<i>lords</i>
Voc.	<i>Dōmīn-ē</i> , O lord [<i>a lord</i>]	<i>Dōmīn-ī</i> ,	<i>O lords</i> [<i>lords</i>]
Abl.	<i>Dōmīn-ō</i> , by, with, or from	<i>Dōmīn-īs</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from</i>

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	<i>Māgistr-</i> , a master	<i>Māgistr-ī</i> ,	<i>masters</i>
Gen.	<i>Māgistr-ī</i> , of a master	<i>Māgistr-ōrum</i> ,	<i>of masters</i>
Dat.	<i>Māgistr-ō</i> , to or for a master	<i>Māgistr-īs</i> ,	<i>to or for masters</i>
Acc.	<i>Māgistr-um</i> , a master	<i>Māgistr-ōs</i> ,	<i>masters</i>
Voc.	<i>Māgistr-</i> , O master	<i>Māgistr-ī</i> ,	<i>O masters</i>
Abl.	<i>Māgistr-ō</i> , by, with, or from a master.	<i>Māgistr-īs</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from masters.</i>

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	<i>Puēr</i> , a boy	<i>Puēr-ī</i> ,	<i>boys</i>
Gen.	<i>Puēr-ī</i> , of a boy	<i>Puēr-ōrum</i> ,	<i>of boys</i>
Dat.	<i>Puēr-ō</i> , to or for a boy	<i>Puēr-īs</i> ,	<i>to or for boys</i>
Acc.	<i>Puēr-um</i> , a boy	<i>Puēr-ōs</i> ,	<i>boys</i>
Voc.	<i>Puēr</i> , O boy [<i>boy</i>]	<i>Puēr-ī</i> ,	<i>O boys</i>
Abl.	<i>Puēr-ō</i> , by, with, or from a	<i>Puēr-īs</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from boys.</i>

B. Neuter.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	<i>Regn-um</i> , a kingdom	<i>Regn-ā</i> , <i>kingdoms</i>
Gen.	<i>Regn-ī</i> , of a kingdom	<i>Regn-ōrum</i> , <i>of kingdoms</i>
Dat.	<i>Regn-ō</i> , to or for a kingdom	<i>Regn-īs</i> , <i>to or for kingdoms</i>
Acc.	<i>Regn-um</i> , a kingdom	<i>Regn-ā</i> , <i>kingdoms</i>
Voc.	<i>Regn-um</i> , O kingdom	<i>Regn-ā</i> , <i>O kingdoms</i>
Abl.	<i>Regn-ō</i> , by, with, or from a kingdom.	<i>Regn-īs</i> , <i>by, with, or from kingdoms.</i>

GENDER.—1. A few Substantives in *us* of the Second Declension are Feminine; the names of Trees, Towns, and Countries: as, *pirus*, a pear-tree, *Cōrinthus*, *Corinth*; and a few other words: as, *hūmus*, the ground, *alvus*, the belly, *cōlus*, a distaff, *vannus*, a winnowing fan.

2. Three in *us* are Neuter: *virus*, poison; *pēlagus*, the ocean; and *vulgus*, the multitude. The last is sometimes Masculine.

3. All Neuter Substantives have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases alike in each Number; and in the Plural these Cases always end in *ä*.

Examples for Declension like *dōmīnus*.

<i>fructus</i> , food.	<i>annus</i> , a year.	<i>nidus</i> , a nest.
<i>lupus</i> , a wolf.	<i>rāmus</i> , a branch.	<i>hortus</i> , a garden.
<i>numerus</i> , a number.	<i>rivus</i> , a stream.	<i>cervus</i> , a stag.
<i>malus</i> (f.), an apple-tree.	<i>ulmus</i> (f.), an elm.	<i>prunus</i> (f.), a plum-tree.

Examples for Declension like *māgister*.

<i>ager</i> , a field.	<i>cancer</i> , a crab.	<i>fāber</i> , a smith.
<i>aper</i> , a boar.	<i>cāper</i> , a he-goat.	<i>liber</i> , a book.

Examples for Declension like *puēr*.

<i>socer</i> , a father-in-law.	<i>gēner</i> , a son-in-law.	<i>Liber</i> , Bacchus.
<i>vesper</i> , evening.	<i>ādulter</i> , an adulterer.	<i>libērī</i> (pl.), children.

NOTE 1. The above are the only Substantives in *er* which preserve the *e* in all the cases. The Adjectives which preserve the *e* are given in § 56, Obs. 1.

NOTE 2. *Vesper* is irregular. See § 53, Obs. 2.

Examples for Declension like *regnum*.

<i>domum</i> , a gift.	<i>scūtum</i> , a shield.	<i>bellum</i> , war.
<i>tectum</i> , a roof.	<i>vinum</i> , wine.	<i>templum</i> , a temple.

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the second declension end in *o*, as *dōmīno*, *regno*, *puēro*, *māgistrō*. The Nominative Singular originally ended in *ōs*, and the Accusative in *om*: as, *dōmīnō-s*, *dōmīno-m*: *puēro-s*, *puēro-m*. In the older writers and poets the *o* is usually found after *e*: as *servō-s*, *servo-m*, a slave.

Obs. 2. When the Genitive Singular ends in *ii*, it is often contracted into *i*: as, *fili* instead of *filiī*, of a son; *otī* instead of *otīī*, of leisure.

Obs. 3. The Vocative Singular of *filius*, a son, *gēnius*, a guardian spirit, and of Proper Names in *ius* ends in *i*: as, *fili*, O son; *gēni*, O guardian spirit; *Laeli*, O Laelius; *Tulli*, O Tullius.

Obs. 4. The Genitive Plural of some words ends in *um* instead of *orum*. This is especially the case with words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades: as, *nummum* from *nummus*, a piece of money; *sestertium* from *sestertius*, a sesterce, a silver coin (about 2d.); *mōdium* from *mōdius*, a Roman corn-measure, a peck; *fabrum*, from *fāber*, a smith.

Obs. 5. The only substantives of the second declension ending in *ir* are *vīr*, a man, Gen. *vīr-i*, &c., with its compounds, *triumvīr*, &c.; and *lēvīr*, *trī*, a husband's brother, a brother-in-law.

Obs. 6. *Deūs*, God, is declined in the following manner:

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	<i>Deūs</i> , God		<i>Deī</i> , <i>Dīī</i> , or <i>Dī</i> , Gods
Gen.	<i>Deī</i> , of God		<i>Deōrum</i> or <i>Deōm</i> , of Gods
Dat.	<i>Deō</i> , to God		<i>Deīs</i> , <i>Dīīs</i> , or <i>Dīs</i> , to Gods
Acc.	<i>Deum</i> , God		<i>Deōs</i> , Gods
Voc.	<i>Deūs</i> , O God [God.]		<i>Deī</i> , <i>Dīī</i> , or <i>Dī</i> , O Gods [Gods]
Abl.	<i>Deō</i> , by, with, or from		<i>Deīs</i> , <i>Dīs</i> , or <i>Dīs</i> , by, with, or from

The forms *Dei* (pl.) and *Deis* are rarely used.

§ 20. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin differ from the ordinary declension in the following points:—

1. Greek Substantives in *ōs* frequently have the Greek endings *ōs* and *ōn* instead of the Latin *ūs* and *um* in the *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.*

2. Greek Substantives in *ōs* (*ωs*) of the Attic Second Declension generally retain the Greek declension, but they sometimes have in the *Gen. i* as well as *o*:

<i>Nom.</i> Dēōs	Andrōgēōs
<i>Gen.</i> Dēi	Andrōgēi, Andrōgēō
<i>Dat.</i> Dēō	Andrōgēō
<i>Acc.</i> Dēōn, Dēum	Andrōgēōn, Andrōgēō
<i>Voc.</i> Dēē	Andrōgēōs
<i>Abi.</i> Dēō	Andrōgēō

Obs. Substantives in *ōs* sometimes form their Accusatives in *ōnō*: as, *Andrōgēōnō*: so, *Nom.* Athōs, *Acc.* Athōnō.

3. Greek Substantives in *eus* (*εύs*) of the Third Declension sometimes follow the Second Declension (except in the Nominative and Vocative), but frequently preserve the Greek declension:

<i>Nom.</i> Orphēus	Orphēus
<i>Gen.</i> Orphēi, Orphēi	Orphēōs
<i>Dat.</i> Orphēō	Orphēi, Orphēi
<i>Acc.</i> Orphēum	Orphēa
<i>Voc.</i> Orphēu	Orphēu
<i>Abi.</i> Orphēō	

4. The *Genitive Plural* in some titles of books has the Greek ending *ōn* instead of the Latin *rum* or *um*: as, *Geōrgicōn librī*, the books of the *Georgics*.

CHAPTER VI.—THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

§ 21. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

A. Masculine and Feminine Substantives.

I. Substantives the stems of which end in the labial mutes *p*, *b*, and in the labial liquid *m*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Trāb-s (f.), a beam	Trāb-ēs, beams	
<i>Gen.</i> Trāb-īs, of a beam	Trāb-um, of beams	
<i>Dat.</i> Trāb-ī, to or for a beam	Trāb-ībūs, to or for beams	
<i>Acc.</i> Trāb-em, a beam	Trāb-ēs, beams	
<i>Voc.</i> Trāb-s, O beam [beam.]	Trāb-ēs, O beams	
<i>Abl.</i> Trāb-ē, by, with, or from a	Trāb-ībūs, by, with, or from beams.	

Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Princēp-s (m.), a chief	Princēp-ēs, chiefs	
<i>Gen.</i> Princēp-is, of a chief	Princēp-um, of chiefs	
<i>Dat.</i> Princēp-ī, to or for a chief	Princēp-ībūs, to or for chiefs	
<i>Acc.</i> Princēp-em, a chief	Princēp-ēs, chiefs	
<i>Voc.</i> Princēps, O chief [a chief.]	Princēp-ēs, O chiefs [chiefs.]	
<i>Abl.</i> Princēp-ē, by, with, or from	Princēp-ībūs, by, with, or from	

Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Hiēm-s (f.), winter	Hiēm-ēs, winters	
<i>Gen.</i> Hiēm-īs, of winter	Hiēm-um, of winters	
<i>Dat.</i> Hiēm-ī, to or for winter	Hiēm-ībūs, to or for winters	
<i>Acc.</i> Hiēm-em, winter	Hiēm-ēs, winters	
<i>Voc.</i> Hiēm-s, O winter [winter.]	Hiēm-ēs, O winters [ters.]	
<i>Abl.</i> Hiēm-ē, by, with, or from	Hiēm-ībūs, by, with, or from win-	

Sing.	4.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Urb-s (f.), a city	Urb-ēs, cities	
<i>Gen.</i> Urb-is, of a city	Urb-ium, of cities	
<i>Dat.</i> Urb-ī, to or for a city	Urb-ībūs, to or for cities	
<i>Acc.</i> Urb-em, a city	Urb-ēs, cities	
<i>Voc.</i> Urb-s, O city [city.]	Urb-ēs, O cities	
<i>Abl.</i> Urb-ē, by, with, or from a	Urb-ībūs, by, with, or from cities.	

Obs. 1. When a monosyllabic Stem ends in two consonants, the *Gen. pl.* ends in *ium*, not *um*: as *urb-ium*. So also below: *arx*, *Gen. Pl. arc-ium*; *mons*, *Gen. Pl. mont-ium*.

Obs. 2. When a Stem of more than one syllable has *ē* in the last syllable, that *ē* is changed into *ī* when another syllable follows: as, *Stem princēp*, *Gen. princēp-is*. So also below: *Stem jūdēc*, *Gen. jūdēc-is*; *Stem mīlēt*, *Gen. mīlēt-is*; *Stem nōmēn*, *Gen. nōmēn-is*.

§ 22. II. Substantives the stems of which end in the guttural mutes *c*, *g*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Dux (c. g.), a leader	Dūc-ēs, leaders	
<i>Gen.</i> Dūc-is, of a leader	Dūc-um, of leaders	
<i>Dat.</i> Dūc-ī, to or for a leader	Dūc-ībūs, to or for leaders	
<i>Acc.</i> Dūc-em, a leader	Dūc-ēs, leaders	
<i>Voc.</i> Dux, O leader [leader.]	Dūc-ēs, O leaders	
<i>Abl.</i> Dūc-ē, by, with, or from a	Dūc-ībūs, by, with, or from leaders.	

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Lex (f.), a law	Lēg-ēs,	laws
Gen.	Lēg-is, of a law	Lēg-um,	of laws
Dat.	Lēg-i, to or for a law	Lēg-ībūs,	to or for laws
Acc.	Lēg-em, a law	Lēg-ēs,	laws
Voc.	Lex, O law [law.	Lēg-ēs,	O laws
Abl.	Lēg-ē, by, with, or from a	Lēg-ībūs,	by, with, or from laws.

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Jūdex (c.), a judge	Jūdic-ēs,	judges
Gen.	Jūdic-is, of a judge	Jūdic-um,	of judges
Dat.	Jūdic-i, to or for a judge	Jūdic-ībūs,	to or for judges
Acc.	Jūdic-em, a judge	Jūdic-ēs,	judges
Voc.	Jūdex, O judge [judge.	Jūdic-ēs,	O judges [judges.
Abl.	Jūdic-ē, by, with, or from a	Jūdic-ībūs,	by, with, or from

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	Arx (f.), a citadel	Arc-ēs,	citadels
Gen.	Arc-is, of a citadel	Arc-ium,	of citadels
Dat.	Arc-i, to or for a citadel	Arc-ībūs,	to or for citadels
Acc.	Arc-em, a citadel	Arc-ēs,	citadels
Voc.	Arx, O citadel [citadel	Arc-ēs,	O citadels
Abl.	Arc-ē, by, with, or from a	Arc-ībūs,	by, with, or from citadels.

Examples for Declension.

aux (f.),	nūc-is,	a nut.	grex (m.),	grēg-is,	a flock.
fax (f.),	fāc-is,	a torch.	rēmex (m.),	rēmīg-is,	a rower.
pax (f.),	pāc-is,	peace.	pollex (m.),	pollīc-is,	the thumb.
fornax (f.),	fornāc-is,	an oven.	index (c.),	indīc-is,	an informer.
vox (f.),	vōc-is,	a voice.	vertex (m.),	vertīc-is,	an eddy.
rādx (f.),	rādic-is,	a root.	falx (f.),	falc-is,	a sickle.
rex (m.),	rēg-is,	a king.	merx (f.),	merc-is,	merchandise.

Obs. Cs and gs are contracted into x: as, dux instead of duc-s, lex instead of leg-s. In nix, snow, Gen. nīv-is, Dat. nīv-i, &c., the Nom. ends in x, because the Stem originally ended in a guttural.

§ 23. III. Substantives the Stems of which end in the dental mutes t, d.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Aetā-s (f.), an age	Aetāt-ēs,	ages
Gen.	Aetāt-is, of an age	Aetāt-um,	of ages
Dat.	Aetāt-i, to or for an age	Aetāt-ībūs,	to or for ages
Acc.	Aetāt-em, an age	Aetāt-ēs,	ages
Voc.	Aetā-s, O age [an age.	Aetāt-ēs,	O ages
Abl.	Aetāt-ē, by, with, or from	Aetāt-ībūs,	by, with, or from ages.

Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom. Lāpī-s (m.), a stone	Lāpīd-ēs,	stones
Gen. Lāpīd-is, of a stone	Lāpīd-um,	of stones
Dat. Lāpīd-i, to or for a stone	Lāpīd-ibūs,	to or for stones
Acc. Lāpīd-em, a stone	Lāpīd-ēs,	stones
Voc. Lāpī-s, O stone [a stone.	Lāpīd-ēs,	O stones
Abl. Lāpīd-ē, by, with, or from	Lāpīd-ibūs,	by, with, or from stones.

Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom. Milē-s (c.), a soldier	Milit-ēs,	soldiers
Gen. Milit-is, of a soldier	Milit-um,	of soldiers
Dat. Milit-i, to or for a soldier	Milit-ibūs,	to or for soldiers
Acc. Milit-em, a soldier	Milit-ēs,	soldiers
Voc. Milē-s, O soldier [soldier.	Milit-ēs,	O soldiers [diets.
Abl. Milit-ē, by, with, or from a	Milit-ibūs,	by, with, or from sol-

Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom. Mon-s (m.), a mountain	Mont-ēs,	mountains
Gen. Mont-is, of a mountain	Mont-um,	of mountains
Dat. Mont-i, to or for a mountain	Mont-ibūs,	to or for mountains
Acc. Mont-em, a mountain	Mont-ēs,	mountains
Voc. Mon-s, O mountain	Mont-ēs,	O mountains
Abl. Mont-ē, by, with, or from a mountain.	Mont-ibūs,	by, with, or from mountains.

Examples for Declension.

civitas (f.), civitat-is, a state.	obsēs (c.), obsid-is, a hostage.
virtus (f.), virtut-is, virtue.	pars (f.), part-is, a part.
sacerdōs (c.), sacerdōt-is, a priest,	serpens (c.), serpent-is, a serpent.
priestess.	ars (f.), art-is, on art.
casus (f.), cassid-is, a helmet.	frons (f.), front-is, a forehead.
cōmēs (c.), cōmit-is, a companion.	

Obs. 1. T and d are dropped before s: as, actā-s, lāpī-s, milē-s, mon-s, instead of actat-s, lāpid-s, milit-s, mont-s.

Obs. 2. In nox, noct-is, night, the Stem is noct: in the Nom. t is dropped before s, and the letters cs are contracted into x: noct-s = noc-s = nox.

§ 24. IV. Substantives the Stems of which end in the liquids l, r, and the sibilant s.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Consūl (m.), a consul	Consūl-ēs,	consuls
Gen. Consūl-is, of a consul	Consūl-um,	of consuls
Dat. Consūl-i, to or for a consul	Consūl-ibūs,	to or for consuls
Acc. Consūl-em, a consul	Consūl-ēs,	consuls
Voc. Consūl, O consul	Consūl-ēs,	O consuls
Abl. Consūl-ē, by, with, or from a consul.	Consūl-ibūs,	by, with, or from consuls.

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Clāmōr (m.), a shout	Clāmōr-ēs,	shouts
<i>Gen.</i>	Clāmōr-is, of a shout	Clāmōr-um,	of shouts
<i>Dat.</i>	Clāmōr-i, to or for a shout	Clāmōr-ībūs,	to or for shouts
<i>Acc.</i>	Clāmōr-em, a shout	Clāmōr-ēs,	shouts
<i>Voc.</i>	Clāmōr, O shout [a shout.	Clāmōr-ēs,	O shouts [shouts.
<i>Abi.</i>	Clāmōr-ē, by, with, or from	Clāmōr-ībūs,	by, with, or from

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ansēr (m.), a goose	Ansēr-ēs,	geese
<i>Gen.</i>	Ansēr-is, of a goose	Ansēr-um,	of geese
<i>Dat.</i>	Ansēr-i, to or for a goose	Ansēr-ībūs,	to or for geese
<i>Acc.</i>	Ansēr-em, a goose	Ansēr-ēs,	geese
<i>Voc.</i>	Ansēr, O goose [a goose.	Ansēr-ēs,	O geese
<i>Abi.</i>	Ansēr-ē, by, with, or from	Ansēr-ībūs,	by, with, or from geese.

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Pātēr, a father	Patr-ēs,	fathers
<i>Gen.</i>	Patr-is, of a father	Patr-um,	of fathers
<i>Dat.</i>	Patr-i, to or for a father	Patr-ībūs,	to or for fathers
<i>Acc.</i>	Patr-em, a father	Patr-ēs,	fathers
<i>Voc.</i>	Pāter, O father [father.	Patr-ēs,	O fathers
<i>Abi.</i>	Patr-ē, by, with, or from a	Patr-ībūs,	by, with, or from fathers.

	Sing.	5.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Flōs (m.), a flower	Flōr-ēs,	flowers
<i>Gen.</i>	Flōr-is, of a flower	Flōr-um,	of flowers
<i>Dat.</i>	Flōr-i, to or for a flower	Flōr-ībūs,	to or for flowers
<i>Acc.</i>	Flōr-em, a flower	Flōr-ēs,	flowers
<i>Voc.</i>	Flōs, O flower [flower.	Flōr-ēs,	O flowers
<i>Abi.</i>	Flōr-ē, by, with, or from a	Flōr-ībūs,	by, with, or from flowers.

Examples for Declension.

sōl (m.),	sōl-is,	the sun.	aggēr (m.),	aggēr-is,	a mound.
exsūl (c.),	exsūl-is,	an exile.	carcēr (m.),	carcēr-is,	a prison.
cōlōr (m.),	cōlōr-is,	colour.	mūliēr,	mūliēr-is,	a woman.
tīmōr (m.),	tīmōr-is,	fear.	māter,	mātr-is,	a mother.
mōs (m.),	mōr-is,	a custom.	frātēr,	frātr-is,	a brother.

Obs. 1. In some Substantives ending in *ēr*, the *ē* is dropped in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*: as *pāter*, *māter*, etc.

Obs. 2. The *s* of the Stem is changed into *r*, when another syllable follows: as, *Stem* and *Nom.* *flōs*, *Gen.* *flōr-is*: *Stem* and *Nom.* *pulvis*, *dust*, *Gen.* *pulvēr-is*.

§ 25. V. Substantives the Stems of which end in on.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Leo (m.), a lion	Leōn-ēs,	lions
Gen.	Leōn-is, of a lion	Leōn-um,	of lions
Dat.	Leōn-i, to or for a lion	Leōn-ībūs,	to or for lions
Acc.	Leōn-em, a lion	Leōn-ēs,	lions
Voc.	Leo, O lion [lion.	Leōn-ēs,	O lions
Abl.	Leōn-ē, by, with, or from a	Leōn-ībūs,	by, with, or from lions.

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Virgo, a maiden	Virgīn-ēs,	maidens
Gen.	Virgīn-is, of a maiden	Virgīn-um,	of maidens
Dat.	Virgīn-i, to or for a maiden	Virgīn-ībūs,	to or for maidens
Acc.	Virgīn-em, a maiden	Virgīn-ēs,	maidens
Voc.	Virgo, O maiden [maiden.	Virgīn-ēs,	O maidens [maidens
Abl.	Virgīn-ē, by, with, or from a	Virgīn-ībūs,	by, with, or from

Examples for Declension.

sermo (m.), sermōn-is, a discourse.	hōmo (c.), hōmīn-is, a man or wo-
pūgio (m.), pūgiōn-is, a dagger.	grando (f.), grandīn-is, hail. [man.
lātro (m.), lātrōn-is, a robber.	ordo (m.), ordin-is, a rank.
praeco (m.), praecōn-is, a crier.	īmāgo (f.), imāgin-is, a likeness.
ōrātiō (f.), ōrātiōn-is, a speech.	hīrundo (f.), hīrundīn-is, a swallow.
pāvo (m.), pāvōn-is, a peacock.	ārundo (f.), ārundīn-is, a reed.

Obs. 1. If the Stem ends in ōn (short), the ō is changed into ī, when another syllable follows: as, Stem virgōn, Gen. virgīn-is. Comp. § 21, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Cāro (Stem cārōn) flesh, drops the ō in all cases except the Nom. and Voc. Sing.: as, Nom. cāro, Gen. carn-is, Dat. carn-i, &c.

§ 26. VI. Substantives the Stems of which end in i.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Host-is (c.), an enemy	Host-ēs,	enemies
Gen.	Host-is, of an enemy	Host-ium,	of enemies
Dat.	Host-i, to or for an enemy	Host-ībūs,	to or for enemies
Acc.	Host-em, an enemy	Host-ēs,	enemies
Voc.	Host-is, O enemy [enemy.	Host-ēs,	O enemies [mies.
Abl.	Host-ē, by, with, or from an	Host-ībūs,	by, with, or from ene-

Examples for Declension.

civis (c.), a citizen.	ovīs (f.), a sheep.	vestis (f.), a garment
avis (f.), a bird.	fells (f.), a cat.	classis (f.), a fleet.

Some Stems end in *i* or *e*, and are thus declined:—

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom. Nūb-ēs,	a cloud	Nūb-ēs,	clouds
Gen. Nūb-īs,	of a cloud	Nūb-īum,	of clouds
Dat. Nūb-ī,	to or for a cloud	Nūb-ībūs,	to or for clouds
Acc. Nūb-em,	a cloud	Nūb-ēs,	clouds
Voc. Nūb-ēs,	O cloud [cloud.	Nūb-ēs,	O clouds
Abl. Nūb-ē,	by, with, or from a	Nūb-ībūs,	by, with, or from clouds.

Examples for Declension.

clāēs, a defeat. | rūpēs, a rock. | sēlēs, a seat.

B. Neuter Substantives.

§ 27. The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension are properly the same as the Stem. The Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural always end in *ā*, as in the Second Declension.

§ 28. I. Substantives the Stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Nōmēn,	a name	Nōmīn-ā,	names
Gen. Nōmīn-īs,	of a name	Nōmīn-um,	of names
Dat. Nōmīn-ī,	to or for a name	Nōmīn-ībūs,	to or for names
Acc. Nōmēn,	a name	Nōmīn-ā,	names
Voc. Nōmēn,	O name [name.	Nōmīn-ā,	O names [names.
Abl. Nōmīn-ē,	by, with, or from a	Nōmīn-ībūs,	by, with, or from

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom. Fulgūr,	lightning	Fulgūr-ā,	lightnings
Gen. Fulgūr-īs,	of lightning	Fulgūr-um,	of lightnings
Dat. Fulgūr-ī,	to or for lightning	Fulgūr-ībūs,	to or for lightnings
Acc. Fulgūr,	lightning	Fulgūr-ā,	lightnings
Voc. Fulgūr,	O lightning	Fulgūr-ā,	O lightnings
Abl. Fulgūr-ē,	by, with, or from lightning.	Fulgūr-ībūs,	by, with, or from lightnings.

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom. Crūs,	a leg	Crūr-ā,	legs
Gen. Crūr-īs,	of a leg	Crūr-um,	of legs
Dat. Crūr-ī,	to or for a leg	Crūr-ībūs,	to or for legs
Acc. Crūs,	a leg	Crūr-ā,	legs
Voc. Crūs,	O leg [leg.	Crūr ā,	O legs
Abl. Crūr-ē,	by, with, or from a	Crūr-ībūs,	by, with, or from legs.

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	Ōpūs, a work	Ōpēr-ā,	works
Gen.	Ōpēr-is, of a work	Ōpēr-um,	of works
Dat.	Ōpēr-i, to or for a work	Ōpēr-ībūs,	to or for works
Acc.	Ōpūs, a work	Ōpēr-ā,	works
Voc.	Ōpūs, O work [work.	Ōpēr-ā,	O works
Abl.	Ōpēr-ē, by, with, or from a	Ōpēr-ībūs,	by, with, or from works.

	Sing.	5.	Plur.
Nom.	Corpūs, a body	Corpōr-ā,	bodies
Gen.	Corpōr-is, of a body	Corpōr-um,	of bodies
Dat.	Corpōr-i, to or for a body	Corpōr-ībūs,	to or for bodies
Acc.	Corpūs, a body	Corpōr-ā,	bodies
Voc.	Corpūs, O body [body.	Corpōr-ā,	O bodies [bodies
Abl.	Corpōr-ē, by, with, or from a	Corpōr-ībūs,	by, with, or from

	Sing.	6.	Plur.
Nom.	Cāpūt, a head	Cāpīt-ā,	heads
Gen.	Cāpīt-is, of a head	Cāpīt-um,	of heads
Dat.	Cāpīt-i, to or for a head	Cāpīt-ībūs,	to or for heads
Acc.	Cāpūt, a head	Cāpīt-ā,	heads
Voc.	Cāpūt, O head [head.	Cāpīt-ā,	O heads
Abl.	Cāpīt-ē, by, with, or from a	Cāpīt-ībūs,	by, with, or from heads.

NOTE.—A few Substantives ending in *en* and *us* are not Neuter: as, *flāmēn, Inis (m.), a special priest*; *Vēnūs, ēris, the goddess of love*; *lēpūs, ōris (m.), a hare*.

Examples for Declension.

flāmēn,	Inis,	a river.	fūnūs,	ēris,	a funeral.
carmēn,	Inis,	a song.	lātūs,	ēris,	a side.
fulmēn,	Inis,	a thunderbolt.	sidūs,	ēris,	a constellation.
sēmēn,	Inis,	a seed.	vulnūs,	ēris,	a wound.
murmūr,	ūris,	a murmur.	littūs,	ōris,	a shore.
guttur,	ūris,	a throat.	pignūs,	ōris,	a pledge.
ōs,	ōris,	a mouth.	tempūs,	ōris,	a time.
gēntūs,	ēris,	a race.	nēmūs,	ōris,	a grove.
foedūs,	ēris,	a treaty.	pectūs,	ōris,	a breast.

Obs. 1. The substitution of *r* for the final *s* of the Stem, when another syllable follows, is an euphonic change: as, *crūs, crūr-is*, instead of *crūs-is*; *ŏpēs, ŏpēr-is*, instead of *ŏpēs-is*; *corpōs, corpōr-is*, instead of *corpōs-is*.

Obs. 2. The *u* in *ūs* of the *Nom. Sing.* is only an euphonic change of the *ē* and *ō* of the Stem: as, *Stems ŏpēs, corpōs*; *Nom. ŏpūs, corpūs*.

Obs. 3. In *cāpūt, cāpīt-is*, the *ū* of the Stem is changed into *ī* when another syllable follows, like the *ē* in *nōmēn, nōmīn-is*. See § 21, Obs. 2.

§ 29. II. Substantives the Stems of which end in *i* (the *Nom.* in *e*, *al*, *ar*).

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Mār-ē , <i>the sea</i>	Mār-īā ,	<i>seas</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Mār-is , <i>of the sea</i>	Mār-ium ,	<i>of seas</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Mār-i , <i>to or for the sea</i>	Mār-ibūs ,	<i>to or for seas</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Mār-ē , <i>the sea</i>	Mār-īā ,	<i>seas</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Mār-ē , <i>O sea</i>	Mār-īā ,	<i>O seas</i>
<i>Abbl.</i>	Mār-i , <i>by, with, or from the</i>	Mār-ibūs ,	<i>by, with, or from seas.</i>

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ānimāl , <i>an animal</i>	Ānimāl-īā ,	<i>animals</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Ānimāl-is , <i>of an animal</i>	Ānimāl-ium ,	<i>of animals</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Ānimāl-i , <i>to or for an animal</i>	Ānimāl-ibūs ,	<i>to or for animals</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Ānimāl , <i>an animal</i>	Ānimāl-īā ,	<i>animals</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Ānimāl , <i>O animal</i>	Ānimāl-īā ,	<i>O animals</i>
<i>Abbl.</i>	Ānimāl-i , <i>by, with, or from an animal.</i>	Ānimāl-ibūs ,	<i>by, with, or from animals.</i>

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Calcār , <i>a spur</i>	Calcār-īā ,	<i>spurs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Calcār-is , <i>of a spur</i>	Calcār-ium ,	<i>of spurs</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Calcār-i , <i>to or for a spur</i>	Calcār-ibūs ,	<i>to or for spurs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Calcār , <i>a spur</i>	Calcār-īā ,	<i>spurs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Calcār , <i>O spur</i>	Calcār-īā ,	<i>O spurs</i>
<i>Abbl.</i>	Calcār-i , <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Calcār-ibūs ,	<i>by, with, or from spurs.</i>

Examples for Declension.

rētē , <i>a net.</i>	mōnīlē , <i>a necklace.</i>	cervīcāl , <i>a pillow.</i>
ōvīlē , <i>a sheepfold.</i>	vectīgāl , <i>a tax.</i>	exemplār , <i>an example.</i>

Obs. 1. The Stems of *mārē* and similar Substantives end in *i*, the final *ē* of the *Nom.* being only an euphonic change of the *i*: as, *Stem mārī*, *Nom. mārē*.

Obs. 2. The Stems of words whose Nominatives end in *āl* and *ār*, end in *āi* and *āri*, the *i* being dropped and the *a* shortened in the *Nom. Sing.*: as, *Stem ānimāli*, *Nom. ānimāl*; *Stem calcāri*, *Nom. calcār*. Hence the *Abbl.* in *i*, see §§ 32, 33.

§ 30. The following irregular Substantives are thus declined :

Bōs (*c.*), *an ox or cow.*

	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Bōs	Bōv-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	Bōv-is	Bōv-um or bū-um
<i>Dat.</i>	Bōv-i	Bō-būs or bū-būs
<i>Acc.</i>	Bōv-em	Bōv-ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	Bōs	Bōv-ēs
<i>Abbl.</i>	Bōv-ē	Bō-būs or bū-būs

Sēnex, an old man.		Jūptēr (=Jōv-pltēr, i. e. Jātēr), the god.	
Sing.	Plur.		
Nom. Sēnex	Sēn-ēs	Nom. Jūptēr	
Gen. Sēn-is	Sēn-um	Gen. Jōv-is	
Dat. Sēn-i	Sēn-ibūs	Dat. Jōv-i	
Acc. Sēn-em	Sēn-ēs	Acc. Jōv-em	
Voc. Sēnex	Sēn-ēs	Voc. Jūptēr	
Abl. Sēn-ē	Sēn-ibūs	Abl. Jōv-ē.	

CHAPTER VII.—REMARKS ON THE CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (INCLUDING ADJECTIVES).

§ 31. Accusative Singular in *im*.

The *Acc. Sing.* of many Substantives, of which the *Nom.* ends in *is* as *tn*, not *em* :

1. Always in the five words :—

āmussīs, rāvis, sītīs, tussīs, vīs,

and in the names of cities and rivers; as, *Hispālīs, Seville; Tībēris, the Tiber.*

āmussīs (f.), a rule.	tussīs (f.), a cough.
rāvis (f.), hoarseness.	vīs (f.), violence.
sītīs (f.), thirst.	

2. Generally in the six words :

febrīs, pelvīs, puppīs,
restīs, turris, sēcūris.

febrīs (f.), fever.	restīs (f.), a rope.
pelvīs (f.), a basin.	turris (f.), a tower.
puppīs (f.), the stern of a ship.	sēcūris (f.), an axe.

3. Sometimes in the three words :

clāvīs, messīs, nāvīs.

clāvīs (f.), a key. | messīs (f.), a harvest. | nāvīs (f.), a ship.

§ 32. Ablative Singular in *i*.

The *Abl. Sing.* has *i*, not *ē* :

1. In all words of which the Accusative ends in *im* only : as, *sītī, Tībērī.*

2. In Neuters in *ē, āl*, and *ār*, (Gen. *āris*) : as, *mārī, ānīmālī, calcārī.*

Obs. 1. Sometimes, but very rarely, these Substantives have *ē* in the Ablative: as, *mārē* (Varr., Lucr.).

Obs. 2. Names of towns in *e* always have *ē* in the Abl.: as, *Praenestē*.

Obs. 3. Substantives in *ar*, the Gen. of which is not *āris*, have *ē* in the Abl.: as, *fār*, *farris*, *spelt*; *baccār*, *baccāris*, *a sweet herb*; *jūbār*, *jūbāris*, *a sun-beam*; *nectār*, *nectāris*, *nectar*.

3. In Adjectives ending in *is*, *e*, and *er*, *is*, *e*: as, *facīli* from *facilis*, *easy*; *ācī* from *ācēr*, *sharp*.

§ 33. Ablative Singular in *ī* and *ē*.

The *Abl. Sing.* has both *ī* and *ē*:

1. In most words the Acc. of which ends both in *im* and *em*: as, *puppī* and *puppē*.

Also in *ignīs*, *āvīs*, *imbēr*, *vesper*, *sūpellex*.

ignīs (*m.*), *fire*.

āvīs (*f.*), *a bird*.

imbēr, *n.* (*Abl. imbrī* &

imbrē), *rain*.

sūpellex, *f.* (*Abl. sūpellectūī*, or *sūpellectilē*), *household utensils*.

vesper, *m.* (*Abl. vespērī* or *vespērē*), *evening*.

Obs. *Restīs* has only *restē*; *sēcūrīs* only *sēcūrī*.

2. In Adjectives of one termination and in the Comparatives: as, *prudentī* and *prudentē* from *prudens*, *experienced*; *altiorī* and *altiorē* from *altior*, *higher*. The Comparatives usually have *ē*.

Obs. 1. The following Adjectives have *ē* only:

paupēr, *pūbēs*, *dēsēs*,
compōs, *impōs*, *caelebs*,
princeps and *sūperstēs*.

paupēr, *ēris*,

pūbēs (*ēr*), *ēris*,

dēsēs, *Idīs*,

compōs, *ōtis*,
having the mastery of.

poor.

an adult.

lazy.

having the mastery of.

impōs, *ōtis*,

caelebs, *Ibīs*,

princeps, *Ipīs*,

sūperstēs, *Itīs*,

not master of.

unmarried.

chief.

surviving.

Obs. 2. *Pār*, *equal*, and *mēmōr*, *mindful*, have only *ī*. But *pār*, *a pair* (*subst.*), has *ē* also.

Obs. 3. The Participles in *ns* generally have *ī* when used as Adjectives, but otherwise *ē*.

§ 34. Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural in *ī*.

The *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc. Plur.* of Neuter Nouns have *ī*:

1. In Substantives, the *Nom. Sing.* of which end in *e*, *al*, or *is* (Gen. *āris*): as, *mārīā*, *ānīmālīā*, *calcārīā*.

2. In Adjectives which have the *Abl. Sing.* either in *ī* alone, or in *ī* and *ē*, except the Comparatives: as, *grāvīā*, *ācīā*, *prudentīā*; but *altiorā*.

Obs. Except *vētūs*, *old*, which has *vētērā*. *Complūrēs*, *several*, has both *complūrā* and *complūrīā*.

§ 35. *Genitive Plural in ium.*

The *Gen. Plur.* has *ium*, not *um* :

1. In Substantives the *Nom. Sing.* of which ends in *is* or *es*, not increasing in the *Gen.* : *as*, *hostis*, *hostium* ; *aedēs*, *aedium*.

Exceptions.

Ambāgēs, *struēs*, *jūvēnīs*,
Vātēs, *cānīs*, *vōlūcrīs*,
 In genitive have *um*,
 While *āpīs*, *mensīs*, *sēdēs*,
 Have either *um* or *ium*.

<i>ambāgēs</i> * (<i>f.</i>),	<i>a winding.</i>	<i>vōlūcrīs</i> (<i>f.</i>),	<i>a bird.</i>
<i>struēs</i> (<i>f.</i>),	<i>a heap.</i>	<i>āpīs</i> (<i>f.</i>),	<i>a bee.</i>
<i>jūvēnīs</i> (<i>c.</i>),	<i>a youth.</i>	<i>mensīs</i> (<i>m.</i>),	<i>a month.</i>
<i>vātēs</i> (<i>c.</i>),	<i>a prophet.</i>	<i>sēdēs</i> (<i>f.</i>),	<i>a seat.</i>
<i>cānīs</i> (<i>c.</i>),	<i>a dog.</i>		

* See § 52, *Obs.* 3.

2. In the words :

Imbēr, *ūtēr*, *lintēr*,
Insübēr, *cāro*, *ventēr* :

as, *imbrīum*, *carnīum*, &c.

<i>imbēr</i> (<i>m.</i>),	<i>rain.</i>	<i>Insübēr</i> (<i>m.</i>),	<i>name of a Gallic tribe.</i>
<i>ūtēr</i> (<i>m.</i>),	<i>a bag made of leather.</i>	<i>cāro</i> (<i>f.</i>),	<i>flesh.</i>
<i>lintēr</i> (<i>m.</i>),	<i>a cherry.</i> [<i>ther.</i>]	<i>ventēr</i> (<i>m.</i>),	<i>the belly.</i>

3. In monosyllabic words, the stems of which end in two consonants : *as*, *urbs*, *urb-ium* ; *arx*, *arc-ium* ; *mons*, *mont-ium*. so also *os* (*Stem oss*), *n.*, *a bone*, *Gen. Pl.* *oss-ium* ; *as* (*Stem ass*), *m.*, *a small coin*, *Gen. Pl.* *ass-ium*.

4. Also in the following monosyllabic words in which the stem ends in a single consonant :

Lis, *glis*, and *vīs*,
Mūs, *mās*, and *nix*,
 Add *faux* and *strix*.

<i>lis</i> (<i>litium</i>), <i>f.</i>	<i>a lawsuit.</i>	<i>mās</i> (<i>mārium</i>),	<i>a male.</i>
<i>glis</i> (<i>glirium</i>), <i>m.</i>	<i>a dormouse.</i>	<i>nix</i> (<i>nivium</i>), <i>f.</i>	<i>snow.</i>
<i>vīs</i> (<i>virium</i>), <i>f.</i>	<i>force.</i>	<i>faux</i> (<i>faucium</i>), <i>f.</i>	<i>the throat.</i>
<i>mūs</i> (<i>mūrium</i>), <i>m.</i>	<i>a mouse.</i>	<i>strix</i> (<i>strigium</i>), <i>f.</i>	<i>an owl.</i>

Obs. The *Nom.* *faux* is not used. See § 52, *Obs.* 3.

5. In all neuter substantives which have the *Nom. Pl.* in *ia* : *as*, *mārium* ; *ānīmālium* ; *calcārium*.

§ 36. *Genitive Plural in ium (rarely um).*

The *Gen. Plur.* generally ends in *ium*, rarely in *um* :

1. In words of more than one syllable, the *Nom. Sing.* of which

ends in *ns*: as, *cliens* (*clientium*, rarely *clientum*), a *client*; *adolescens* (*adolescens*, rarely *adolescens*), a *young man*; *prudens* (*prudens*, rarely *prudens*), a *prudent*.

2. In national names: as, *Quiris* (*Quiritium*), a *Roman*; *Arpinus* (*Arpinatium*), a *native of Arpinum*. Also *Penates* (*Penatium*), the *household gods*; *optimates* (*optimatum*), the *nobles*.

§ 37. Accusative Plural in *is* and *ēs*.

The *Acc. Plur.* of most masculine and feminine nouns, the *Gen. Pl.* of which ends in *ium*, has *is* as well as *ēs* (old form *eis*): as, *hostis* and *hostēs*; *artis* and *artēs*; *praesentis* and *praesentēs*.

Obs. The words which have in the *Sing.* the case-endings *im* and *i*, and in the *Plural* the case-endings *ia*, *ium*, and *is*, generally have Stems ending in *i*. The cases are thus formed according to the analogy of words of other declensions of which the Stems end in a vowel: as,

<i>Acc. Sing.</i>	<i>puppi-m</i>	like	<i>gradu-m</i> ;
<i>Abl. Sing.</i>	<i>puppi</i>	„	<i>gradu</i> ;
<i>Nom. Pl.</i>	<i>mari-ā</i>	„	<i>genu-ā</i> ;
<i>Gen. Pl.</i>	<i>mari-um</i>	„	<i>genu-um</i> ;
<i>Acc. Pl.</i>	<i>puppi-s</i>	„	<i>manū-s</i> .

But many such words follow the analogy of words of the third declension, the Stems of which end in a consonant: thus we have also the forms *puppem*, *puppē*, *puppes*, &c. The *i* of the Stem is frequently dropped in the *Nom. Sing.*: see § 29, *Obs.* 2.

CHAPTER VIII.—GREEK SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 38. Nominative Singular.

The *Nom. Sing.* of many Proper Names ends in the Greek *ων* (*on*) as well as the Latin *ō*: as, *Agamemnon*, rarely *Agamemno*.

§ 39. Genitive Singular.

1. The *Gen. Sing.* of Proper Names in *es* ends in *i* more frequently than in *is*: as, *Nom. Pēriclēs*, *Gen. Pēricl-i* and *Pēricl-is*.

2. The *Gen. Sing.* of Proper Names in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ος* (*os*) instead of in the Latin *s*: as, *Thētis*, *Gen. Thētid-ōs*; *Pallās*, *Gen. Pallād-ōs*.

3. The *Gen. Sing.* of Feminine Names in *ō* generally ends in the Greek *ūs* (*ūs*) instead of in the Latin *ōnis*: as, *Sapphō*, *Gen. Sapphū-s*. The *Dat.*, *Acc.*, and *Abl.* are usually *Sapphō*, rarely *Sapphōn-i*, *-em*, *-ē*.

§ 40. Accusative Singular.

1. The *Acc. Sing.* frequently ends in the Greek *ᾱ* instead of in the Latin *em*: as, *ᾱēr*, *Acc. ᾱēr-ᾱ*; *Agamemnon*, *Acc. Agamemnōn-ᾱ*.

2. The *Acc. Sing.* of Substantives in *is* (with the Stem in *i*) ends either in *im* or in the Greek *in* (*ιν*): as, *poësis*, *Acc.* *poësim* and *poësin*; *Chärybdīs*, *Acc.* *Chärybdim* and *Chärybdin*.

3. The *Acc. Sing.* of Proper Names in *es* frequently ends in the Greek *ên ην*, which is the *Acc.* of the first Greek Declension: as, *Aeschīnēs*, *Acc.* *Aeschīnēn* and *Aeschīnem*.

§ 41. Vocative Singular.

1. The *Voc. Sing.* of Substantives in *is*, *ys* (*υσ*), *eus* (*ευς*), and *as* (*Gen. antis*), ends, as in Greek, without *s*: as, *Phyllīs*, *Voc.* *Phyllī*; *Cōtys*, *Voc.* *Cōtŷ*; *Orpheus*, *Voc.* *Orpheu* (see § 20); *Calchās*, *Voc.* *Calchā*.

2. The *Voc. Sing.* of Proper Names in *ēs*, *Gen. iēs*, ends in *ēs*, *ēs*, and *ē*: as *Sōcrātēs*, *Sōcrātēs*, and *Sōcrātē*.

§ 42. Nominative Plural.

The *Nom. Plur.* in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ēs* (*ες*) instead of in the Latin *ēs*: as, *Arcādēs*.

§ 43. Genitive Plural.

The *Gen. Plur.* in *ōn* (*ων*) is found in the titles of books only: as, *Mētāmorphōseōn libri*.

§ 44. Accusative Plural.

The *Acc. Plur.* in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ās* instead of in the Latin *ēs*: as, *Arcād-ās*.

§ 45. Dative and Ablative Plural.

The *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* of Greek Substantives in *ma*, *Gen. mātis*, frequently end in *īs* (according to the Second Declension) instead of in *ībūs*: as, *poēmāt-īs* from *poēmā* (*ποίημα*).

Examples.

	Sing.		Sing.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Pēriclēs</i>		<i>Pallas</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Pēriclīs</i> , <i>Pēriclī</i>		<i>Pallādīs</i> , <i>Pallādos</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Pēricli</i>		<i>Pallādi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Pēriclem</i> , <i>Pēriclē</i>		<i>Pallādem</i> , <i>Pallādē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Pēriclēs</i> , <i>Pēriclēs</i> , <i>Pēriclē</i>		<i>Pallas</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Pēriclē</i>		<i>Pallādē</i> .
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Pārīs</i>		<i>Sapphō</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Pāridīs</i> , <i>Pāridōs</i>		<i>Sapphūs</i> , <i>Sapphōn</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Pāridi</i>		<i>Sapphō</i> , <i>Sapphōnī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Pāridem</i> , <i>Pāridā</i> , <i>Pārin</i>		<i>Sapphō</i> , <i>Sapphōnem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Parī</i>		<i>Sapphō</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Paridē</i> .		<i>Sapphōnē</i> .

Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> chlāmýs, a cloak.	chlāmýdēs or -ēs
<i>Gen.</i> chlāmýdīs, chlāmýdōs	chlāmýdum
<i>Dat.</i> chlāmýdi	chlāmýdibūs
<i>Acc.</i> chlāmýdem, chlāmýdā	chlāmýdēs, chlāmýdās
<i>Abl.</i> chlāmýdō.	chlāmýdibūs.

CHAPTER IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

§ 46. The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Substantives in *u*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Grād-ūs, a step	Grād-ūs,	steps
<i>Gen.</i> Grād-ūs, of a step	Grād-num,	of steps
<i>Dat.</i> Grād-ūi, to or for a step	Grād-ībūs,	to or for steps
<i>Acc.</i> Grād-um, a step	Grād-ūs,	steps
<i>Voc.</i> Grād-ūs, O step [step.]	Grād-ūs,	O steps
<i>Abl.</i> Grād-ū, by, with, or from a	Grād-ībūs,	by, with, or from steps.

Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Gēn-u, a knee	Gēn-nā,	knees
<i>Gen.</i> Gēn-ūs, of a knee	Gēn-nūm,	of knees
<i>Dat.</i> Gēn-ūi, to or for a knee	Gēn-ībūs,	to or for knees
<i>Acc.</i> Gēn-u, a knee	Gēn-nā,	knees
<i>Voc.</i> Gēn-u, O knee [knee.]	Gēn-nā,	O knees
<i>Abl.</i> Gēn-ū, by, with, or from a	Gēn-ībūs,	by, with, or from knees.

GENDER.—Substantives in *ūs* of the Fourth Declension are masculine, with the exception of the names of trees and the words mentioned below.

Examples for Declension.

Masculine.

fructus, fruit.	mōtus, a movement.	passus, a pace.
currus, a chariot.	ūsus, a use.	cursus, a running.
sensus, a sense.	cāsus, a fall.	cantus, a song.

Feminine.

mānus, a hand.	nūrus,	a daughter-in-law.
tribus, a tribe (a division of the	socrus,	a mother-in-law.
ācus, a needle. [Roman people.]	ānus,	an old-woman.
porticus, a portico.	īdus (pl.),	the Ides (a division of the
dōmus, a house.		Roman month).

Neuter.

cornu, a horn. | věru, a spit.

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fourth Declension end in *u*.Obs. 2. The *Gen. Sing.* *ūs* is a contraction of *uīs* : as, *grādūs* from *grādūīs*.Obs. 3. The *Dat. Sing.* *uī* is often contracted into *ū* : as, *grādūī*, *grādū*.Obs. 4. The *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* of the following words end in *ūbūs*, but *portus* and *vēru* have also *ībūs* :—

quercus, also *ācus*,
 arcus, *vēru*, *lācus*,
 spēcus, *trībus*, *artus*,
 portus, *pēcu*, *partus*.

quercus (<i>f.</i>), an oak.	lācus (<i>m.</i>), a lake, tank.	artus (<i>m.</i>), a joint.
ācus (<i>f.</i>), a needle.	spēcus (<i>m. f.</i>) } a cave.	portus (<i>m.</i>), a harbour.
arcus (<i>m.</i>), a bow.	& <i>n.</i>)	pēcu (<i>n.</i>), cattle.
vēru (<i>n.</i>), a spit.	trībus (<i>f.</i>), a tribe.	partus (<i>m.</i>), a birth.

Obs. 5. *Dōmus*, a house, belongs partly to the Second, partly to the Fourth Declension.

Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Dōm-ūs	Dōm-ūs
<i>Gen.</i> Dōm-ūs	Dōm-ūum or dōm-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> Dōm-uī	Dōm-ībūs
<i>Acc.</i> Dōm-um	Dōm-ōs (<i>rarely</i> dōm-ūs)
<i>Voc.</i> Dōm-ūs	Dōm-ūs
<i>Abl.</i> Dōm-ō	Dōm-ībūs.

Hence the memorial line :

Tollē mē, mū, mī, mīs,
 SI dēclīnārē dōmus vīs.

i. e. leave out the endings *mē, mū, mī, mīs*, if you wish to decline *dōmūs*.*Dōmī* is used only with the meaning *at home*, and is probably a dative.

CHAPTER X.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

§ 47. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Dī-ēs, a day	Dī-ēs, days
<i>Gen.</i> Dī-ēī, of a day	Dī-ērum, of days
<i>Dat.</i> Dī-ēī, to or for a day	Dī-ēbūs, to or for days
<i>Acc.</i> Dī-em, a day	Dī-ēs, days
<i>Voc.</i> Dī-ēs, O day	Dī-ēs, O days
<i>Abl.</i> Dī-ē, by, with, or from a [day]	Dī-ēbūs, by, with, or from days.

GENDER.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine : excepting *dies*, which in the Singular is sometimes Masculine and sometimes Feminine, and in the Plural always Masculine : also *merīdies* (*m.*), *noon*, which is a compound of *dies*.

Examples for Declension.

rēs, a thing.	effigiēs, a likeness.	spēciēs, appearance.
āciēs, a point.	fidēs, faith.	spēs, hope.
faciēs, a face.	sēriēs, a series.	mēridies (m.), noon.

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fifth Declension end in *e*.

Obs. 2. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *e* in *eī* is long after a vowel, but short after a consonant: as, dī-eī, faci-eī; but, rēi, fidēi.

Obs. 3. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *ei* is sometimes contracted into *ē*: as, diē, fidē.

Obs. 4. Rēs and diēs are the only words of this Declension which have a complete Plural. The words āciēs, faciēs, effigiēs, sēriēs, spēciēs, and spēs occur in the Plural only in the *Nom.*, *Acc.* and *Voc.* cases. No other words of the Declension have any Plural.

CHAPTER XI.—IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 48. Some Substantives are not declined: as, fās, *permitted by divine law*; nēfās, *opposed to divine law*; nīhīl, *nothing*; instār, *resemblance*.

§ 49. Some Substantives have no Plural: as, justitia, *justice*; famēs, *hunger*; aurum, *gold*.

§ 50. Some Substantives have no Singular: as, nuptiae, *a marriage*; feriæ, *holidays*; tēnebrae, *darkness*; libērī, *children*; arma, *arms*.

§ 51. Some Substantives have a different meaning in the Singular and the Plural: as,

Sing.	Plur.
Aedēs, a temple;	aedēs, a house.
Āqua, water;	āquae, medicinal springs.
Auxilium, help;	auxilia, auxiliary forces.
Carcēr, a prison;	carcērēs, a starting-place.
Castrum, a fort;	castrā, a camp.
Cōmītiū, the place of Assembly;	Cōmītiā, the Assembly itself.
Cōpia, plenty;	cōpiae, forces.
Fortūna, fortune;	fortūnae, the gifts of fortune.
Grātia, favour;	grātiae, thanks. [property.]
Impēdimentum, a hindrance;	impēdimentā, baggage.
Littēra, a letter of the alphabet;	littērae, an epistle.
Lūdus, play, school; [bet;	lūdi, public games.
Ōpera, exertion;	ōpērae, workmen.
Ōpis (Gen.), help;	ōpēs, power, wealth.
Part, a portion;	partes, a part in a play.
Rostrum, a beak;	rostrā, the platform for speakers in the Roman forum (adorned with the beaks of ships),
Tābla, a board, picture;	tāblae, writing tablets.

§ 52. Some Substantives want one or more Cases.

1. The following Substantives have no Nominative Singular :

(daps), dāpis (f.),	a feast.
(dttlo) dttlōnis (f.),	dominion.
(frux) frūgis (f.),	fruit.
(internāclo) internāclōnis (f.),	destruction.

2. The following Substantives have only certain cases :

- fors (f.), *chance*. Only *Nom.* and *Abl. Sing.* fortē (without Plural).
 (ops) ōpis (f.), *help*. Only *Gen., Acc., Abl., Sing.* ōpis, ōpem, ōpē. Full Plural.
 (prex, prācla) (f.), *prayer*. Only *Dat., Acc., and Abl. Sing.* Full Plural.
 (victa), *change*. Only *Gen., Acc., Abl. Sing.* victa, vicem, vicē. Full Plural, except *Gen.*
 vis (f.), *force*. Only *Nom., Acc., Abl. Sing.* vis, vim, vī. Full Plural
 virtēs, virtum, virtūis, virtēs, virtēs, virtibus.

3. The following Substantives have in the Singular the Ablative only, but a full Plural :—

ambāgē (f.), *a circuit*. | faucē (f.), *the throat*. | verbērē (n.), *a stripe*.4. One word has only the Ablative Singular, and no Plural :—spontē (f.), *by inclination*.§ 53. Some Substantives are *Hētērcclitā*, that is, have a two-fold Declension.1. In the Second Declension some Substantives end in *us* and *um* : as, callus and callum, *hardened skin* ; commentārius and commentārium, *a note-book*.2. Some Substantives fluctuate between the First and Second Declensions : as, menda and mendum, *a fault*. Vespēr (also vespēra), *the evening*, has, according to the Second Declension, the *Acc.* vespērum, but the *Abl.* usually according to the Third Declension, vespērē, vespēri.3. Some Substantives fluctuate between the First and Fifth Declensions : as, barbāria and barbāriēs, *barbarism* ; mollitia and mollitiēs, *softness* ; luxūria and luxūriēs, *luxury* ; mātēria and mātēriēs, *timber*.4. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Second and Fourth Declensions : as, dōmus, *a house* (see § 46, Obs. 5) ; laurus, *a bay-tree* ; cūpressus, *a cypress* ; ficus, *a fig-tree* ; pinus, *a pine-tree* ; ēventus (4) and ēventum, *an occurrence* ; suggestūs (4) and suggestum, *a platform for speakers*.5. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Third and Fifth Declensions : as, plebs, plēbis, and plēbēs, plēbēi, *the commonalty* ; rēquies, rēquētis and rēquēi, *rest*.6. Jūgērūm, *an acre*, is of the Second Declension in the *Sing.*, but of the Third in the *Plur.* : as, jūgērā, jūgērūm, jūgērībūs. Vās, vāis, *a vessel*, is of the Third Declension in the *Sing.*, but of the Second in the Plural : as, vāē, vāōrum, vāis.§ 54. Some Substantives are *Hētērdgēnēā*, that is, have a different gender in the Singular and the Plural.

Sing.		Plur.
jocus (m.),	a joke.	jocī (m.), jocā (n.)
locus (m.),	a place.	locī (m.), locā (n.)
carbāsus (f.),	fine linen.	carbāsā (n.), sails.
coelum (n.),	heaven.	coeli (m.) (rare).

Sing.		Plur.
frēnum (n.),	a bit.	frēnī (m.), frēnā (n.)
Tartārus (m.),	the infernal regions.	Tartārā (n.)
dīēs,*	a day.	dīēs (m.)
rastrum (n.),	a rake.	rastrī (m.), rastrā (n.)

Obs. Dies is feminine in the singular when a set day or period of time is indicated.

* See § 47, note.

CHAPTER XII.—DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 55. Adjectives are either of *Three Terminations* (one for each gender); of *Two Terminations* (one for the Masculine and Feminine, and the other for the Neuter); or of *One Termination* (for all genders).

§ 56. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS ARE DIVIDED INTO TWO CLASSES.

Adjectives of the first class end in *ūs, ā, um*, or *ēr, ā, um*, and are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Substantives of the First Declension: as, *bōnūs, bōnā, bōnum*, good; *nīgēr, nigrā, nigrum*, black; *tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērūm*, tender.

Sing.			1.	Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i> Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā	
<i>Gen.</i> Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ī	Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum	
<i>Dat.</i> Bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs	
<i>Acc.</i> Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā	
<i>Voc.</i> Bōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā	
<i>Abt.</i> Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs	

Sing.			2.	Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i> Nīgēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā	
<i>Gen.</i> Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum	
<i>Dat.</i> Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	
<i>Acc.</i> Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā	
<i>Voc.</i> Nigr-ēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā	
<i>Abt.</i> Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	

	Sing.			3.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	Těněr	těněr-ă	těněr-um	Těněr-ī	těněr-ae	těněr-ă	
<i>Gen.</i>	Těněr-ī	těněr-ae	těněr-ī	Těněr-ōrum	těněr-ārum	těněr-ōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	Těněr-ō	těněr-ae	těněr-ō	Těněr-is	těněr-is	těněr-is	
<i>Acc.</i>	Těněr-um	těněr-am	těněr-um	Těněr-ōs	těněr-ās	těněr-ă	
<i>Voc.</i>	Těněr	těněr-ă	těněr-um	Těněr-ī	těněr-ae	těněr-ă	
<i>Abl.</i>	Těněr-ō	těněr-ă	těněr-ō	Těněr-is	těněr-is	těněr-is	

Examples for Declension.

mălus,	a,	um,	bad.	sūperbus,	a,	um,	proud.
cărus,	a,	um,	dear.	săcer,	cra,	rum,	sacred.
clărus,	a,	um,	bright.	acer,	gra,	rum,	sick.
plănus,	a,	um,	full.	măcer,	cra,	rum,	lean.
albus,	a,	um,	white.	pulcher,	chra,	rum,	beautiful.
magnus,	a,	um,	great.	răber,	bra,	rum,	red.
parvus,	a,	um,	little.	sīnister,	tra,	rum,	left.

Obs. 1. The only Adjectives declined like *těněr* are the following:—

asper, ăra, ărum,	rough.	liber, ăra, ărum,	free.
lăcer, ăra, ărum,	torn.	miser, ăra, ărum,	wretched.
prosper, ăra, ărum,	prosperous.		

With all Adjectives in *fer* and *ger*: as,

lănăger, ăra, ărum,	wool-bearing.	ăpăfer, ăra, ărum,	help-bringing.
---------------------	---------------	--------------------	----------------

All other Adjectives in *ăr* drop the *ă*, and are declined like *năger*.

Dextěr is declined in both ways, *dextěră* and *dextră*, *dextěrurum* and *dextrum*.

Obs. 2. There is one Adjective in *ăr*, *sătăr*, *sătără*, *sătărurum*, *full of food*, *sated*.

§ 57. Irregular Declension in *us*, *a*, *um*, and *er*, *a*, *um*.

The following Adjectives and Pronouns,

ăntă, sălă, tătă, ullă,
ătěr, neutěr, altěr, nullă,
and ălă,

have in the Genitive Sing. *ius* and in the Dative *i*. For example—

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ull-ă	ull-ă	ull-um		Ūt-ăr	utr-ă	utr-um
<i>Gen.</i>	Ull-ă				Utr-ă		
<i>Dat.</i>	Ull-i				Utr-i		
<i>Acc.</i>	Ull-um	ull-am	ull-um		Utr-um	utr-am	utr-um
<i>Abl.</i>	Ull-ō	ull-ă	ull-ō		Utr-ō	utr-ă	utr-ō

ănus, one.	nullus, any.	neuter, neither of two.
sălus, alone.	nullus, none.	alter, one of two.
tătus, whole.	ătěr, which of two.	ălă, one of any number, another.

Obs. 1. In prose the *i* in the Gen. *ius* is always long, except in *altěră*. The Gen. *ălă* is a contraction of *ălă-ă*, and therefore always long. In the other words the *i* in the Gen. *ius* is short as well as long in poetry.

Obs. 2. The compounds of *ătěr* are declined in the same way: as, *ătěrquă*, *ătěrvis*, *ătěrăbăt*, *ătěrăcunquă*: Gen. *utrusquă*, *utrusvis*, etc.

§ 58. Adjectives of Three Terminations of the second class end in *er, ris, re.* and are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: in all other cases they have only two terminations: as, *ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē, sharp.*

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē	Ācrēs	ācrīā
Gen.	Ācrīs		—	Ācrium	—
Dat.	Ācrī		—	Ācrībūs	—
Acc.	Ācrem		ācrē	Ācrēs	ācrīā
Voc.	Ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē	Ācrēs	ācrīā
Abl.	Ācrī		—	Ācrībūs	—

Obs. The termination *er* is sometimes, but very rarely, found in the *Nom. Sing. Fem.*

There are only thirteen Adjectives of this kind:

ācer, ālācer, campester,
cēler, cēlēber, ēquester,
pūter, vōlūcer, terrester,
pāluster, pēdester,
sālūber, silvester.

<i>ālācer,</i>	<i>lively.</i>	<i>vōlūcer,</i>	<i>winged.</i>
<i>campester,</i>	<i>level.</i>	<i>terrester,</i>	<i>pertaining to the earth.</i>
<i>cēler,</i>	<i>quick.</i>	<i>pāluster,</i>	<i>marshy.</i>
<i>cēlēber,</i>	<i>crowded.</i>	<i>pēdester,</i>	<i>pedestrian.</i>
<i>ēquester,</i>	<i>equestrian.</i>	<i>sālūber,</i>	<i>healthful.</i>
<i>pūter,</i>	<i>rotten.</i>	<i>silvester,</i>	<i>woody.</i>

Obs. 1. *Cēlēr, cēlērīs, cēlērē* is the only Adj. of this class that keeps the *e* before the *r*. *Cēlēr* has *um*, not *ium*, in the Gen. Pl.

Obs. 2. Sometimes these Adjectives have also the termination *ris* in the *Nom. Sing. Masc.* *Terrestris* is the usual form for both genders.

§ 59. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: as, *tristīs, tristē, sad*; *altior, altius, higher* (§ 63).

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Trist-īs	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
Gen.	Trist-īs	—	Trist-ium	—
Dat.	Trist-i	—	Trist-ībūs	—
Acc.	Trist-em	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
Voc.	Trist-īs	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
Abl.	Trist-i	—	Trist-ībūs	—

Examples for Declension.

<i>lēvis,</i>	<i>light.</i>	<i>brēvis,</i>	<i>short.</i>	<i>mollis,</i>	<i>soft.</i>
<i>lēvis,</i>	<i>smooth.</i>	<i>fortis,</i>	<i>brave.</i>	<i>fācilis,</i>	<i>easy.</i>
<i>grāvis,</i>	<i>heavy.</i>	<i>turpis,</i>	<i>disgraceful.</i>	<i>vīlis,</i>	<i>cheap.</i>
<i>jūlcis.</i>	<i>sweet.</i>	<i>similis,</i>	<i>like.</i>	<i>hūmilis,</i>	<i>low.</i>

§ 60. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: as, *fēlix*, *fortunate*; *prūdēns*, *prudent*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F. N.
Nom.	Fēlix	fēlix	Fēlic-ēs fēlic-iā
Gen.	Fēlic-īs	—	Fēlic-ium —
Dat.	Fēlic-ī	—	Fēlic-ībūs —
Acc.	Fēlic-em	fēlix	Fēlic-ēs fēlic-iā
Voc.	Fēlix	—	Fēlic-ēs fēlic-iā
Abl.	Fēlic-ī or ē	—	Fēlic-ībūs —

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F. N.
Nom.	Prūdēns	prūdēns	Prūdēt-ēs prūdēt-iā
Gen.	Prūdēt-īs	—	Prūdēt-ium —
Dat.	Prūdēt-ī	—	Prūdēt-ībūs —
Acc.	Prūdēt-em	prūdēns	Prūdēt-ēs prūdēt-iā
Voc.	Prūdēns	—	Prūdēt-ēs prūdēt-iā
Abl.	Prūdēt-ī or ē	—	Prūdēt-ībūs —

Examples for Declension.

audax,	ācis,	bold.	pōtēns,	entis,	powerful.
vērax,	ācis,	truthful.	ingēns,	entis,	huge.
lōquax,	ācis,	talkative.	diligēns,	entis,	diligent.
vēlox,	ōcis,	swift.	sāplēns,	entis,	wise.
fārox,	ōcis,	haughty.	præsens,	entis,	present.

Obs. 1. On the Abl. Sing., see §§ 32, 33. On the Nom. Plur. Neuter in *-iā*, see § 34. On the Gen. Plur. in *-ium*, see §§ 35, 36.

Obs. 2. *Divēs*, *divitis*, *rich*, has a contracted form: Nom. *dīs*, *dītē*; Gen. *dīt-īs*, &c.; Nom. Plur. Neut. *dītā*.

Obs. 3. Some Adjectives are indeclinable: as, *nēquam*, *worthless*; *frūgī*, *honest* (properly the Dative of a Substantive): as, *frūgī hūmō*, *frūgī cōmīnem*.

CHAPTER XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 61. Adjectives have three forms, which are usually called the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative Degrees: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
altus, high.	altior, higher.	altissimū, highest.

§ 62. The Comparative is formed by adding *iōr*, and the Superlative by adding *issimū*, to the Stem, any final vowel of which is dropped: as

	Posit.			Comp.		Sup.
	Nom.	Stem.				
	altūs,	alto,	high,	alt-iōr,		alt-issīmūs.
	lēvis,	lēvi,	light,	lēv-iōr,		lēv-issīmūs.
	felix,	felic,	fortunate,	felic-iōr,		felic-issīmūs.
	prūdēns,	prūdēt,	prudent,	prūdēt-iōr,		prūdēt-issīmūs.

§ 63. The Comparative is an Adjective of Two Terminations, having *ior* in the Nom. Sing. of the Masculine and Feminine, and *ius* in that of the Neuter. It is declined as follows :

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Altīōr	altiūs		Altīōr-ēs	altiōr-ā
Gen.	Altīōr-is	—		Altīōr-um	—
Dat.	Altīōr-i	—		Altīōr-ībūs	—
Acc.	Altīōr-em	altiūs		Altīōr-ēs	altiōr-ā
Voc.	Altīōr	altiūs		Altīōr-ēs	altiōr-ā
Abl.	Altīōr-ē rarely -ī	—		Altīōr-ībūs	—

§ 64. The Superlative is an Adjective of Three Terminations, *us, a, um*: *as, altissimūs, altissimā, altissimum.*

§ 65. EXCEPTIONS.

I. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rīmūs*: *as,*

	Posit.		Comp.		Sup.
	pulchēr,	beautiful,	pulchr-iōr,		pulcher-rīmūs.
	libēr,	free,	libēr-iōr,		liber-rīmūs.
	ācēr,	sharp,	ācēr-iōr,		acer-rīmūs.
	cēlēr,	swift,	cēlēr-iōr,		celer-rīmūs.

Also *vētūs* (*Gen. vētēr-is*), *old*, has a Superlative, *vēter-rīmūs*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *līmūs*: *as,*

	Posit.		Comp.		Sup.
	fācīlis,	easy,	fācil-iōr,		fācil-līmūs.
	difficīlis,	difficult,	difficil-iōr,		difficil-līmūs.
	sīmilis,	like,	sīmil-iōr,		sīmil-līmūs.
	dissīmilis,	unlike,	dissīmil-iōr,		dissīmil-līmūs.
	grācīlis,	thin,	grācil-iōr,		grācil-līmūs.
	hūmilis,	low,	hūmil-iōr,		hūmil-līmūs.

Obs. The substitution of *rimus* and *limus* for *simus* in these Superlatives is owing to the assimilation of *s* to the preceding liquids *r* and *l*.

III. Adjectives ending in *-dicūs, -ficūs, and -völūs* (derived from the verbs *dico, facio, and völo*) form their Comparatives in *entiōr*, and their Superlatives in *entissimūs* (as if from Positives ending in *ens*): *as,*

<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
mālēdicūs,	slanderous,	mālēdicentiōr,	mālēdicentissimūs.
bēnēficūs,	beneficent,	bēnēficentiōr,	bēnēficentissimūs.
bēnēvolūs,	benevolent,	bēnēvolentiōr,	bēnēvolentissimūs.

Obs. These Comparatives and Superlatives are formed as from the Participles, *dicens, saying; faciens, doing; volens, wishing.*

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb *māgis, more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb *maximē, most*: as, *noxiūs, hurtful, māgis noxiūs, more hurtful, maximē noxiūs, most hurtful.*

Obs. Adjectives ending in *quus* form the *Comp.* and *Sup.* regularly, since the *u* in *qu* is not regarded as a vowel: as, *antiquūs, ancient, antiquiōr, more ancient, antiquissimūs, most ancient.*

§ 66. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Some Adjectives are compared irregularly: as,

<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
bōnūs,	good,	mēliōr,	optimūs
mālūs,	bad,	pējōr.	peccimūs
magnūs,	great,	mājōr,	maximūs
parvūs,	small,	mīnōr,	mīnimūs
multūs,	much,	plūs (pl. plūres, plūra),	plūrimūs
nēquam,	worthless,	nēquiōr,	nēquissimūs
frūgi (indecl.)	frugal,	frūgālior,	frūgālissimūs

Obs. 1. Sometimes one or more of the Degrees of Comparison are wanting: as,

<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
jūvēnīs, young,	jūniōr	(mīnimus natus)
sēnex, old,	sēniōr	(maximus natus)
—	dētēriōr, worse,	dētērimūs
—	ōciōr, swifter,	ōcissimūs
—	priōr, former,	primus, first
nōvūs, new,	—	nōvissimūs.

Obs. 2. Some Comparatives and Superlatives, expressing relations of time and place, either have no Positive (the corresponding Preposition taking its place), or the Positive has a different meaning: as,

<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
(citrā, on this side),	citēriōr, more on this side,	citīmūs, most on this side.
(ultrā, on the farther side),	ultēriōr, farther,	ultīmūs, farthest.
(extrā, on the outside, without),	extēriōr, outer,	extrēmūs, outermost.

Note.—The Adjective *extēri, ae, ā*, signifies *foreign*.

(infrā, below), infēriōr, lower, infimūs (Imus), lowest.

Note.—*Infērus* is used only in *Infērum Mārē, the Lower Sea*, i. e. the sea south and west of Italy, and in the Plural *Infēri, ae, ā* belonging to the lower world.

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
(intră, <i>within</i>), (prăpe, <i>near</i>),	interiör, <i>inner</i> , prăpiör, <i>nearer</i> ,	intimäs, or imäs, <i>innermost</i> , proximäs, <i>nearest</i> .

Note.—In the Positive pröpinquus is used, of which the Comparative pröpinquiör is rare.

(post, <i>after</i>),	posteriör, <i>later</i> ,	postrēmüs, <i>last</i> .
------------------------	---------------------------	--------------------------

Note.—The Positive postērüs signifies *the next* or *following* (in time), and the Substantive postēri, *descendants*.

(suprä, <i>above</i>),	süpēriör, <i>upper</i> ,	suprēmüs, or summus, <i>uppermost</i> .
-------------------------	--------------------------	---

Note.—Süpērüs is used only in Süpērum Märe, *the Upper Sea*, i. e. the Adriatic, and in the Plural Süpēri, ae, ä, *belonging to the upper world*.

CHAPTER XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

§ 67. *Cardinal Numerals* denote numbers simply or absolutely : as, ünüs, *one* ; duo, *two* ; trës, *three*.

§ 68. The first three *Cardinal Numerals* are declined as follows :

	Sing.			1.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ün-üs	ün-ä	ün-am		Ün-i	ün-ae	ün-ä
Gen.	Ün-üs	—	—		Ün-örum	ün-ärum	ün-örum
Dat.	Ün-i	—	—		Ün-is	—	—
Acc.	Ün-am	ün-am	ün-am		Ün-ös	ün-äs	ün-ä
Abl.	Ün-ö	ün-ä	ün-ö		Ün-is	—	—

Obs. *Unus* is used in the Plural with Plural Substantives which have a singular meaning : as, ünä casträ, *one camp* ; ünac aedēs, *one house* ; ünac littērae, *one letter*.

	2.			3.	N.
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	
Nom.	Du-o	du-ae	duo	Trës	träs
Gen.	Du-örum	du-ärum	du-örum	Trium	—
Dat.	Du-öbūs	du-äbūs	du-öbūs	Tribūs	—
Acc.	Du-ös	du-äs	du-o	Trës or träs	träs
Abl.	Du-öbūs	du-äbūs	du-öbūs	Tribūs	—

Obs. *Ambo*, *both*, is declined like duo.

§ 69. The *Cardinal Numerals* from quattuör, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dücenti, *no, ä, two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly

Millē, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable Adjective; but in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive: as, *Nom.* millia, *Gen.* millium, *Dat.* millibūs, *Acc.* millia, *Ab.* millibūs.

Obs. 1. Millē is sometimes, but rarely, used as a Substantive in the Singular: as, millē hōmīnum, *a thousand of men*, the common form being millē hōmīnēs. In the Plural millia is regularly followed by the Genitive: as, triā millia hōmīnum, *three thousand men*. But if smaller Numerals follow, the Genitive is not used: as, triā millia trēcenti hōmīnēs, *three thousand three hundred men*.

Obs. 2. The numbers between 20 and 100 are expressed either by the larger numeral first without *et*, or by the smaller numeral first with *et*: as, viginti ūnūs, or ūnūs et viginti, *twenty-one*. The numbers above 100 always have the larger number first: as, centum et sexāgintā sex, or centum sexāgintā sex, *one hundred and sixty-six*.

Obs. 3. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, 38, 39 have the smaller numeral first with the preposition *dē* to indicate subtraction: as, duodēviginti, undēviginti, duodētrigintā, undētrigintā, &c.

§ 70. **Ordinal Numerals** denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series; and hence they have a relative signification: as, primūs, *first*; sēcundūs or altēr, *second*. They are declined regularly as adjectives; see § 56.

Obs. Dates of years are expressed by annūs with the ordinal numeral: as, annūs millēsīmūs octingentēsīmūs sexāgēsīmūs primūs, *the year 1861*.

§ 71. **Distributive Numerals** denote numbers regarded as constituting groups, each group being treated as a unit; and these Latin numerals may be translated in various ways: as, binī, *two each, two together, two by two*.

Obs. 1. Distributive Numerals are also used to give a plural signification to those Substantives the plural forms of which have otherwise a singular meaning: as, binā castrā, *two camps*; binæ aedēs, *two houses*; binæ littērae, *two letters*. Duo castra would be two forts; duæ aedēs, *two temples*, etc. See § 51.

Obs. 2. **Multiplicative Numerals** end in -plex, *Gen.* plētis (from the verb plēco, *to fold*), and, as their name implies, denote *how many times* any number or quantity is to be taken. Only the following are in use:

1. Simplex, <i>onefold</i>	4. Quadruplex, <i>fourfold</i>	10. Dēcomplex, <i>tenfold</i>
2. Duplex, <i>twofold</i>	5. Quīnuplex, <i>fivefold</i>	100. Centuplex, <i>a hundredfold</i>
3. Triplex, <i>threefold</i>	7. Septēplex, <i>sevenfold</i>	

Obs. 3. **Proportional Numerals** end in -plūs, plā, plum, and denote the number of times that one number or quantity contains another: as, tripla pars, *a part three times as great as another*. Only the following are in use, corresponding to the multiplicatives in the preceding list:

1. Simplūs	4. Quadruplūs	8. Octuplūs
2. Duplūs	5. Quīnuplūs	10. Dēcuplūs
3. Triplūs	7. Septuplūs	100. Centuplūs

§ 72. **Nominal Adverbs** denote the number of times that anything happens or is done: as, sēmēl, *once*; bis, *twice*; tēr, *three times*.

§ 73. NUMERALS.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
I	I	ūnus	primus	singulī	sēmcl.
2	II	duo	secundus <i>or</i> alter	binī	bis.
3	III	trēs	tertius	terni <i>or</i> trinī	ter.
4	IV	quattuor, quattuor	quartus	quaternī	quāter.
5	V	quinquē	quintus	quinī	quinquies.
6	VI	sex	sextus	senī	sexies.
7	VII	septem	septimus	septenī	septies.
8	VIII	octo	octāvus	octonī	octies.
9	IX	novem	nonus	novenī	novies.
10	X	dēcem	dēcimus	denī	dēcies.
11	XI	undēcim	undēcimus	undēnī	undēcies.
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcimus	duōdenī	duōdēcies.
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertius dēcimus	ternī dēnī	terdēcies <i>or</i> trēdēcies.
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcimus	quāternī dēnī	quattuordēcies.
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcimus	quinī dēnī	quindēcies.
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcimus	senī dēnī	sēdēcies.
17	XVII	septēmdēcim	septimus dēcimus	septēnī dēnī	septiesdēcies.
18	XVIII	duōdēviginti	duōdēvicesimus	duōdēvicenī	duōdēvicies.
19	XIX	undēviginti	undēvicesimus	undēvicenī	undēvicies.
20	XX	vīginti	vicesimus	vicenī	vicies.
21	XXI	{ūnus et vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti ūnus	{primus et vicesimus, <i>or</i> vicesimus primus	vicenī singulī	sēmcl et viciēs.
22	XXII	{duo et vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti duo	{alter et vicesimus, <i>or</i> vicesimus alter	vicenī binī	bis et viciēs.

	trēs et vīginti or vīginti trēs	{terthus et vicēsīmus, or vicēsīmus tertius	vicēni terni duōdētrīcēni undētrīcēni trīcēni quadrāgēni quīnquāgēni sexāgēni septuāgēni octogēni nōuāgēni centēni ducentēni trīcentēni quadrīngēni quīngēni sexcentēni septīngēni octīngēni nongēni singulā millia binā millia quīnā millia dēnā millia quīnquāgēnā millia centēnā millia quīngēnā millia dēcies centēnā millia	tēr et vicēs. duōdētrīcēs. undētrīcēs. trīcēs. quadrāgēs. quīnquāgēs. sexāgēs. septuāgēs. octogēs. nōuāgēs. centēs. ducentēs. trīcentēs. quadrīngentēs. quīngentēs. sexcentēs. septīngentēs. octīngentēs. nongentēs. millēs. bīs millēs. quīnquēs millēs. dēcies millēs. quīnquāgēs millēs. centēs millēs. quīngentēs millēs. dēcies centēs millēs.
23	XXIII			
28	XXVIII			
29	XXIX			
30	XXX			
40	XL			
50	L			
60	LX			
70	LXX			
80	LXXX			
90	XC			
100	C			
200	CC			
300	CCC			
400	CCCC			
500	D or I ₅			
600	DC			
700	DCC			
800	DCCC			
900	DCCCC			
1000	M or CI ₅			
2000	MM			
5000	I ₅			
10,000	CC ₁₀			
50,000	I ₅₀			
100,000	CCCI ₅₀₀			
500,000	I ₅₀₀₀			
1,000,000	CCCCI ₅₀₀₀₀			

CHAPTER XV.—THE PRONOUNS.

§ 74. The *Pronouns* are :

1. Personal Pronouns.
2. Reflective Pronouns.
3. Possessive Pronouns.
4. Demonstrative Pronouns.
5. Determinative Pronouns.
6. Relative Pronouns.
7. Interrogative Pronouns.
8. Indefinite Pronouns.
9. Correlative Pronouns.

The Pronouns belonging to several of these classes are properly Adjectives.

§ 75. I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom. <i>Ēgō,</i>	<i>I</i>	Nōs,	<i>we</i>
Gen. <i>Mēi,</i>	<i>of me</i>	Nostrī and nostrum,	<i>of us</i>
Dat. <i>Mīhi,</i>	<i>to or for me</i>	Nōbīs,	<i>to or for us</i>
Acc. <i>Mē,</i>	<i>me</i>	Nōs,	<i>us</i> [<i>from us.</i>
Abl. <i>Mē,</i>	<i>by, with, or from me.</i>	Nōbīs,	<i>by, with, or</i>

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom. <i>Tū,</i>	<i>thou</i>	Vōs,	<i>ye</i>
Gen. <i>Tuī,</i>	<i>of thee</i>	Vestri and vestrum,	<i>of you</i>
Dat. <i>Tibi,</i>	<i>to or for thee</i>	Vōbīs,	<i>to or for you</i>
Acc. <i>Tē,</i>	<i>thee</i>	Vōs,	<i>you</i>
Voc. <i>Tā,</i>	<i>O thou</i>	Vōs,	<i>O ye</i> [<i>you.</i>
Abl. <i>Tē,</i>	<i>by, with, or from thee.</i>	Vōbīs,	<i>by, with, or from</i>

Obs. 1. The Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be strengthened by the addition of the syllables *mēt* or *tē* ; as, *ēgōmēt, I myself* ; *tūā, tūtēmēt, thou thyself* ; *noēmēt, voēmēt, we ourselves, you yourselves.*

Obs. 2. The *Dat. mīhi* is sometimes contracted into *mī.*

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it*, the Determinative Pronoun *is, eā, id* is usually employed. See § 79.

§ 76. II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS.

The Reflective Pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence, and therefore do not require a Nominative case.

The Reflective Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are the same as the First and Second Personal Pronouns, but the Reflective Pronoun of the Third Person is thus declined :

Sing. and Plur.

Nom. (wanting)

Gen. Suī, of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

Dat. Sibi, to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

Acc. Sē or sēsē, himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

Abl. Sē or sēsē, by himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

Obs. Sibi and sē are strengthened by the addition of mēt : as, sībimēt, sēmēt.

§ 77. III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined regularly :

M.	F.	N.	
Meūs,	meā,	meum,	my or mine.
Tuūs,	tuā,	tuum,	thy or thine.
Nostēr,	nostrā,	nostrum,	our.
Vestēr,	vestrā,	vestrum,	your.
Suūs,	suā,	suum,	his, her, its, their.

Obs. 1. The *Voc. Sing. Masc.* of meūs is mi.

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* of the Possessive Pronouns is sometimes strengthened by the syllable *ptē* : as, meoptē ingēniō, *by my own ability*. Mēt is added to suūs : as, suāmēt scēlērā, *his own crimes*.

Obs. 3. A Possessive Pronoun is also formed from the Relative : as, cūjūs, cūjā, cūjum, *whose?*

Obs. 4. From nostēr, vestēr, cūjūs (ā, um) are formed Adjectives ending in ās (Gen. ātis), which signify *belonging to a country* : as,

nostrās,	-ātis,	of our country ;
vestrās,	-ātis,	of your country ;
cūjās,	-ātis,	of what country ?

§ 78. IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These are of the *First, Second, and Third Persons* : namely, hic, haec, hoc, *this near me* ; istē, istā, istūd, *that near you* ; illē, illā, illūd, *that near him, or that yonder*.

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this near me*.

	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Hic	haec	hoc	Hī	hae	haec	
Gen.	Hījūs			Hōrum	hārum	hōrum	
Dat.	Huic			Hīs			
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hoc	Hōs	hās	haec	
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc	Hīs			

2. Istē, istā, istūd, *that near you.*

	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Istē	istā	istūd	Istī	istae	istā	
Gen.	Istius			Istōrum	istārum	istōrum	
Dat.	Istī			Istis			
Acc.	Istum	istam	istūd	Istōs	istās	istā	
Ab.	Istō	istā	istō	Istis			

3. Illē, illā, illūd, *that near him, that yonder.*

	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Illē	illā	illūd	Illī	illae	illā	
Gen.	Illius			Illōrum	illārum	illōrum	
Dat.	Illī			Illis			
Acc.	Illum	illam	illūd	Illōs	illās	illā	
Ab.	Illō	illā	illō	Illis			

Obs. 1. The cases of these three Pronouns are strengthened by the particle *cē* or *c*. This particle is inseparable from several of the cases of *hic*, but may be added to others also: *as, hūjuscē, hīcē, &c.*

Istē with the particle *ce* or *c* is thus declined:

	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Istic	istacc	istuc	Isticē	istacc	istac	
Gen.	Istiuscē			Istōrunc	istārunc	istōrunc	
Dat.	Isti			Istiscē			
Acc.	Istunc	istanc	istuc	Istocē	istascē	istac	
Ab.	Istōc	istāc	istōc	Istiscē			

Illē with the particle *ce* or *c* is declined in the same way: *as, illic, illacc, illuc, &c.*

Obs. 2. *Ecce* or *en, behold*, are sometimes prefixed to *ille* and *iste*: *as, ecclium* or *ellum*; *eccliam*; which were of frequent use in ordinary life.

Obs. 3. Virgil often uses *olli* as a *Dat. Sing.* and *Nom. Pl.* instead of *illi*. The stem was originally *ol*, which appears in *ol-lin, yonder*.

§ 79. V. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

These are: *Is, eā, Id, this, and he, she, that*, referring to words in the context of a sentence; its compound, *Idem, eādem, Idem, the same*; and *ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, self, same*.

1. *Is, eā, Id, this, and he, she, it.*

	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Is	eā	Id	Il	eae	eā	
Gen.	Ejus			Eōrum	eārum	eōrum	
Dat.	Ei			His or eis			
Acc.	Eum	eam	Id	Eos	eās	eā	
Ab.	Eō	eā	eō	His or eis			

2. *Idem, eādem, Idem, the same.*

	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Idem	eādem	Idem	Idem	eādem	eādem	
Gen.	Ejundem			Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem	
Dat.	Eidem			Idem or eādem			
Acc.	Eundem	eādem	Idem	Eodem	eādem	eādem	
Ab.	Eōdem	eādem	eōdem	Idem or eādem			

3. Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, *self, same*.

Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum	Ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
Gen.	Ipsiūs			Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	Ipsī			Ipsīs		
Acc.	Ipsam	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	Ipsīs		

Obs. 1. Ecce is frequently prefixed to *is*: as, *ecce, eccum, eccam, eccos, eccas*.
See § 78, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Ipse compounded with some cases of *is* sometimes loses the *i*: as, *eumpse, eampse, eopse, eapse*; also *rēapse* = *rē ipsā* or *rē eū ipsā*.

§ 80. VI. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quī, quae, quōd, *who or which*.

Sing.			Plur.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Quī	quae	quōd	Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjūs			Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cūī or cūī			Quībūs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quībūs		

Obs. 1. There is an older form in the *Gen. Sing.* *quōiūs*, in the *Dat. Sing.* *quōī*, in the *Abl. Sing.* *quī* (instead of *quō*), and in the *Dat. and Abl. Pl.*, *quīs* (instead of *quōbūs*). The *Abl. quī* is usually found in combination with the preposition *cum*: as, *quicum* instead of *quōcum*.

Obs. 2. From *quī* are formed the two indefinite relatives *quicunque* and *quisquīs*, *whoever, whosoever, whichever, whatever*.

Quicunque, *quaecunque*, *quodcunque* is declined like *quī*, *quae*, *quōd*, with the addition of the indeclinable *cunque*: as, *Gen. cūjuscunque*, &c.

Besides *quisquīs*, the *Neut. quidquid* (or *quicquid*) and *Abl. quōquō* are the only forms in use.

Quicunque is generally an Adjective; *quisquīs* always a Substantive.

Obs. 3. The interrogative *utēr, utrā, utrum, which of the two!* is used as a relative with *cunque*; as, *utercunque, utrācunque, utrumcunque, whichever of the two*.

§ 81. VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quīs or quī, quae, quīd or quōd, *who, which? what?*

Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Quīs or quī	quae	quīd	Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjūs		[or quōd]	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cūī		[or quōd]	Quībūs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quīd	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quībūs		

Obs. 1. *Quīs* is used both as a Substantive and as an Adjective; *quīd* only as a Substantive; *quī* and *quōd* as Adjectives: as, *quīd commisit, what has he done?* *quōd facinūs commisit, what deed has he done?*

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* *quī* is used only in the signification *how* ? as, *quī sit ?* *how does it happen ?*

Obs. 3. *Quis* and *quī* are strengthened by the addition of *nam* in emphatic interrogations : as, *quisnam* or *quīnam*, *quaenam*, *quidnam* or *quodnam*, *who then, what then ?*

Obs. 4. When the question refers to one of two, *ūter*, *ntrū*, *ntrum*, *which of the two*, is used. For the declension of *ūter* and its compounds see § 57, Obs. 2.

Obs. 5. Some derivatives of *quis* are also capable of being used interrogatively ; as, *quantus*, *how great ?* *quālis*, *of what sort ?* *quōt*, *how many ?* See § 83.

§ 82. VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Quis is also used as an Indefinite Pronoun (= *any*), especially after the Conjunctions *si*, *if*, and *nē*, *lest*. Thus, *si quis* is "*if any one*"; *nē quis*, "*lest any one*," "*that no one*."

When *quis* is so used, it changes *quae* to *qua* wherever that form occurs. In other respects it is declined like the Interrogative *quis*.

Obs. 1. *Quid* is used as a Substantive, *quōd* as an Adjective : *quīs* both as a Substantive and as an Adjective, *quī* usually as an Adjective.

Obs. 2. *Ecquis* (*ecquī*), *ecquā* (*ecquae*), *ecquid* (*ecquōd*), *any*, and, strengthened with the particle *nam*, *ecquisnam*, is formed from *quis*, and declined in the same manner.

Obs. 3. *Aliquis*, *aliquid*, *any one, some one* (as Substantive), and *aliquī*, *aliquā*, *aliquid*, *any, some* (as Adjective), are declined like *quīs* (*quī*), except that in the *Nom. Fem. Sing.* and in the *Neutr. Plur.* only the form *aliquā* is used.

Obs. 4. *Quisquam*, *quidquam* (*quicquam*), *any one*, has no Feminine and no Plural. *Gen.* *cūjusquam*, &c. It is used as a Substantive in negative sentences. The corresponding Adjective is *ullus*.

Obs. 5. The following Indefinite Pronouns are declined either like the Relative or the Interrogative ; the Neuters in *quid* being used Substantively, and those in *quōd* Adjectively :—

<i>Quidam</i> ,	<i>quaedam</i> ,	<i>quoddam</i> or <i>quiddam</i> ,	<i>a certain one.</i>
<i>Quispiam</i> ,	<i>quaequam</i> ,	<i>quodpiam</i> or <i>quidpiam</i> ,	<i>any one.</i>
<i>Quivis</i> ,	<i>quaevis</i> ,	<i>quodvis</i> or <i>quidvis</i> ,	<i>any one you please.</i>
<i>Quilibet</i> ,	<i>quaelibet</i> ,	<i>quodlibet</i> or <i>quidlibet</i> ,	<i>any one you please.</i>
<i>Quisque</i> ,	<i>quaeque</i> ,	<i>quodque</i> or <i>quidque</i> ,	<i>every one.</i>
<i>Cuiusque</i> ,	<i>quaeque</i> ,	<i>quodque</i> or <i>quidque</i> ,	<i>Gen.</i>
<i>utiuscujusque</i> ,	<i>&c., each one.</i>		

Obs. 6. The following form the *Gen.* in *ūs* and the *Dat.* in *ī* : *ullus*, *any* ; *nullus*, *none* ; *nonnullus* (*usu.* in *pl.*) *some* ; *alius*, *one, another* ; *alter*, *the one or other of two* ; neuter, (a contraction of *ne uter*), *neither of two*. See § 57. In early Latin and sometimes in the best writers the *Gen.* is also found in *i*, *ae*, and the *Dat.* in *o*, *ae* : as *nulli consilii*, *nullo consilio*, &c. The compound *alterūter* is declined either in both words : as, *Gen.* *alterius utrius* : or only in the latter : as, *Dat.* *alterutrō*.

§ 83. IX. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Correlative Pronouns denote relation to one another by corresponding forms.

Demonstrative.	Relative and Interrogative.	Indefinite Relative.	Indefinite.
Tālis, of such a kind.	Quālis, of such a kind as (rel.); of what kind? (interr.)	Quālescunquē, Quālisquālis, of what kind soever.	Quālislibēt, of any kind you please.
Tantūs, so great.	Quantūs, so great as (rel.); how great? (interr.)	Quantuscunquē, Quantusquantus, how great soever.	Āliquantūs, of a certain, considerable size. Quantuslibēt, Quantusvis, of any size you please.
Tōt (indecl.), so many. Tōtīdem (indecl.), just so many.	Quōt (indecl.), so many as (rel.); how many? (interr.)	Quotcunquē, Quotquōt, how many soever.	Āliquōt (indecl.), some number. Quotlibēt (indecl.) any number you please.

CHAPTER XVI.—THE VERBS.

§ 84. VERBS are of two kinds:

1. TRANSITIVE VERBS, which govern an Accusative Case, representing the object of the action: as, *āmo puērum*, *I love the boy*.

Obs. Certain Deponent Verbs are regarded as Transitives though they govern an Ablative: as, *utor*, *I use*; *vescor*, *I eat, feed on*. These occasionally take an Accusative: see § 315.

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS, which do not govern an Accusative Case: as, *sēdeo*, *I sit*; *curro*, *I run*; *plāceo*, *I please*.

Transitive Verbs have Two VOICES:

(i.) The ACTIVE VOICE, before which the Nominative represents the *actor* (from *āgo*, *actum*, *to do*): as, *pātēr āmāt*, *the father loves*.

(ii.) The PASSIVE VOICE, (from *pātiōr*, *passūs*, *to suffer*), before which the Nominative represents the *object* of the action: as, *pātēr āmātur*, *the father is loved*.

Obs. 1. Some Verbs have a *reflective* sense in the Passive Voice: see § 633.

Obs. 2. Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except in the Third Person Singular Impersonal: see § 234, *Obs.*

DEPONENT VERBS have a Passive form but an Active meaning, and are hence called Deponent, because they lay aside (*deponunt*) the Passive sense. They are either Transitive, Intransitive, or Reflective: as, *hortor militēs, I exhort the soldiers*; *milēs moritur, the soldier is dying*; *glōrior, I glorify myself* (or, more usually, *I boast*).

§ 85. Verbs have Four Moods (Mōdī):

- I. The INDICATIVE MOOD declares a thing positively or unconditionally: as, *āmo, I love*; *scribit, he writes*.
 - II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD is subjoined to another Verb, and states what is conditional, relative, or contingent: as, *scribo ut lēgāt, I write that he may read*; *lēgāt āliquīs, let some one read*.
- Obs.* The Subjunctive Mood however must frequently be translated as an Indicative; owing to the defectiveness of the English Verb.
- III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD commands or entreats: as, *āmā, love*; *nē occidito, thou shalt not kill*.
 - IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD expresses the action denoted by the Verb without reference to person: as, *āmārē, to love*.

§ 86. Besides these four Moods three other forms are derived from and partake of the signification of Verbs.

1. The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective. There are four Participles:

	<i>Active.</i>	
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Āmans,</i>	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Āmātūrus,</i>	<i>about to love.</i>
	<i>Passive.</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Āmātus,</i>	<i>loved.</i>
<i>Gerundive.</i>	<i>Āmandus,</i>	<i>fit to be loved.</i>

2. The SUPINE, which is strictly a Verbal Substantive of the fourth declension, having two cases only, the Accusative and the Ablative: as,

<i>Āmātum,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Āmātū,</i>	<i>in loving, to be loved.</i>

3. The GERUND, which is also a Verbal Substantive, having four Cases: as,

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Āmandī,</i>	<i>of loving</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Āmando,</i>	<i>for loving</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Āmandum,</i>	<i>a loving</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Āmando,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

Obs. The want of a Nominative Case to the Gerund is supplied by the Infinitive Mood.

§ 87. Verbs have six TENSES (Tempöră) or times, three expressing *Imperfect* or unfinished action, and three expressing *Perfect* or finished action.

Imperfect Tenses.

- | | | |
|--------------------|---------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Present.</i> | Ămo, | <i>I love or I am loving.</i> |
| 2. <i>Past.</i> | Ămābam, | <i>I was loving.</i> |
| 3. <i>Future.</i> | Ămābo, | <i>I shall love.</i> |

Obs. The *Present* and *Future* Tenses are frequently Indefinite and not Imperfect. In Active Verbs the *Future* Tense is never Imperfect: *ămābo* never signifies *I shall be loving*. Hence it is better to call these two tenses *Present* and *Future* simply.

Perfect Tenses.

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Present.</i> | Ămāvī, | <i>I have loved.</i> |
| 2. <i>Past.</i> | Ămāvēram, | <i>I had loved.</i> |
| 3. <i>Future.</i> | Ămāvēro, | <i>I shall have loved.</i> |

Obs. The *Present-Perfect* has also the meaning of an Indefinite-Past: thus, *Ămāvī* signifies *I loved* as well as *I have loved*; and in the former sense it is sometimes called the *Aorist*. As the tense has thus two meanings, it is better to call it *Perfect* simply.

§ 88. Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each Number: as,

	Sing.		Plur.
1.	Ămo, <i>I love</i>	|	Ămāmūs, <i>We love</i>
2.	Ămās, <i>thou lovest</i>	|	Ămātis, <i>ye love</i>
3.	Ămāt, <i>he loves.</i>	|	Ămant, <i>they love.</i>

§ 89. Latin Verbs are arranged in four classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the final vowel of the Stem, which is seen in the Imperfect Infinitive Active. (See further, Chap. XX.)

	I. or A Conjugation.	II. or E Conjugation.	III. or Consonant and U Conjugation.	IV. or I Conjugation.
<i>Stem.</i>	ăma,	mōne,	rĕg, mīnu,	audi,
<i>Infini-</i>	ămā-re,	mōnē-re,	rĕg-ĕre, mīnū-ĕre,	andi-rē,
<i>tive.</i>	{ <i>to love.</i>	<i>to advise.</i>	<i>to rule, to lessen.</i>	<i>to hear.</i>

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Imperfect Infinitive, and the Supine, are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

CHAPTER XVII.—THE VERB SUM AND THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

§ 90. The Verb **Sum**, *I am*, is irregular, its inflexions differing in many respects from those of the Verbs belonging to the four Conjugations.

Sum, fūi, fūtūrūs, essē,—to be. Stem : ēs-, fu-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Sum,</i>	<i>I am</i>	<i>Plur. Sūmūs,</i>	<i>We are</i>
<i>Ēs,</i>	<i>thou art</i>	<i>Estis,</i>	<i>ye are</i>
<i>Est,</i>	<i>he is.</i>	<i>Sunt,</i>	<i>they are.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēram,</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>Plur. Ērāmūs,</i>	<i>We were</i>
<i>Ērās,</i>	<i>thou wast</i>	<i>Ērātis,</i>	<i>ye were</i>
<i>Ērāt,</i>	<i>he was.</i>	<i>Ērant,</i>	<i>they were.</i>

3. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēro,</i>	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>Plur. Ērimūs,</i>	<i>We shall be</i>
<i>Ēris,</i>	<i>thou wilt be</i>	<i>Ēritis,</i>	<i>ye will be</i>
<i>Ērit,</i>	<i>he will be.</i>	<i>Ērunt,</i>	<i>they will be.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Fui,</i>	<i>I have been, or</i>	<i>Plur. Fūimūs,</i>	<i>We have been, or</i>
	<i>I was</i>		<i>we were</i>
<i>Fuisti,</i>	<i>thou hast been, or</i>	<i>Fuistis,</i>	<i>ye have been, or</i>
	<i>thou wast</i>		<i>ye were</i>
<i>Fuit,</i>	<i>he has been, or</i>	<i>Fuerunt</i>	<i>they have been, or</i>
	<i>he was.</i>	<i>or fuerō</i>	<i>they were.</i>

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>Plur. Fuērāmūs,</i>	<i>We had been</i>
<i>Fuērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been</i>	<i>Fuērātis,</i>	<i>ye had been</i>
<i>Fuērāt,</i>	<i>he had been.</i>	<i>Fuērant,</i>	<i>they had been.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Fuēro,</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>Plur. Fuērimūs,</i>	<i>We shall have been</i>
<i>Fuēris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	<i>Fuēritis,</i>	<i>ye will have been</i>
<i>Fuērit,</i>	<i>he will have been.</i>	<i>Fuērint,</i>	<i>they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēs,</i>	<i>Be thou.</i>	<i>Plur. Estē,</i>	<i>Be ye.</i>
------------------	-----------------	--------------------	---------------

2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Esto,</i>	<i>Thou shalt be</i>	<i>Plur. Estōtē,</i>	<i>Ye shall be</i>
<i>Esto,</i>	<i>he shall be, or let</i>	<i>Sunto,</i>	<i>they shall be, or let</i>
	<i>him be.</i>		<i>them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Sim,	<i>I may be</i>	P. Simūs,	<i>We may be</i>
Sis,	<i>thou mayst be</i>	Sītis,	<i>ye may be</i>
Sit,	<i>he may be.</i>	Sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Essem or fōrem,	<i>I might be</i>	P. Essēmūs or fōrēmūs,	<i>We might be</i>
Essēs or fōrēs,	<i>thou mightst be</i>	Essētis or fōrētis,	<i>ye might be</i>
Essēt or fōrēt,	<i>he might be.</i>	Essent or fōrent,	<i>they might be.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Fuērim,	<i>I may have been</i>	P. Fuērīmūs,	<i>We may have been</i>
Fuērīs,	<i>thou mayst have been</i>	Fuērītis,	<i>ye may have been</i>
Fuērīt,	<i>he may have been.</i>	Fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Fuissem,	<i>I might</i>	P. Fuissēmūs,	<i>We might</i>
Fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst</i>	Fuissētis,	<i>ye might</i>
Fuissēt,	<i>he might</i>	Fuissent,	<i>they might</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Essē,	<i>to be.</i>
PERFECT.	Fuissē,	<i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE.	Fūtūrum essē, or fōrē,	<i>to be about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.	Fūtūrus, -a, -um,	<i>about to be.</i>
---------	-------------------	---------------------

Obs. 1. The Supine and Gerund are wanting. The Present Participle is found only in Absens from Absum, and Praesens from Praesum.

Obs. 2. The Verb has two Stems, *es* (whence *esum*, afterwards *'sum*, and all the Imperfect Tenses), and *fu* (whence all the Perfect Tenses).

Obs. 3. Like Sum are conjugated its compounds :

Absum,	<i>I am away.</i>	Obsum,	<i>I am in the way.</i>
Adsum,	<i>I am present.</i>	Praesum,	<i>I am before.</i>
Dēsum,	<i>I am wanting.</i>	Prōsum,	<i>I am serviceable.</i>
Insum,	<i>I am in.</i>	Subsum,	<i>I am under.</i>
Intersum,	<i>I am present at.</i>	Sūpersum,	<i>I am surcicing.</i>

Prōsum, however, takes *d* before *e* ; as,

Sing. Prōsum,	Plur. Prōsūmūs,	Past-Imp. Prōdēram.
Prōdēs,	Prōdestis,	Future. Prōdēro.
Prōdest,	Prōsunt.	Imp. Inf. Prōdessē.

Obs. 4. Possum, *I am able*, is a contraction of pōtis (pot)-sum, but is irregular.

§ 91. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Amo, *āmāvī*, *āmātum*, *āmārē*,—to love. Stem : *āma-*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-o,	<i>I love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-āmūs,	<i>We love</i>
Am-ās,	<i>thou lovest</i>	Am-ātīs,	<i>ye love</i>
Am-āt,	<i>he loves.</i>	Am-ant,	<i>they love.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābam,	<i>I was loving</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-ābāmūs,	<i>We were loving</i>
Am-ābās,	<i>thou wast loving</i>	Am-ābātīs,	<i>ye were loving</i>
Am-ābāt,	<i>he was loving.</i>	Am-ābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

3. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-ābīmūs,	<i>We shall love</i>
Am-ābīs,	<i>thou wilt love</i>	Am-ābītīs,	<i>ye will love</i>
Am-ābīt,	<i>he will love.</i>	Am-ābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-āvī,	<i>I have loved, or</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-āvīmūs,	<i>We have loved,</i>
	<i>I loved</i>		<i>or we loved</i>
Am-āvistī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>	Am-āvistīs,	<i>ye have loved,</i>
	<i>or thou lovedst</i>		<i>or ye loved</i>
Am-āvīt,	<i>he has loved, or</i>	Am-āvērunt,	<i>they have loved</i>
	<i>he loved.</i>	or am-āvērē,	<i>or they loved.</i>

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-āvēram,	<i>I had loved</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-āvērāmūs,	<i>We had loved</i>
Am-āvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved</i>	Am-āvērātīs,	<i>ye had loved</i>
Am-āvērāt,	<i>he had loved.</i>	Am-āvērant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-āvēro,	<i>I shall</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-āvērīmūs,	<i>We shall</i>
Am-āvērīs,	<i>thou wilt</i>	Am-āvērītīs,	<i>ye will</i>
Am-āvērīt,	<i>he will</i>	Am-āvērint,	<i>they will</i>
	<i>have</i>		<i>have</i>
	<i>loved.</i>		<i>loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ā,	<i>Love thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-ātē,	<i>Love ye.</i>
--------------------	-------------------	----------------------	-----------------

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-āto,	<i>Thou shalt love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Am-ātōtē,	<i>Ye shall love</i>
Am-āto,	<i>he shall love, or</i>	Am-anto,	<i>they shall love, or</i>
	<i>let him love.</i>		<i>let them love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-em,</i>	<i>I may love</i>	P. <i>Ām-ēmūs,</i>	<i>We may love</i>
<i>Ām-ēs,</i>	<i>thou mayst love</i>	<i>Ām-ētis,</i>	<i>ye may love</i>
<i>Ām-ēt,</i>	<i>he may love.</i>	<i>Ām-ent,</i>	<i>they may love.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-ārem,</i>	<i>I might love</i>	P. <i>Ām-ārēmūs,</i>	<i>We might love</i>
<i>Ām-ārēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst love</i>	<i>Ām-ārētis,</i>	<i>ye might love</i>
<i>Ām-ārēt,</i>	<i>he might love.</i>	<i>Ām-ārent,</i>	<i>they might love</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-āvērim,</i>	<i>I may</i>	P. <i>Ām-āvērimūs,</i>	<i>We may</i>
<i>Ām-āvēris,</i>	<i>thou mayst</i>	<i>Ām-āvēritis,</i>	<i>ye may</i>
<i>Ām-āvērit,</i>	<i>he may</i>	<i>Ām-āvērint,</i>	<i>they may</i>
	<i>have loved.</i>		<i>have loved.</i>

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-āvissem,</i>	<i>I might</i>	P. <i>Ām-āvissēmūs,</i>	<i>We might</i>
<i>Ām-āvissēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst</i>	<i>Ām-āvissētis,</i>	<i>ye might</i>
<i>Ām-āvissēt,</i>	<i>he might</i>	<i>Ām-āvissent,</i>	<i>they might</i>
	<i>have loved.</i>		<i>have loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. <i>Ām-ārē,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
PERFECT. <i>Ām-āvissē,</i>	<i>{ to have</i>
	<i>loved.</i>
FUTURE. <i>Ām-ātūrum</i>	<i>{ to be about</i>
<i>(am, um) essē,</i>	<i>to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. <i>Ām-andī,</i>	<i>of loving</i>
Dat. <i>Ām-ando,</i>	<i>for loving</i>
Acc. <i>Ām-andum,</i>	<i>the loving</i>
Abl. <i>Ām-ando,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Ām-ātum,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Ām-ātū,</i>	<i>to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. <i>Ām-ans, antis,</i>	<i>loving.</i>
FUTURE. <i>Ām-ātūrus, a, um,</i>	<i>about to love.</i>

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *ti* and *re* may be omitted before *s* and *r* *ss*,

āmāvisti becomes *āmasti*
āmāvistis " *āmastis*
āmāvērunt " *āmāvērunt*:
 (but *āmāvērē* does not become
āmārē, which would be con-
 founded with the Imperf. Inf.).

āmāvēram becomes *āmāram*
āmāvēro " *āmāro*
āmāvērim " *āmārim*
āmāvissem " *āmāassem*
āmāvissē " *āmāssē*.

§ 92. SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōnĕo, mōnūi, mōnĭtum, mōnĕrĕ,—to advise. Stem : mōne-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ĕo,	<i>I advise</i>	P. Mōn-ĕmūs,	<i>We advise</i>
Mōn-ĕs,	<i>thou advisest</i>	Mōn-ĕtis,	<i>ye advise</i>
Mōn-ĕt,	<i>he advises.</i>	Mōn-ĕnt,	<i>they advise.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ĕbam,	<i>I was advising</i>	P. Mōn-ĕbāmūs,	<i>We were advising</i>
Mōn-ĕbās,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	Mōn-ĕbātis,	<i>ye were advising</i>
Mōn-ĕbāt,	<i>he was advising.</i>	Mōn-ĕbant,	<i>they were advising.</i>

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ĕbo,	<i>I shall advise</i>	P. Mōn-ĕbimūs,	<i>We shall advise</i>
Mōn-ĕbis,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	Mōn-ĕbitis,	<i>ye will advise</i>
Mōn-ĕbit,	<i>he will advise.</i>	Mōn-ĕbunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūi,	<i>I have advised, or</i> <i>I advised</i>	P. Mōn-ūimūs,	<i>We have advised,</i> <i>or we advised</i>
Mōn-ūistī,	<i>thou hast advised, or</i> <i>thou advisedst</i>	Mōn-ūistis,	<i>ye have advised,</i> <i>or ye advised</i>
Mōn-ūit,	<i>he has advised, or</i> <i>he advised.</i>	Mōn-ūerunt or -ūērĕ,	<i>they have advised,</i> <i>or they advised.</i>

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūĕram,	<i>I had advised</i>	P. Mōn-ūĕrāmūs,	<i>We had advised</i>
Mōn-ūĕrās,	<i>thou hadst advised</i>	Mōn-ūĕrātis,	<i>ye had advised</i>
Mōn-ūĕrāt,	<i>he had advised.</i>	Mōn-ūĕrant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūĕro,	<i>I shall</i>	P. Mōn-ūĕrimūs,	<i>We shall</i>
Mōn-ūĕris,	<i>thou will</i>	Mōn-ūĕritis,	<i>ye will</i>
Mōn-ūĕrīt,	<i>he will</i>	Mōn-ūĕrint,	<i>they will</i>
	<i>have</i>		<i>have</i>
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ĕ,	<i>Advise thou.</i>	P. Mōn-ĕtĕ,	<i>Advise ye.</i>
-----------	---------------------	-------------	-------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ĕto,	<i>Thou shall advise</i>	P. Mōn-ĕtōtō,	<i>Ye shall advise</i>
Mōn-ĕto,	<i>he shall advise, or let</i> <i>him advise.</i>	Mōn-ĕnto,	<i>they shall advise, or</i> <i>let them advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-eam, <i>I may advise</i>	P. Mön-eāmūs, <i>We may advise</i>
Mön-eās, <i>thou mayst advise</i>	Mön-eātīs, <i>ye may advise</i>
Mön-eāt, <i>he may advise.</i>	Mön-eant, <i>they may advise.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ērem, <i>I might advise</i>	P. Mön-ērēmūs, <i>We might advise</i>
Mön-ērēs, <i>thou mightst advise</i>	Mön-ērētīs, <i>ye might advise</i>
Mön-ērēt, <i>he might advise.</i>	Mön-ērent, <i>they might advise.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Mön-uërim, <i>I may</i> } <i>have</i>	P. Mön-uërimūs, <i>We may</i> } <i>have</i>
Mön-uëris, <i>thou mayst</i> } <i>advised.</i>	Mön-uëritīs, <i>ye may</i> } <i>advised.</i>
Mön-uërit, <i>he may</i> }	Mön-uërint, <i>they may</i> }

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Mön-uissēm, <i>I might</i> } <i>have</i>	P. Mön-uissēmūs, <i>We might</i> } <i>have</i>
Mön-uissēs, <i>thou mightst</i> } <i>advised.</i>	Mön-uissētīs, <i>ye might</i> } <i>advised.</i>
Mön-uissēt, <i>he might</i> }	Mön-uissent, <i>they might</i> }

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. Mön-ērē, <i>to advise.</i>
PERFECT. Mön-uissē, { <i>to have</i> <i>advised.</i>
FUTURE. Mön-ītūrum { <i>to be about</i> <i>(am, um) essē,</i> <i>to advise.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. Mön-endī, <i>of advising</i>
Dat. Mön-endo, <i>for advising</i>
Acc. Mön-endum, <i>the advising</i>
Abl. Mön-endo, <i>by advising.</i>

SUPINES.

Mön-ītum, <i>to advise.</i>
Mön-ītū, <i>to be advised.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Mön-ens, entis, <i>advising.</i>
FUTURE. Mön-ītūrūs, a, um, <i>about to advise.</i>

§ 93. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē,—to rule. Stem: rēg-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-o,	I rule	P. Rēg-īmūs,	We rule
Rēg-is,	thou rulest	Rēg-itīs,	ye rule
Rēg-īt,	he rules	Rēg-unt,	they rule

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ēbam,	I was ruling	P. Rēg-ēbāmūs,	We were ruling
Rēg-ēbās,	thou wast ruling	Rēg-ēbātīs,	ye were ruling
Rēg-ēbāt,	he was ruling.	Rēg-ēbant,	they were ruling.

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-am,	I shall rule	P. Rēg-ēmūs,	We shall rule
Rēg-ēs,	thou wilt rule	Rēg-ētīs,	ye will rule
Rēg-ēt,	he will rule.	Rēg-ent,	they will rule

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ī,	I have ruled, or I ruled	P. Rex-īmūs,	We have ruled, or we ruled
Rex-istī,	thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst	Rex-istīs,	ye have ruled, or ye ruled
Rex-īt,	he has ruled, or he ruled.	Rex-ērunt or -ērē,	they have ruled, or they ruled.

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ēram,	I had ruled	P. Rex-ērāmūs,	We had ruled
Rex-ērās,	thou hadst rul	Rex-ērātīs,	ye had ruled
Rex-ērāt,	he had ruled.	Rex-erant,	they had ruled.

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ēro,	I shall have ruled	P. Rex-ērimūs,	We shall have ruled
Rex-ērīs,	thou wilt have ruled	Rex-ēritīs,	ye will have ruled
Rex-ērīt,	he will have ruled.	Rex-erint,	they will have ruled.

IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ě,	Rule thou.	P. Rēg-Itē,	Rule ye
-----------	------------	-------------	---------

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-Itō,	Thou shalt rule	P. Rēg-Itōtē,	Ye shall rule
Rēg-Itō,	he shall rule, or let him rule.	Rēg-unto,	they shall rule, or let them rule.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rĕg-am,	I may rule	P. Rĕg-āmūs,	We may rule.
Rĕg-ās,	thou mayst rule	Rĕg-ātīs,	ye may rule
Rĕg-āt,	he may rule.	Rĕg-ant,	they may rule.

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rĕg-ĕrem,	I might rule	P. Rĕg-ĕrēmūs,	We might rule
Rĕg-ĕrēs,	thou mightst rule	Rĕg-ĕrētīs,	ye might rule
Rĕg-ĕrēt,	he might rule.	Rĕg-ĕrent,	they might rule.

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ĕrim,	I may	P. Rex-ĕrimūs,	We may
Rex-ĕrīs,	thou mayst	Rex-ĕritīs,	ye may
Rex-ĕrīt,	he may	Rex-ĕrint,	they may
	have		have
	ruled.		ruled.

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-issem,	I might	P. Rex-issēmūs,	We might
Rex-issēs,	thou mightst	Rex-issētīs,	ye might
Rex-issēt,	he might	Rex-issent,	they might
	have		have
	ruled.		ruled.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. Rĕg-ĕrĕ,	to rule.
PERFECT. Rex-issĕ,	{ to have
	ruled.
FUTURE. Rect-ūrum	{ to be about
(am, um) essĕ,	to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. Rĕg-endī,	of ruling
Dat. Rĕg-endo,	for ruling
Acc. Rĕg-endum,	the ruling
Abbl. Rĕg-endo,	by ruling.

SUPINES.

Rec-tum,	to rule.
Rec-tū,	to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Rĕg-ens, entis,	ruling.
FUTURE. Rec-tūrūs, a, um,	about
	to rule.

§ 94. FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Andō, audīvī, auditum, audirē,—to hear. Stem: audi-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-io,	<i>I hear</i>	P. Aud-imūs,	<i>We hear</i>
Aud-is,	<i>thou hearest</i>	Aud-itīs,	<i>ye hear</i>
Aud-īt,	<i>he hears.</i>	Aud-iunt,	<i>they hear.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iēbam,	<i>I was hearing</i>	P. Aud-iēbāmūs,	<i>We were hearing</i>
Aud-iēbās,	<i>thou wast hearing</i>	Aud-iēbātīs,	<i>ye were hearing</i>
Aud-iēbāt,	<i>he was hearing.</i>	Aud-iēbant,	<i>they were hearing.</i>

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-iam,	<i>I shall hear</i>	P. Aud-iēmūs,	<i>We shall hear</i>
Aud-iēs,	<i>thou wilt hear</i>	Aud-iētīs,	<i>ye will hear</i>
Aud-iēt,	<i>he will hear.</i>	Aud-ient,	<i>they will hear.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivī,	<i>I have heard, or</i> <i>I heard</i>	P. Aud-ivīmūs,	<i>We have heard,</i> <i>or we heard</i>
Aud-ivistī,	<i>thou hast heard, or</i> <i>thou heardst</i>	Aud-ivistīs,	<i>ye have heard,</i> <i>or ye heard</i>
Aud-ivīt,	<i>he has heard, or</i> <i>he heard.</i>	Aud-ivērunt or -ivērē,	<i>they have heard,</i> <i>or they heard.</i>

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivēram,	<i>I had heard</i>	P. Aud-ivērāmūs,	<i>We had heard</i>
Aud-ivērās,	<i>thou hadst heard</i>	Aud-ivērātīs,	<i>ye had heard</i>
Aud-ivērāt,	<i>he had heard.</i>	Aud-ivērant,	<i>they had heard.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivēro,	<i>I shall</i>	P. Aud-ivērimūs,	<i>We shall</i>
Aud-ivēris,	<i>thou wilt</i>	Aud-ivēritīs,	<i>ye will</i>
Aud-ivērit,	<i>he will</i>	Aud-ivērint,	<i>they will</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-I,	<i>Hear thou.</i>	P. Aud-Itē,	<i>Hear ye.</i>
-----------	-------------------	-------------	-----------------

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-Ito,	<i>Thou shalt hear</i>	P. Aud-Itōtē,	<i>Ye shall hear</i>
Aud-Ito,	<i>he shall hear, or</i>	Aud-iunto,	<i>they shall hear, or</i>
	<i>let him hear.</i>		<i>let them hear.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iam,	<i>I may hear</i>	P. Aud-iāmūs,	<i>We may hear</i>
Aud-iās,	<i>thou mayst hear</i>	Aud-iātis,	<i>ye may hear</i>
Aud-iāt,	<i>he may hear.</i>	Aud-iant,	<i>they may hear.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irem,	<i>I might hear</i>	P. Aud-irēmūs,	<i>We might hear</i>
Aud-irēs,	<i>thou mightst hear</i>	Aud-irētis,	<i>ye might hear</i>
Aud-irēt,	<i>he might hear.</i>	Aud-irent,	<i>they might hear.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivērim,	<i>I may</i>	P. Aud-ivērimūs,	<i>We may</i>
Aud-ivērīs,	<i>thou mayst</i>	Aud-ivēritīs,	<i>ye may</i>
Aud-ivērīt,	<i>he may</i>	Aud-ivērint,	<i>they may</i>

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivissem,	<i>I might</i>	P. Aud-ivissēmūs,	<i>We might</i>
Aud-ivissēs,	<i>thou mightst</i>	Aud-ivissētīs,	<i>ye might</i>
Aud-ivissēt,	<i>he might</i>	Aud-ivissent,	<i>they might</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. Aud-irē,	<i>to hear.</i>
PERFECT. Aud-ivissē,	<i>{ to have</i>
	<i>heard.</i>
FUTURE. Aud-itūrum	<i>{ to be about</i>
(am, um) esse,	<i>{ to hear.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. Aud-iendi,	<i>of hearing</i>
Dat. Aud-iendo,	<i>for hearing</i>
Acc. Aud-iendum,	<i>the hearing</i>
Abl. Aud-iendo,	<i>by hearing.</i>

SUPINES.

Aud-itum,	<i>to hear.</i>
Aud-itū,	<i>to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Aud-iens, ientis,	<i>hearing.</i>
FUTURE. Aud-itūrus, a, um,	<i>about</i>
	<i>to hear.</i>

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *e* is frequently omitted before *c* and *i*. The two *r*'s are often contracted into *i*: as,

audivisti	becomes	audisti	or	audisti
audivistis	"	audistis	or	audistis
audivit	"	audivit		
audiverunt	"	audierunt		
audiveram	"	audieram		
audivēro	"	audiero		

audivērim	becomes	audierim
audivissem	"	audissem
		audissem
audivissē	"	audissē
		audissē

§ 95. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Ămör, ămătūs sum or fui, ămări,—to be loved. Stem : ăma-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Am-ör,	<i>I am loved</i>	P. Am-ămür,	<i>We are loved</i>
Am-ăris or	} <i>thou art loved</i>	Am-ămîni,	<i>ye are loved</i>
ăm-ărē,		Am-antür,	<i>they are loved.</i>
Am-ătür,	<i>he is loved.</i>		

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ăbăr,	{ <i>I was being</i>	P. Am-ăbămür,	{ <i>We were being</i>
Am-ăbăris or	{ <i>loved</i>	Am-ăbămîni,	{ <i>loved</i>
ăm-ăbărē,	{ <i>thou wast being</i>		{ <i>ye were being</i>
	{ <i>loved</i>	Am-ăbantür,	{ <i>loved</i>
Am-ăbătür,	{ <i>he was being</i>		{ <i>they were being</i>
	{ <i>loved.</i>		{ <i>loved.</i>

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Am-ăbör,	<i>I shall be loved</i>	P. Am-ăbîmür,	<i>We shall be loved</i>
Am-ăbăris or	} <i>thou wilt be loved</i>	Am-ăbîmîni,	<i>ye will be loved</i>
ăm-ăbărē,		Am-ăbuntür,	<i>they will be loved.</i>
Am-ăbîtür,	<i>he will be loved.</i>		

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ătūs sum	} <i>I have been loved,</i>	P. Am-ătî sümūs	} <i>We have been</i>
or fui		or fuimūs,	
			{ <i>lored, or were</i>
Am-ătūs ēs	} <i>thou hast been</i>	Am-ătî estis	} <i>ye have been loved,</i>
or fuisti,		or fuistis,	
	{ <i>lored, or wast</i>		{ <i>or were loved</i>
	{ <i>lored</i>		
Am-ătūs est	} <i>he has been loved,</i>	Am-ătî sunt,	} <i>they have been</i>
or fuit,		fuērunt, or	
	{ <i>or was loved.</i>	fuērē,	{ <i>lored, or were</i>
			{ <i>lored.</i>

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ătūs eram	} <i>I had been loved</i>	P. Am-ătî ērāmūs	} <i>We had been</i>
or fueram,		or fuērāmūs,	
			{ <i>lored</i>
Am-ătūs ērās	} <i>thou hadst been</i>	Am-ătî ērātis	} <i>ye had been loved</i>
or fuērās,		or fuērātis,	
	{ <i>lored</i>		{ <i>lored</i>
Am-ătūs ērāt	} <i>he had been loved.</i>	Am-ătî ērant	} <i>they had been</i>
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	
			{ <i>lored.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ătūs éro	} <i>I shall have been</i>	P. Am-ătî ērīmūs	} <i>We shall have</i>
or fuēro,		or fuērīmūs,	
	{ <i>lored</i>		{ <i>been loved</i>
Am-ătūs ērīs	} <i>thou wilt have</i>	Am-ătî ērītis	} <i>ye will have been</i>
or fuērīs,		or fuērītis,	
	{ <i>been loved</i>		{ <i>lored</i>
Am-ătūs ērīt	} <i>he will have been</i>	Am-ătî ērunt	} <i>they will have</i>
or fuērīt,		or fuērint,	
	{ <i>lored.</i>		{ <i>been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ārē,	<i>Be thou loved.</i>	| P. Am-āminī,	<i>Be ye loved.</i>
----------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	---------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

Am-ātōr,	<i>Thou shalt be loved</i>	| P. Am-antor,	<i>They shall be</i>
Am-ātōr,	<i>he shall be loved, or</i>		<i>loved, or let</i>
	<i>let him be loved.</i>		<i>them be loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ēr,	<i>I may be loved</i>	| P. Am-ēmūr,	<i>We may be loved</i>
Am-ērīs or	<i>thou mayst be</i>	Am-ēmīnī,	<i>ye may be loved</i>
ām-ērē,	<i>loved</i>	Am-entūr,	<i>they may be loved.</i>
Am-ētūr,	<i>he may be loved.</i>		

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ārēr,	<i>I might be loved</i>	| P. Am-ārēmūr,	<i>We might be loved</i>
Am-ārērīs or	<i>thou mightst be</i>	Am-ārēmīnī,	<i>ye might be loved</i>
ām-ārērē,	<i>loved</i>	Am-ārentūr,	<i>they might be loved.</i>
Am-ārētūr,	<i>he might be loved.</i>		

3. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs sim	<i>I may have been</i>	| P. Am-ātī simūs,	<i>We may have</i>
or fuērim,	<i>loved</i>	or fuērimūs,	<i>been loved</i>
Am-ātūs sis	<i>thou mayst have</i>	Am-ātī sītīs	<i>ye may have been</i>
or fuērīs,	<i>been loved</i>	or fuērītīs,	<i>loved</i>
Am-ātūs sīt	<i>he may have been</i>	Am-ātī sint	<i>they may have</i>
or fuērīt,	<i>loved.</i>	or fuērīnt,	<i>been loved.</i>

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs essem	<i>I might have been</i>	| P. Am-ātī essēmūs,	<i>We might have</i>
or fuissēm,	<i>loved</i>	or fuissēmūs,	<i>been loved</i>
Am-ātūs essēs	<i>thou mightst have</i>	Am-ātī essētīs,	<i>ye might have</i>
or fuissēs,	<i>been loved</i>	or fuissētīs,	<i>been loved</i>
Am-ātūs essēt	<i>he might have</i>	Am-ātī essent	<i>they might have</i>
or fuissēt,	<i>been loved.</i>	or fuissent,	<i>been loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Am-ārī,	<i>to be loved.</i>
PERFECT.	Am-ātum (am, um) essē or fuissē,	<i>to have been loved.</i>
FUTURE.	Am-ātum irī,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>

Obs. The form *āmātum* in the Future-Infinitive is the Supine; and consequently the same for all genders.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	Am-ātūs (a, um),	<i>loved or having been loved.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	Am-andūs (a, um),	<i>fit to be loved.</i>

§ 96. SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Möněör, mönītūs sum or fui, mönēri,—to be advised. Stem: möne-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mön-eör,	<i>I am advised</i>	P. Mön-ēmūr,	<i>We are advised</i>
Mön-ēris or	} <i>thou art advised</i>	Mön-ēmīnī,	<i>ye are advised</i>
mön-ērē,		Mön-entūr,	<i>they are advised.</i>
Mön-ētūr,	<i>he is advised.</i>		

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ēbār,	{ <i>I was being ad- vised</i>	P. Mön-ēbāmūr,	{ <i>We were being advised</i>
Mön-ēbāris or	} <i>thou wast being advised</i>	Mön-ēbāmīnī,	{ <i>ye were being advised</i>
mön-ēbārē,		Mön-ēbantūr,	{ <i>they were being advised.</i>
Mön-ēbātūr,	{ <i>he was being ad- vised.</i>		

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mön-ēbör,	{ <i>I shall be ad- vised</i>	P. Mön-ēbīmūr,	{ <i>We shall be ad- vised</i>
Mön-ēbēris or	} <i>thou wilt be ad- vised</i>	Mön-ēbīmīnī,	{ <i>ye will be ad- vised</i>
Mön-ēbērē,		Mön-ēbuntūr,	{ <i>they will be ad- vised.</i>
Mön-ēbītūr,	{ <i>he will be ad- vised.</i>		

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītūs sum	{ <i>I have been ad- vised, or was advised</i>	P. Mön-ītī sūmūs	{ <i>We have been ad- vised, or were advised</i>
or fui,		or fuīmūs,	
Mön-ītūs ēs	{ <i>thou hast been ad- vised, or wast advised</i>	Mön-ītī estīs	{ <i>ye have been ad- vised, or were advised</i>
or fuistī,		or fuistīs,	
Mön-ītūs est	{ <i>he has been ad- vised, or was advised.</i>	Mön-ītī sunt,	{ <i>they have been ad- vised, or were advised.</i>
or fuit,		fuērunt, or fuērē,	

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītūs eram	{ <i>I had been ad- vised</i>	P. Mön-ītī ērāmūs	{ <i>We had been ad- vised</i>
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	
Mön-ītūs ērās	{ <i>thou hadst been advised</i>	Mön-ītī ērātīs	{ <i>ye had been ad- vised</i>
or fuērās,		or fuērātīs,	
Mön-ītūs ērāt	{ <i>he had been ad- vised.</i>	Mön-ītī ērant	{ <i>they had been ad- vised.</i>
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītūs ēro	{ <i>I shall have been advised</i>	P. Mön-ītī ērimūs	{ <i>We shall have been advised</i>
or fuēro,		or fuērīmūs,	
Mön-ītūs ēris	{ <i>thou wilt have been advised</i>	Mön-ītī ēritīs	{ <i>ye will have been advised</i>
or fuērīs,		or fuērītīs,	
Mön-ītūs ērit	{ <i>he will have been advised.</i>	Mön-ītī ērunt	{ <i>they will have been advised.</i>
or fuērīt,		or fuērint,	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mön-ērē, Be thou advised. | P. Mön-ēmīnī, Be ye advised.

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mön-ētōr, Thou shalt be advised | P. Mön-entōr, They shall be advised, or let them be advised.
Mön-ētōr, he shall be advised, or let him be advised.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

*S. Mön-eār, { I may be advised
 Mön-eārīs or { thou mayst be
 mön-eārē, { advised
 Mön-eātūr, { he may be advised.*
*P. Mön-eāmūr, { We may be advised
 Mön-eāmīnī, { ye may be advised
 Mön-eantūr, { they may be advised.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

*S. Mön-ērēr, { I might be advised
 Mön-ērērīs or { thou mightst be
 mön-ērērē, { advised
 Mön-ērētūr, { he might be advised.*
*P. Mön-ērēmūr, { We might be advised
 Mön-ērēmīnī, { ye might be advised
 Mön-ērentūr, { they might be advised.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Mön-ītūs sim { I may have been
 or fuērīm, { advised
 Mön-ītūs sīs { thou mayst have
 or fuērīs, { been advised
 Mön-ītūs sīt { he may have been
 or fuērīt, { advised.*
*P. Mön-ītī sīmūs { We may have
 or fuērīmūs, { been advised
 Mön-ītī sītīs { ye may have been
 or fuērītīs, { advised
 Mön-ītī sint { they may have
 or fuērīnt, { been advised.*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

*S. Mön-ītūs essem { I might have been
 or fuissem, { advised
 Mön-ītūs essēs { thou mightst have
 or fuissēs, { been advised
 Mön-ītūs essēt { he might have
 or fuissēt, { been advised.*
*P. Mön-ītī essēmūs { We might have
 or fuissēmūs, { been advised
 Mön-ītī essētīs { ye might have
 or fuissētīs, { been advised
 Mön-ītī essent { they might have
 or fuissent, { been advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Mön-ērī, to be advised.
PERFECT. Mön-ītum (am, um), essē or fuissē, to have been advised.
FUTURE. Mön-ītum irī, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Mön-ītūs (a, um), advised or having been advised.
GERUNDIVE. Mön-enāūs (a, um), fit to be advised.

§ 97. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Rēgōr, rectus sum or fui, rēgī,—to be ruled. Stem: rēg-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ōr,	I am ruled	P. Rēg-īmūr,	We are ruled
Rēg-ēris	or { thou art ruled	Rēg-īmīnī,	ye are ruled
rēg-ērē,		Rēg-untūr,	they are ruled.
Rēg-itūr,	he is ruled.		

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ēbār,	{ I was being ruled	P. Rēg-ēbāmūr,	{ We were being ruled
Rēg-ēbāris or	{ thou wast being ruled	Rēg-ēbāmīnī,	{ ye were being ruled
rēg-ēbārē,		Rēg-ēbantūr,	
Rēg-ēbātūr,	{ he was being ruled.		{ they were being ruled

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-ār,	I shall be ruled	P. Rēg-ēmūr,	We shall be ruled
Rēg-ēris or	{ thou wilt be ruled	Rēg-ēmīnī,	ye will be ruled
rēg-ērē,		Rēg-entūr,	they will be ruled.
Rēg-ētūr,	he will be ruled.		

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs sum	{ I have been ruled, or was ruled	P. Rec-tī sūmūs	{ We have been ruled, or were ruled
or fui,		or fuimūs,	
Rec-tūs ēs or	{ thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled	Rec-tī estis	{ ye have been ruled, or were ruled
fuistī,		or fuistis,	
Rectūs est or	{ he has been ruled, or was ruled.	Rec-tī sunt,	{ they have been ruled, or were ruled.
fuit,		fuērunt, or fuērē,	

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēram	{ I had been ruled	Rec-tī ērāmūs	{ We had been ruled
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	
Rec-tūs ērās	{ thou hadst been ruled	Rec-tī ērātis	{ ye had been ruled
or fuērās,		or fuērātis,	
Rec-tūs ērāt	{ he had been ruled.	Rec-tī ērant	{ they had been ruled.
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēro	{ I shall have been ruled	P. Rec-tī ērimūs	{ We shall have been ruled
or fuēro,		or fuērīmūs,	
Rec-tūs ēris	{ thou wilt have been ruled	Rec-tī ēritis	{ ye will have been ruled
or fuēris,		or fuēritis,	
Rec-tūs ērit	{ he will have been ruled.	Rec-tī ērunt	{ they will have been ruled.
or fuērit,		or fuērint,	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērē, *Be thou ruled.* | P. Rēg-īmīnī, *Be ye ruled.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-ītōr, *Thou shalt be ruled* | P. Rēg-untōr, *They shall be*
 Rēg-ītōr, *he shall be ruled, or* | *ruled, or let*
 let him be ruled. | *them be ruled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ār, *I may be ruled* | P. Rēg-āmūr, *We may be ruled*
 Rēg-āris or } *thou mayst be* | Rēg-āmīnī, *ye may be ruled*
 rēg-ārē, } *ruled*
 Rēg-ātūr, *he may be ruled.* | Rēg-antūr, *they may be ruled.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērēr, *I might be ruled* | P. Rēg-ērēmūr, *We might be ruled*
 Rēg-ērērīs or } *thou mightst be* | Rēg-ērēmīnī, *ye might be ruled*
 rēg-ērērē, } *ruled*
 Rēg-ērētūr, *he might be ruled.* | Rēg-ērentūr, *they might be ruled.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs sim } *I may have been* | P. Rec-tī simūs } *We may have*
 or fuērīm, } *ruled* | or fuērīmūs, } *been ruled*
 Rec-tūs sis } *thou mayst have* | Rec-tī sitīs or } *ye may have been*
 or fuērīs, } *been ruled* | fuērītīs, } *ruled*
 Rec-tūs sit or } *he may have been* | Rec-tī sint or } *they may have*
 fuērīt, } *ruled.* | fuērīnt, } *been ruled.*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs essem } *I might have* | P. Rec-tī essēmūs } *We might have*
 or fuissēm, } *been ruled* | or fuissēmūs, } *been ruled*
 Rec-tūs essēs } *thou mightst have* | Rec-tī essētīs } *ye might have*
 or fuissēs, } *been ruled* | or fuissētīs, } *been ruled*
 Rec-tūs essēt } *he might have* | Rec-tī essent } *they might have*
 or fuissēt, } *been ruled.* | or fuissent, } *been ruled.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Rēg-ī, *to be ruled.*
 PERFECT. Rec-tum (am, um) essē or fuissē, *to have been ruled.*
 FUTURE. Rec-tum irī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Rec-tūs (a, um), *ruled or having been ruled.*
 GERUNDIVE. Rēg-endūs (a, um), *fit to be ruled.*

§ 38. FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audīor, auditus sum or fui, audiri,—to be heard. Stem: audī-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iōr,	I am heard	P. Aud-imūr,	We are heard
Aud-iris or	} thou art heard	Aud-imīni,	ye are heard
aud-irē,		Aud-iantūr,	they are heard.
Aud-itūr,	he is heard.		

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iēbār,	{ I was being heard	P. Aud-iēbāmūr,	{ We were being heard
Aud-iēbāris or	} thou wast being heard	Aud-iēbāmīni,	} ye were being heard
aud-iēbārē,		Aud-iēbantūr,	
Aud-iēbātūr,	{ he was being heard.		

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-iār,	I shall be heard	P. Aud-iēmūr,	We shall be heard
Aud-iēris or	{ thou wilt be heard	Aud-iēmīni,	ye will be heard
aud-iārē,		Aud-ientūr,	they will be heard.
Aud-iētūr	he will be heard.		

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs sum	{ I have been heard, or was heard	P. Aud-iti sūmūs	{ We have been heard, or were heard
or fui,		or fuimūs,	
Aud-itūs es	{ thou hast been heard, or wast heard	Aud-iti estis	{ ye have been heard, or were heard
or fuisti,		or fuistis,	
Aud-itūs est	{ he has been heard, or was heard.	Aud-iti sunt,	{ they have been heard, or were heard.
or fuit,		fuērunt, or fuērē,	

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs ēram	{ I had been heard	P. Aud-iti ērāmūs	{ We had been heard
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	
Aud-itūs ēras	{ thou hadst been heard	Aud-iti ērātis	{ ye had been heard
or fuērās,		or fuērātis,	
Aud-itūs ērāt	{ he had been heard.	Aud-iti ērant	{ they had been heard.
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs ēro	{ I shall have been heard	P. Aud-iti ērimūs	{ We shall have been heard
or fuēro,		or fuērimūs,	
Aud-itūs ēris	{ thou wilt have been heard	Aud-iti ēritis	{ ye will have been heard
or fuēris,		or fuēritis,	
Aud-itūs ērit	{ he will have been heard.	Aud-iti ērunt	{ they will have been heard.
or fuērīt,		or fuērīnt,	

PERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-irē, *Be thou heard.* | P. Aud-iminī, *Be ye heard.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-itōr, *Thou shalt be heard* | P. Aud-iuntōr, *They shall be heard,*
 Aud-itōr, *he shall be heard, or* | *or let them be*
 let him be heard. | *heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iār, *I may be heard* | P. Aud-iāmūr, *We may be heard*
 Aud-iāris or } *thou mayst be* | Aud-iāmīnī, *ye may be heard*
 aud-iārē, } *heard*
 Aud-iātūr, *he may be heard.* | Aud-iantūr, *they may be heard.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irēr, *I might be heard* | P. Aud-irēmūr, *We might be heard*
 Aud-irēris or } *thou mightst be* | Aud-irēmīnī, *ye might be heard*
 aud-irērē, } *heard*
 Aud-irētūr, *he might be heard.* | Aud-irentūr, *they might be heard.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs sim } *I may have been* | P. Aud-itī simūs } *We may have*
 or fuērīm, } *heard* | or fuērīmūs, } *been heard*
 Aud-itūs sis } *thou mayst have* | Aud-itī sitīs } *ye may have been*
 or fuērīs, } *been heard* | or fuērītīs, } *heard*
 Aud-itūs sīt } *he may have been* | Aud-itī sint } *they may have*
 or fuērīt, } *heard.* | or fuērīnt, } *been heard.*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs essem } *I might have been* | P. Aud-itī essēmūs } *We might have*
 or fuissēm, } *heard* | or fuissēmūs, } *been heard*
 Aud-itūs essēs } *thou mightst have* | Aud-itī essētīs } *ye might have*
 or fuissēs, } *been heard* | or fuissētīs, } *been heard*
 Aud-itūs essēt } *he might have* | Aud-itī essent } *they might have*
 or fuissēt, } *been heard.* | or fuissent, } *been heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Aud-irī, *to be heard.*
 PERFECT. Aud-itum (am, um) essē or fuissē, *to have been heard.*
 FUTURE. Aud-itum irī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Aud-itūs (a, um), *heard or having been heard.*
 GERUNDIVE. Aud-iendūs (a, um) *fit to be heard.*

§ 99. EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

Examples for Conjugation like *amo*. (See also § 149.)

accūso, <i>I accuse.</i>	hōnōro, <i>I honour.</i>	opto, <i>I wish.</i>
āro, <i>I plough.</i>	laudo, <i>I praise.</i>	orno, <i>I adorn.</i>
clāmo, <i>I cry out.</i>	libēro, <i>I set free.</i>	parō, <i>I prepare.</i>
habito, <i>I dwell.</i>	nōmīno, <i>I name.</i>	rōgo, <i>I ask.</i>

Examples for Conjugation like *moneo*. (See also § 150.)

adhībeo, <i>I apply.</i>	hābeo, <i>I have.</i>	plāceo, <i>I please.</i>
cōhibeo, <i>I restrain.</i>	mēreo, <i>I deserve.</i>	præbeo, <i>I present.</i>
dūbeo, <i>I owe.</i>	nōceo, <i>I injure.</i>	prōhibeo, <i>I prevent.</i>
exerceo, <i>I exercise.</i>	pāreo, <i>I obey.</i>	terreo, <i>I frighten.</i>

Examples for Conjugation like *rēgo*. (See also §§ 157, sq.)

cingo, <i>I gird.</i>	dūco, <i>I lead.</i>	plango, <i>I beat.</i>	tēgo, <i>I cover.</i>
dīco, <i>I say.</i>	jungo, <i>I join.</i>	sūgo, <i>I suck.</i>	tingo, <i>I dye.</i>

Obs. Dīco, *speak*, dūco, *lead*, have etc, dūc, in the Singular Imperative Present Active. See § 106, *Obs.* (p. 69).

Examples for Conjugation like *audio*. (See also § 163.)

custōlio, <i>I guard.</i>	finio, <i>I end.</i>	mūnio, <i>I fortify.</i>
dormio, <i>I sleep.</i>	impēdio, <i>I hinder.</i>	nūtrio, <i>I nourish.</i>
ēūlio, <i>I train.</i>	mollio, <i>I soften.</i>	pūnio, <i>I punish.</i>

§ 100. THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I (in the Imperfect Tenses).

Cāpio, cēpī, captum, cāpērē,—to take. Stem: cāpi-, cāp-

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-io, <i>I take</i>	Cāp-īmūs, <i>We take</i>
	Cāp-īs, <i>thou takest</i>	Cāp-ītīs, <i>ye take</i>
	Cāp-īt, <i>he takes.</i>	Cāp-iunt, <i>they take.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	Cāp-iēbam, <i>I was taking,</i>	like aud-iēbam.
<i>Future.</i>	Cāp-iam, <i>I shall take,</i>	„ aud-iam.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-iam, <i>I may take,</i>	like aud-iam.
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	Cāp-ērem, <i>I might take,</i>	„ rēg-ērem.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-ē, <i>take thou,</i>	like rēg-ē.
<i>Future.</i>	Cāp-īto, <i>thou shalt take,</i>	„ rēg-īto.
	Cāp-iunto, <i>they shall take,</i>	„ aud-iunto.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect. Căp-ěrě, to take, like rěg-ěrě.

PARTICIPLE.

Imperfect. Căp-iens, taking, like aud-iens.

GERUND.

Căp-iendi, of taking, like aud-iendi.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-iōr,	<i>I am taken</i>	Căp-īmūr,	<i>We are taken</i>
	Căp-ēris	<i>thou art</i>	Căp-īmīnī,	<i>ye are taken</i>
	or -ērě,	<i>taken</i>		
	Căp-ītūr,	<i>he is taken.</i>	Căp-iuntār,	<i>they are taken.</i>

Past-Imperf. Căp-iēbār, *I was being taken,* like aud-iēbār.

Future. Căp-iār, *I shall be taken,* „ aud-iār.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Căp-iār, *I may be taken,* like aud-iār.

Past-Imperf. Căp-ērēr, *I might be taken,* „ rěg-ērēr.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Căp-ěrě, *be thou taken* like rěg-ěrě.

Future. Căp-ītōr, *thou shalt be taken,* „ rěg-ītōr.

Căp-iuntor, *they shall be taken,* „ aud-iuntōr

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect. Căp-ī, to be taken, „ rěg-ī.

Obs. 1. The Tenses derived from the Perfect and Supine are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular: cēp-I, cēp-eram, cēp-ero, &c.; capturus sim, captus sum, &c.

Obs. 2. The *i* in the Imperf. Tenses is dropped before *i* and *er*. In the Imperative the final *i* is changed into *e*.

Obs. 3. The Verbs conjugated like cāpio are:

fācio,	fēcī,	factum,	fācērě,	<i>make.</i>
jācio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jācērě,	<i>throw.</i>
fūgio,	fūgī,	fūgitum,	fūgērě,	<i>flee.</i>
fōdio,	fōdī,	fossum,	fōdērě,	<i>dig.</i>
rāpio,	rāpūī,	raptum,	rāpērě,	<i>seize.</i>
pārio,	pēpērī,	partum,	pārērě,	<i>bring forth.</i>
quātio,	(no perfect),	quassum,	quātērě,	<i>shake.</i>
cūpio,	cūpīvī,	cūpitum,	cūpērě,	<i>desire.</i>
sāpio,	sāpīvī,		sāpērě,	<i>taste.</i>
lācio,			lācērě,	<i>draw</i>
spēcio,			spēcērě,	<i>look.</i>

Also the Deponent Verbs:

grādīōr,	gressūs sum,	grādī,	<i>walk.</i>
mōriōr,	mortūūs sum,	mōrī,	<i>die.</i>
pātīōr,	passūs sum,	pātī,	<i>suffer.</i>

Obs. 4. Orior, ortus sum, ōrīrī, to rise, follows the Fourth Conjugation in the Infinitive Mood, ōrīrī, Imperf. Subj. ōrīrer, less frequently ōrērer, Future Part. ōrītūrus. So also, mōrītūrus, from mōrior.

§ 101. I. Hortör, hortätüs sum, hortäri, to exhort, like ämör.

II. Vêreör, vëritüs sum, vërerî, to fear, „ môneör.

INDICATIVE MOOD.	I.			II.		
	Present.	Hortör, Hort-ärîs (ärê), &c.	I exhort. } thou exhortest, &c.	Vêr-eör, Vêr-ërîs (êrê), &c.	I fear. } thou fearest, &c.	
	Past-Imp.	Hort-äbär,	I was exhorting.	Vêr-ëbär,	I was fearing.	
	Future.	Hort-äbör,	I shall exhort.	Vêr-ëbör,	I shall fear.	
	Perfect.	Hort-ätüs sum,	I have exhorted, } or I exhorted.	Vêr-itüs sum,	I have feared, } or I feared.	
	Past-Perf.	Hort-ätüs ëram,	I had exhorted.	Vêr-itüs ëram,	I had feared.	
	Fut.-Perf.	Hort-ätüs ëro,	I shall have ex- } hort.	Vêr-itüs ëro,	I shall have } feared.	
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	Present.	Hort-ër,	I may exhort.	Vêr-eär,	I may fear.	
	Past-Imp.	Hort-ärër,	I might exhort.	Vêr-ërër,	I might fear.	
	Perfect.	Hort-ätüs sim,	I may have ex- } hort.	Vêr-itüs sim,	I may have } feared.	
	Past-Perf.	Hort-ätüs essem,	I might have } exhorted.	Vêr-itüs ësem,	I might have } feared.	
IMPERATIVE.	Present.	Hort-ärê,	Exhort thou.	Vêr-êrê,	Fear thou.	
	Future.	Hort-ätör,	{ thou shalt ex- } hort.	Vêr-ëtör,	thou shalt fear.	
INFINITIVE.	Imperf.	Hort-ärî,	to exhort.	Vêr-êrî,	to fear.	
	Perfect.	Hort-ätum essê,	{ to have ex- } hort.	Vêr-itum essê,	{ to have feared.	
	Future.	Hort-ätürum essê,	{ to be about to } exhort.	Vêr-itürum essê,	{ to be about to } fear.	
PARTICIPLES.	Imperf.	Hort-ans,	exhorting.	Vêr-ens,	fearing.	
	Future.	Hort-ätürüs,	about to exhort.	Vêr-itürüs,	about to fear.	
	Perfect.	Hort-ätüs,	having exhorted.	Vêr-itüs,	having feared.	
	Gerundive.	Hort-andüs,	{ fit to be ex- } hort.	Vêr-endüs,	fit to be feared.	
SUPINES.		Hort-ätum, Hort-ätü,	to exhort. to be exhorted.	Vêr-itum, Vêr-itü,	to fear. to be feared.	
GERUND.		Hort-andî,	of exhorting.	Vêr-endî,	of fearing.	

Examples for Conjugation.

I. Cönör, I endeavour.
Cönsölör, I console.
Mirör, I wonder.

II. Intueör, I behold.
Mêreör, I deserve.
Polliceör, I promise.

Obs. 1. Besides the Passive forms, the Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle with an active meaning: as, hortätüs, having exhorted.

The Gerundive and Perfect Participle (the latter only in certain verbs), are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning: as, hortandüs, fit to be exhorted; adeptus, having obtained, or having been obtained. See

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, *to speak*, like rēgōr.

IV. Partiōr, partitūs sum, partīrī, *to divide*, „ audiōr.

III.			IV.			INDICATIVE MOOD.
Present.	Lōquōr,	<i>I speak.</i>	Partiōr,	<i>I divide.</i>		
	Lōqu-ērīs,	} <i>thou speakest,</i>	Part-irīs,	} <i>thou dividest,</i>		
	(ērē),		(irē),			
	&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.		
1st-Imp.	Lōqu-ēbār,	<i>I was speaking.</i>	Part-iebār,	<i>I was dividing.</i>		
Future.	Lōqu-ār,	<i>I shall speak.</i>	Part-iār,	<i>I shall divide.</i>		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs sum,	} <i>I have spoken,</i> or <i>I spoke.</i>	Part-itūs sum,	} <i>I have divided,</i> or <i>I divided.</i>		
1st-Perf.	Lōcū-tūs eram,		Part-itūs eram,			
2nd-Perf.	Lōcū-tūs ero,	} <i>I shall have spoken.</i>	Part-itūs ero,	} <i>I shall have divided.</i>		
Present.	Lōqu-ār,	<i>I may speak.</i>	Part-iār,	<i>I may divide.</i>		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
1st-Imp.	Lōqu-ērēr,	<i>I might speak.</i>	Part-irēr,	<i>I might divide.</i>		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs sim,	} <i>I may have spoken.</i>	Part-itūs sim,	} <i>I may have divided.</i>		
1st-Perf.	Lōcū-tūs essem,		Part-itūs essem,			
Present.	Lōqu-ērē,	<i>Speak thou.</i>	Part-irē,	<i>Divide thou.</i>		IMPERATIVE.
Future.	Lōqu-itōr,	} <i>thou shalt speak.</i>	Part-itōr,	} <i>thou shalt divide.</i>		
Perfect.	Lōqu-i,	<i>to speak.</i>	Part-iri,	<i>to divide.</i>		
Future.	Lōcū-tum essē,	} <i>to have spoken.</i>	Part-utum essē.	} <i>to have divided.</i>		INFINITIVE.
	Lōcū-tūrum essē,		Part-itūrum essē,			
Perfect.	Lōqu-ens,	<i>speaking.</i>	Part-iens,	<i>dividing.</i>		
Future.	Lōcū-tūrus,	<i>about to speak.</i>	Part-itūrus,	<i>about to divide.</i>		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs,	<i>having spoken.</i>	Part-itūs,	<i>having divided.</i>		PARTICIPLES.
Gerundive.	Lōqu-endūs,	<i>fit to be spoken.</i>	Part-icndūs,	<i>fit to be divided.</i>		
SUPINES.	Lōcū-tum,	<i>to speak.</i>	Part-utum,	<i>to divide.</i>		
	Lōcū-tū,	<i>to be spoken.</i>	Part-itū,	<i>to be divided.</i>		
GERUND.	Lōqu-endi,	<i>of speaking.</i>	Part-iendi,	<i>of dividing.</i>		

Examples for Conjugation.

III. Fruōr, fruītūs sum,	<i>I enjoy.</i>	IV. Blandiōr,	<i>I flatter.</i>
Fungōr, functūs sum,	<i>I perform.</i>	Largiōr,	<i>I give money.</i>
Lābōr, lapsūs sum,	<i>I slip.</i>	Mentiōr,	<i>I lie.</i>

§ 523 for a list of the Principal Perfect Participles of Deponent Verbs used in a Passive sense. (See §§ 169-172.)

Obs. 2. Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.

Obs. 3. A few Verbs have a Passive form with an Active meaning in the Perfect Tenses only, and are therefore called *Semi-Deponents* or *Neuter-Passives*: see § 521.

CHAPTER XIX.—PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 102. I. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Future Participle in *urus* with the Verb *sum*, and expresses intention or futurity.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amātūrus sum,</i>	<i>I am about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amātūrus eram,</i>	<i>I was about to love.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Amātūrus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fui,</i>	<i>I have been or was about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fueram,</i>	<i>I had been about to love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amātūrus sim,</i>	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amātūrus essem,</i>	<i>I might be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fuërim,</i>	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fuisset,</i>	<i>I might have been about to love.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrum essë,</i>	<i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrum fuissë,</i>	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

II. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Gerundivo with the Verb *sum*, and expresses that which is to be, should be, or ought to be done.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amandus sum,</i>	<i>I am to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amandus eram,</i>	<i>I was to be loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Amandus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fui,</i>	<i>I have been or was to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fueram,</i>	<i>I had been to be loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amandus sim,</i>	<i>I may be to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amandus essem,</i>	<i>I might be to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fuërim,</i>	<i>I may have been to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fuisset,</i>	<i>I might have been to be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Amandum essë,</i>	<i>to be fit to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandum fuissë,</i>	<i>to have been fit to be loved.</i>

Obs. 1. This passive conjugation occurs only in transitive verbs. — In other verbs the impersonal form is used, and the agent is represented by the Dative: as, *mhi eundum est*, *I must go*; *obliscendum tibi injuriarum essë censeo*, *I am of opinion that you ought to forget your wrongs*.

Obs. 2. The translations above given are intended rather to represent the meaning of the separate words than the ordinary signification of the combinations, which will be fully explained in the Syntax.

CHAPTER XX.—STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND PECULIAR FORMS.

§ 103. **STEMS.**—The *Stems* of Verbs of the First Conjugation end in *a*: *as*, *āma*, *love*.

The *Stems* of Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *e*: *as*, *mōne*, *advise*.

The *Stems* of Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in a *consonant* or *u*: *as*, *rēg*, *rule*; *mīnu*, *lessen*.

The *Stems* of Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation end in *i*: *as*, *audi*, *hear*.

§ 104. **UNCONTRACTED AND CONTRACTED VERBS.**—In the Third Conjugation the Terminations of the Persons and of the Tenses are affixed without any change in the Stem; but in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations the Vowel of the Stem is frequently contracted with the Vowels of the Terminations. Hence the Third Conjugation is *Uncontracted*, the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are *Contracted*. This will be seen from the Present Indicative Active.

III CONJUGATION.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. rēg-o	mīnu-o
	2. rēg-īs	mīnu-īs
	3. rēg-īt	mīnu-īt
<i>Plur.</i>	1. rēg-īmūs	mīnu-īmūs
	2. rēg-ītīs	mīnu-ītīs
	3. rēg-unt	mīnu-unt

I CONJUGATION.

II CONJUGATION.

IV CONJUGATION.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. āma-o = āmo	mōne-o	audi-o
	2. āma-is = āmās	mōne-is = mōnēs	audi-īs = audīs
	3. āma-īt = āmāt	mōne-īt = mōnēt	audi-īt = audīt
<i>Plur.</i>	1. āma-īmūs = āmāmūs	mōne-īmūs = mōnēmūs	audi-īmūs = audīmūs
	2. āma-ītīs = āmātīs	mōne-ītīs = mōnētīs	audi-ītīs = auditīs
	3. āma-unt = āmant	mōne-unt = mōnent	audi-unt

§ 105. **PERSONAL TERMINATIONS.**—The Personal Terminations are the personal pronouns more or less corrupted. The regular terminations in the Active Voice are in their simplest form:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	-m	-mus	as in	rēgēba-m	rēgēbā-mūs
2.	-s	-tis	„	rēgēba-s	rēgēbā-tīs
3.	-t	-nt	„	rēgēbā-t	rēgēbā-nt.

Or with a vowel prefixed :

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	o-(m)	ī-mūs	as in	rēg-o	rēg-ī-mūs
2.	ī-s	ī-tis	„	rēg-i-s	rēg-ī-tis
3.	ī-t	u-nt	„	rēg-i-t	rēg-u-nt.

Obs. I. *Active Voice*.—1. The -m is the 1st personal pronoun, which appears in mēi, mīhi, mē. It disappears in the 1st person singular of the present indicative of all verbs except sum, *I am*, inquam, *I say*. In the plural -mus the letter s is the sign of plurality.

2. The -s is the 2nd personal pronoun, and represents the t in tu, tui, tibi, te (Gr. σὺ). In the 2nd person of the perfect indicative (rexī-ti) the t appears. Also in the plural -tis the t represents the 2nd person, the s being the sign of plurality, as in the 1st person.

3. The -t is the 3rd personal pronoun, and is the same root as appears in the Greek article, and in the English pronouns *this* and *that*. In the plural -nt the letter n is the sign of plurality. The letter n, as well as s, is a sign of plurality in other languages akin to the Latin. Thus in English we have ox-en as well as dog-s.

II. *Passive Voice*. 1. The 1st personal termination singular always disappears before -r, the sign of the passive: as, rēgēbā-r from rēgēba-m; rēgī-r from rēga-m; rēgērē-r from rēgēre-m, &c. In the plural in like manner s, the sign of plurality, disappears before the r: as, rēgēbāmu-r from rēgēbāmus; rēgāmu-r from rēgāmus; rēgērēmū-r from rēgērēmūs.

2. The 2nd personal termination singular is -ris (more rarely -re), in which r represents the s of the Active, and is the sign of the Passive: as, āmā-r-is from āma-s, āmābū-r-is from āmāba-s.

NOTE.—On the interchange of s and r we have examples in crūs, crūr-is, instead of crus-is, and similar words. (See § 23, Obs. 1, p. 15.)

The 2nd personal termination plural is -lmīnī or -mīnī (as rēg-lmīnī, āmū-mīnī), and has no connexion with the singular termination. It is, perhaps, a participial termination (Gr. μενον).

3. The 3rd personal termination, singular and plural, is formed from the Active Voice by adding -ur, the sign of the Passive: as, rēgīt-ūr, rēgunt-ūr, from rēgīt, rēgunt; rēgēbāt-ūr, rēgēbant-ūr, from rēgēbāt, rēgēbant.

§ 106. FORMATION OF THE IMPERFECT TENSES.—1. *Present Tenses*.—The *Indicative* and *Imperative* are formed by adding the personal terminations to the stem without any tense suffix. In the *Imperative* the s, the termination of the 2nd person, is dropped, and e alone remains: as, rēg-ē, rēg-ītē: in the contracted conjugations, āmā = āma-ē; mōnē = mōne-ē; audi = audi-ē.

The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix -a: as, rēg-a-m, mōne-a-m, audi-a-m. In the 1st conjugation the a of the stem is contracted with the a of the tense suffix into e: as, āma-a-m = āme-m. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix ērē: as, rēg-ērē in the contracted conjugations, āmā-rē = āma-ērē; mōnē-ro = mōne-ērē; audi-rē = audi-ērē. The *Participle* has the suffix -ens (stem -ent): as, rēg-ens, audi-

ens: in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, āma-ns = āma-ens; mōne-ns = mōne-ens.

Obs. The *e* of the Imperative is dropped in *dīe*, *speak*, from *dīeo*; *dūe*, *lead*, from *dūeo*; *fāe*, *make*, from *fācio*; *fer*, *bring*, from *fero*.

2. *Past-Imperfect Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *ēba*: as, *rēg-ēba-m*, and *audi-ēba-m*; in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, *āmā-ba-m* = *āma-ēba-m*; *mōnē-ba-m* = *mōne-ēba-m*. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *ēre*: as, *rēg-ēre-m*; in the contracted conjugations *āmā-re-m* = *āma-ēre-m*; *mōnē-re-m* = *mōne-ēre-m*; *audi-re-m* = *audi-ēre-m*.

Obs. The suffix *eba*, originally *ba*, is the same as *ru*, the root of *fu-i*.

3. *Future Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *b* in the 1st and 2nd conjugations: as, *āmā-b-o*; *mōnē-b-o*; and the tense suffix *a* or *e* in the 3rd and 4th conjugations, *a* being used in the first person, and *e* in all the other persons: as, *rēg-a-m*, *rēg-ē-s*, *rēg-ē-t*, &c.; *audi-a-m*, *audi-ē-s*, *audi-ē-t*, &c.

Obs. The suffix *b* is also the same as *ru*, which has a future meaning in *fore*. The futures in the 3rd and 4th conjugations are allied to the *Subjunctive*; but these conjugations, in all probability, originally formed their futures in *b*: the forms *ībo* and *scībo*, from *eo* and *scīo*, were in common use.

The annexed Table exhibits the above Tense Terminations with the Contractions:

ACTIVE VOICE.

	III.	I.	II.	IV.
INDICATIVE.				
<i>Present.</i>	rēg-o	āma-o = āmo	mōne-o	audi-o
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	rēg-ēbam	āma-ēbam = āmābam	mōne-ēbam = mōnēbam	audi-ēbam
<i>Future.</i>	rēg-am	āmā-lo	mōnē-bo	audi-am
SUBJUNCTIVE.				
<i>Present.</i>	rēg-am	āma-am = āmēm	mōne-am	audi-am
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	rēg-ērem	āma-ērem = āmārem	mōne-ērem = mōnērem	audi-ērem = audīrem
IMPERATIVE.				
<i>Present.</i>	rēg-ē	āma-ē = āmā	mōne-ē = mōnē	audi-ē = audī
<i>Future.</i>	rēg-īto	āma-īto = āmāto	mōne-īto = mōnēto	audi-īto = audīto
INFINITIVE.	rēg-ērē -	āma-ērē = āmārē	mōne-ērē = mōnērē	audi-ērē = audīrē
PARTICIPLE.	rēg-ens	āma-ens = āmāns	mōne-ens = mōnēns	audi-ens

PASSIVE VOICE.

	III.	I.	II.	IV.
INDICATIVE. <i>Present.</i>	rēg-ūr	āma-ūr = āmōr	mōne-ūr	audi-ūr
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	rēg-ēbār	āma-ēbār = āmābār	mōne-ēbār = mōnēbar	audi-ēbār
<i>Future.</i>	rēg-ār	āmā-bor	mōnē-bōr	audi-ār
SUBJUNCTIVE. <i>Present.</i>	rēg-ār	āma-ār = āmēr	mōne-ār	audi-ār
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	rēg-ērēr	āma-ērēr = āmārēr	mōne-ērēr = mōnērēr	audi-ērēr = audīrēr
IMPERATIVE. <i>Present.</i>	rēg-ērō'	āma-ērō = āmārō	mōne-ērō = mōnērō	audi-ērō = audīrō
<i>Future.</i>	rēg-itōr	āma-itōr = āmātōr	mōne-itōr = mōnētōr	audi-itōr = auditōr
INFINITIVE.	rēg-i	āma-ēri = āmāi	mōne-ēri = mōnēri	audi-ēri = audiri
GERUNDIVE.	rēg-endūs	āma-endūs = āmāndūs	mōne-endūs = mōnendūs	audi-endūs

Obs. The Stems of some Verbs are strengthened in the Imperfect Tenses in the following ways:—

1. By the insertion of *n* or *m* before the final consonant: as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.	
scīd	scīndo scīndēbam scīndam	scīdī	tear
tīg	tango tangēbam tangam	tīg-llgī	touch.
rūp	rumpo rumpēbam rumpam	rūpī	burst.

n is inserted before the dental and guttural letters: as, scīndo, frango;
m before the labial letters: as, cumbo.

2. By the insertion of *n* after the final consonant: as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.	
spēr	spērno spērñēbam spērnam	spēr-vī	despise.
rēr	cerno cernēbam cernam	crēr-vī	distinguish.
pōs	pōno pōnēbam pōnam	pōs-uī	place.

Pōno is instead of pos-no, the *s* being dropped before *n*.

3. By adding *t* or doubling the final consonant : as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.	
fleo	flecto flectebam flectam	flexi	bend.
pōl	pello pellēbam pellam	pē-pūll	drive.

4. By reduplication, that is, by prefixing the initial consonant with the connecting vowel *i* : as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.	
gēn	gi-gno gi-gnēbam gi-gnam	gēn-ul	produce.
sta	si-sto si-stēbam si-stam	stī-tī	cause to stand.

Obs. Gigno is a contraction for gi-gno.

5. By adding *sc*, which is the termination of the inceptive verbs. See § 164.

§ 107. FORMATION OF THE PERFECT TENSES. The Perfect Tenses are formed :

1. By adding *v* to the Stem : as, āma (āmo), āmā-v-ī ; audi (audio), audī-v-ī. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the First and Fourth Conjugations.

2. By adding *u* to the Stem : as, mōnē (mōneo), mōn-u-ī. The final vowel of the Stem is dropped. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the Second Conjugation.

Obs. 1. The terminations *v* and *u* are the same, and are derived from *fu-i*, the Perfect of the verb *to be*.

2. Some verbs drop the sign of the Perfect ; this is especially the case with Stems ending in *u* or *v* : as, mīnu-o, mīnu-I, *lessen* ; volv-o, volv-I, *roll* ; vert-o, vert-I, *turn*.

3. By adding *s* to the Stem : as, rēg (rēgō), rexī = reg-s-I.

Obs. The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted.

- (i) *cs, gs, qs, hs* are contracted into *x* : as, dūco, duxī, *lead* ; cōquo, coxī, *cook* ; trāho, traxī, *drag*.
- (ii) *b* is changed into *p* before *s* : as, scribo, scripsī, *write* ; nūbo, nupsī, *marry* (of women).
- (iii) *t* and *d* are dropped before *s* : as, mitto, mīsī, *send* ; laedo, laesī, *injure*.

4. By reduplication : as,

tend	(tendo),	tē-tendī,	stretch.
cād	(cādo),	cē-cīdī,	fall.
mordo	(mordeo),	mō-mordī,	bite.

5. By lengthening the vowel of the Stem : as,

jāc	or jāci (jācio),	jēcī,	throw.
vēni	(vēnio),	vēnī,	come.
mōvo	(mōveo),	mōvī,	move.

Obs. In compound Verbs the Reduplication is usually omitted : as, tundo, tūtūdī, *beat*, but contundo, contūdī, *beat small, bruise* ; pello, pēpūllī, *drive*, but compello, compūllī, *drive together*.

1. *Present-Perfect or Aorist Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *is*; 2nd pers. *āmāv-is-tī*, *āmāv-is-tis*; 3rd pers. *āmāv-ēr-unt*; the *s* disappears in the other persons. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *eri*: as, *āmāv-ēri-m*. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix *issē*: as, *āmāv-issē*.

Obs. 1. In the *Indicative is* is probably the same as *es*, the stem of 's-um. The change of *is* into *er* in the 3rd person plural (*āmāv-ēr-unt*) is also found in *pulvis*, *pulver-is*, *dust*.

Obs. 2. In the *Subjunctive eri-m* is the same as *esi-m* or 'si-m, the present subjunctive of *sum*.

Obs. 3. In the *Infinitive issē* is the same as *essē*, the present Infinitive of *sum*.

2. *Past-Perfect Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *ēra*: as, *āmāv-ēra-m*. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *isse*: as, *āmāv-isse-m*.

Obs. The suffixes *era-m* and *isse-m* are the same as *era-m* and *esse-m*, the past Indicative and Subjunctive of *sum*.

The *Future-Perfect Tense* has the suffix *ēr*: as, *āmāv-ēr-o*.

Obs. The suffix *er-o* is the future of *sum*.

§ 103. The *Supine* is formed by adding *tum* and *tu* to the Stem: as,

I. <i>Āmā-tum</i> , <i>āmā-tū</i> .	III. <i>Rec-tum</i> , <i>rec-tū</i> .
II. <i>Mōnī-tum</i> , <i>mōnī-tu</i> .	IV. <i>Audi-tum</i> , <i>audi-tū</i> .

Obs. 1. In the Second Conjugation the *e* of the Stem is changed into *i*.

Obs. 2. The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted:

(i) *g*, *qu*, *h* become *c* before *t*: as, *rēgo*, *rectum*; *cōquo*, *coctum*; *trāho*, *tractum*.

(ii) *b* becomes *p* before *t*: as, *scribo*, *scriptum*; *nūbo*, *nuptum*.

(iii) *d* and *t* are dropped before the *t* of the Supine, which in these cases becomes *s*: as, *laedo*, *laesum*, *injure*; *claudio*, *clausum*, *shut*. In some cases, but rarely, the *d* or *t* of the Stem also becomes *s*: as, *cēdo*, *ces-sum*, *yield*; *mitto*, *mis-sum*, *send*.

§ 109. The *Future Participle* is formed by adding *tūrus* to the Stem: as,

āmā-tūrus; *mōnī-tūrus*; *rec-tūrus*; *audi-tūrus*.

Obs. 1. The same euphonic changes of letters occur in the Future Participle as in the Supine: as,

tractūrus, *scriptūrus*, *laesūrus*.

Obs. 2. In a few Verbs the Supines of which vary from the regular formation, the Future Participles do not adopt these variations: as,

	Stem.	Supine.	Fut. Part.	
<i>jāvo</i>	(<i>jāva</i>)	<i>jātum</i>	<i>jāvātūrus</i> ,	<i>Adp.</i>
<i>scōo</i>	(<i>scōa</i>)	<i>scētum</i>	<i>scēātūrus</i> ,	<i>cut.</i>
<i>sonō</i>	(<i>sona</i>)	<i>sonitum</i>	<i>sonātūrus</i> ,	<i>sound.</i>
<i>mōrtūr</i>	(<i>mōr</i> and <i>mōri</i>)	<i>mortuū</i> (<i>part.</i>)	<i>mōrtūrus</i> ,	<i>die.</i>

§ 110. REMARKS UPON CERTAIN FORMS.

1. *Perfect Active*.—(i). On the omission of *r*, *ri*, and *re*, in the First and Fourth Conjugations see § 91 Obs., § 94 Obs.

Obs. Sometimes the *iit* in the Third Person Singular is contracted into *it* : as *pētīt* (in Virg. *Aen.* ix. 9) = *pētivit* : *ūbīt* = *ūbiit*, *ūbīt* = *ūbiit*, *perīt* = *pēriit* (Juv. vi. 128, 559, 295). Even *ii* in the First Person is sometimes contracted into *i* : as, *sēpēli* = *sēpēlii* (Pers. iii. 97).

(ii). In poetry *is* and *iss* are often omitted after *s* or *x* in the Perfect and Past Perfect of the Third Conjugation : as, *ēvasti* = *ēvasisti* ; *dixi* = *dixisti* ; *dīvisse* = *dīvisisse* ; *surrexe* = *surrexisse* ; *consumpse* = *consumpsisse* ; *abscessem* = *abscessisse*.

(iii). The suffix *ērunt* in the Perfect Indicative Active is frequently shortened by the poets : as, *dedērunt*, *they gave*. The suffix *ēre* instead of *ērunt* is rarely used by Cicero, frequently by Sallust and later writers.

2. The form of the Second Person Singular Passive in *rē* rarely occurs in the Present Indicative, because it might be confounded with the Imperfect Infinitive Active.

3. The Gerund and Gerundive in the Third and Fourth Conjugations sometimes end in *undum* and *undus* instead of *endum* and *endus* : as, *fāciundum* from *fācio*, *make or do* ; *pōtiundum* from *pōtiōr*, *obtain possession of*.

4. From some Verbs is derived a Participle, or Participial Adjective, in *bundus*, with an intensive signification : as, *laetābundus*, *rejoicing greatly, full of joy* ; *lacrimābundus*, *weeping profusely* ; *fūribundus*, *full of rage* ; *mōribundus*, *in the very article of death*.

Obs. 1. Words in *bundus* come chiefly from verbs of the First Conjugation. *Pūdibundus*, *full of modesty*, is the only one from a verb of the Second Conjugation ; and *lascivibundus*, *full of wantonness*, the only one from a verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

Obs. 2. These words generally govern no case : but we find in Livy *vītābundus castra*, *avoiding the camp* (25, 13), and similar expressions.

§ 111. ANCIENT FORMS.

1. The ancient termination of the *Imperfect Infinitive Passive* was *ier* : as, *āmāriēr* instead of *āmārī* ; *rēgiēr*, instead of *rēgī*.

2. In the *Present Subjunctive Active* the old terminations were *im*, *is*, *it* : as, *sim*, *sīs*, *sīt* from *sum* ; *vēlim* from *vōlo*, *be willing* ; *nōlim* from *nōlo*, *be unwilling* ; *mālim* from *mālo*, *be more willing*. Also *ēdim* instead of *ēdam* from *ēdo*, *eat* ; and *duim* from *do*, *give*, and its compounds, particularly in prayers and execrations : as, *dī duint*, *may the gods grant* ; *dī tē perduint*, *may the gods destroy thee*.

3. The *Future-Perfect Indicative* and the *Perfect Subjunctive* had ancient terminations in *so* and *sim*, the terminations being originally *eso* and *esim*, instead of *ero* and *erim* : hence the forms *levasso*, *faxo*, *faxim*, are contractions of *lēvāvēso*, *fācēsso*, *fācēsso*. In like manner *ausim* is formed from the old Perfect *ausi* (from *audco*), which has become obsolete.

CHAPTER XXI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 112. IRREGULAR VERBS are such as are not conjugated according to the common Rules. The Conjugation of one Irregular Verb, *sum*, has been already given (§ 90). The rest are here given:

I. *Possum*, *pōtūi*, *posse*,—*to be able*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S.	Pos-sum Pōt-ēs Pōt-est	Pos-sim Pos-sis Pos-sit		S.	Pōt-nī Pōt-nistī Pōt-nīt	Pōt-nērim Pōt-nēris Pōt-nērit	
P.	Pos-sūmūs Pōt-estis Pos-sunt	Pos-simūs Pos-sitis Pos-sint		P.	Pōt-nīmūs Pōt-nistis Pōt-nērunt (ērē)	Pōt-nērimūs Pōt-nēritis Pōt-nērint	
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Pōt-eram Pōt-erās Pōt-erāt	Pos-sem Pos-sēs Pos-sēt		S.	Pōt-nēram Pōt-nērās Pōt-nērāt	Pōt-nissem Pōt-nissēs Pōt-nissēt	
P.	Pōt-erāmūs Pōt-erātis Pōt-erant	Pos-sēmūs Pos-sētis Pos-sent		P.	Pōt-nērāmūs Pōt-nērātis Pōt-nērant	Pōt-nissēmūs Pōt-nissētis Pōt-nissent	
3. <i>Future.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Pōt-ero Pōt-eris Pōt-erit			S.	Pōt-nēro Pōt-nēris Pōt-nērit		
P.	Pōt-erimūs Pōt-eritis Pōt-erunt			P.	Pōt-nērimūs Pōt-nēritis Pōt-nērint		

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect—Posse. *Perfect—Pōtnissē.* *Future—wanting.*

The *Imperative*, *Gerund*, and *Supine* are wanting.

The *Imperfect Participle* *pōtens* is used only as an *Adjective*, *powerful*.

Obs. *Possum* is compounded of 'pot' (*pōtis*, *able*) and *sum*: hence *pos-sum* is a contraction of *pōt-sum*; *pos-sim* of *pōt-sim*; *pos-sem* of *pōt-essem*; *pōt-ūi* of *pot-ful*; and *pos-sē* of *pōt-esē*.

- § 113. II. Völo, völuī, vellē, — *to be willing.*
 III. Nölo, nöluī, nollē, — *to be unwilling.*
 IV. Mälo, mäluī, mallē, — *to be more willing.*

INDICATIVE.

1. *Present.*

S.	Völo	Nölo	Mälo
	Vis	Non vis	Māvis
	Vult	Non vult	Māvult
P.	Völümūs	Nölümūs	Mälümūs
	Vultīs	Non vultīs	Māvultīs
	Völunt	Nölunt	Mälunt

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

S.	Völ-ēbam	Nöl-ēbam	Mäl-ēbam
	Völ-ēbās	Nöl-ēbās	Mäl-ēbās
	Völ-ēbāt	Nöl-ēbāt	Mäl-ēbāt
P.	Völ-ēbāmūs	Nöl-ēbāmūs	Mäl-ēbāmūs
	Völ-ēbātīs	Nöl-ēbātīs	Mäl-ēbātīs
	Völ-ēbant	Nöl-ēbant	Mäl-ēbant

3. *Future.*

S.	Völ-am	Nöl-am	Mäl-am
	Völ-ēs	Nöl-ēs	Mäl-ēs
	Völ-ēt	Nöl-ēt	Mäl-ēt
P.	Völ-ēmūs	Nöl-ēmūs	Mäl-ēmūs
	Völ-ētīs	Nöl-ētīs	Mäl-ētīs
	Völ-ent	Nöl-ent	Mäl-ent

4. *Perfect.*

S.	Völ-uī	Nöl-uī	Mäl-uī
	Völ-uistī	Nöl-uistī	Mäl-uistī
	Völ-uīt	Nöl-uīt	Mäl-uīt
P.	Völ-uīmūs	Nöl-uīmūs	Mäl-uīmūs
	Völ-uistīs	Nöl-uistīs	Mäl-uistīs
	Völ-uērunt or -uērē	Nöl-uērunt or -uērē	Mäl-uērunt or -uērē

5. *Past-Perfect.*

S.	Völ-uēram	Nöl-uēram	Mäl-uēram
	Völ-uērās	Nöl-uērās	Mäl-uērās
	Völ-uērāt	Nöl-uērāt	Mäl-uērāt
P.	Völ-uērāmūs	Nöl-uērāmūs	Mäl-uērāmūs
	Völ-uērātīs	Nöl-uērātīs	Mäl-uērātīs
	Völ-uērant	Nöl-uērant	Mäl-uērant

6. *Future-Perfect.*

S.	Völ-uēro	Nöl-uēro	Mäl-uēro
	Völ-uērīs	Nöl-uērīs	Mäl-uērīs
	Völ-uērīt	Nöl-uērīt	Mäl-uērīt
P.	Völ-uērimūs	Nöl-uērimūs	Mäl-uērimūs
	Völ-uēritīs	Nöl-uēritīs	Mäl-uēritīs
	Völ-uērint	Nöl-uērint	Mäl-uērint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

<i>S.</i>	Völ-im	Nöl-im	Mäl-im
	Völ-Is	Nöl-Is	Mäl-Is
	Völ-It	Nöl-It	Mäl-It
<i>P.</i>	Völ-Imūs	Nöl-Imūs	Mäl-Imūs
	Völ-ItIs	Nöl-ItIs	Mäl-ItIs
	Völ-int	Nöl-int	Mäl-int

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

<i>S.</i>	Vol-lem	Nol-lem	Mal-lem
	Vol-lēs	Nol-lēs	Mal-lēs
	Vol-lēt	Nol-lēt	Mal-lēt
<i>P.</i>	Vol-lēmūs	Nol-lēmūs	Mal-lēmūs
	Vol-lētIs	Nol-lētIs	Mal-lētIs
	Vol-lent	Nol-lent	Mal-lent

3. *Perfect.*

<i>S.</i>	Völ-uërim	Nöl-uërim	Mäl-uërim
	Völ-uëris	Nöl-uëris	Mäl-uëris
	Völ-uërit	Nöl-uërit	Mäl-uërit
<i>P.</i>	Völ-uërimūs	Nöl-uërimūs	Mäl-uërimūs
	Völ-uëritIs	Nöl-uëritIs	Mäl-uëritIs
	Völ-uërint	Nöl-uërint	Mäl-uërint

4. *Past-Perfect.*

<i>S.</i>	Völ-uissom	Nöl-uissom	Mäl-uissom
	Völ-uissōs	Nöl-uissōs	Mäl-uissōs
	Völ-uissēt	Nöl-uissēt	Mäl-uissēt
<i>P.</i>	Völ-uissōmūs	Nöl-uissōmūs	Mäl-uissōmūs
	Völ-uissētIs	Nöl-uissētIs	Mäl-uissētIs
	Völ-uissent	Nöl-uissent	Mäl-uissent

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

(wanting.)	Nöl-ī	(wanting.)
	Nöl-itō	

Future.

Nöl-ito
Nöl-ito
Nöl-itātō
Nöl-unto

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect.

Vol-lē	Nol-lē	Mal-lē
--------	--------	--------

Perfect.

Völ-uissē	Nöl-uissē	Mäl-uissē
-----------	-----------	-----------

IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Völens

Nölens

(wanting.)

Obs. 1. Nôlo is a contraction of *ne, not, and volo*; *mâlo* of *mâg (magis), more, and vôlo*.

Obs. 2. In consequence of the tendency of liquids to assimilate, the *r* of the terminations is changed into *l* thus, *vel-lem, nol-lem, mal-lem*, are contractions of *vel-ërem, nol-ërem, mal-ërem*; and *vel-lê, nol-lê, mal-lê*, of *vel-êrê, nol-êrê, mal-êrê*.

Obs. 3. *Si vis, if you will, if you please*, is sometimes contracted into *sic*.

§ 111. V. Fêro, tâli, ferrê, lâtum,—to bear.

1. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-o	Fēr-am		S.	Tāl-I	Tāl-ērim	
	Fer-s	Fēr-ās			Tāl-istī	Tāl-ēris	
	Fer-t	Fēr-āt			Tāl-it	Tāl-ērit	
P.	Fēr-īmūs	Fēr-āmūs		P.	Tāl-īmūs	Tāl-ērimūs	
	Fer-tis	Fēr-ātis			Tāl-istīs	Tāl-ēritīs	
	Fēr-unt	Fēr-ant			Tāl-ērunt or ērē	Tāl-ērint	
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ēbam	Fer-rem		S.	Tāl-ēram	Tāl-issem	
	Fēr-ēbās	Fer-rēs			Tāl-ērās	Tāl-issēs	
	Fēr-ēbāt	Fer-rēt			Tāl-ērāt	Tāl-issēt	
P.	Fēr-ēbāmūs	Fer-rēmūs		P.	Tāl-ērāmūs	Tāl-issēmūs	
	Fēr-ēbātīs	Fer-rētīs			Tāl-ērātīs	Tāl-issētīs	
	Fēr-ēbant	Fer-rent			Tāl-ērant	Tāl-issent	
3. <i>Future.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-am			S.	Tāl-ēro		
	Fēr-ēs				Tāl-ēris		
	Fēr-ēt				Tāl-ērit		
P.	Fēr-ēmūs			P.	Tāl-ērimūs		
	Fēr-ētīs				Tāl-ēritīs		
	Fēr-ent				Tāl-ērint		

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	Fêr
	Fer-tô
<i>Future.</i>	Fer-to
	Fer-to
	Fer-tôtê
	Fêr-unto

INFINITIVE.

<i>Imperfect</i>	Fer-rê
<i>Perfect.</i>	Tâl-issê
<i>Future.</i>	Lâtûrum essê

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	Fêrens
<i>Future.</i>	Lâtûrus (â, um)

SUPINES.

Lâtum
Lâtû

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	Fêr-end
	&c.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ōr	Fēr-ār		S.	Lātūs sum	Lātūs sim	
	Fer-rīs	Fēr-ārīs			Lātūs ēs	Lātūs sis	
	Fer-tūr	Fēr-ātūr			Lātūs est	Lātūs sit	
P.	Fēr-īmūr	Fēr-āmūr		P.	Lātī sūmūs	Lātī simūs	
	Fēr-īmīnī	Fēr-āmīnī			Lātī estīs	Lātī sitīs	
	Fēr-untūr	Fēr-antūr			Lātī sunt	Lātī sint	
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ēbār	Fer-rer		S.	Lātūs ēram	Lātūs essem	
	Fēr-ēbārīs	Fer-rērīs			Lātūs ēras	Lātūs essēs	
	Fēr-ēbātūr	Fer-rētūr			Lātūs ērāt	Lātūs essēt	
P.	Fēr-ēbāmūr	Fer-rēmūr		P.	Lātī ērāmūs	Lātī essēmūs	
	Fēr-ēbāmīnī	Fer-rēmīnī			Lātī ērātīs	Lātī essētīs	
	Fēr-ēbantūr	Fer-rentūr			Lātī ērant	Lātī essent	
3. <i>Future.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ār			S.	Lātūs ēro		
	Fēr-ērīs				Lātūs ēris		
	Fēr-ētūr				Lātūs ērit		
P.	Fēr-ēmūr			P.	Lātī ērīmūs		
	Fēr-ēmīnī				Lātī ēritīs		
	Fēr-entūr				Lātī ērant		

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Present.	Fer-rē	Imperfect.	Fer-rī
	Fēr-īmīnī	Perfect.	Lātum (am, um) esse
Future.	Fer-tōr	Future.	Lātum iri
	Fer-tōr	PARTICIPLES.	
	Fēr-untōr	Perfect.	Lātūs (ā, um)
		Gerundive.	Fēr-endūs (ā, um)

Obs. 1. In the Imperfect Tenses of *fēro* the only irregularity is the omission of *ē* and *i* in some of the terminations: thus, *fer-s* = *fer-ls*; *fer-t* = *fer-It*; *fer-rem* = *fēr-ērem*; *fer-rē* = *fēr-ērē*, &c.

Obs. 2. The compounds of *fēro* are conjugated in the same way:

Affēro (ad, fero),	attūli,	afferrē,	allātum,	bring to.
Aufēro (ab, fero),	abstūli,	auferrē,	ablātum,	carry away.
Effēro (ex, fero),	extūli,	efferrē,	ēlātum,	carry out.
Infēro (in, fero),	intūli,	inferrē,	illātum,	carry into.
Offēro (ob, fero),	obtūli,	offerrē,	oblātum,	present.
Prōffēro (prō, fero),	prōtūli,	prōferrē,	prōlātum,	carry forward.
Rēffēro (re, fero),	{ rētūli rettūli }	rēferrē,	rēlātum,	bring back.

§ 115. VI. Ēdo, ēdī, ēdēre or essē, ēsum,—to eat.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. Present.		4. Perfect.	
Ēd-o	Ēd-am or ēd-im	S. Ēd-i	Ēd-ērim
Ēd-is or ēs	Ēd-ās or ēd-īs	Ēd-istī	Ēd-ērīs
Ēd-it or est	Ēd-āt or ēd-īt	Ēd-īt	Ēd-ērīt
Ēd-īmūs	Ēd-āmūs or ēd-īmūs	P. Ēd-īmūs	Ēd-ērimūs
Ēd-itīs or estīs	Ēd-ātīs or ēd-ītīs	Ēd-istīs	Ēd-ērītīs
Ēd-unt	Ēd-ant or ēd-int	Ēd-erunt or -ērē	Ēd-ērint
2. Past-Imperfect.		5. Past-Perfect.	
Ēd-ēbam	Ēd-ērem or essem	S. Ēd-eram	Ēd-issem
Ēd-ebās	Ēd-ērēs or essēs	Ēd-erās	Ēd-issēs
Ēd-ebāt	Ēd-ērēt or essēt	Ēd-erāt	Ēd-issēt
Ēd-ebāmūs	Ēd-ērēmūs or essēmūs	P. Ēd-ērāmūs	Ēd-issēmūs
Ēd-ebātīs	Ēd-ērētīs or essētīs	Ēd-erātīs	Ēd-issētīs
Ēd-ebant	Ēd-erent or essent	Ēd-erant	Ēd-issent
3. Future.		6. Future-Perfect.	
Ēd-am		S. Ēd-ēro	
Ēd-ēs		Ēd-ērīs	
Ēd-ēt		Ēd-ērīt	
Ēd-ēmūs		P. Ēd-ērimūs	
Ēd-ētīs		Ēd-ērītīs	
Ēd-ent		Ēd-ērint	

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	Ēd-ē or es Ēd-ītē or estē	Imperfect.	Ēd-ens
Future.	Ēd-īto or esto Ēd-ītō or estōtē Ēd-ītōtē or estōtē Ēd-unto	Future.	Ēsūrūs (ā um)
INFINITIVE.		SUPINES.	
Imperfect.	Ēd-ērē or essē	Ēsum	
Perfect.	Ēd-issē	Ēsū	
Future.	Ēsūrum (am, um) esse	GERUND.	
		Gen.	Ēd-endī, &c.

Obs. 1. The Passive Voice is regular : only *estūr* is used instead of *ēditūr*, and *essētūr* instead of *ēdērētūr*. The Perfect Participle is *ēsus*.

Obs. 2. The compound *cōmēdo*, "eat up," is conjugated in the same way : as, *cōmēdis* or *cōmēs* ; *cōmēdit* or *cōmest*, &c.

§ 116. VII. Ēo, ivī, irē, itum,—to go.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S.	Ē-o	E-am		S.	Ī-vī or I-i	Ī-vērim or I-ērim	
	Ī-s	E-ās			Ī-vistī &c.	Ī-vērīs &c.	
	Ī-t	E-āt			Ī-vīt &c.	Ī-vērīt &c.	
P.	Ī-mūs	E-āmūs		P.	Ī-vīmūs &c.	Ī-vērimūs &c.	
	Ī-tis	E-ātīs			Ī-vistīs &c.	Ī-vērītīs &c.	
	E-unt	E-ant			Ī-vērunt &c.	Ī-vērīnt &c.	
				or Ī-vērē			
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Ī-bam	Ī-rem		S.	Ī-vēram or I-ēram	Ī-vissem, I-issem or I-ssem	
	Ī-bās	Ī-rēs			Ī-vērās &c.	Ī-vissēs &c.	
	Ī-bāt	Ī-rēt			Ī-vērāt &c.	Ī-vissēt &c.	
P.	Ī-bāmūs	Ī-rēmūs		P.	Ī-vērāmūs &c.	Ī-vissēmūs &c.	
	Ī-bātīs	Ī-rētīs			Ī-vērātīs &c.	Ī-vissētīs &c.	
	Ī-bant	Ī-rent			Ī-vērānt &c.	Ī-vissent &c.	
3. <i>Future.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Ī-bo			S.	Ī-vēro or I-ēro		
	Ī-bīs				Ī-vērīs &c.		
	Ī-bīt				Ī-vērīt &c.		
P.	Ī-bīmūs			P.	Ī-vērimūs &c.		
	Ī-bitīs				Ī-vērītīs &c.		
	Ī-bunt				Ī-vērīnt &c.		

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	Ī	Imperfect	I-ens (Gen. e-untīs)
	Ī-tē	Future.	Ī-tūrūs (ā, um)
Future.	Ī-to		
	Ī-to		
	Ī-tōtē		
	Ē-unto		
INFINITIVE.		GERUND.	
Imperfect.	Ī-rē	Gen.	E-undi, &c.
Perfect.	Ī-vissē, iissē or issē		
Future.	Ī-tūrum (am, um) essē		

Obs. 1. The Stem of this Verb is *i*, which is changed into *e* before *a*, *o*, and *u*: as, eo, eunt, eam, &c.

Obs. 2. The Passive is used impersonally. INFIN.: itur, ibitur, ibitur, itum est, &c. SUPJ.: eatur, iritur, itum sit, &c.

Obs. 3. The compounds of eo usually take *ii*, rarely *iei*, in the Perfect Tense: as, adeo, I approach, makes adii, adieram, adissem, &c.

Obs. 4. The compounds of eo, which have a transitive meaning, are conjugated throughout in the Passive: as, adeo, I approach; Pass.: adēor, adēris, adētur, adēmūr, adēmīnt, adēuntūr, &c.

Obs. 5. Ambio, I go about, retains the *i* throughout and is conjugated regularly like a verb of the Fourth Conjugation. Hence we find ambiēbam, but occasionally ambībam (Ov. Met. v. 361), the Gerund ambiendū, &c. The Perf. Participle is ambitus (Ov. Met. l. 37), though the Verbal Substantive is ambiū.

§ 117. VIII. *Queo, quivī, quirē, quītum, — to be able.*

§ 118. IX. *Nēqueo, nēquivī, nēquirē, nēquītum, — to be unable.*

These Verbs are conjugated exactly like *ēo*, but are defective in some forms. In the Present Indicative *non quis, non quīt* are used instead of *nēquis, nēquit*.

§ 119. X.—*Neuter Passives.*

A. Three Neuter Verbs—*Fio, to become, or be made, vāpulo, to be beaten, vēneo, to be sold*, are Passive in their signification and construction, and are hence called *Neuter-Passives*.

1. *Fio, factūs sum, fierī, — to become or be made.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. Present.				4. Perfect.			
S.	<i>Fio</i>	<i>Fiam</i>		S.	<i>Factūs sum</i>	<i>Factūs sim</i>	
	<i>Fis</i>	<i>Fias</i>			<i>Factūs es</i>	<i>Factūs sis</i>	
	<i>Fit or fit</i>	<i>Fiat</i>			<i>Factūs est</i>	<i>Factūs sit</i>	
P.	<i>[Fimūs]</i>	<i>Fiamūs</i>		P.	<i>Factī sumūs</i>	<i>Factī simūs</i>	
	<i>[Fitis]</i>	<i>Fiatīs</i>			<i>Factī estīs</i>	<i>Factī sitīs</i>	
	<i>Fiunt</i>	<i>Fiant</i>			<i>Factī sunt</i>	<i>Factī sint</i>	
2. Past-Imperfect.				5. Past-Perfect.			
S.	<i>Fiebam</i>	<i>Fierem</i>		S.	<i>Factūs eram</i>	<i>Factūs essem</i>	
	<i>Fiebās</i>	<i>Fierēs</i>			<i>Factūs erās</i>	<i>Factūs essēs</i>	
	<i>Fiebāt</i>	<i>Fierēt</i>			<i>Factūs erāt</i>	<i>Factūs essēt</i>	
P.	<i>Fiebāmūs</i>	<i>Fierēmūs</i>		P.	<i>Factī eramūs</i>	<i>Factī essemūs</i>	
	<i>Fiebātīs</i>	<i>Fierētīs</i>			<i>Factī erātīs</i>	<i>Factī essētīs</i>	
	<i>Fiebant</i>	<i>Fierent</i>			<i>Factī erant</i>	<i>Factī essent</i>	
3. Future.				6. Future-Perfect.			
S.	<i>Fiam</i>			S.	<i>Factūs ero</i>		
	<i>Fies</i>				<i>Factūs eris</i>		
	<i>Fiet</i>				<i>Factūs erit</i>		
P.	<i>Fiemūs</i>			P.	<i>Factī erimūs</i>		
	<i>Fietīs</i>				<i>Factī eritīs</i>		
	<i>Fient</i>				<i>Factī erunt</i>		

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	<i>Fī, fi-tē</i>	Perfect.	<i>Factūs (ā, um)</i>
INFINITIVE.		Gerundive.	<i>Fāciendūs (ā, um)</i>
Imperfect.	<i>Fī-erī</i>		
Perfect.	<i>Factum (am, um) esse</i>		
Future.	<i>Factum irī</i>		

Obs. 1. *Fio* is used as the Passive of *ficio*.

Obs. 2. The *i* in *fio* is always long, except in *fit* and when not followed by *r*.

Obs. 3. The forms *fimūs* and *fitīs* are doubtful.

2. *Vāpūlo, vāpūlāvi, to be beaten*, is conjugated regularly, and is used as the Passive of *Verbēro*. Hence *vāpūlo* can be used in the Passive only as an impersonal: *vāpūlandum (erit mihi)*, *I shall have to undergo a beating.* (Ter.)

3. *Vēneo, venīvi, vēnitum (or vēnum)*, *to be sold*, is a compound of the supine *vēnum* and the verb *eo*, and is used as the passive of *Vendo*.

B. Four other Verbs are also called *Neuter-Passives*, because their Perfect Tenses are Passive in form. They are likewise called *Semi-deponents*, because their Perfect Tenses are Deponents.

<i>Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,</i>	<i>to dare, venture.</i>
<i>Fido, fisis sum, fidēre,</i>	<i>to trust.</i>
<i>Gaudeo, gāvisus sum, gaudēre,</i>	<i>to rejoice.</i>
<i>Sōleo, sōlītus sum, sōlēre,</i>	<i>to be accustomed.</i>

Obs. A few other verbs also use the Perfect Participle Passive in an active sense: see § 524.

CHAPTER XXII.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 120. Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

I. <i>Coepī,</i>	<i>I began.</i>
II. <i>Mēmīnī,</i>	<i>I remember.</i>
III. <i>Ōdī,</i>	<i>I hate.</i>
IV. <i>Nōvī,</i>	<i>I know.</i>

These three Verbs are used only in the Perfect Tenses; but the three latter have a present signification.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepī</i>	<i>Mēmīnī</i>	<i>Ōdī</i>	<i>Nōvī</i>
<i>Past Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepēram</i>	<i>Mēmīnēram</i>	<i>Ōdēram</i>	<i>Nōveram</i>
<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepēro</i>	<i>Mēmīnēro</i>	<i>Ōdēro</i>	<i>Nōvēro</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepērim</i>	<i>Mēmīnērim</i>	<i>Ōdērim</i>	<i>Nōvērim</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepissem</i>	<i>Mēmīnissem</i>	<i>Ōdissem</i>	<i>Nōvissem</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Future.</i>	(wanting.)	<i>Memento</i> <i>Mementōtē</i>	(wanting.)
----------------	------------	------------------------------------	------------

INFINITIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepissē</i>	<i>Mēmīnissē</i>	<i>Ōdissē</i>	<i>Nōvisse</i>
-----------------	-----------------	------------------	---------------	----------------

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Future.</i>	<i>Cooptūrus</i>	(wanting.)	<i>Ōsūrus</i>
----------------	------------------	------------	---------------

Obs. 1. Instead of *coepī* and its Tenses, the Passive *coeptus sum*, &c., is used before an Infinitive Passive: as, *urbs aedificārī coepta est*, *the city began to be built.*

Obs. 2. *Nōvī* is properly the perfect of *Nosco*, *to learn to know*

§ 121. V. Aio, *I say*, has only the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Past-Imperfect.</i>	
S.	Aio	S.	Aiēbam
	Als		Aiēbās
	Alt		Aiēbāt
P.	—	P.	Aiēbāmūs
	—		Aiēbātis
	Aiunt		Aiēbant
			—

IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Aiens.

Obs. The form *aiens*, *sayest thou* is often contracted into *ain*.

§ 122. VI. Inquam, *say I*, has only the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Past-Imperfect.</i>	
	Inquam		Inquiēbam
	Inquis		Inquiēbās
	Inquit		Inquiēbāt
	Inquimūs		Inquiēbāmūs
	Inquitis		Inquiēbātis
	Inquiunt		Inquiēbant
<i>Future.</i>		<i>Perfect</i>	
	—		—
	Inquies		Inquisti
	Inquiet		Inquit

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	Inquē	<i>Future. 2 Pers.</i>	Inquito
-----------------	-------	------------------------	---------

Obs. Inquam, like the English *say I*, *says he*, is always used after other words in a sentence.

§ 123. VII. Fāri, *to speak*, a Deponent, is used only in the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present. S.</i>	Fārē
Fātūr	—		Fārī
<i>Future.</i>		PARTICIPLES.	
Fātūr, fābitūr	—	<i>Imperfect.</i>	Fātūs &c. (without a Nom.)
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	Fātūs (ā, um)
Fātus sum &c.	Fātus sim &c.	<i>Gerundive.</i>	Fandūs (ā, um)
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>		SUPINE — Fātā.	
Fātūs eram	Fātūs essem	GERUND—Fandi &c.	

§ 124. VIII. *Salvē, hail!* is found in the *Imperat. salvē, salvetē, salvēto*; in the *Infin. salvērē*; and in the *Future salvēbis*.

IX. *Āvē (hāvē), hail!* is found in the *Imperat. āvē, āvētē, āvēto*; and in the *Infin. āvērē*.

X. *Āpāgē, begone!* (the only form).

XI. *Cēdo, pl. (cēdītē) cettē, give me, tell me*, are Imperatives of an obsolete Verb.

XII. *Quaeso, I entreat, quaesūmūs, we entreat*, are the only forms used in this sense.

CHAPTER XXIII.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 125. Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

§ 126. The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs:—

I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES, ETC.

<i>Dēcēt, dēcūt, dēcērē,</i>	<i>it is seemly.</i>
<i>Dēdēcēt, dēdēcūt, dēdēcērē,</i>	<i>it is unseemly.</i>
<i>Lībēt, lībūt & lībītum est, lībērē,</i>	<i>it pleases.</i>
<i>Līcēt, līcūt & līcītum est, līcērē,</i>	<i>it is laudful.</i>
<i>Līquēt, līquērē,</i>	<i>it is clear.</i>
<i>Mīsērēt or mīsērētūr, mīsērītum est, mīsērērē,</i>	<i>it excites pity.</i>
<i>Ōportēt, ōportuīt, ōportērē,</i>	<i>it behoves.</i>
<i>Pīgēt, pīgūt & pīgītum est, pīgērē,</i>	<i>it vexes.</i>
<i>Plācēt, plācūt or plācītum est, plācērē,</i>	<i>it pleases.</i>
<i>Poenītēt, poenītūt, poenītērē,</i>	<i>it causes sorrow</i>
<i>Pūdēt, pūdūt or pūdītum est, pūdērē,</i>	<i>it shames.</i>
<i>Taedēt, (pertaesum est,) taedērē,</i>	<i>it disgusts.</i>

Obs. All these Verbs belong to the Second Conjugation.

II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

<i>Grandīnāt, grandīnāre,</i>	<i>it hails.</i>
<i>Ningīt, ninxīt, ningērē,</i>	<i>it snows.</i>
<i>Plūīt, plūīt or plūvīt, pluērē,</i>	<i>it rains.</i>

Tōnāt, tōnult, tōnārē.

it thunders.

Lūcescīt, (illuxīt,) lūcescērē,

it becomes light.

Vespērascīt, vespērāvīt, vespērascērē,

evening approaches

Obs. Many verbs which are conjugated regularly with their proper significations are in certain senses used impersonally: as, accidit, *it happens*; expedit, *it is advantageous*, &c.

§ 127. Most Impersonal Verbs have no Imperatives, Participles, Supines, or Gerunds. Consequently pūdēt, for example, has only the following forms:

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE
<i>Present.</i>	Pūdēt	Pūdoāt	} Pūdōrē
<i>Past-Imperfect.</i>	Pūdēbāt	Pūdērēt	
<i>Future.</i>	Pūdēbīt	—	—
<i>Perfect.</i>	Pūduīt	Pūduērīt	} Pūduissō
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	Pūduōrāt	Pūduissēt	
<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	Pūduērīt	—	—

The Persons are expressed in the following way in the Present Indicative, and similarly in the other Tenses:

Pūdēt mō,	<i>it shames me, or I am ashamed.</i>
Pūdēt tē,	<i>it shames thee, or thou art ashamed.</i>
Pūdēt eum,	<i>it shames him, or he is ashamed.</i>
Pūdēt nōs,	<i>it shames us, or we are ashamed.</i>
Pūdēt vōs,	<i>it shames you, or you are ashamed.</i>
Pūdēt eōs,	<i>it shames them, or they are ashamed.</i>

§ 128. Intransitive Verbs are used in the Passive Voice impersonally: as,

Curritūr, Itūr, ventum est &c. (*They*) run, (*they*) go, (*they*) came, &c.

CHAPTER XXIV.—ADVERBS.

§ 129. Adverbs derived from Adjectives, Participles, and Substantives, end in ē, ō, tēr, Itūs, tim. Their formation is explained in § 196, sqq.

Adverbs in ē, ō, tēr, have Comparatives and Superlatives.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in ius.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Super-

lative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into ē.

ADJECTIVES.

		Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
doctus,	learned,	doctē	doctius	doctissimē
aeger,	sick,	aegrē (<i>with difficulty</i>)	aegrus	aegerrimē
fortis,	brave,	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
similis,	like,	similiter	similius	simillimē
acer,	keen,	acriter	acrius	acerrimē
felix,	lucky,	felicitē	felicius	feliciissimē
prudens,	prudent,	prudenter	prudētius	prudētissimē

§ 130. If the Adjectives are irregular in their Comparison, the Adverbs also are irregular.

ADJECTIVES.

		Positive.	Comparative.	
bonus,	good,	benē	melius	optimē
malus,	bad,	malē	pejus	pessimē
multus,	much,	multum	plūs	plurimum
magnus,	great,	—	magis	maximē
propinquus,	near,	propē	propius	proximē
(prō) prior,	before,	—	prius	primum & primō

§ 131. Only the following Adverbs, not derived from Adjectives, are compared:—

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
diū,	for a long time,	diūtius	diūtissimē
nūper,	lately,	—	nūperrimē
saepē,	often,	saepius	saepissimē
sēcus,	otherwise,	sēcius	—
tempēri (tempōri),	timely,	tempērius	—

§ 132. Many Adverbs were originally particular Cases of Substantives, Adjectives, or Pronouns: as,

tempōri, tempēri,	from tempus,	seasonably (see § 131).
grātis (grātis),	grātia,	for thanks, i. e. for nothing.
ingrātis (ingrātis),	ingrātia,	without thanks, against any
fōrās, fōris,	fōra (obs.) = fōris,	abroad. [one's will.
noctū,	noctus (obs.) = nox,	by night.
dīū,	old abl. of dīēs,	by day.*
perpēram, acc. sing. f. of perpērus,		wrongly.

* In this sense only in the phrase noctu diuque (rare).

Some are compounded of two or more words: as of an Adjective and Substantive; or a Preposition and a Substantive; or two Verbs: as,

hōdīē,	from	hōc dīē,	<i>on this day.</i>
quōtīdīē,	„	quōt dīēs,	<i>every day.</i>
magnōpērē,	„	magnō ōpērē,	<i>greatly.</i>
tantōpērē,	„	tantō ōpērē,	<i>greatly.</i>
obvīam,	„	ōb vīam,	<i>in the way of.</i>
quamobrem,	„	quam ob rem,	<i>wherefore.</i>
invīcem,	„	īa vīcem,	<i>in turn.</i>
scīlicēt,	„	scīre līcēt,	<i>doubtless, of course.</i>
vīdēlīcēt,	„	vīdērē līcēt,	<i>manifestly, to wit.</i>
quamvīs	„	quam vīs (vōlo),	<i>however much.</i>

With many others.

§ 133. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into the following classes:—

I. ADVERBS OF INTERROGATION, AFFIRMATION, AND NEGATION.

(a) Of Interrogation.

-nē,	<i>is it so?</i>	|	utrum . . . ne, an,	<i>is this the case,</i>
num,	<i>it is not so, is it?</i>		quārē, cur,	<i>why? [or that?</i>
nonnē,	<i>is it not so?</i>		quōtīēs,	<i>how often?</i>

NOTE. Concerning the use of these Particles, see Syntax.

(b) Of Affirmation.

sānē, vērō, ūtīquē,	<i>indeed.</i>	|	ēcastor,	<i>by Castor.</i>
ēdēpōl, pol,	<i>by Pollux, truly.</i>		mēdīusfīdīus	<i>by the god of faith</i>
mēhercle,	<i>by Hercules, in truth.</i>		(me dius fidius),	<i>in very truth.</i>

Obs. There is no word in Latin precisely equivalent to the English *yes*. Instead of it some part of the question is generally repeated. Tu ita dicis? Ego vero dico. *Do you say so? Yes, I do.*

(c) Of Negation.

nōn, haud,	<i>not.</i>	|	mīnīmē,	<i>by no means.</i>
------------	-------------	--	---------	---------------------

Obs. Immo (īmo) is equivalent to *nay, nay rather*: and may sometimes be rendered by *yes* or *no*: as,

Fātētur? Immo pernūgat. *Does he confess? No, he denies outright.* Plaut.
Causa igitur non bōna est? Immo optima. *Is our cause then not good? Yes, exceedingly good.* Cic.

II. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

1. Derived from Pronouns, with one or two exceptions.

(1.) <i>Rest in a Place.</i>	(2.) <i>Motion from a Place.</i>	(3.) <i>Motion by a Way.</i>	(4.) <i>Motion to a Place.</i>	(5.) <i>Motion towards a Place.</i>
hīe , here, near me	hīne , { from the place near me.	hāo , by this road, near me.	(hōo) hūc , { to the place near me.	hōrsūm , { towards where I am, hitherwards.
istē , there, near you.	istine , { from the place near you.	istā, istūc , { by that road, near you.	istō, istūo , { to the place near you.	istorsūm , { towards where you are.
illē , near him, yonder.	illine , { from the place near him, yonder place.	illā, illūc , { near him, by yonder road.	illō, illūo , { near him, to yonder place.	illorsūm , { towards where he is, to yonder place.
ibī , there.	indē, thence.	oā , by this way.	eō, thither.	
ibīdem , in the same place.	indēdem , { from the same place.	eādem , by the same way.	eōdem , to the same place.	quorsūm (-us) , { towards, thither.
ūbī , where.	undē, whence.	quā , by which way.	quō , whither?	
ūbiquē , everywhere.	undīque , from every side.	quācūquē , by which way	quōcūquē , { whithersoever.	quōquōvōr(-us) , { in whatever direction.
ūbiquē , { everywhere.	undēcūquē , { from what- ever side.	quāquā , { soever.	quōquō , { to another place.	ūlīorsūm , { towards another place.
ūbībī , elsewhere.	ūliundē , from elsewhere.	ūliā , by another way.		ūlīquorsūm (-us) , { place.
ūlīcūbī , somewhere.	ūlīcūndē , { from some place or another	ūlīquā , by some way.	ūlīquō , to some place.	ūlīquorsūm , { towards some place.
ūspīam , anywhere.	ūsqūam , { anywhere.			
ūnūquā , nowhere.	ūnūquā , { nowhere.			
ūbīvīs , in any place you will, everywhere.	ūbīquē , { in any place you will, everywhere.	quāvīs , by which way you will.	quōvīs , { whither you will.	
ūbībībet , in both places.	ūtrācūquē , by which of two places you will.	ūtrōvīs , { to which of two places you will.	ūtrōvīs , { to which of two places you will.	ūtrōquēvōr(-us) , { towards both places.
ūtrīnquē , on both sides.	ūtrāquē , { you will.			

2. *Adverbs of Rest*, derived from Prepositions and other Words.

intūs,	} <i>within.</i>	fōris,	<i>out of doors, abroad.</i>
intrinsicūs,		pēregre,	<i>abroad.</i>
extrinsicūs,	<i>without.</i>	subtūs,	<i>beneath.</i>
prōpē,	<i>near.</i>	sūpernē,	<i>above.</i>
prōcūl,	<i>at a distance.</i>	infernē,	<i>below.</i>
passim,	<i>here and there, every-where.</i>	praesto,	<i>at hand.</i>

3. *Motion from a Place*, derived from other Words.

coelītūs,	<i>from heaven.</i>	rādīcītūs,	} <i>from the roots.</i>
divīnītūs,	<i>from the gods.</i>	stīrpītūs,	
fundītūs,	<i>from the ground,</i>	ēmīnūs (ex mănūs),	<i>from a distance</i>
	<i>utterly.</i>		<i>(of skirmishing with missiles).</i>

Obs. With ēmīnūs, compare cōmīnūs, *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

4. *Motion towards a Place*, derived from other Words.

(All compounds of the Preposition *versūs* (*versum*), *towards*).

introrsum (-us),	<i>inwards.</i>	adversūs (-um),	<i>towards, against.</i>
dēorsum (-us),	<i>downwards.</i>	sēorsum (-us),	<i>apart.</i>
sursum (-us), i.e.	} <i>upwards.</i>	dextrorsum (-us),	<i>towards the right.</i>
subversum,		sinistrorsum	} <i>towards the left.</i>
retrorsum (-us),	<i>backwards.</i>	(-us),	
prorsūs,	<i>straight-forwards,</i>		
	<i>outright.</i>		

III. ADVERBS OF TIME.

1. *When?*

quandō,	<i>when? at any time.</i>	cīto,	<i>quickly.</i>
nunc,	<i>now.</i>	stātīm,	} <i>immediately, forthwith.</i>
jam,	<i>now, presently.</i>	confestim,	
mōdō,	<i>just now.</i>	prōtīnūs,	
tunc,	} <i>then.</i>	ilīcēt,	
tum,		illīco,	
nūpēr,	<i>lately.</i>	post, postea,	} <i>afterwards after</i>
dūdum,	} <i>some time ago.</i>	posthāc,	
pridem,		intērim, intērēā,	<i>that.</i>
jamdūdum,		ālīās,	<i>meanwhile.</i>
jampridem,		tandem,	<i>at another time.</i>
mox,	<i>soon.</i>	jamdīū,	<i>at length.</i>
			<i>long since.</i>

interdum,	} sometimes.	semp̄r	always.
nonnunquam,		hōdiē,	to-day.
āliquando,	} formerly, hereafter.	crās.	to-morrow.
quandoque,		hērī (hērē),	yesterday.
quondam,	} not yet.	prīdiē,	the day before.
olim,		nūdiustertius,	three days since.
nondum,	} hardly yet.	postridiē,	the following day.
vixdum,		p̄rendiē,	the next day but one.
nunquam,	never.		

2. How long ?

dīū,	long.	tantisp̄r,	so long.
quamdiū.	how long, as long	p̄arump̄r,	} for a little while.
āliquamdiū.	} for a while. [as.	paulisp̄r,	
āliquantisp̄r,		adhuc,	hitherto.
tamdiū,	so long.	semp̄r,	always.

3. How often ?

sēm̄l.	once.	crēbro,	frequently.
bis, tēr, &c.	twice, thrice, &c.	rāro,	seldom.
tōtiēs,	so often.	identidem,	repeatedly
quōtiēs,	how often; as often	rursūs,	} again.
āliquōtiēs.	several times. [as.	it̄erum,	
p̄l̄rumquē,	usually.	dēnūo.	afresh.
interdum,	} now and then.	quōtīdiē,	every day.
sūbindē,		quōtannīs,	every year.
saepē, saep̄nūm̄ro,	often.		

IV. ADVERBS OF COMPARISON, OR ORDER, MANNER, DEGREE

ādēo,	to such a degree.	quāsi,	as if.
admōdum,	exceedingly.	quātēnūs,	how far, as far as.
ālīt̄er,	in another way.	eātēnūs,	in so far
aequē (ac),	equally.	hactēnūs,	thus far.
it̄ā,	in that way, so.	āliquātēnūs,	to a certain point.
it̄em,	likewise.	saltem,	at least.
māgis,	more, rather.	sānē,	truly, very.
mīnūs,	less.	sātis,	enough.
mōdō,	only.	sēcūs, sēc̄ius,	otherwise.
omnīno,	altogether.	sīc,	so, in this way.
paenē,	almost.	sīcūtī,	as.
p̄rīt̄er,	equally, side by side.	sōlum,	only.
p̄rīndē (prōīndē),	just as.	tanquam,	as, as if.
perquam,	very.	tantōp̄rē,	so greatly
pōtiūs,	rather.	tantum, tant-	} only.
pōtissimū,	in preference to all	ummōdō,	
praecipūē,	chiefly. [others.	ūt,	as, how.
prōp̄ē,	nearly.	valdē,	very, greatly.
prorsūs,	altogether	vēlūt, vēlūtī,	just as.
quam,	as, than.	vix,	hardly, with diff-
quantōp̄rē,	how greatly, as		culty.
	greatly as.		

CHAPTER XXV.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 134. Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or the Ablative. Their construction is explained in the Syntax.

§ 135. I. *With the Accusative alone.*

Ad,	to.	Ob,	on account of.
Adversūs,	} opposite, towards.	Pēnes,	in the power of.
Adversum,		Pēr,	through.
Antē,	before.	Pōnē,	behind.
Apūd,	near.	Post,	after.
Circā, circum,	around.	Praetēr,	beside.
Circitēr,	about.	Prōpē,	near.
Cis & citrā,	on this side of.	Proptēr,	on account of
Contrā,	against.	Sēcundum,	following, along, in ac-
Ergā,	towards (of the		cordance with.
Extrā,	outside of. [mind].	Suprā,	above.
Infrā,	below.	Trans,	across.
Intēr,	between, among.	Ultrā,	on the farther side of.
Intrā,	inside of, within.	Versūs,	} towards.
Juxtā,	hard by, beside.	Versum,	

Obs. Versūs is always placed after the Accusative: as, Rōmam versūs, towards Rome.

§ 136. II. *With the Ablative alone.*

A, āb, or abs,	by or from.	Ex or ē,	out of.
Absquē (rare),	without.	Prae,	before.
Cōram,	in the presence of.	Prō,	in front of, before.
Cum	with.	Sinē,	without.
Dē,	down from, from.	Tēnūs,	reaching to, as far as.

Obs. 1. Ab is used before vowels and h; both ā and āb before consonants, abs very seldom except in the phrase abs te.

Obs. 2. Ex is used before vowels and h; both ex and ē before consonants.

Obs. 3. Tēnūs is always placed after its case: as, pectōrē tēnūs, as far as the breast.

§ 137. III. *With the Accusative or Ablative.*

In,	in, into.	Sūpēr,	over.
Sūb,	up to, under.	Sūbtēr,	under.
Clam, without the knowledge of.			

In and Sub with the Acc. answer the question *Whither?*
with the Abl., the question *Where?*

§ 138. Obs. 1. Some Prepositions are used as Adverbs: as, antē, clam, cōram, contrā, post, praeter, propter.

Obs. 2. Prepositions, in composition with other words, frequently undergo euphonic changes. The most common change is the assimilation of the final consonant of the Preposition to the initial consonants of the words with which it is combined: as, *allôquor* from *ad* and *lôquor*.

Ab, abs. *Ab* remains unchanged before vowels and most consonants. Before *m* and *v* it becomes *a*: as, *â-moveo*, *â-vêho*. *Ab* becomes *au* in *au-fêro*, *au-fûgio*. *Abs* stands before *c* and *t* only: as, *abs-cêdo*, *abs-tinco*.

Ad remains unchanged before *d*, *j*, *m*, *v*: as, *ad-do*, *ad-jâceo*, *ad-mîror*, *ad-vêho*. The *d* is assimilated before most other consonants: as, *ac-cêdo*, *af-fêro*, *ag-gêro*, *ap-pôno*, *ac-quîro*, *as-sisto*, *as-sûmo*. The *d* is omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and *gn*: as, *a-spleio*, *a-gnosco*.

Com (instead of *cum*) remains unchanged before the labials *p*, *b*, *m*: as, *com-pôno*, *com-bîbo*, *com-mitto*. The *m* is assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*: as, *col-ligo*, *con-necto*, *cor-ripio*. The *m* is changed into *n* before the other consonants: as, *con-fêro*, *con-gêro*, *con-trâho*. The *m* is dropped before vowels and *h*: as, *co-âlesco*, *co-eo*, *co-hæreo*.

Ex remains unchanged before vowels and the consonants *c*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*: as, *ex-co*, *ex-elpio*, *ex-pôno*, *ex-quîro*, *ex-solvo*, *ex-trâho*. The *x* is assimilated before *f*: as, *ef-fêro*. The *x* is omitted before the remaining consonants: as, *ê-ligo*, *ê-jicio*.

In becomes *im* before the labials *p*, *b*, *m*: as, *im-pôno*, *im-buo*, *im-mitto*. The *n* is assimilated before *l* and *r*: as, *il-lûdo*, *ir-rumpo*. Before other consonants and vowels it remains unchanged.

Inter undergoes assimilation only in the verb *intel-ligo* and its derivatives.

Ob undergoes assimilation before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*: as, *oc-curro*, *of-fêro*, *og-gêro*, *op-pôno*.

Per undergoes assimilation only in *pel-licio* and its derivatives.

Sub undergoes assimilation before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*, and often before *r*: as, *suc-curro*, *suf-ficio*, *sug-gêro*, *sum-mitto*, *sup-pôno*, *sur-ripio*.

Trans is frequently shortened into *trâ*: as, *trâ-dûco*, *trâ-jicio*.

Obs. 3. *Inseparable Prepositions* occur only in composition.

Amb, around: as, *amb-io*, to go around; *amb-igo*, to wander around. The *b* is dropped before *p*: as, *am-pûto*, to cut around or away; *am-plector*, to twine around or embrace. *Amb* becomes *an* before gutturals and *f*: as, *an-ceps*, two-headed; *an-quiro*, to seek around; *an-fractus*, a bending.

Dis or *di*, in different directions: as, *dis-pôno*, to set in different parts; *di-ripio*, to tear in pieces. Before *f*, *dis* becomes *dif*: as, *dif-fundo*, to pour in different directions.

Rê or *rêd*, back: as, *rê-mitto*, to send back; *rêd-co*, to go back.

Sê or *sêd*, aside: as, *sê-dûco*, to lead aside; *sê-cârus*, free from care; *sêd-lio*, a going apart; sedition.

CHAPTER XXVI.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 139. Conjunctions may be divided into the following classes :

I. CONNECTIVE.

Ět,			Něquě, něc,	} neither, nor.
Atquě, āc,	} and.		Něvě, neu,	
Quě,			Sivě, seu,	} or if.
Aut,	} either, or.		Necnōn,	
Věl, vě,			Etiam,	} also.
			Quōque,	

Obs. 1. Quě and vě are always added to the end of the second of the two words which they unite, and must be pronounced with it, as if they formed a single word: as, terrā mārīquě, *by land and by sea*; plūs minusvě, *more or less*. Such words are called enclitics.

Obs. 2. Ac, vě, něc, nen, seu are contractions respectively of atquě, věl, něquě, něvě, sě.

Obs. 3. Ac is never used before vowels or h: atquě occurs most frequently before vowels, but also before consonants.

To these may be added the correlatives non mōdo (sōlum) sed (vērum) ětiam, *not only but also*; quum (tum) tum, *both and*.

II. ADVERSATIVE.

Sěd,	} but.	Tāměn,	<i>yet, nevertheless.</i>
Autem,		Věrum, věro,	<i>but, indeed.</i>
Ast, at,	} and yet.	Ěnimvěro,	<i>but indeed</i>
Atque,		Attāměn,	<i>but yet.</i>

III. CONDITIONAL.

Sī,	<i>if.</i>	Dum,	} provided that.
Nīsī, nī,	<i>if not.</i>	Mōdō,	
Sin,	<i>if not; but if.</i>	Dummōdo,	

IV. CONCESSIVE.

Etsi,	} although	Quamvīs,	<i>however much, al-</i>
Ětiamsi,		Quum,	<i>though. [though.</i>
Tāmetsi,		Quīdem,	<i>indeed.</i>
Licět,		Ůt,	<i>granting that, al-</i>
Quanquam			<i>though.</i>

V. CAUSAL.

Quum,	<i>whereas, since.</i>	Nam,	} for.
Quīā, quōd,	<i>because.</i>	Ěnim,	
Quōniam,	<i>since.</i>	Ětēnim,	<i>and in fact.</i>
Quandōquīdem,	<i>seeing that.</i>		

VI. CONCLUSIVE.

Ergo, Idcirco, Ideo, Igītūr,	} <i>therefore.</i>	Ităquē, Quocircā, Quārē, Quāproptēr,	} <i>and so, accordingly, wherefore.</i>
---------------------------------------	---------------------	---	--

VII. FINAL.

Ūt, Quō, Quin, Quōmīnūs,	} <i>that, in order that.</i> } <i>that not.</i>	Nē, Nēvē, neu,	<i>that not, lest. and that . . . not.</i>
-----------------------------------	---	-------------------	--

VIII. TEMPORAL.

Antēquam, Priusquam, Postquam,	} <i>before that.</i> } <i>after that.</i>	Donec, Quoad, Dum,	} <i>so long as, until.</i>
--------------------------------------	---	--------------------------	-----------------------------

Sīmulatque (ac), *as soon as.*

NOTE.—Concerning the uses of the above Conjunctions, see *Syntar*.

CHAPTER XXVII.—INTERJECTIONS.

§ 140. Interjections are not so much parts of speech as substitutes for definite sentences. They are mostly sounds or cries expressive of emotion.

They may be divided into the following classes:—

1. Of surprise : ō! eu! eccē! pāpae! ātat! etc.
2. Of grief : ah! ēheu (heu)! hei! vae! etc.
3. Of joy : io! ha! ēvoe; eu (eugē)! etc.
4. Of disgust : phuī! āpāgē! etc.
5. Of adjuration : prō (proh)! To this may be added the abbreviated oaths *mehercule* (*mehercūle*, *hercule*, etc.), *pol*, *ēdēpol*, *mēdiusfidius*, and the like.

APPENDIX A.

CHAPTER XXVIII.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

GENERAL RULES.

GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE MEANING.

§ 141. *Mules, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers*
are *Masculine*.

2. *Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees*
are *Feminine*.

Obs. In the case of some animals sex is disregarded : thus, *āquila*, *eagle*, and *vulpes*, *fox*, are always *feminine* ; while *lepus*, *hare*, *mus*, *mouse*, and *passer*, *sparrow*, are always *masculine*. Such Substantives are called *Epicene* (ἐπὶ κοινός).

3. *Indeclinable Substantives, as,*
Fās, nēfās, nīhīl, instār,
are *Neuter*.

fās,	permitted by heaven.	|	nīhīl,	nothing.
nēfās,	not permitted by heaven.	|	instār,	resemblance.

4. *Substantives denoting both the male and the female, as*
Civis, conjux, sācerdōs, testis
are *Common*.

civis,	a citizen (male or female).	|	sācerdōs,	a priest or priestess.
conjux,	a husband or wife.	|	testis,	a witness (male or female).

SPECIAL RULES.

GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE TERMINATIONS.

§ 142. I. FIRST DECLENSION.

Principal Rule.

A and **ē** are *Feminine*,
As and **ēs** are *Masculine*.

Exceptions.

1. Names of Males in a are

Masculine: as,

scriba, a clerk.

nauta, a sailor.

incōla, an inhabitant.

2. Most Rivers in a are Masculine (§ 141, 1): as,

Addua, the Adda.

Garumna, the Garonne.

Sēquāna, the Seine.

Also Hādria, the Adriatic Sea.

But the following are Feminine:

Albūla, ancient name of Tiber.

Allia, in Latium.

Matrōna, the Marne.

§ 143. II. SECOND DECLENSION.

Principal Rule.

Us and er are Masculine,

Um is Neuter.

Exceptions.

1. Trees and Towns in us follow the general rule, and are Feminine (see § 141, 2): as,

ulmus, an elm-tree

Cōriathus, Corinth.

2. The following are also Feminine:

alvus, the belly.

cōlus, a distaff.

hūmus, the ground.

vannus, a winnowing fan.

And some Greek words: as,

mēthōdus, method.

arctos, the constellation

Bear.

carbāsus, fine flax.

3. The following are Neuter:

virus, poison.

pēlāgus, the sea.

vulgus, the common people.

Obs. Vulgus is sometimes Masculine.

§ 144. III. THIRD DECLENSION.

Preliminary Rules.

1. The rules for determining the Gender of Substantives from their meaning (given in § 141) are of course applicable in this as in the other Declensions: thus, pāter, a father; Tiberis, the Tiber; Libs, a S.W. wind, are Masculine: while mūlier, a woman; sōror, a sister; Vēnus, the goddess of beauty and grace, are Feminine.

2. All Abstract Substantives derived from Adjectives

(sometimes also from Substantives), and denoting *qualities*, are Feminine : as,

humilitas,	lowliness, humility,	from	humilis.
suavitas,	sweetness,	..	suavis.
altitudo,	height,	..	altus.
fortitudo,	bravery,	..	fortis.
virtus,	manliness, virtue,	..	vir.

3. Substantives in *io* (tio, sio), derived from Verbs, and expressing the action abstractly, are Feminine : as

expugnatio,	taking by storm,	from	expugno.
munificatio,	the act of fortifying,	..	munio.
decessio,	departure,	..	decedo.
largitio,	bribery,	..	largior.
opinio,	thinking, opinion,	..	opinor.
contagio,	touching, contagion,	..	contango (root TAG).

Obs. 1. In some of the above the active signification is lost, as *régio*, a *district* (from *rêgo*) ; *légio*, a *legion* (from *lêgo*).

2. To the above may be added those which denote a *permanent* action or condition, in *go* and *do* : as,

prurigo,	itching,	from	prûrio.
cupido,	a desire, passion,	..	cûpio.
vertigo,	giddiness,	..	verto.

With the exception of the above, all Genders of this Declension must be decided by the termination.

First Principal Rule (Masculine).

O, or (*ôris*). **os**, and **er**,

Es, increasing *short* in Genitive,

are **Masculine**.—EXAMPLES : *Leo, ônis*, a *lion* ; *dôlôr, ôris*, *pain* ; *flôs, flôris*, a *flower* ; *ansêr, êris*, a *goose* ; *pês, pêdis*, a *foot*.

Exceptions.

1. In **e**.

Feminine are **do**, **go**, **io**,
To these add *câro, êcho*,
But Masculine are *harpâgo*,
Ordo, cardo, scipio,

Stellio, septentrio,
Margo, ligo, pûgio
Titio, pâptlio,
Unio, curcûlio,
Lastly *respertilio*.

câro,	carnis,	flesh.
êcho,	êchus,	an echo.
harpâgo,	ônis,	a grappling-hook.
ordo,	Inis,	a row.
cardo,	Inis,	a hinge.
scipio,	ônis,	a staff.
stellio,	ônis,	a lizard.
septentrio,	ônis,	the north.

margo,	Inis,	a border or edge.
ligo,	ônis,	a spade.
pûgio,	ônis,	a dagger.
titio,	ônis,	a fire-brand.
pâptlio,	ônis,	a butterfly.
unio,	ônis,	a pearl.
curcûlio,	ônis,	a scorpion.
respertilio,	ônis,	a bat.

2. In or.

Neuter Nouns which end in or
Are only four :

Marmor, aequor, ādor, cōr.
Fēmīnīnī gēnērīs
Is only *arbor (arbōris)*.

marmor, ōris, marble.
aequor, ōris the level surface of
the sea.

ādor, ōris, spelt.
cor, cordis, the heart.
arbor, ōris, a tree.

3. In os.

Feminine are *cōs* and *dōs*.

Neuter Nouns are *ōs* and *ūs*.

cōs, cōtis, a whetstone.
dōs, dōtis, a dowry.

ōs, ossis, a bone.
ōs, ōris, the mouth.

4. In er.

Many Neuters end in er :
Vēr, cādāver, iter, tūber,
Cīcer, pīper, sīser, ūber,

Zingiber, pāpāver, sūber,
Acer, sīler, verber, spinther
Feminine is only *linter*.

vēr, vēris, the spring.
cādāver, ēris, a corpse.
iter, itinēris, a journey.
tūber, ēris, a swelling.
cīcer, ēris, the chick-pea.
pīper, ēris, pepper.
sīser, ēris, a plant (skirret).
ūber, ēris, an udder.

zingiber, ēris, ginger.
pāpāver, ēris, the poppy.
sūber, ēris, the cork-tree
ācer, ēris, the maple.
sīler, ēris, a withy.
verber, ēris, a whip, scourge.
spinther, ēris, a kind of bracelet.
linter, tris (f.), a cherry.

5. In es, increasing in the Genitive.

Feminine are *rēquīēs*,

Quiēs, mercēs, mergēs, tēgēs,
Compes, inquiēs, and sēgēs.

quiēs, ētis, } rest.
rēquīēs, ētis, }
inquiēs, ētis, } restlessness.
mercēs, ēlis, wages

mergēs, Itis, a sheaf of corn.
tēgēs, ētis, a mat.
compes, ēdis, a fetter.
sēgēs, ētis, standing corn.

§ 145. Second Principal Rule (Feminine).

X, as, aus, and is,

S preceded by a consonant,

Es not increasing in Genitive,

are *Feminine*.—EXAMPLES : *Pax, pācis, peace ; libertās, ātis, liberty ; laus, laudis, praise ; nāvis, is, a ship ; urbs, urbis, a city ; nūbēs, is, a cloud.*

Exceptions.

1. In **x**.Masculine are words in **ex** :Feminine alone are *lex*,
Sūpellex, *cārez*, *ilex*, *nex*,Masculine are *trādux*, *cālix*,
Phoenix too, as well as *fornix*.

<i>lex</i> ,	<i>lēgis</i> ,	a law.
<i>sūpellex</i> ,	<i>lectilis</i> .	furniture.
<i>cārez</i> ,	<i>īcis</i> ,	a kind of rush.
<i>ilex</i> ,	<i>īcis</i> ,	the scarlet oak.
<i>nex</i> ,	<i>nēcis</i> .	violent death.

<i>trādux</i> ,	<i>ūcis</i> ,	a vine-branch.
<i>cālix</i> ,	<i>īcis</i> ,	a cup.
<i>phoenix</i> ,	<i>īcis</i> ,	a fabulous bird.
<i>fornix</i> ,	<i>īcis</i> ,	an arch.

2. In **as**.Six Masculina end in **as** :*As* (*assis*), *mās*, and *ēlēphās*,
Vās (*rādis*), *gīgās*, *ādāmās*.The Neuter Nouns which end
in **as**Are *Vās* (*rāsīs*), *fās* and *nēfās*.

<i>ās</i> ,	<i>assis</i> ,	a Roman coin.
<i>mās</i> ,	<i>māris</i> ,	a male.
<i>ēlēphās</i> ,	<i>antis</i> ,	an elephant.
<i>vās</i> ,	<i>vādis</i> ,	a surety.
<i>gīgās</i> ,	<i>antis</i> ,	a giant.

<i>ādāmās</i> ,	<i>antis</i> ,	a diamond.
<i>vās</i> ,	<i>vāsīs</i> ,	a vessel.
<i>fās</i>	(indecl.),	permitted by heaven.
<i>nēfās</i>	(indecl.),	not permitted by heaven.

3. In **is**.Many Nouns which end in **is**
Are Masculini generis :*Pānis*, *piscis*, *crinis*, *finis*,
Ignis, *lāpis*, *pulvis*, *cīnis*,
Orbis, *amnis*, and *cānālis*,
Sanguis, *unguis*, *glis*, *annālis*,*Fascis*, *axis*, *jūnis*, *ensis*,
Fustis, *vectis*, *rōmis*, *mensis*,
Vermis, *torris*, *cūcūmis*,
Postis, *foliis*, *mūgilis*,
Cassis, *caulis*, *callis*, *collis*,
Sentis, *torquis*, *pēnis*, *pollis*.

<i>pānis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	bread.
<i>piscis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a fish.
<i>crinis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	hair.
<i>finis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	an end.
<i>ignis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	fire.
<i>lāpis</i> ,	<i>īdis</i> ,	a stone
<i>pulvis</i> ,	<i>ēris</i> ,	dust.
<i>cīnis</i> ,	<i>ēris</i> ,	ashes.
<i>orbis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a circle.
<i>amnis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a river.
<i>cānālis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a conduit.
<i>sanguis</i> ,	<i>īnis</i> ,	blood.
<i>unguis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a finger- or toe-nail.
<i>glis</i> ,	<i>īris</i> ,	a dormouse.
<i>annālis</i>	(usu. plur.),	a year-book.
<i>fascis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a bundle.
<i>axis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	an axle.
<i>fūnis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a rope.
<i>ensis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a sword.

<i>fustis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a cudgel.
<i>vectis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a lever.
<i>vōmis</i> ,	(more freq. <i>vōmer</i>),	a ploughshare.
<i>mensis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a month.
<i>vermis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a worm.
<i>torris</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a firebrand.
<i>cūcūmis</i> ,	<i>is</i> , and <i>ēris</i> ,	a cucumber.
<i>postis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a doorpost.
<i>foliis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a pair of bellows.
<i>mūgilis</i>	(usu. <i>mūgil</i>),	a mullet.
<i>cassis</i>	(plur. <i>ium</i>),	a net.
<i>caulis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a stalk.
<i>callis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a path.
<i>collis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a hill.
<i>sentis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a bramble.
<i>torquis</i>	(also <i>es</i>),	is, a chain for the
<i>pēnis</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	a tail. [neck.
<i>pollis</i> ,	<i>īnis</i> ,	fine flour, meal.

4. In *s* preceded by a consonant :

Masculine are *pons* and *fons*,
Hydrops, *torrens*, *gryps*, & *mons*,

Adeps, *rūdens*, *ōriens*,
Dens and *trīdens*, *occīdens*.

pons, *tis*, *a bridge*.
fons, *tis*, *a fountain*.
hydrops, *ōpis* *dropsy*.
torrens, *tis*, *a torrent*.
gryps, *grȳphis*, *a griffin*.
mons, *tis*, *a mountain*.

ādeps, *īpis*, *fat*.
rūdens, *entis*, *a cable*.
ōriens, *tis*, *the east*.
dens, *tis*, *a tooth*.
trīdens, *tis*, *a trident*.
occīdens, *tis*, *the west*.

5. In *ēs*.

Masculines which end in *ēs*
 Are *verrēs* and *ācinācēs*.

verrēs, *is*, *a boar-pig*.
ācinācēs, *is*, *a scimitar*.

§ 146. Third Principal Rule (Neuter)

A, *e*, and *c*,

L, *n*, and *t*,

Ar, *ur*, and *us*,

are *Neuter*.—EXAMPLES: *Poēmā*, *ātis*, *a poem*; *mārē*, *is*, *the sea*; *lac*, *lactis*, *milk*; *ānīmāl*, *ālis*, *an animal*; *nōmēn*, *īnis*, *a name*; *cāpūt*, *cāpītis*, *a head*; *fulgūr*, *ūris*, *lightning*; *corpūs*, *ōris*, *a body*.

Exceptions.

1. In *l*.

Masculines in *l* are *mūgil*,
Sōl and *consūl*, *sāl* and *pūgil*.

mūgil, *lis*, *a mullet*.
sōl, *sōlis*, *the sun*.
consūl, *lis*, *a consul*.
sāl, *sālis*, *salt*.
pūgil, *lis*, *a boxer*.

2. In *n*.

Masculines in *n* are *rēn*,
splēn,
Pectēn, *liēn*, *attāgēn*.

rēn, *rēnis* (usu. in pl.), *the kidney*.
splēn, *ēnis*, *the spleen*.
pectēn, *īnis*, *a comb*.
liēn, *ēnis*, *the spleen*.
attāgēn, *ēnis*, *a heathcock*.

3. In *ur*.

Masculines in *ur* are *furfur*,
Astur, *vultur*, *fūr*, and *turtur*.

furfur, *ūris*, *bran*.
astur, *ūris*, *a hawk*.
vultur, *ūris*, *a vulture*.
fūr, *ūris*, *a thief*.
turtur, *ūris*, *a turtle-dove*.

4. In *us*

The Masculines which end in *us*
 Are *lēpus* (*lēpōris*) and *mūs*.

lēpus, *ōris*, *a hare*.
mūs, *mūris*, *a mouse*.

5. In *us*.

The Feminines which end in *us* | *Sēnectūs, tellūs, incūs, sālūs.*
 Are *Jūventūs, virtūs, servītūs,* | Add *pecūs* (*pecūdis*) and *pālūs.*

<i>jūventūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>youth.</i>	<i>incūs,</i>	<i>ūdis,</i>	<i>an anvil.</i>
<i>virtūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>virtue.</i>	<i>sālūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>safety.</i>
<i>servītūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>slavery.</i>	<i>pecūs,</i>	<i>ūdis,</i>	<i>cattle.</i>
<i>sēnectūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>old-age.</i>	<i>pālūs,</i>	<i>ūdis,</i>	<i>a marsh.</i>
<i>tellūs,</i>	<i>ūris,</i>	<i>the earth.</i>			

§ 147. IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.

Principal Rule.

Us is Masculine

U is Neuter.

Exceptions.

Feminines which end in *us*: | *Dōmus, nūrus, socrus, ānus,*
Tribus, ācus, porticus, | *Idūs* (*idūūm*) and *mānus.*

<i>tribus,</i>	<i>a tribe</i> (a division of the Roman people).	<i>socrus,</i>	<i>a mother-in-law.</i>
<i>ācus,</i>	<i>a needle.</i>	<i>ānus,</i>	<i>an old-woman.</i>
<i>porticus</i>	<i>a portico.</i>	<i>idūs</i> (<i>pl.</i>),	<i>the Ides</i> (a division of the Roman month).
<i>dōmus,</i>	<i>a house.</i>	<i>mānūs,</i>	<i>a hand.</i>
<i>nūrus,</i>	<i>a daughter-in-law.</i>		

§ 148. V. FIFTH DECLENSION.

Rule.

All are Feminine except *dies* (*mēriūlies*), which in the Plural is always Masculine, and in the Singular either Masculine or Feminine.

APPENDIX B.

CHAPTER XXIX.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES
OF VERBS.

I. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 149. The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in *âvi*, *âtum*: *as*, *âmo*, *âmâvi*, *âmâtum*, *âmâre*, *to love*. The following are exceptions:—

Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.

NOTE. Some of these verbs have likewise Perfects and Supines in *âvi*, *âtum*.

1.	Crêpo,	crêpui,	crêpîtum,	crêpâre,	<i>to creak.</i>
2.	Cûbo,	cûbui,	cûbîtum,	cûbâre,	<i>to lie.</i>
3.	Dômo,	dômui,	dômîtum,	dômâre,	<i>to tame.</i>
4.	Sôno,	sônui,	sônîtum,	sônâre,	<i>to sound.</i>
5.	Vêto,	vêtui,	vêtîtum,	vêtâre,	<i>to forbid.</i>
6.	Tôno,	tônui,	—	tônâre,	<i>to thunder.</i>
7.	Mico,	mîcâi,	—	mîcâre,	<i>to glitter.</i>
8.	Plico,	{plicui, plicâvi,	{plicîtum, plicâtum,	plicâre,	<i>to fold.</i>
9.	Frico,	fricui,	{fricâtum, frictum,	fricâre,	<i>to rub.</i>
10.	Sêco,	sêcui,	sectum,	sêcâre,	<i>to cut.</i>
11.	{Nêco (regular). Enêco, {ênêcui, {ênêcâvi,		{ênectum, ênêcûtum,	ênêcâre,	<i>to kill.</i>

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

Obs. Only those compound verbs are inserted which differ from the simple verbs.

1.	Discrêpo,	discrêpui,	discrêpîtum,	discrêpâre,	<i>to differ.</i>
		discrêpâvi,	discrêpâtum,		
	Incrêpo,	incrêpui,	incrêpîtum,	incrêpâre,	<i>to chide.</i>
		incrêpâvi,	incrêpâtum,		

But the forms in *dri* and *âtum* are rare.

2. *Cûbo*. Some of the compounds are of the Third Conjugation :

accumbo, *accûbul*, *accûbîtum*, *accumbêre*, *to recline at table.*

In like manner *incumbo*, *lie or lean upon* ; *prôcumbo*, *lie down* ; *succumbo*, *lie or fall under* ; *occumbo* (*supply mortem*), *die*, &c.

4. *Sôno*. *Future Part.* *sônâtûrus*.

7.	êmico,	êmicui,	êmicâtum,	êmicâre,	<i>to spring out.</i>
	dîmico,	dîmicâvi,	dîmicâtum,	dîmicâre,	<i>to fight.</i>

8. *Plūco* is used only in composition :

explico,	explicui,	explicatum,	explicāre,	<i>to unfold.</i>
	explicāvi,	explicātum,		
implico,	implicui,	implicatum,	implicāre,	<i>to fold in, entangle.</i>
	implicāvi,	implicātum,		

10. *Sēco*. *Future Part.* *sēcātūrus*.

2. *Perfect—i (vi)—tum.*

1. Jūvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	jāvāre,	<i>to assist.</i>
		{ lāvātum,		
2. Lāvo,	lāvi,	{ lautum,	lāvāre,	<i>to wash</i>
		{ lōtum,		

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

1. *Jūco*. *Future Part.* *jāvātūrus*.

2. *Lūco*. There is also an infinitive *lāvēre* of the Third Conjugation. In composition *lūo*, of the Third Conjugation, is used : as,

abluo,	ablui,	ablūtum,	abluere,	<i>to wash away.</i>
--------	--------	----------	----------	----------------------

3. *Perfect with Reduplication. Supine—tum.*

1. Do,	dēdi,	dātum,	dāre,	<i>to give.</i>
2. Sto,	stēti,	stātum,	stāre,	<i>to stand.</i>

COMPOUND VERBS.

1. *Do*. In composition with prepositions of *two* syllables it is the same : as,

circumdo,	circumdēdi,	circumdātum,	circumdāre,	<i>to surround.</i>
-----------	-------------	--------------	-------------	---------------------

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable it is of the Third Conjugation : as,

addo,	addīdi,	addītum,	addēre,	<i>to put to, to add.</i>
-------	---------	----------	---------	---------------------------

See § 159, No. 13.

2. *Sto*. In composition with prepositions of *two* syllables it is the same : as,

circumsto,	circumstēti,	circumstāre,	<i>to surround.</i>
------------	--------------	--------------	---------------------

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable the perfect is *stīti*.

adsto,	adstīti,	adstāre,	<i>to stand near.</i>
--------	----------	----------	-----------------------

II. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 150. The Perfects and the Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in *ui* and *itum* : as, *mōneo*, *mōnui*, *mōnītum*, *mōnēre*, *to advise*. The following are exceptions :

1. *Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.*

1. Dōceo,	dōcui,	doctum,	dōcēre,	<i>to teach.</i>
2. Tēneo,	tēnui,	tentum,	tēnēre,	<i>to hold.</i>
3. Misceo,	miscui,	{ mixtum,	miscēre,	<i>to mix.</i>
		{ mistum,		

4.	Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	torrere,	to roast.
5.	Sorbeo,	{ sorbui, sorpsi,	—	sorbere,	to suck up.
6.	Censeo,	censui,	censum,	censere,	to assess, think

COMPOUND VERBS.

2.	Rétineo,	rétinui,	rétentum,	rétinere,	to hold back.
----	----------	----------	-----------	-----------	---------------

So also the other compounds of *tenco*.

6.	Récenseo,	récensui,	{ récentsum, récensum,	récensere,	to review.
----	-----------	-----------	---------------------------	------------	------------

§ 151.—2. Perfect—ēvi. Supine—ētum.

1.	Dēleo.	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	dēlere,	to blot out, destroy.
2.	Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flere,	to weep.
3.	Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	nere,	to spin.
4.	{ Pleo only in composition. Compleo, complēvi, complētum, complere, to fill up.				
	{ Oleo only in composition. Abōleo, ābōlēvi, ābōlētum, ābōlere, to abolish.				
	{ Adōleo, ādōlēvi, adultum, —, to grow up.				
5.	{ (Adolesco.) Exōleo, exōlēvi, exōlētum, —, to grow old.				
	{ (Exolesco.) Obsōleo, obsolēvi, obsolētum, —, to grow out of use.				
	{ (Obsolesco.)				

To this class may be added :

6.	Cieo,	cīvi,	cītum,	ciere,	to stir.
----	-------	-------	--------	--------	----------

c. Cieo in composition is either the same, or a verb of the Fourth Conjugation :

concieo,	concevi,	conceitum,	conciere,	{ to rouse thoroughly.
conco,	concevi,	conceitum,	conciere,	

But *accio*, *accevi*, *accetum*, *acciere*, to summon, is of the Fourth Conjugation only. *Excio* has both *excitus* and *excitus*.

§ 152.—3. Perfect—i (di). Supine—sum.

1.	Prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prandere,	to breakfast.
2.	Sēdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	sedere,	to sit.
3.	Video,	vidi,	visum,	videre,	to see.
4.	Strideo,	stridi,	—	stridere,	to creak.

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

5.	Mordeo,	mōmordi,	morsum,	mordere,	to bite.
6.	Pendeo,	pēpendi,	pensum,	pendere,	to hang.
7.	Spondeo,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	spondere,	to promise.
8.	Tondeo,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	tondere,	to shear.

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

1. *Prandeo*. The Participle *pransus* has an active meaning : one who has breakfasted. § 119, *Obs.*

2. *Sēdeo* in composition with prepositions of two syllables is the same :
circumsēdeo, *circumsēdi*, *circumsessum*, *circumsedere*, to sit around.

But with prepositions of one syllable the first *e* of the stem becomes *i* in the imperfect tenses: *as*,

asideo, asēdī, asessum, asidēre, to sit by.

3, 6, 7, 8. In composition the reduplication is dropped: *as*,

<i>admordeo,</i>	<i>aduordī,</i>	<i>admorsum,</i>	<i>admordēre,</i>	<i>to bite at.</i>
<i>prōpendeo,</i>	<i>prōpendī,</i>	<i>(prōpensum),</i>	<i>prōpendēre,</i>	<i>to hang down.</i>
<i>respondeo,</i>	<i>respondī,</i>	<i>responsum,</i>	<i>respondēre,</i>	<i>to answer.</i>
<i>attendo,</i>	<i>attendī,</i>	<i>attensum,</i>	<i>attendēre,</i>	<i>to shear closely.</i>

§ 153.—4. *Perfect—i (vi). Supine—tum.*

1. <i>Cāveo,</i>	<i>cāvi,</i>	<i>cautum,</i>	<i>cāvēre,</i>	<i>to guard one's self.</i>
2. <i>Fāveo,</i>	<i>fāvi,</i>	<i>fautum,</i>	<i>fāvēre,</i>	<i>to favour.</i>
3. <i>Fōveo,</i>	<i>fōvi,</i>	<i>fortum,</i>	<i>fōvēre,</i>	<i>to cherish</i>
4. <i>Mōveo,</i>	<i>mōvi,</i>	<i>mōtum,</i>	<i>mōvēre,</i>	<i>to move.</i>
5. <i>Vōveo,</i>	<i>vōvi,</i>	<i>vōtum,</i>	<i>vōvēre,</i>	<i>to voice.</i>

Without Supine.

6. <i>Paveo,</i>	<i>pāvi,</i>	—	<i>pāvēre,</i>	<i>to fear.</i>
7. <i>Ferveo,</i>	<i>{fervi,</i>	—	<i>fervēre,</i>	<i>to boil.</i>
	<i>{ferui,</i>			
8. <i>Conniveo,</i>	<i>{connivi,</i>	—	<i>connivēre,</i>	<i>to wink.</i>
	<i>{conuixi,</i>			

Of all verbs ending in *-reo* the Perfects are formed by lengthening vowels of the stems.

§ 151.—5. *Perfect—si. Supino—tum and sum.*

1. <i>Augeo,</i>	<i>auxi,</i>	<i>auctum,</i>	<i>augēre,</i>	<i>to increase.</i>
2. <i>Indulgeo,</i>	<i>indulsi,</i>	<i>indultum,</i>	<i>indulgēre,</i>	<i>to indulge.</i>
3. <i>Torqueo,</i>	<i>torsi,</i>	<i>tortum,</i>	<i>torquēre,</i>	<i>to twist.</i>
4. <i>Ardeo,</i>	<i>arsī,</i>	<i>arsum,</i>	<i>ardēre,</i>	<i>to blaze.</i>
5. <i>Haereo,</i>	<i>haesi,</i>	<i>haesum,</i>	<i>haerēre,</i>	<i>to stick.</i>
6. <i>Jūbeo,</i>	<i>jussi,</i>	<i>jussum,</i>	<i>jābēre,</i>	<i>to order.</i>
7. <i>Māneo,</i>	<i>mansi,</i>	<i>mansum,</i>	<i>mānēre,</i>	<i>to remain.</i>
8. <i>Mulceo,</i>	<i>mulsi,</i>	<i>mulsum,</i>	<i>muleēre,</i>	<i>to stroke.</i>
9. <i>Mulgeo,</i>	<i>mulsi,</i>	<i>multum,</i>	<i>mulgēre,</i>	<i>to milk.</i>
10. <i>Rīdeo,</i>	<i>rīsi,</i>	<i>rīsum,</i>	<i>ridēre,</i>	<i>to laugh.</i>
11. <i>Suādeo,</i>	<i>suāsi,</i>	<i>suāsum,</i>	<i>suādēre,</i>	<i>to advise.</i>
12. <i>Tergeo,</i>	<i>tersi,</i>	<i>tersum,</i>	<i>tergēre,</i>	<i>to wipe.</i>
13. <i>Algeo,</i>	<i>alsi,</i>	—	<i>algēre,</i>	<i>{to be cold.</i>
14. <i>Frigeo,</i>	<i>frixi,</i>	—	<i>frigēre,</i>	
15. <i>Fulgeo,</i>	<i>fulsi,</i>	—	<i>fulgēre,</i>	<i>to shine.</i>
16. <i>Lūceo,</i>	<i>luxi,</i>	—	<i>lūcēre,</i>	<i>to be light.</i>
17. <i>Lūgeo,</i>	<i>luxi,</i>	—	<i>lūgēre,</i>	<i>to grieve.</i>
18. <i>Turgeo,</i>	<i>(tursi),</i>		<i>turgēre,</i>	<i>to swell.</i>
19. <i>Urgeo,</i>	<i>ursi,</i>		<i>urgēre,</i>	<i>to press.</i>

§ 155. *Semi-Deponents or Neuter-Passives.*

1. <i>Audeo,</i>	<i>ausus sum,</i>	—	<i>audēre,</i>	<i>to dare.</i>
2. <i>Gaudeo,</i>	<i>gāvisus sum,</i>	—	<i>gandēre,</i>	<i>to rejoice.</i>
3. <i>Sōleo,</i>	<i>sōlītus sum,</i>	—	<i>sōlēre,</i>	<i>to be accustomed.</i>

§ 156. *Obs. 1.* Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have regular Perfect Tenses, but no Supines:

1. Arceo,	arui,	arcēre,	to keep off.
2. Calleo,	callui,	callēre,	to be skilful.
3. Ēgeo,	ēgui,	ēgēre,	to want.
4. Flōreo,	flōrui,	flōrēre,	to flourish.
5. Horreo,	horrui,	horrēre,	to shudder.
6. Lāteo,	lātui,	lātēre,	to lie hid.
7. Nīteo,	nītui,	nītēre,	to shine.
8. Ōleo,	ōlui,	ōlēre,	to smell.
9. Pāteo,	pātui,	pātēre,	to lie open.
10. Rīgeo,	rīgui,	rīgēre,	to be stiff.
11. Sīleo,	sīlui,	sīlēre,	to be silent.
12. Stādeo,	stādui,	stādēre,	to pay attention to.
13. Tīteo,	tīmui,	tīmēre,	to fear.
14. Vīgeo,	vīgui,	vīgēre,	to thrive.
15. Vīreo,	vīrui,	vīrēre,	to be green.

Arceo has the compounds *coerceo*, to restrain, and *exerceo*, to exercise, with Supines *coercitum* and *exercitum*.

Obs. 2. Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have neither Perfect Tenses nor Supines :

1. Āreo,	āvēre,	to desire.
2. Calveo,	calvēre,	to be bald.
3. Cāneo,	cānēre,	to be grey.
4. Flāveo,	flāvēre,	to be yellow.
5. Foeteo,	foetēre,	to stink.
6. Hēbeo,	hēbēre,	to be blunt.
7. Hūmeo,	hūmēre,	to be damp.
8. Liveo,	livēre,	to be ligid.
9. Maereo,	maerēre,	to mourn.
10. Polleo,	pollēre,	to be powerful.
11. Rēnīdeo,	rēnīdēre,	to shine.
12. Scāteo,	scātēre,	to gush forth.
13. Squāleo,	squālēre,	to be dirty.

III. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 157. Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials B, P.

(a.) Perfect—*si*. Supine—*tum*.

NOTE.—*B* becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

1. Carpo,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpēre,	to pluck.
2. Glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbēre,	to peel.
3. Nubo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbēre,	to marry.
4. Repo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpēre,	to creep.
5. Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpēre,	to scratch.
6. Scribo,	seripsi,	scriptum,	scribēre,	to write.
7. Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpēre,	to crawl.

(b.) *Perfect—ui. Supine—tum or Itum.*

8.	Rap-io,	rāpui,	raptum,	rāpère,	to seize.
9.	{ Cumbo,				
	{ Incumbo,	incubui,	incubtum,	incumbère,	to lie upon.
10.	Strēpo,	strēpui,	strēpitum,	strēpère,	to make a noise.

(c.) *Perfect—i. Supine—tum, or wanting.*

11.	Cāp-io,	cēpi,	captum,	cāpère,	to take.
12.	Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpère,	to burst.
13.	Bibo,	bibi,	—	bibère,	to drink.
14.	Lambo,	lambi,	—	lambère,	to lick.
15.	Scābo,	scābi,	—	scābère,	to scratch.

(d.) *Perfect—ivi. Supine—itum, or wanting.*

16.	Cap-io,	cāpivi,	cāpitum,	cāpère,	to desire.
17.	Sāp-io,	{ sāpivi, or }	—	sāpère,	to taste.
		{ sāpii, }			

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Dēcerpo, dēcerpsi, dēcerptum, dēcepère, to pluck off.
8. Arrīpio, arrīpui, arreptum, arripère, to snatch.
9. *Cumbo* occurs only in compounds. The simple Verb is *cūbo* of the First Conjugation. See § 149.
11. Acelpio, rēcpio, etc. (see § 206, 1).
17. Dēslpio, — — — dēslpère, to be foolish.

§ 158.—2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the gutturals C, G, H, Q, X.*(a.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

NOTE.—Cs, hs, and gs become x. G becomes c before t.

1.	Dico,	dixi,	dictum,	dīcère,	to say.
2.	Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcère,	to lead.
3.	Cōquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cōquère,	to cook.
4.	Cingo,	cinxī,	cinctum,	cingère,	to surround.
5.	{ Fligo, not used. }	—	—	—	to strike.
	{ Affligo,	afflixi,	afflictum,	affligère	to strike to the ground.
6.	Frīgo,	frixi,	frictum, }	frīgère,	to parch, to fry.
			frixum, }		
7.	Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungère,	to join.
8.	Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingère,	to lick.
9.	{ (Mungo, not used.) }				
	{ Ēmungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungère,	to blow the nose.
10.	Plango,	planxi,	plantum,	plangère,	to beat.
11.	Rēgo,	rexī,	rectum,	rēgère,	to direct, rule.
12.	{ (Spēcio, very seldom used.) }				
	{ Aspic-io,	aspexi,	aspectum,	aspicère,	to behold.
13.	Sūgo,	suxi,	suctum,	sūgère,	to suck.
14.	Tēgo,	texi,	tectum,	tēgère,	to cover.
15.	{ Tingo,	tinxi,	tinctum,	{ tingère,	to dip.
	{ Tinguo,			{ tinguère,	

16.	{ Ungo, Unguo,	unxi,	unctum,	{ ungēre, unguēre,	to anoint.
17.	{ (Stinguo, not used.) Exstinguo, exstinxi,		extinctum,	extinguēre,	to extinguish.
18.	Trāho,	traxi,	tractum,	trāhēre,	to drag.
19.	Vēho,	vexi,	vectum,	vēhēre,	to carry.
20.	{ (Iāc-io, very seldom used.) Allīc-io,	allexi,	allectum,	allīcēre,	to entice.
21.	Ango,	anxi,	—	angēre,	to vex.
22.	Ningit,	ninxit,	—	ningēre,	to snow.
23.	Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	figēre,	to form, to invent.
24.	Mingo,	minxi,	minctum,	mingēre,	to make water.
25.	Pingo,	pinxi,	pietum,	pingēre,	to paint.
26.	Striugo,	strinxī	strictum,	stringēre,	to grasp.

(b.) *Perfect—si. Supine—sum and xum.*

27.	Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergēre,	to sink.
28.	Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargēre,	to scatter.
29.	Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	to wipe.
30.	Figo,	fixi,	fixum,	figēre,	to fix.
31.	Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectēre,	to bend.
32.	Neeto,	nexi (and-ui),	nexum,	nectēre,	to bind.
33.	Pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectēre,	to comb.
34.	Plecto,	plexi (and-ui),	plexum,	plectēre,	to plait.

(c.) *Perfect—i (with Reduplication) Supine—sum and tum.*

35.	Pango,	pēpigi,	paetum,	pangēre,	to fix.
36.	Pareo,	{ pēperci, { parsi,	{ parcitum, { parsum,	parcēre,	to spare.
37.	Pungo,	pūpūgi,	punctum,	pungēre,	to prick.
38.	Tango,	tētigi,	taetum,	tangēre,	to touch.
39.	Disco,	dīdici,	—	discēre,	to learn.
40.	Poseo,	pōposci,	—	poscēre,	to demand.

(d.) *Perfect—i (with vowel of Stem lengthened).*

41.	Ago,	ēgi,	actum,	āgēre,	to do.
42.	Fāc-io,	fēci,	factum,	facēre,	to make, to do.
43.	Frangē,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangēre,	to break.
44.	Fāg-io,	fūgi,	fugitum,	fūgēre,	to flee, to fly.
45.	Īco,	īci,	ietum,	icēre,	to strike (a treaty).
46.	Jāc-io,	jēci,	jaetum,	jacēre,	to throw.
47.	Lēgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lēgēre,	to read.
48.	Linqo,	līqui,	(lietum,)	linquēre,	to leave.
49.	Vineo,	vici,	victum,	vincēre,	to conquer.

(e.) *Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.*

50.	Texo,	texui,	textum,	texēre,	to weave.
-----	-------	--------	---------	---------	-----------

(f.) *Guttural Stem disguised.*

51.	Fluo,	fluxi,	fluctum,	fluēre,	to flow.
52.	Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struēre,	to pile up.
53.	Vivo,	vixi,	victum,	vivēre,	to live.

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

11. *Obs.* *Rīgo* in composition becomes *rīgo*, as,

Arrigo, arrexī, arrectum, arrigēre, to raise.

So also corrigo, ērigo, &c. *Pergo* (a contraction of *per* and *rego*) and *surgō* (a contraction of *sub* and *rego*) make

Pergo, perrexī, perrectum, perzēre, to go straight on.

Surgō, surrexī, surrectum, surgere, to rise up.

12. The other compounds of *specio*, as *conspicio*, *despicio*, etc., are conjugated like *aspicio*.

- 23—26. In *āngo*, *pingo*, *stringo* the *n* is a strengthening letter, and the Stem appears in the Supine.

29. *Conspargo*, *conspersi*, *conspersum*, *conspargere*, to sprinkle.

- 31—34. In *flecto*, *necto*, *pecto*, *plecto*, the *t* is a strengthening letter and not a part of the Stem.

35. *Compingo*, *compēgi*, *compactum*, *compingere*, to fix together.

36. { *Compareo*, *comparsi*, *comparsum*, *comparere*, to save.
(*Comperco*.)

37. *Compungo*, *compunxi*, *compunctum*, *compungere*, to prick.

38. *Attingo*, *attēgi*, *attactum*, *attingere*, to touch, and the like.

41. *Ago* in composition changes the *a* into *i* in *ādigo*, *ūdigo*, *exigo*, *subīgo*, *transīgo*:

Ādigo, ābēgi, ābactum, ābligere, to drive away.

It preserves the *a* in *perāgo*, *circumāgo*. In *cōgo* (a contraction of *con* and *āgo*) we have—

Cōgo, cōēgi, cōactum, cōgere, to drive together, to force.

42. *Fācio* in compos. with other verbs and with adverbs remains unaltered:

Cālēfācio, cālēfeci, cālēfactum, cālēfēcere, to make warm.

Sātisfācio, sātisfeci, sātisfactum, sātisfēcere, to give satisfaction.

But in compos. with prepositions we have—

Perficio, perfeci, perfectum, perficere, to complete, and the like: v. § 206, 1.

Also, *melificō*, *I make honey*; and *nidificō*, *I build a nest*, are of the First Conjugation (v. § 205, *Obs.*).

43. *Perfringo*, *perfrēgi*, *perfractum*, *perfringere*, to break through.

46. *Abjicio*, *conjicio*, *dējicio*, etc.: v. § 206, 1.

47. *Lēgo* preserves the *e* in *allēgo*, *perlēgo*, *praelēgo*, *rēlego*: as,

Allēgo, allēgi, allectum, allēgere, to choose in addition.

It changes the *e* into *i* in *colligo*, *dēligo*, *ēligo*, *sēligo*: as,

Colligo, collēgi, collectum, colligere, to collect.

The Present-Perfect is different in

Dīligo, dīlexi, dilectum, dīligere, to love.

Intelligo, intellexi, intellectum, intelligere, to understand.

Negligo, neglexi, neglectum, negligere, to neglect.

- 51—53. In *fluō* and *struō* the root is *flue* and *struc*, the *c* being dropped in the Imperfect Tenses. In *trūo* the second *r* represents a guttural.

§ 159.—3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals D, T.*(a.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*NOTE—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *s*.

1.	Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	claudere,	to shut.
2.	Divido,	divisi,	divisum,	dividere,	to divide.
3.	Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedere,	to strike, to injure.
4.	Ludo,	lusi,	lusum,	ludere,	to play.
5.	Plando,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudere,	to clap the hands.
6.	Rado,	rasi,	rasum,	radere,	to scrape.
7.	Rodo,	rosi,	rosum,	rodere,	to gnaw.
8.	Trudo,	trusi,	trusum,	trudere,	to thrust.
9.	Vado,	—	—	vadere,	to go.
	Invado,	invasi,	invasum,	invadere,	to go against.
10.	Cedo,	cessi,	cessum,	cedere,	to yield.
11.	Mitto,	misi,	missum,	mittere,	to send.
12.	Quatio,	—	quassum,	quatere,	to shake.

(b.) *Perfect with the Reduplication.*

13.	Caedo,	cœcidi,	cœsum,	cœdere,	to fall.
14.	Caedo,	cœcidi,	caesum,	caedere,	to strike.
15.	Pendo,	pœpendi,	pensum,	pendere,	to hang, to weigh.
16.	Tendo,	têtendi,	{ tensum, tentum,	tendere,	to stretch.
17.	Tundo,	tatadi,	{ tunsum, tusum,	tundere,	to beat.
18.	Do in composition,				to put.
	Abdo,	abdididi,	abdittum,	abdere,	to put away, to hide.
	Addo,	addididi,	addittum,	addere,	to put to, to add.
	Condo,	condididi,	condittum,	condere	to put together, to build, hide.
	Dædo,	dædididi,	dædittum,	dædere,	to put down, to surrender.
	Edo,	edididi,	editum,	edere,	to put forth, to publish.
	Indo,	indididi,	indittum,	indere,	to put on.
	Perdo,	perdididi,	perditum,	perdere,	to ruin, to lose.
	Prædo,	prædididi,	præditum,	prædere,	to betray.
	Reddo,	reddididi,	reddittum,	reddere,	to put back, to restore.
	Subdo,	subdididi,	subdittum,	subdere,	to put under, to substitute.
	Trado,	tradididi,	tradittum,	tradere,	to put across, to deliver up.
	Crædo,	crædididi,	cræditum,	crædere,	to believe, trust.
	Vendo,	vendididi,	vendittum,	vendere,	to sell.
19.	Sisto,	stididi,	stidum,	sistere,	to cause to stand.

(c.) *Perfect—i. Supine—sum.*

20.	{ Cando)				
	Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendere,	to set on fire.
21.	Cado,	endi,	eusum,	edere,	to hammer.
22.	Ædo,	edi,	esum,	edere,	to eat.

§ 160.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in L, M, N.*(a.) *Perfect—ui. Supine—ĭtum or tum.*

	alui,	alĭtum or altum,	alĕre,	to nourish.
2. Cōlo,	cōlui,	cultum,	cōlĕre,	to till.
3. Consūlo,	consūlui,	consultum,	consulĕre,	to consult.
4. Mōlo,	mōlui,	mōlitum,	mōlĕre,	to grind.
5. Occālo,	occālui,	occultum,	occulĕre,	to conceal.
6. Vōlo,	vōlui,	—	velle,	to wish.
7. Frēmo,	frēmui,	frēmĭtum,	frēmĕre,	to roar.
8. Gēmo,	gēmui,	gēmĭtum,	gēmĕre,	to groan.
9. Trēmo,	trēmui,	—	trēmĕre,	to tremble.
10. Vōmo,	vōmui,	vōmĭtum,	vōmĕre,	to vomit.
11. Gigno,	gēnui,	gignĕre,	gĕnitum,	to produce.

(b.) *Perfect with Reduplication.*

12. Fallo,	fĕfelli,	falsum,	fallĕre,	to deceive.
13. Pello,	pĕpali,	pulsum,	pellĕre,	to drive.
14. Cāno,	cĕcĭni,	cantum,	cānĕre,	to sing.

(c.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

15. Cōmo,	compsi,	comptum,	cōmĕre,	to adorn.
16. Dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	dēmĕre,	to take away.
17. Prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	prōmĕre,	to take out.
18. Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	sūmĕre,	to take up.
19. Temno,	tempsi,	temptum,	temnĕre,	to despise.

(d.) *Other forms.*

20. Percello,	percūli,	perculsum,	percellĕre,	to strike down.
21. Psallo,	psalli,	—	psallĕre,	to play on a stringed instrument.
22. Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vellĕre,	to pluck.
23. Tollo,	sustāli,	sublūtum,	tollĕre,	to raise up.
24. Ĕmo,	ĕmi,	emptum,	ĕmĕre,	to buy or take
25. Prēmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prēmĕre,	to press.
26. Lino,	lĕvi,	litum,	linĕre,	to smear.
27. Sino,	sivi,	sĭtum,	sinĕre,	to permit.

COMPOUND VERBS.

12. Rĕfello,	rĕfelli,	—	rĕfellĕre,	to refute.
13. Expello,	expali,	expulsum,	expellĕre,	to drive out.
14. Occino,	occinui,	occantum,	occinĕre,	to sing against.
15—19. Cūmo, dēmo, prōmo, sūmo are compounds of con, dē, prō, sūb, and ĕmo.				

§ 161.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in R.*

1. Cerno,	crĕvi,	crĕtum,	cernĕre,	to sift, to divide.
2. Serno,	srĕvi,	srĕtum,	spĕrnĕre,	to despise.
3. Sterno,	striavi,	strātum,	sternĕre,	to strew.

4.	Gĕro,	gessi,	gestum,	gĕrĕre,	to carry.
5.	Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūrĕre,	to burn.
6.	Curro,	cūcurri,	cursum,	curreĕre,	to run.
7.	Fĕro,	tāli,	lātum,	ferre,	to bear, carry.
8.	Pār-io,	pĕpĕri,	partum,	pārĕre,	to produce.
9.	Quaero,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	quaerĕre,	to seek.
10.	Sĕro,	sĕrui,	sertum,	sĕrĕre,	to put in rows, to plait.
11.	Sĕro,	sĕvi,	sātum,	sĕrĕre,	to sow.
12.	Tĕro,	trivī,	tritum,	tĕrĕre,	to rub.
13.	Verro,	verri,	versum,	verĕre,	to sweep.

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS

1—3. In *cerno*, *sperno*, *sterno*, the Stems are *cer*, *sper*, *ster*, the *n* being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses. See § 106, *Obs.* 2.

6. *Curro* in compos. sometimes retains but generally drops the reduplication: as, *accurro*, *accurri*, rarely *accūcurri*.

8. *Pārio*. *Fut. Part.* *pāritūrus*.

9. *Quaero* has the Stem ending in *s* as well as *r*. Hence we find not only *quaesīvi*, *quaesītum*, but also *quaeso*, *quaesumus*, *I pray*, *we pray*. See § 124. *Quaero* in compos. becomes *quiro*: as,

Conquiro, *conquīsīvi*, *conquīsītum*, *conquĕre*, to collect.

162.—Verbs the Stems of which end in S, X.

1.	Depso,	depsui,	depstum,	depsĕre,	to knead.
2.	Pinso,	{ pinsui,	{ pinsītum,	pinsĕre,	to pound.
		{ pinsi,	{ pinsum,		
3.	Piso,	—	pistum,	pīsĕre,	to pound.
4.	Viso,	vīsi,	—	vīsĕre,	to visit.
5.	Pōno,	pōsui,	pōsītum,	pōnĕre,	to place.
6.	Arcesso,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	arcessĕre,	to send for.
7.	Cāpresso,	cāpressīvi,	cāpressītum,	cāpressĕre,	to take in hand.
8.	Fācesso,	fācessi,	fācessītum,	fācessĕre,	to make, to cause.
9.	Lācesso,	lācessīvi,	lācessītum,	lācessĕre,	to provoke.

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

5. In *pōno* the root is *pōs*, the *n* being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses. See § 106, *Obs.* 2.

6—9. *Arcesso*, *cāpresso*, *fācesso*, *lācesso* are formed respectively from *arcio* (an old verb, the root of which is seen in *cicio*), *cāpio*, *fācio*, *lūcio*. There was also an old verb *pōtesso*, to seek, from *pēto*.

Arcesso sometimes has an *Infin. Pass.* *arcessīri*.

§ 163.—Verbs the Stems of which end in U, V.

Perfect—i Supine—tum

1.	Acuo,	ācui,	ācūtum,	ācuĕre,	to sharpen.
2.	Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguĕre,	to prove.
3.	Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuĕre,	to soak.
4.	Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induĕre,	to put on.
5.	Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuĕre,	to put off.

6.	Mīnuo,	mīnui,	mīnūtum,	mīnuēre,	to lessen.
7.	Rao,	ruī,	rātum,	ruēre,	to rush.
8.	Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuēre,	to spit.
9.	Stātuo,	stātui,	stātūtum,	stātuēre,	to set up.
10.	Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suēre,	to sew.
11.	Tribo,	tribui,	tribūtum,	tribuēre,	to distribute.
12.	Lāvo,	lāvi,	{ lautum, lōtum,	lāvēre,	to wash.
13.	Solvo,	solvi,	sōlūtum,	solvēre,	to loosen.
14.	Volvo,	volvi,	vōlūtum,	volvēre,	to roll.
15.	Congruo,	congrui,	—	congruēre,	to agree.
16.	Luo,	lui,	—	luēre,	to atone. (to nod.)
17.	{ Nuo, Abnuo,	abnuī,	—	abnuēre,	to refuse.
	{ Anno,	annui,	—	annuēre,	to assent.
18.	Mētno,	mētui,	—	mētuēre,	to fear.
19.	Pluit,	pluit or plūvit,	—	pluēre,	to rain.
20.	Sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuēre,	to sneeze.

Obs. In *fluo*, *struo*, *viro*, the Stem ends in *c* or *g*. See § 158.

REMARKS.

7. *Ruo*. *Fut. Part.* ruitūrus.
 12. *Lavo* is also of the First Conjugation. See § 149, 2.
 16. *Luo*. *Fut. Part.* luitūrus.

§ 164.—Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in *sco*.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*, that is, denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives. See § 194, 2.

§ 165. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines: as, *incālesco*, *incālui*, *incālescere*, to grow warm, from *cāleo*, *cālui*, *cālere*, to be warm. The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines:—

- | | | | | | |
|----|--------------|-------------|--------------|----------------|---------------------|
| 1. | Abūlesco, | abūlēvi, | abūlītum, | abūlescere, | to grow out of use. |
| 2. | Adūlesco, | adūlēvi, | adūlītum, | adūlescere, | to grow up. |
| 3. | Exūlesco, | exūlēvi, | exūlītum, | exūlescere, | to grow old. |
| 4. | Cōalesco, | cōālui, | cōālītum, | cōālescere, | to grow together. |
| | (ālo) | | | | |
| 5. | Concūpisco, | concūpīvi, | concūpītum, | concūpiscere, | to desire. |
| | (cūpio) | | | | |
| 6. | Convālesco, | convālui, | convālītum, | convālescere, | to grow strong. |
| | (vāleo) | | | | |
| 7. | Exardesco, | exarsi, | exarsum, | exardescere, | to take fire. |
| | (ardeo) | | | | |
| 8. | Invētērasco, | invētērāvi, | invētērātum, | invētērascere, | to grow old. |
| | (invētēro) | | | | |
| 9. | Obdormisco, | obdormīvi, | obdormītum, | obdormiscere, | to fall asleep. |
| | (dormio) | | | | |

- | | | | | |
|----------------|---------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| 10. Rēvīvisco, | rēvixi, | rēvictum, | rēvīviscēre, | <i>to come to life again.</i> |
| (vīvo) | | | | |
| 11. Scīso, | scīvi, | scītum, | sciscēre, | <i>to seek to know, to enact.</i> |
| (scio) | | | | |

Obs. Ābōlesco, ādōlesco, exōlesco are formed from an obsolete verb ōleo, *to grow*.

§ 166. Inceptives formed from Substantives and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines: as,

- | | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|---|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Consēnesco, | consēnui, | — | consēnescēre, | <i>to grow old.</i> |
| (sēnex) | | | | |
| 2. Ingrāvesco, | — | — | ingrāvescēre, | <i>to grow heavy.</i> |
| (grāvis) | | | | |
| 3. Jūvenesco, | — | — | jūvenscēre, | <i>to grow young.</i> |
| (jūvēnis) | | | | |
| 4. Mātūresco, | mātūrui, | — | mātūrescēre, | <i>to grow ripe.</i> |
| (mātūrus) | | | | |
| 5. Obmūtesco, | obmūtui, | — | obmūtescēre, | <i>to grow dumb.</i> |
| (mūtus) | | | | |

§ 167. The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as unde-rived Verbs:

- | | | | | |
|------------------|---------|----------|------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Cresco, | crēvi, | crētum, | crescēre, | <i>to grow.</i> |
| 2. Glisco, | — | — | gliscēre, | <i>to swell.</i> |
| 3. Hisco, (hio), | — | — | hiscēre, | <i>to gape.</i> |
| 4. Nosco, | nōvi, | nōtum, | noscēre, | <i>to learn, to know.</i> |
| 5. Pasco, | pāvi, | pastum, | pascēre, | <i>to feed.</i> |
| 6. Quiesco, | quiēvi, | quiētum, | quiescēre, | <i>to become quiet.</i> |
| 7. Suesco, | suēvi, | suētum, | suescēre, | <i>to grow accus-tomed.</i> |

REMARKS.

4. *Nosco*. The Perfect signifies *I know*; the Past-Perfect, *I knew*. The Stem is *gno*: in compos. we have

Agnosco,	agnōvi,	agnitum,	agnoscēre,	<i>to recognise.</i>
Cognosco,	cognōvi,	cognitum,	cognoscēre,	<i>to learn, to know.</i>

IV. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 168. In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in *ivi*, the Supine in *itum*: as, audio, audivi, audī-tum, audire, *to hear*. The following are exceptions:

- | | | | | |
|------------|--------|-------------|----------|-----------------|
| 1. Farcio, | farsi, | { fartum, | farcire, | <i>to cram.</i> |
| | | { (fartum,) | | |
| 2. Fulcio, | fulsi, | { ultum, | fulcire, | <i>to prop.</i> |
| | | { | | |

3.	Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurire,	to draw (water).
4.	Sancio,	sanxi,	{sancitum, sanctum,	sancire,	to ratify.
5.	Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcire,	to patch.
6.	Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentire,	to feel, to think.
7.	Saepio,	saepsi,	saepum,	saepire,	to fence in.
8.	Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincire,	to bind.
9.	Eo,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to go.
10.	Salio,	salui or salii.	salto	sal	to leap.
11.	Sépelio,	sépélivi,	sépultum,	sépélire,	to bury.
12.	Vénio,	véni,	ventum,	vénire,	to come.
13.	Amício,	{ámícuí. amixi,	amictum,	amícire,	to clothe.
14.	Apéro,	apérui,	ápertum,	ápérire,	to open.
15.	Opéro,	ópérui,	ópertum,	ópérire,	to cover.

COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Farcio takes *e* in the compounds: as, confercio, réfercio, etc.: v. § 206, 1.
10. Désúo, désúui, désultum, désúire, to leap down.

V. DEPONENTS.

§ 169. First Conjugation (all regular).

NOTE.—The words to which an asterisk is prefixed occur also in the active form.

*Admíniculor, to aid.	Auxílior, to aid.
Abómínor, to express abhorrence.	Áversor, to dislike, avoid with horror.
Adúlor, to flatter.	Bacchor, to reel as a Bacchanal.
Aemúlor, to rival.	Cálmínor, to cavil.
*Altercor, to quarrel.	Cávillor, to banter.
Álúcinor (also alluc. and halluc.), to dote, talk idly.	Caupínor, to deal in retail.
Amplexor, to embrace.	Causor, to allege.
Ancíllor, to be a handmaid.	Circúlor, to form a circle around one.
Aprícor, to sun oneself.	Comíssor, to revel.
Aquor, to fetch water.	*Comítor, to accompany (active only in the poets).
Arbítror, to think.	Commentor, to reflect upon, dispute.
Archítector, to build (architectus).	Contíuor, to harangue.
Argúmentor, to argue.	*Contlíctor, to contend.
Argútor, to chatter (to be argutus).	Cónor, to attempt.
Aspernor, to despise.	Consílior, to advise.
Assentor, to agree, flatter.	Conspleor, to get sight of.
Astípálor, to agree.	Contemplor, to contemplate.
Auctionor, to sell at auction.	Convícior, to revile.
Ancúpor, to catch birds (to be auceps.)	Convívor, to feast (conviva).
Augúror (augur),	Cornícor, to chatter as a crow.
*Auspleor (auspex),	Crimínor, to accuse.
Háriúlor (hariolus),	Cupctor, to delay.
Vaticíuor (vates),	

} to practise
soothsaying.

- Dēpēcūlor, *to plunder.*
 Despīcor, *to despise; but despī-*
cātus is passive, despised.
 Dēversor, *to lodge.*
 Diglādior, *to fight.*
 Dignor, *to think worthy* (Cicero
 sometimes uses it as a passive,
to be thought worthy).
 Dēdignor, *to dislaim.*
 Dōminor, *to rule* (dominus).
 *Elūcubrōr, *to produce by dint of*
labour.
 Ėpūlor, *to feast.*
 Exsecrōr, *to execrate.*
 *Fabrīcor, *to fashion.*
 Fābūlor, confābūlor, *to talk*
 Fāmūlor, *to serve* (famulus).
 *Fēnērōr, *to lend at interest*, (the
 active, "*to restore with interest*,"
 occurs in Terence; in later
 writers the active has the same
 sense as the deponent).
 Fērīor, *to keep holiday.*
 Frūmentor, *to collect corn.*
 Frustror, *to disappoint.*
 Fūrōr, suffūrōr, *to steal.*
 Glōrīor, *to boast.*
 Graecor, *to live in the Greek style,*
i.e., luxuriously.
 Grassor, *to advance, attack.*
 Grātīficor, *to comply with.*
 Grātor and grātūlor, *to give thanks,*
to present gratulations.
 Grāvōr, *to think burdensome; to*
grudge.
 Helluor, *to gluttonise.*
 Hortor, *to exhort; adhortor, ex-*
hortor, dēhortor (to dissuade).
 Hospītor, *to be a guest; lodge.*
 Īmāginor, *to imagine.*
 Īmītor, *to imitate.*
 Indīgnor, *to be indignant, spurn.*
 Infītor, *to deny.*
 Insīdior, *to plot.*
 Interprētor, *to explain (to be an*
interpre).
 Jācūlor, *to throw, dart.*
 Jōcor, *to jest.*
 Laetor, *to rejoice.*
 Lāmentor, *to lament.*
 Latrōcīnor, *to rob.*
 Lēnōcīnor alicuī, *to flatter.*
 Libīdīnor, *to be voluptuous.*
 Licītor, *to bid at an auction.*
 Līgnor, *to collect wood.*
 Lucrōr, *to gain.*
 Luctor, *to strive, wrestle* (obluctor
 and reluctor, *to resist*).
 *Lūdīficor, *to ridicule.*
 Māchīnor, *to devise.*
 Mātērīor, *to fell timber.*
 *Mēdicor, *to heal.*
 Mēdītor, *to meditate.*
 Mercor, *to buy.*
 *Mēridior, *to repose at noon.*
 Mētor, *to measure out.*
 Mīnor and mīnītor, *to threaten.*
 Mīror, *to wonder* (dēmīror, ad-
 mīror).
 Mīsērōr, commīsērōr, *to pity.*
 Mōdērōr, *to restrain, temper.*
 Mōdūlor, *to modulate.*
 Mōrigērōr, *to comply.*
 Mōrōr, *to delay; trans. and in-*
trans. (commōrōr).
 Mūnērōr, rēmūnērōr (aliquem ali-
 quā re), *to reward.*
 Mūtūor, *to borrow.*
 Nēgōtior, *to carry on business.*
 Nīdūlor, *to build a nest.*
 Nūgōr, *to trifle.*
 Nundīnor, *to deal in buying and*
selling.
 Ōdōrōr, *to smell out.*
 Ōmīnor, *to prophesy* (ābōmīnor,
to abominate).
 Ōpērōr, *to bestow labour on.*
 Ōpīnor, *to think.*
 Ōpītūlor, *to lend help.*
 *Oscītor, *to yawn.*
 Oscūlor, *to kiss.*
 Ōtior, *to have leisure.*
 Pābūlor, *to forage.*
 Pālōr, *to wander.*
 *Palpor, *to stroke, flatter.*
 Pārāsītōr, *to act the parasite* (para-
 situs).
 Patrōcīnor, *to patronize.*
 Percontor, *to inquire.*
 Pēgrīnor, *to dwell as a stranger.*
 Pēriclītōr, *to try, to be in danger.*
 Philōsōphor, *to philosophize.*
 *Pignērōr, *to take a pledge, to bind*
by a pledge.
 Pīgror, *to be idle* (pīger).
 Piscor, *to fish.*
 *Pōpūlor, *to lay waste.*
 Praedor, *to plunder.*
 Praestolor, *to wait for* (with the
 dat. or accus.).

Praevāricor, walk with crooked legs, act dishonestly, as a praevaricator, that is, as a false accuser.

Prēcor, to pray; comprēcor, invoke; dēprēcor, deprecate, imprecor, imprecate.

Proelior, to fight a battle.

Rātiocīnor, to reason.

Rēcōrdor, to call to mind.

Refrāgor, to oppose.

Rīmōr, to examine minutely. *

Rīxor, to wrangle.

Rustīcor, to live in the country.

Seītor and seiscītor, to inquire.

Seortor, to live unchastely.

Scurror, to play the buffoon.

Sēctor, to follow (the frequentative of sēquor); assector, consector, insector.

Sermōcīnor, to hold discourse.

Sōlor, consōlor, to comfort.

Spātor, exspātor, to walk.

Spēcūlor, to keep a look out.

Stīpūlor, to make a bargain; adstīpūlor, to agree.

Stōmāchor, to be indignant.

Suāvior, to kiss.

Suffrāgor, assent to.

Suspīcor, to suspect.

Tergīversor, to shuffle.

Testor and testīficor, to bear witness.

Trīcor, to make unreasonable difficulties (trīcae).

Trīstor, to be sad.

Trūtīnor, to weigh.

Tāmūltuor, to make uproar.

Tūtōr, to defend.

Ūrīnor, to dip under water (to void urine is ūrīnam faciēre or red-dere).

Vādōr, to let go on bail.

Vāgor, to wander.

**Vēlīficor, to steer towards (fig. to gain a purpose; with dat.).*

Vēlītōr, to skirmish with light troops.

Vēnērōr, to venerate.

Vēnōr, to hunt.

Vērēcundōr, to feel shame at doing.

Versor (properly passive of verso), to dwell, be occupied in; āversor, conversor, obversor.

Vocīfērōr, to vociferate.

§ 170. Second Conjugation.

1. Fāteor,	fassus sum,	fātēri,	to confess.
2. Līceor,	licītus sum,	licēri,	to bid (at a sale).
3. Mēdeor,	—	mēdēri,	to heal.
4. *Mēreor,	mērītus sum,	mērēri,	to earn, to deserve.
5. Mīseor,	mīsērītus sum or mīsertus sum,	mīsērēri,	to take pity on.
6. Pollīceor,	pollīcītus sum,	pollīcēri,	to promise.
7. Reor,	rātus sum,	rēri,	to think.
8. Tueor,	tuītus sum,	tuēri,	to look upon, pro-
9. Vēreor,	vērītus sum,	vērēri,	to fear. [tect.

COMPOUND VERBS.

1. *Confīteor, confessus sum, confītēri, to confess.*
Prōfīteor, prōfessus sum, prōfītēri, to avow.
Diffīteor, —, diffītēri, to deny.
2. *Pollīceor* is a compound of *pro* and *liceor*.
4. *Commēreor, Dēmēreor, Prēmēreor, to deserve.*
8. *Contueor, Intueor, Obtueor, to look upon, to look at.*
9. *Rēvēreor, to reverence; Subvēreor, to fear slightly.*

§ 171. *Third Conjugation.*

1. Fruor,	{ (fructus sum, fructus sum,	frui,	to enjoy. ✕
2. Fungor,	functus sum,	fungi,	to perform.
3. Grādior,	gressus sum,	grādi,	to step.
4. Lābor,	lapsus sum,	lābi,	to slip.
5. Līquor,	(liquefactus sum,)	liqui,	to melt.
6. Lōquor,	locutus sum,	lōqui,	to speak.
7. Mōrior,	mortuus sum,	mōri,	to die.
8. Nītor,	{ nixus sum, nīsus,	nīti,	to strain.
9. Pātor,	passus sum,	pāti,	to suffer.
10. Quēror,	questus sum,	quēri,	to complain.
11. Rīngor,	—	ringi,	to show the teeth, to snarl.
12. Sēquor,	sēcūtus sum,	sēcui,	to follow.
13. Utor,	ūsus sum,	ūtī,	to use.
14. { (Verto) Rēvertor,	(rēversus sum),	rēverti,	to return.
15. { (Plecto) Amplector,	amplexus sum,	amplecti,	} to embrace
Complector,	complexus sum,	complecti,	
16. { Apiscor,	aptus sum,	āpisci,	to obtain.
Adīpiscor,	ādeptus sum,	ādīpisci,	to obtain.
17. Commīniscor,	commentus sum,	commīnisci,	to devise.
18. Rēmīniscor,	—	rēmīnisci,	to remember.
19. Dēfētiscor,	dēfessus sum,	dēfētisci,	to grow weary.
20. Expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	to wake up.
21. Irāscor,	—	irāsci,	to be angry.
22. Nanciscor	nactus sum,	nancisci,	to obtain by chance.
23. Nāscor,	nātus sum,	nāsci,	to be born.
24. Obliviscor,	oblītus sum,	oblīvisci,	to forget.
25. Pāciscor,	pactus sum,	pācisci,	to make an agree- ment.
26. Prōfīciscor,	prōfectus sum,	prōfīcisci,	to set out.
27. Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	ulcisci,	to avenge.
28. Vescor,	—	vesci,	to eat.

COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Fruor. Fut. Part. fruitūrus.
Perfruo, — perfructus sum, perfrui, to enjoy completely.
3. Aggrēdior, aggressus sum, aggrēdi, to attack.
7. Morior. Fut. Part. mōrītūrus.
9. Perpētior, perpessus sum, perpēti, to endure.
19. Dēfētiscor, from fātisco, to crack, to grow weary.
20. Expergiscor, from ex and pergo.
21. Irāscor has no Perf. In Irātus sum, I am angry, iratus is an Adjective.
26. Prōfīciscor, from pro and facio.

§ 172. *Fourth Conjugation.*

1. *Assentior	assensus sum,	assentīri,	to agree to.
2. Blandior,	blanditus sum,	blandīri	to flatter
3. Expērior,	expertus sum,	expēri,	to try.
4. Oppērior,	{ oppertus sum, oppēritus,	oppēri,	to wait for.
5. Largior,	largitus sum,	largīri,	to give bountifully.
6. Mentior,	mentitus sum,	mentīri,	to lie.
7. Mētor,	mensus sum,	mētīri,	to measure.
8. Mōtor,	mōlitus sum,	mōlīri,	to labour.
9. Ordior,	orsus sum,	ordīri,	to begin.
10. Orior,	ortus sum,	ōri,	to rise.
11. *Partior,	partitus sum,	partīri,	to divide.
12. *Pōtor,	pōtitus sum,	pōtīri,	to obtain possession of.
13. *Pūtor,	pūnitus sum,	pūnīri,	to punish.
14. *Sortior,	sortitus sum,	sortīri,	to take by lot

REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERES.

4. Compērior, *to find out*, is used only as a Deponent in the Present. The usual form is compērio, compēri, compertum, compētre.
10. Orior. The *Fut. Pass.* is ōritūrus. The *Pres. Ind.* follows the 3rd Conjugation: ōrēris, ōritur, ōrimur. In the *Imperf. Subj.* both ōrerer and ōriter are found. The compounds cōrior and exōrior, *to arise*, are conjugated like ōrior: but ādōrior, *to attack*, has ādōritis, ādōritur.
11. Partior.
- | | | | |
|--------------|------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| *Dispartior, | dispartitus sum, | dispartīri, | to distribute. |
| Impartior, | impartitus sum, | impartīri, | to communicate. |
13. The active form *punio* is the usual one.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

CHAPTER XXX.—FORMATION OF WORDS.

DERIVATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 173. Words are either Simple or Compound.

§ 174. *A Simple Word* may be either,

(1.) *A Pure Root*, without any addition whatever: as
 ād, āb sūb: nē or nōn; with some other indeclinable words.

Obs. Some words have become identical with pure roots by the loss of a Suffix properly belonging to them: as, fēr, *bear thou*; dīc, *say thou*; fūr, *a thief*; and the like.

Or (2.) *A word derived from a Single Root* by the addition of a *Suffix*: as, dīc-o, dic-tio, dīc-ax, from dic.

§ 175. *A Compound Word* is formed from two or more roots: as, hōmīcīda, *a manslayer*, from hōm-o, *a man*, and caed-o, *to kill*.

§ 176. *A Root* is always a monosyllable, and expresses an elementary notion.

§ 177. *A Suffix* is a termination added to a root to modify its meaning, but not intelligible by itself: as, the s of the Nominative Case Singular, in all Declensions except the First; the Adjectival terminations -ōsus, -īnus, -īlis, etc.

Obs. For the sake of convenience the term *Suffix* will hereafter be applied to the terminations used in the *derivation* of words, without regard to their inflexion.

§ 178. *A Prefix* is a syllable placed before the root to modify its meaning: as, amb-io, *to go around*. In inflexion a prefix is found only in certain Tenses of Verbs: as, te-tīg-i (Root, -tag), mo-mord-i (Root, mord), etc.

§ 179. The *Stem* of a word is that part which remains after taking away the inflexions: as, āgīlis (Stem, āgīli) *active*; vōlens (Stem, vōlent), *willing*; from the Roots ag (*act*), vol (*will*).

§ 180. Some words are formed at once from the Root simply by adding the inflexional terminations. These are called *Primary Words*; and in them the Root and the Stem are the same: as,

	Stem and Root	AG,	<i>set in motion, act.</i>
āg-o,		AG,	
dūc-o, dux (duc-s),	„	DUC,	<i>lead.</i>
rēg-o, rex (reg-s),	„	REG,	<i>rule.</i>
lēg-o, lex (leg-s),	„	LEG,	<i>read.</i>
pēs, pēd-is,	„	PED,	<i>the foot.</i>
sōl, sōlis,	„	SOL,	<i>the sun.</i>
sāl, sālīs,	„	SAL,	<i>salt.</i>

§ 181. I. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Substantives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :-

1. *or* (*m.*) expresses the action or condition of the verb as an abstract substantive : as,

ăm-or,	love,	from	ămo
clăm-or,	a shout,	„	clămo
căl-or,	scarmth,	„	căleo
tîm-or,	fear.	„	timeo
făv-or,	zealour,	„	făveo
fûr-or,	madness,	„	fûro.

Obs. When the Stem of the Verb ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before the Suffix *or*.

2. *tor* (*m.*) denotes the doer : as,

ămă-tor,	a lover,	from	ămo
audi-tor,	a hearer,	„	audio
mônî-tor,	an adviser,	„	môneo
vic-tor,	a conqueror	„	vinco (root vic)
vănă-tor,	a hunter,	„	vênor
lec-tor,	a reader,	„	lego.

Most Substantives in *tor* have a corresponding Feminine Substantive in *trix* : as,

victor,	victrix,	conqueress.
vănător,	vănătrix,	huntress.

Obs. The Suffix *tor* is subject to the same changes that occur in the Supine : as, cursor, a runner, from curro (cursum).

3. *io* and *tio* (*Gen. ōnis, f.*) denote the action : as,

obsid-io,	a siege,	from	obsideo
obliv-io,	forgetfulness,	„	obliviscor
contag-io,	a touching, contagion,	„	contingo, root (con)TAG
ac-tio,	doing,	„	āgo
lec-tio,	reading,	„	lēgo
scrip-tio,	writing,	„	scribo.

4. *tus* (*Gen. tūs, m.*) also denotes the action : as,

ac-tus,	doing,	from	āgo
audi-tus,	hearing,	„	audio
auge-tus,	an increase,	„	augeo
can-tus,	singing,	„	cāno.

Obs. The Suffixes *tio* and *tus* undergo the same euphonic changes as occur in the Supine : as, versio and versus from verito ; visio and visus from video.

5. *tura* also usually denotes the action : as,

mercā-tura,	trading,	from	mercor
aper-tura,	an opening,	„	āperio
cine-tura,	a girding,	„	cingo
junc-tura,	a joining,	„	juugo.

6. **ium** (n.) denotes an act or state : as,

gaud-ium,	joy,	from gaud-leo
od-ium,	hatred,	" odi
incend-ium,	a conflagration,	" incendo
aedific-ium,	a building,	" aedifico.

7. **mēn** (*Gen. minis*, n.) usually denotes an instrument : as,

flū-men,	a river,	from fluo
lū-men,	a light,	" lūceo
sōlā-men,	a consolation,	" solor
teg-men,	a covering,	" tēgo.

Obs. The Suffix *men* has sometimes a Passive force : as, *agmen*, *that which is led*, *an army marching* ; *gestāmen*, *that which is carried*, etc.

8. **mentum** (n.) frequently denotes an instrument : as,

dēcū-mentum,	a proof,	from dōceo
impēdi-mentum,	a hindrance,	" impēdio
mō-mentum,	a moving force,	" mōveo
ornā-mentum,	an ornament,	" orno.

9. **bālum**, **cūlum**, and **trum** (n.) (*brum* and *crum* after *l*), also denote an instrument : as,

vēnā-bālum,	a hunting-spear,	from vēnor
pā-bālum,	fodder,	" pascor
gubernā-cālum,	a rudder	" gubernā
fer-cālum,	a tray,	" fero
lāvācrum,	a bath,	" lāvo
fulcrum,	a prop,	" fulcio
ventilābrum,	a winnowing-fork,	" ventilo
ārātrum,	a plough,	" āro.

Obs. 1. If the verb ends in *c* or *g* the termination is **ūlum** only : as,

jāc-ūlum,	a dart,	from jācio
cing-ūlum,	a girdle,	" cingo.

Obs. 2. Sometimes the Suffix **bālum** signifies a place : as, *stā-bālum*, *a standing-place or stall*, from *sto* (*sta-re*).

10. **ies** (f.) denotes that which is made, or which is the result of an action : as,

facies,	figure,	from facio
effigies,	image	" effingo (root <i>ex-FIG.</i>)
congeries,	a heap,	" congēro

11. **mnus** (m.), passive or middle participial form (*Gr. -όμενος*) : as,

ālumnus,	nurseling, foster-son,	from ālo
Vertumnus,	god of the seasons [<i>he that turns himself</i>],	" verito.

§ 182. II. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Substantives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. **ārius** (m.) denotes a person engaged in some trade or occupation ; as,

argent-ārius,	a silversmith,	from argentum
stātū-ārius,	a statuary,	" stātua
aer-ārius,	a coppersmith,	" aes
sic-ārius,	an assassin,	" sica.

§ 181. I. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Substantives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :-

1. *or* (*m.*) expresses the action or condition of the verb as an abstract substantive : as,

ām-or,	lore,	from āmo
clām-or,	a shout,	„ clāmo
cāl-or,	warmth,	„ cāleo
tīm-or,	fear,	„ timeo
fāv-or,	jealousy,	„ fāveo
fūr-or,	madness,	„ fūro.

Obs. When the Stem of the Verb ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before the Suffix *or*.

2. *tor* (*m.*) denotes the doer : as,

āmā-tor,	a lover,	from āmo
audī-tor,	a hearer,	„ audio
mōnī-tor,	an adviser,	„ mōneo
vic-tor,	a conqueror	„ vinco (root VIC)
vēnā-tor,	a hunter,	„ vēnor
lec-tor,	a reader,	„ lego.

Most Substantives in *tor* have a corresponding Feminine Substantive in *trix* : as,

victor,	victrix,	conqueress.
vēnātor,	vēnātrix,	huntress.

Obs. The Suffix *tor* is subject to the same changes that occur in the Supine : as, *cursor*, a runner, from *curro* (*cursum*).

3. *io* and *tio* (*Gen. ōnis, f.*) denote the action : as,

obsīd-io,	a siege,	from obsīdeo
oblīv-io,	forgetfulness,	„ obliviscor
contāg-io,	a touching, contagion,	„ contingo, root (CON)TAG
ac-tio,	doing,	„ āgo
lec-tio,	reading,	„ lēgo
scrip-tio,	writing,	„ scribo.

4. *tus* (*Gen. tūs, m.*) also denotes the action : as,

ac-tus,	doing,	from āgo
audī-tus,	hearing,	„ audio
auc-tus,	an increase,	„ augeo
can-tus,	singing,	„ cāno.

Obs. The Suffixes *tio* and *tus* undergo the same euphonic changes as occur in the Supine : as, *versio* and *versus* from *verto* ; *visio* and *visus* from *video*.

5. *tūra* also usually denotes the action : as,

mercā-tūra,	trading,	from merco
āper-tūra,	an opening,	„ āperio
cinc-tūra,	a girding,	„ cingo
junc-tūra,	a joining,	„ jungo.

6. **ium** (*n.*) denotes an act or state : as,

gaud-ium,	joy,	from gaudleo
od-ium,	hatred,	„ odi
incend-ium,	a conflagration,	„ incendo
aedific-ium,	a building,	„ aedifico.

7. **mēn** (*Gen. mnis. n.*) usually denotes an instrument : as,

flū-men,	a river,	from iluo
lū-men,	a light,	„ luceo
sōlā-men,	a consolation,	„ solor
teg-men,	a covering,	„ tēgo.

Obs. The Suffix *men* has sometimes a Pas-sive force : as, *agmen*, *that which is led*, an *army marching* ; *gestāmen*, *that which is carried*, etc.

8. **mentum** (*n.*) frequently denotes an instrument : as,

dēcū-mentum,	a proof,	from dūceo
impēdī-mentum,	a hindrance,	„ impēdio
mō-mentum,	a moving force,	„ mōveo
ornā-mentum,	an ornament,	„ orno.

9. **būlum**, **cūlum**, and **trum** (*n.*) (*brum* and *crum* after *l*), also denote an instrument : as,

vēnā-būlum,	a hunting-spear,	from vēnor
pā-būlum,	fodder,	„ pascor
gubernā-cūlum,	a rudder	„ gubernā
fer-cūlum,	a tray,	„ fero
lāvācrum,	a bath,	„ lāvo
fulcrum,	a prop,	„ fulcio
ventilābrum,	a winnowing-fork,	„ ventilo
ārātrum,	a plough,	„ āro.

Obs. 1. If the verb ends in *c* or *g* the termination is ūlum only : as,

jāc-ūlum,	a dart,	from jācio
cing-ūlum,	a girdle,	„ cingo.

Obs. 2. Sometimes the Suffix *būlum* signifies a place : as, *stā-būlum*, a *standing-place* or *stall*, from *sto* (*sta-re*).

10. **ies** (*f.*) denotes that which is made, or which is the result of an action ; as,

fācies,	figure,	from fācio
effigies,	image	„ effingo (root <i>ex-FIG.</i>)
congēries,	a heap,	„ congēro

11. **mnus** (*m.*), passive or middle participial form (*Gr. -όμενος*) : as,

ālumnus,	nurseling, foster-son,	from ālo
Vertumnus,	god of the seasons [he that turns himself],	„ verito.

§ 182. II. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Substantives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. **ārius** (*m.*) denotes a person engaged in some trade or occupation ; as,

argent-ārius,	a silversmith,	from argentum
stātū-ārius,	a statuary,	„ stātua
acr-ārius,	a coppersmith,	„ aes
sic-ārius,	an assassin,	„ sica.

§ 184. PATRONYMICS.

Patronymics are Greek words, used by the Latin poets, which designate a person by a name derived from that of his father or ancestor.

Masculine Patronymics end in :

1. *ides* : as, Priām-ides, a son of Priamus.
2. *ides* : as, Atr-ides, a son of Atreus.
3. *ādes* and *iādes* : as, Aene-ādes, a son of Aeneas; Atlant-iades, a son of Atlas.

Obs. Patronymics in *ides* (εἰδης) are only formed from Proper Names in *eus* (εὖς).

Feminine Patronymics end in :

1. *is*, Gen. *īdis* : as, Tantal-is, a daughter of Tantalus.
2. *ēis*, Gen. *ēidis* : as, Nel-ēis, a daughter of Neleus.
3. *ias*, Gen. *iādis* : as, Laert-ias, a daughter of Laertes.
4. *īne* : as, Neptūn-īne, a daughter of Neptuneus.
5. *ōne* : as, Acrisi-ōne, a daughter of Acrisius.

§ 185. III. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

Substantives derived from Adjectives denote a quality or state, and have the following Suffixes:—

1. *ia* (*f.*) : as,

grāt-ia,	favour,	from grātus
insān-ia,	madness,	.. insānus
miser-ia,	wretchedness,	.. miser
prudent-ia,	prudence,	.. prūdens.

2. *tia* (*f.*) : as,

laet-ia,	joy,	from laetus
just-ia,	justice,	.. justus
molli-ia,	softness,	.. mollis
pigr-ia,	slowness,	.. piger.

3. *tās* Gen. *tātis*, (*f.*) : as,

bōn-ias,	goodness,	from bōnus
vēr-ias,	truth,	.. vērus
crūdēl-ias,	cruelty,	.. crūdēlis
atrōc-ias,	fierceness,	.. atrox.

4. *tūdo* (Gen. *tūdinis*, *f.*) : as,

alt-ūdo,	height,	from altus
negr-ūdo,	sickness,	.. neger
fort-ūdo,	bravery,	.. fortis
simil-ūdo,	likeness,	.. similis.

5. *mōnia* (*f.*) : as,

sanct-ī-mōnia,	sanctity,	from sanctus
cast-ī-mōnia,	purity,	.. castus
acr-ī-mōnia,	sharpness,	.. ācer.

CHAPTER XXXI.—DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 186. I. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Adjectives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. **bundus**, intensifying the meaning of the imperfect participle.

See § 110, 3.

2. **īdus** denotes the quality expressed by a verb : as, *also unus: vacuus.*

frig-īdus,	cold,	from frigeo
mād-īdus,	wet,	„ mādeo
tīm-īdus,	fearful,	„ timeo
vāl-īdus,	strong,	„ vāleo.

3. **īlis** and **bīlis** denote the possibility of a thing in a passive sense : as, *generally in pass. agilis.*

dōc-īlis,	teachable,	from dōceo
fāc-īlis,	doable (easy),	„ fācio
āmā-bīlis,	lovable,	„ āmo
mō-bīlis,	moveable,	„ mōveo.
(= mōvī-bīlis)		

4. **ax** denotes a propensity, and generally a faulty one : as, *also Ullus. Credulus.*

aud-ax,	daring,	from audeo
ēd-ax,	gluttonous,	„ ēdo
lōqu-ax,	talkative,	„ lōquor
vōr-ax,	voracious,	„ vōro.

Obs. The following Suffixes are less common :

1. **cundus** : as, Irā-cundus, *angry*, from Ira-scor
fā-cundus, *eloquent*, „ fāri

2. **ūlus** : as, quēr-ūlus, *querulous*, „ quēror.

Tivus, Tivus in sense of perf. part. pass.

§ 187. II. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Adjectives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :—

1. **ēus** denotes the material, and sometimes, but rarely, resemblance : as,

aur-ēus,	golden,	from aurum
virgin-ēus,	maidenlike,	„ virgo, -inis.

Also -**nus**, *made of* ; appended to stems of nouns denoting trees ; as ācer-nus, *made of maple*, from ācer, *a maple tree* ; quer-nus [quero-nus], *oaken* ; from quereus.

2. **īcius** or **ītius** denotes the material, or relation to something : as,

lātēr-īcius,	made of bricks,	from lāter
tribūn-īcius,	relating to a tribune,	„ tribūnus
aedil-īcius,	relating to an aedile,	„ aedilis.

Obs. 1. āceus has the same meaning, but is rare : as, argill-āceus, *made of clay*, from argilla.

Obs. 2. Adjectives in **īcius** derived from the Perfect Part. or Supine have the *i* long, and denote the way in which a thing originates, and hence its kind : as, commentīcius, *feigned*.

3. **Icus** denotes belonging or relating to a thing : as,

bell-icus,	<i>relating to war,</i>	from bellum
civ-icus,	<i>relating to a citizen,</i>	.. civis
class-icus,	<i>relating to a fleet,</i>	.. classis.

Obs. The following Adjectives in **icus** have I :

amicus,	<i>friendly,</i>	from	āmo, amor
ant-icus,	<i>front,</i>	..	antē
post-icus,	<i>hinder,</i>	..	post.
ap-icus,	<i>sunny,</i>	..	āperio (?)

4. **ilis** has the same meaning : as,

host-ilis,	<i>hostile,</i>	from hostis
serv-ilis,	<i>slavish,</i>	.. servus
puer-ilis,	<i>childish,</i>	.. puer.

5. **ālis** has the same meaning : as,

fāt-ālis,	<i>fatal,</i>	from fātum
rēg-ālis,	<i>kingly,</i>	.. rex
vīt-ālis,	<i>vital,</i>	.. vita.

Obs. If the last syllable of the substantive is preceded by *l*, the Suffix of the Adjective is **āris** (comp. § 131, 9) : as,

pōpūl-āris,	<i>pertaining to the people,</i>	from pōpūlus
sālūt-āris,	<i>salutary,</i>	.. sālūs, sālūtis.

6. **ius** has the same meaning, and is usually formed from personal names : as,

patr-ius,	<i>pertaining to a father,</i>	from pāter
sōrōr-ius,	<i>pertaining to a sister,</i>	.. sōror
ōrātōr-ius,	<i>pertaining to an orator,</i>	.. ōrātōr.

7. **inus** has the same meaning, and is found especially in derivations from the names of animals : as,

cān-inus,	<i>pertaining to a dog,</i>	from cānis
ēqu-inus,	<i>pertaining to a horse,</i>	.. ēquus
div-inus,	<i>pertaining to the gods,</i>	.. divus.

8. **ānus** has the same meaning : as,

urb-ānus,	<i>pertaining to a city,</i>	from urbs
font-ānus,	<i>pertaining to a fountain,</i>	.. fons, fontis
mont-ānus,	<i>pertaining to a mountain,</i>	.. mons, montis.

9. **āris** has the same meaning : as,

agr-āris,	<i>pertaining to land,</i>	from āgēr
grēg-āris,	<i>belonging to a flock,</i>	.. grex, grēgis
lēgion-āris,	<i>belonging to a legion,</i>	.. lēgio.

Obs. *āris* and *ārium* are often used as the Suffixes of Substantives. See § 142.

10. **ōnus** denotes fulness : as,

lāpīd-ōnus,	<i>full of stones,</i>	from lapis
pēricul-ōnus,	<i>full of dangers,</i>	.. pēriculūm
ānīm-ōnus,	<i>full of courage,</i>	.. ānīmū.

11. **lentus**, usually preceded by the vowel *ū* or *ō*, also denotes fullness: as,

fraud- <i>l</i> entus,	<i>full of deceit,</i>	from <i>fraus</i> (fraud-s)
vi- <i>l</i> entus,	<i>full of violence,</i>	„ <i>vis</i>

12. **ātus**, sometimes **ītus** and **ūtus**, denote having something or provided with something as,

ālā-tus,	<i>furnished with wings, winged,</i>	from <i>āla</i>
tōg-ātus,	„ <i>a toga,</i>	„ <i>tōga</i>
aur-ītus,	„ <i>ears,</i>	„ <i>auris</i>
corn-ūtus,	„ <i>horns, horned,</i>	„ <i>cornu.</i>

§ 188. III. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM PROPER NAMES.

Adjectives are derived from Roman names of men by the Suffix **ānus** or **iānus**: as,

Māri-ānus,	from <i>Mārius</i>
Sull-ānus,	„ <i>Sulla</i>
Gracch-ānus,	„ <i>Gracchus</i>
Cicērōn-iānus,	„ <i>Cicēro.</i>

The Suffix **inus** is rare: as,

Verr-inus (punningly), from *Verres* (or *verres*, a hog).

Obs. From Greek names of men we have the Suffixes **ēus** or **ius** and **īcus**: as,

Epicūr-ēus,	from <i>Epicūrus</i>
Aristōtēl-ius	„ <i>Aristōtēles</i>
Plātōn-īcus,	„ <i>Plāto.</i>

The poets form Adjectives in **ēus** from Roman names: as,

Rōmūl-eus,	from <i>Rōmūlus.</i>
------------	----------------------

§ 189. Adjectives are formed from the names of towns by the addition of the following Suffixes:

1. **ensis**: as,

Cann-ensis,	from <i>Cannae</i>
Cōm-ensis,	„ <i>Cōmum</i>
Sulmōn-ensis	„ <i>Sulmo</i> (<i>Sulmōn-is</i>).

2. **inus**, from names of towns in *ia* and *ium*: as,

Amēr-īnus,	from <i>Amēria</i>
Caud-īnus,	„ <i>Caudium.</i>

3. **ānus**, from names of towns in *a* and *ae*, and from some in *um* and *i*: as,

Rōm-ānus,	from <i>Rōma</i>
Thēb-ānus,	„ <i>Thēbae</i>
Tuscūl-ānus,	„ <i>Tuscūlum</i>
Fund-ānus,	„ <i>Fundi.</i>

4. *As, Gen. Itis*, chiefly from names of towns in *num*, but sometimes from those in *na* and *nae*: *as*,

Arpinās,	from Arpinum
Cāpēnās,	„ Cāpēna
Fidēnās,	„ Fidēnae.

Obs. 1. These Adjectives are also used as Substantives to denote the inhabitants.

Obs. 2. In Adjectives derived from names of Greek towns the Greek suffixes are retained. The most frequent suffix is *ius*: *as*,

Cōrinth-ius,	from Cōrinthus.
--------------	-----------------

§ 190. Sometimes Adjectives in *icus* are formed from the names of people, especially when the latter are used only as Substantives: *as*,

Gall-icus, <i>Gallie</i> ,	from Gallus, a Gaul.
Arab-icus, <i>Arabic</i> ,	„ Arabs, an Arab.

Obs. The names of countries are usually derived from those of the people: *as*, *Hispania*, *Spain*, from *Hispanus*. Adjectives in *ensis* derived from such names denote some relation to the country, not to the people: *as*, *exercitus Hispaniensis*, *an army stationed in Spain*, not an army consisting of Spaniards; but, on the other hand, *spartum Hispanicum* is a plant growing in Spain; similarly *Galicæus* from *Gallus*.

CHAPTER XXXII.—DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 191. I. VERBS DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Derivative Transitive Verbs are usually of the First Conjugation, and are formed from Substantives and Adjectives by the addition of the suffixes of the First Conjugation. They signify *to make* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: *as*,

māture,	<i>I make ripe</i> ,	from māturus
libero,	<i>I make free</i> ,	„ liber
robore,	<i>I make strong, I strengthen</i> ,	„ robōr (robōr-is).

Obs. A few Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are similarly formed: *as*,

finio,	<i>I finish</i> ,	from finis
mollio,	<i>I soften</i> ,	„ mollis.

§ 192. Many Deponents of the First Conjugation are formed in the same way, and signify *to be* or *to provide oneself* with what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: *as*,

ancillor,	<i>I am a maid-servant</i> ,	from ancilla
aquor,	<i>I fetch water</i> ,	„ aqua
lactor,	<i>I am joyful</i> ,	„ lactus
philosophor,	<i>I am a philosopher</i> ,	„ philosophus.

§ 193. Derivative Intransitive Verbs are usually of the Second Conjugation, and are formed in a similar manner from Substantives and Adjectives: as,

calveo,	<i>I am bald,</i>	from calvus
albeo,	<i>I am white,</i>	„ albus.

Obs. Many Verbs of this kind are only found as inceptives (see § 194, 2): as, *dūresco* (*dūreo*), *I grow hard*, from *dūrus*.

§ 194. II. VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

1. *Frequentative Verbs* express the repetition of an action, and are formed by adding *ito* to the Stem of the First Conjugation, and to the Supine of the other Conjugations: as,

clām-ito,	<i>I cry out often,</i>	from clāmo
rōg-ito,	<i>I ask often,</i>	„ rōgo
min-itor,	<i>I threaten often,</i>	„ minor
lect-ito,	<i>I read often,</i>	„ lēgo, lectum
script-ito,	<i>I write often,</i>	„ scribo, scriptum
ven-ito,	<i>I come often,</i>	„ vēnio, ventum.

Obs. Many frequentatives, especially of the Third Conjugation, are formed at once from the Supines by simply adding the terminations of the Verb: as,

curso,	<i>I run hither and thither,</i>	from curro, cursum
salto,	<i>I dance,</i>	„ sālto, saltum.

2. *Inceptive Verbs* express the beginning of an action, and are formed by adding *sco asco, esco, isco*, 3, to the Stems of Substantives and Adjectives as well as of Verbs: as,

lāb-asco,	<i>I begin to totter,</i>	from lābo
cāl-esco,	<i>I grow warm,</i>	„ cāleo
trēm-isco,	<i>I begin to tremble,</i>	„ trēmo
obdormi-sco,	<i>I fall asleep,</i>	„ dormio
sēn-esco,	<i>I grow old,</i>	„ sēnex.

3. *Desiderative Verbs* express a desire after a thing, and are formed from the Supine by adding *ūrio*, and dropping the *um* of the termination: as,

ēs-ūrio,	<i>I long to eat,</i>	from ēdo, ēsum
script-ūrio,	<i>I long to write,</i>	„ scribo, scriptum.

Obs. By analogy is formed *Sullatūrio*, *I long to play the part of Sulla*.

4. *Diminutive Verbs* express a diminution of the action and end in *illo* (*illāre*, 1): as,

cant-illo,	<i>I warble,</i>	from canto
sorb-illo,	<i>I sip,</i>	„ sorbeo
conscrib-illo,	<i>I scribble,</i>	„ conscribo.

§ 195. Intransitive Verbs of the Second Conjugation are sometimes derived from Transitive Verbs of the Third Conjugation, the latter signifying a momentary act and the former a state : as,

jācio,	jācēre,	to throw,	jāceo, jācēre,	to lie.
pendo,	pendēre,	to hang, to weigh,	pendeo, pendēre,	to be hanging.
pārio,	pārēre,	to bring forth,	pāreo, pārēre,	to be visible.
(cando, candēre),	}	to set on fire,	candeo, candēre,	to be burning.
incendo, incendēre,				

CHAPTER XXXIII.—DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 196. Adverbs in ē are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, or from Perfect Participles Passive : as,

mōdestē,	modestly,	from mōdestus
pulchrē,	beautifully,	„ pulcher
doctē,	learnedly,	„ doctus.

Obs. 1. From bōnus comes bēnē, from mālns comes mālē, both with the final e short. From vālidus, strong, comes valdē.

Obs. 2. Some Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have Adverbs in tēr as well as in ē : as,

dūrē,	dūrtēr,	severely,	from dūrus
firmē,	fīrtēr,	firmly,	„ firmus
gnāvē,	gnāvtēr,	actively,	„ gnāvus
hūmānē,	hūmāntēr,	courteously,	„ hūmānus
largē,	largtēr,	bounteously,	„ largus
lūcūlentē,	lūcūlentēr,	splendidly,	„ lūcūlentus.

From viōlentus, vehement, there is only viōlentēr ; the form viōlens is never used in prose.

§ 197. Adverbs in ō are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and from Perfect Participles Passive, and are properly Ablatives Singular : as,

falsō,	falsely,	from falsus
tutō,	safely,	„ tutus
crēbrō,	frequently,	„ crēber.

Obs. The form in o is rare. From some Adjectives come Adverbs both in ē and ō, but with a difference of meaning : as, certō, certainly, and certē, at any rate ; vērō, in truth, indeed, and vērē, truly.

§ 198. Adverbs in tēr are formed from Adjectives of the Third Declension . as,

grāvī-tēr,	heavily,	from grāvis
fēlicī-tēr,	fortunately,	„ fēlix

Obs. If the Stem of an Adjective or Participle ends in *t*, one *t* is omitted: as,

sāpienter, wisely, from sapiens (sapiens-).

§ 199. The Neuters Singular of many Adjectives are used as Adverbs: as,

facile, easily; recens, lately; multum, much.

§ 200. Adverbs in *itūs* are derived from Substantives and Adjectives, and denote *proceeding from something*: as,

coel-itūs, from heaven, from coelum
rādīc-itūs, from the roots, „ rādix (rādīc-s).

§ 201. Adverbs in *tim* are formed from Substantives, Adjectives, and Verbs, and denote the way or manner: as,

cātervā-tim, in troops, from cāterva
privā-tim, as a private person, „ privātus
stā-tim, immediately, „ sto (stare)
punc-tim, with the point, „ pingo.

§ 202. Adverbs derived from Numerals are given in §§ 72, 73

§ 203. Adverbs derived from Pronouns are given in § 133.

CHAPTER XXXIV.—COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

§ 204. A Compound Word is formed of two or more roots.

Obs. Sometimes a Substantive and Adjective, both of which are declined, or a Genitive and the Substantive on which it depends, are written together, but these are not genuine compounds: as,

respublica, Gen. rēipublicae, the commonwealth.
jusjūrandum, Gen. jūrisjūrandi, an oath.
senātus-consultum, a resolution of the senate.
āquae-ductus, water-channel.

§ 205. The first part of a compound word may consist of any part of speech; but a verb is only found in the first part, when *fācio* is in the second: as,

ārēfācio, to make dry
cālēfācio, to make warm.
liquēfācio, to cause to melt.
mādēfācio, to make wet.
pātēfācio, to throw open.

Obs. Such apparent compounds as *nidifīco, I build a nest*, are rather to be referred to an intermediate Adjective: as, *nidifīcus, nest-building.*

§ 206. A compound verb, as a general rule, consists only of a preposition and a verb; but the vowel of the verb usually undergoes the following changes:—

1. Short *a* is usually changed into short *i* before one consonant, but sometimes into short *e*: as,

cāpio,	to take,	accīpio
rāpio,	to seize,	arrīpio
pātiōr,	to suffer	perpētior
grādior,	to walk,	congrēdior.

Obs. Pērāgo, to complete, perplāceo, to please greatly, and faciō compounded with adverbs, as sātisfaciō, to satisfy, are exceptions.

2. *A* before two consonants is usually changed into *e*: as,

carpo,	to pluck,	concerpo
damno,	to condemn,	condemno
scando,	to climb,	conscendo
spargo,	to scatter	conspargo.

3. *A* is sometimes changed into *u*: as,

salto,	to dance,	insulto
calco,	to tread,	conculco
quātio,	to shake,	concutio.

4. Short *e* is changed into short *i* before one consonant: as,

ēgēo,	to want,	indigeo
sēdeo,	to sit,	insideo
tēneo,	to hold,	abstineo.

Obs. Perlēgo, to read through, praelēgo, to read to others, rēlego, to read again, are exceptions.

5. The diphthong *ae* becomes long *i*: as,

caedo,	to cut,	occīdo
quaero,	to seek,	inquīro
laedo,	to strike,	collīdo.

6. The diphthong *au* becomes either *ō* or *u*, but in one instance *ē*: as,

plaudo,	to clap the hands,	explōdo
claudo,	to shut,	conclūdo
audio,	to hear,	ōbēdiō.

Obs. The changes which the prepositions undergo in composition are mentioned in § 138

§ 207. Substantives and Adjectives in composition are usually connected by the vowel *i*, or the last syllable of the first word is changed into *i*: as,

pēdisēquus,	a follower on foot,	from pes (pēd) and sēquor
mūnificus,	bountiful,	„ mūnus and faciō
causidicus,	an advocate,	„ causa and dico
agricōla,	a husbandman,	„ gāer and cōlo
āquillifēr,	a standard-bearer,	„ q uilla and fēro.

§ 208. The quantity of Verbs in composition is the same as that of the simple verbs: as, fēro, affēro; hābeo, prōhibeo, etc. The only apparent exceptions are mentioned in the Prosody.

PART II.—SYNTAX.

BOOK I.

§ 209. Syntax treats of the relations of words and sentences or parts of sentences to each other.

CHAPTER XXXV.—OF SENTENCES.

§ 210. The elementary parts of a sentence are two: SUBJECT and PREDICATE.

The Subject is that whereof something is affirmed or predicated (*praedicāre, to affirm*); the Predicate is that which is affirmed of the Subject.

Obs. 1. In Grammar, the terms Subject and Predicate are applied to single words; the remaining words of the sentence being regarded as *enlargements* of the Subject or Predicate. Thus in the sentence, *Alexander Magnus rex Mācēdōnum ērat, Alexander the Great was king of the Macedonians*, *Alexander* is the Subject, and *rex* the Predicate; *Magnus* being an enlargement of the Subject (*Alexander*), and *Macedonum* an enlargement of the Predicate (*rex*). Transitive verbs require an object as the complement of the Predicate: thus in the sentence, *Caesar vicit Gallos, Caesar conquered the Gauls*, the object *Gallos* is a complement of the predicate *vicit*.

Obs. 2. The term Predicate is by an extension of its original meaning applied to sentences which contain a question or a command instead of an affirmation: as,

Quis crēdat! who would believe? Tu ne quāsiēris, inquire not thou: where the Predicates are credat and quāsiēris.

§ 211 THE SUBJECT.—The Subject of a sentence must be either a Substantive or some word (or words) equivalent to a Substantive: as,

India mittit ēbur, India sends ivory.—Virg.

Hos ēgo versicūlos fēci, I made these little verses.

Obs. The Subject is often only indicated by the termination of a Verb, so that a sentence may consist of a single word; as, *vīcimus, we have conquered; fūerunt, they have been, have ceased to exist.*

§ 212. Hence the Infinitive Mood, being a verbal Substantive, is often the Subject of a sentence: as,

Pulchrum est dīgito monstrāri, It is a fine thing to be pointed out (for admiration) with the finger.—Pers. (Subject, dīgito monstrāri.)

Obs. Any word, or even letter, when spoken of *as a word*, may become the Subject of a sentence: as,

Atque particūla conjunctio esse dīcitur connexīva, The particle atque is said to be a connective conjunction.—Gell.

§ 213. THE PREDICATE.—The Predicate of a sentence may be a Verb, an Adjective, or another Substantive: as,

Omnia jam fient, All the things will now come to pass—Ov.

Socrâtes Graecôrum sapientissimus (erat), Socrates was the wisest of the Greeks.—Cic.

Hannibal Hamilcâris filius (fuit), Hannibal was the son of Hamilcar.—Nep.

(N.B. For the Syntax of the Predicate, see §§ 219-227.)

Obs. 1. When the Verb "to be" is employed to connect Subject and Predicate (as in two of the above examples), it is called the Copula (*côpûla*, *tie* or *band*).

Obs. 2. Occasionally an Adverb forms the Predicate after the Verb *esse*: as, *bene, recte est, it is well.*

§ 214. APPPOSITION.—Sometimes a Substantive is defined by the addition of another Substantive descriptive of it. The latter Substantive is said to be in *Apposition* with the former, and is put in the same Case, generally in the same number, and, if possible, in the same Gender.

Thémistocles, impêrâtor Persico bello, Graeciam servitute librâvit, Themistocles, commander in the Persian war, delivered Greece from bondage.—Cic.

Scëlêrum inventor Ûlysses, Ulysses, contriver of wicked deeds.—Virg.

Ôleae Minerva inventrix, Minerva, inventor of the olive.—Virg.

Ut ômittam illas omnium doctrinarum inventrices Athênas, To say nothing of the famous Athens, inventresses of every branch of learning.—Cic.

Obs. 1. In the case of Substantives possessing a twofold form, as *mâgister, mâgistra*; *minûster, minûstra*; *inventor, inventrix*; and the like, the Masculine form is used in apposition with Masculine Substantives, and the Feminine with Feminines, as in the preceding examples.

Obs. 2. Two Substantives often come together in the same case by Apposition, when a person or place is indicated at once by its name: as, *Ros Tullius, urbs Roma.* (Never *urbs Romae*.)

§ 215. When the Substantive in Apposition is not of the same Gender or Number as that to which it refers, the Predicate usually follows the Gender and number of the original subject: as,

Tulliôla, deliciôlas nostrae, mânusculum tuum flagitat, Tullia, my little darling, clamours for your present.—Cic.

Obs. Not always, however: comp. *Cic. Manil. 1, 11, Corinthum (fem.) Graeciae lumen extinctum esse voluerunt, They would have Corinth, the light of Greece, put out.*

But when the Substantive in apposition is *urbs, oppidum, ciuitas* or a similar word, the Predicate is regularly made to agree therewith: as,

Côrîôll oppidum captum (est), The town of Corioli was taken.—Liv.

§ 216. Adjectives and Participles can also be used in Apposition; when of course (§ 223), they agree with the Substantives to which they refer in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

Catīlina, nobīli gēnere nātus, fuit magnā vī et ānīmī et corpōris.
Catiline, born of a distinguished family, was possessed of great strength of mind and body.—Sall.

Artes sunt innūmērābīles, ad victum nēcessāriæ, *There are innumerable arts necessary for living.*—Cic.

§ 217. Sometimes simple Apposition takes place where in English we should use the words “as” or “when:” as,

Dēfendi rempublicam jūvēnis, *I defended the commonwealth as (or when) a young man.*—Cic.

Nēmo fēre saltat sōbrius, nīsi forte insānit, *Hardly any one dances when sober, unless, perchance, he is out of his mind.*—Cic.

Obs. But when *as* denotes something supposed or presumed (e.g. he was taken up as a thief), it must be expressed by *tamquam, quāsi* or *ūt*; and when *as* denotes a comparison, it must be expressed by *ūt, sic—ūt, tamquam*: as,

Cicēro ea, quæ nunc ūsū vēniunt, cēcīnit ūt vātes, *Cicero predicted, like a prophet, those things which are now happening.*—Nep.

CHAPTER XXXVI.—CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT.

§ 218. Syntax is sometimes divided into two parts
 SYNTAX OF CONCORD and SYNTAX OF GOVERNMENT.

The Syntax of Concord treats of such agreement or correspondence as exists between words related to each other; Syntax of Government of the modifying influence exerted upon one word by another on which it depends. Thus in the sentence,

Alexander vicit Darium, *Alexander conquered Darius,*

the Verb *vicit* corresponds (“agrees”) with the subject *Alexander* in Number and Person [Syntax of Concord]; while the Substantive *Darium* is put in the Accusative Case, on account of its dependence upon the Transitive Verb *vicit*, by which it is said to be “governed.” [Syntax of Government.]

First Concord.

§ 219. *The Nominative Case and Verb.*—A Verb agrees with its Subject or Nominative Case in Number and Person: as,

Cōnon magnas res gessit, Conon achieved great exploits.—Nep.

Magnus hoc bello Thēmistocles fuit, Themistocles was great in this war.—Nep.

Athēnienses omnium civium suōrum pōtentiam extimescēbant, The Athenians stood in great dread of the predominance of any of their fellow-citizens.—Nep.

§ 220. When two or more Substantives form the joint Subject, the Verb is put in the Plural Number: as,

Castor et Pollux ex ēquis pugnāre visi sunt, Castor and Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.—Cic.

Syphax regnumque ejus in pōtestatē Rōmānōrum erant, Syphax and his kingdom were in the hands of the Romans.—Liv.

Vita, mors, divitiæ, paupertas, omnes hōmīnes vēhementissimē permōvent, Life, death, riches, poverty, have very great influence upon all people.—Cic.

Obs. 1. When the Subject consists of two Singular Substantives which together form but one idea, the Verb is in the Singular: as,

Sēnātus pōpulusque Rōmānus intelligit, The senate and people of Rome are (lit. is) aware.—Cic.

Tempus nēcēssitasque postulat, Time and necessity demand.—Cic.

Obs. 2. Sometimes, when there are two or more subjects, the Verb agrees with the nearest and is understood with the rest: as,

Orgētōrigis filia et ūnus e filiis captus est, The daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons was taken prisoner.—Caes.

Obs. 3. Occasionally a Plural Verb is used when an Ablative is connected by the Preposition *cum* with a Nominative Case in the Singular: as,

Bocchus cum pēditibus . . . postrēmam aciem Rōmānōrum invadunt, Bocchus along with the infantry fall (s) upon the rear of the Romans.—Sall.

Obs. 4. When the Subject consists of two Substantives connected by *aut*, the Verb may be in the Plural as well as the Singular: as,

Si Socrātes aut Antisthēnes dicēret or dicērent, If Socrates or Antisthenes were to speak. (See Zumpt, L. G. § 374.)

§ 221. When Subjects having a common Predicate are of different Persons, the First is preferred to the Second, and the Second to the Third. For in fact a Subject of the First Person and a Subject of the Second or Third Person are together equivalent to a First Person Plural (= *nos*); while a Subject of the Second Person and a Subject of the Third Person are together equivalent to a Second Person Plural

(= vos): thus *ĕgo et tu*, or *ĕgo et frāter meus*, both = *nos*; while *tu et ille*, *tu et frāter*, = *vos*: as,

Si tu et Tullia lux nostra vālētis, *ego et suāvissīmus Cīcēro vālēmus*,
If you and my darling Tullia (= ye) are well, so am I and my sweetest
Cicero (= so are we).—Cic

Obs. In Latin the First Person always takes precedence of the Second: as,
ĕgo et rex, I and the king.

§ 222. When the Subject is a Collective Substantive (“Noun of Multitude”), or a word implying plurality, the Verb is sometimes put in the Plural, especially in the poets: as,

Tūra fērant plācentque nōvum pia turba Quīrīnum, Let the pious
people offer incense and propitiate the new (deity) Quirinus.—Ov.

Dēsectam sēgētem magna vis hōmīnum sīmul immissa corbībus fūdēre
in *Tībērim*, A large body of men was set to work at once to reap the corn
and empty it from baskets into the Tiber.—Liv.

Obs. 1. This construction is far less common in Latin than in English, and is rarely used when the Collective Substantive stands quite by itself. In the following passage the Singular and Plural are combined:—

Pars stāpet innuptae dōnum exītiāle Mīnervae
Et mīrantur ĕqui mōlem,

Part are awe-struck at unwedded Minerva's fatal offering, and wonder at
the massy bulk of the horse.—Virg.

Obs. 2. A Plural Verb is sometimes used after *ūterque*, *quisque* (especially *pro se quisque*), *pars*—*pars* (for *ālii*—*ālii*), *ālius*—*ālium*, and *alter*—*alterum*, since these words contain the idea of plurality: as,

Eōdem die ūterque eōrum ex castris stātīvis exercītum ēdūcunt, On the
same day both of them lead out the army from the stationary camp.—Caes.

Missi (sunt) hōnōrātissīmus quisque ex patrībūs, All the most distinguished
(lit. every most distinguished man) from the fathers were sent.—Liv.

Second Concord.

§ 223. *The Substantive and Adjective*.—An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

Jam pauea ārātro jūgēra rēgiae
Mōles rēlinquent,

Ere long the princely piles will leave few acres for the plough.—Hor.

— *Nec te [sīlēbo] mētūende certā*
Phoebe sāgittā,

Nor will I hold my peace of thee, Phoebus; to be dreaded for thine
unerring shaft.—Hor.

Obs. The rule is the same whether the Adjective is used as an Attribute or a
Predicate: as, *vīr hōnus*, a good man; or *vīr est hōnus*, the man is good.

§ 224. In like manner, the Perfect Participle used in

forming the Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice, agrees in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb: as,

Omnium assensu comprobata oratio est, The speech was approved by the assent of all.—Liv.

Neglectum Anxuri praesidium (est), The garrison at Anxur was not looked after.—Liv.

§ 225. When an Adjective or Participle is predicated of two or more Subjects at once, it is put in the Plural Number.

(1.) If the Subjects are *persons*, though of different genders, the Adjective is Masculine: as,

Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt, My father and mother are dead.—Ter.

(2.) If the Subjects are *things* without life, and of different genders, the Adjective is Neuter: as,

Secundae res, honores, imperia, victoriae fortuita sunt, Prosperity, honours, places of command, victories are accidental.—Cic.

Labor voluptasque societate quidam inter se conjuncta sunt, Labour and enjoyment are linked together by a kind of partnership.—Liv.

Obs. 1. Even if the things are of the same Gender, the Neuter is often used; as,

Ira et avaritia imperio potentiora erant, Anger and avarice were too strong to be controlled.—Liv.

Obs. 2. When an Adjective is used attributively of more than one Substantive, it usually agrees with the nearest, and is left to be understood with the rest: as, *omnes agri et maria, all seas and lands*; or the Adjective is repeated, as, *agri omnes omniaque maria.*

§ 226. Sometimes the Adjective or Participle of the Predicate follows the *sense* instead of the grammatical form of the Subject: as,

Duo millia Tyriorum crucibus affixi sunt. Two thousand Tyrians were crucified.—Curt.

Capita conjunctionis virgis caesi ac securi percussi sunt, The heads of the conspiracy were scourged and beheaded.—Liv.

Obs. In both the above examples the Masculine of the participle is used because *Persons* are meant, though the words *millia* and *capita* are Neuter.

§ 227. Sometimes a predicative Adjective, instead of agreeing in Gender with the Subject, is put in the Neuter; where in English we should express the word "*thing*:" as,

Triste lupo stabulis. The wolf is a sorry thing in cattle-stalls.—Virg.

Turpitudine prius est quam dolor, Disgrace is a worse thing than pain.—Cic.

Third Concord.

§ 228. *The Relative and its Antecedent.*—The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

Ego, qui te confirmo, ipso me non possum, I echo am encouraging you, cannot (encourage) myself.—Cic.

Nullum animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest, No animal, which has blood, can be destitute of a heart.—Cic.

Obs. The Case of the Relative is determined by its relation to its own clause, which is thus treated as a separate sentence: as,

Arbiter sœdri diligens agricola, quorum adimplet bæccam ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman will plant trees, the fruit of which he will himself never set eyes on.—Cic.

NOTE.—Here the Relative *quorum* is governed by the Substantive bæccam in the Relative sentence. [Genitive of Possessor, § 263.]

§ 229. When the Relative has for its Predicate a Substantive of different gender from the Antecedent, the Relative usually agrees in gender with the Predicate: as,

Caesar Gomphos pervēnit, quod est (not qui sunt) oppidum Bocœtiæ. Caesar came to Gomphi, which is a town of Boeotia.—Caes.

Lævis est Anlini, justam gloriæ, qui (not quæ) est fructus vœræ virtutis honestissimus, repudiare, It is characteristic of a worthless mind to despise just glory, which is the most honourable fruit of true virtue.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The same construction is used when the Relative is the Subject of a Passive Verb of naming (§ 232), or the object of an Active one (§ 234): as,

Pêrôrâtio, qui Epilôgus dicitur, The conclusion of a speech, which is called the epilogue.—Cic.

Insimilia conjuncta, quas urbes dicimus, Dwelling-houses connected together, which we call cities.—Cic.

Obs. 2. The same construction is found in the case of the demonstrative and determinative Pronouns: as,

Idem velle et idem nolle, ea (not id) dëmum vœra amicitia est, To have the same wishes and the same fears, that and nothing short of it is true friendship.—Sall.

§ 230. When the Relative has for its Antecedent a whole proposition, the latter is treated as a Neuter Substantive: as,

Sapientes soli, quod est proprium divitiarum, contenti sunt rebus suis, Wise men only—that properly belongs to wealth—are content with what is their own.—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the simple relative, *id quod* (sometimes *quæ res*) may be used: as,

Timoleon, id quod difficilior putatur, multo sapientius tolit secundam, quam adversam fortunam, Timoleon—that is thought the more difficult—bore prosperity much more wisely than adversity.—Nep.

CHAPTER XXXVII.—THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

§ 231. The Nominative Case is used to denote the Subject of a Sentence : as,

Ego rēges ējēcī, vos tȳrannos intrōdūcītis, I expelled kings, ye are bringing in despots.—Auct. ad Her.

See also § 219.

Obs. Only in the case of the Infinitive Mood, as in the *Obliqua oratio*, the Subject is in the Accusative.

§ 232. The Nominative is also used as descriptive of the Subject after the following classes of Verbs :—

(1.) Verbs which signify *to be* or *to become* : as, *sum, existo, fio, evādo* (*to issue, turn out*) *nascor* (*to be born*), etc.

(2.) Verbs which denote a *state* or *mode of existence* ; also, *gesture* : as, *māneo* (*to remain*), *dūro* (*to endure*), *incēdo* (*to walk*), etc.

(3.) Passive Verbs of *naming, making, appointing* : as, *nōmīnor, dicor, appellor* [also *audio*, in sense of *to be called*] ; *creor, fio, dēsīgnor, instituor*, etc.

(4.) Verbs signifying *to seem* or *be thought* : as, *videor, hābeor, existimor, dūcor*, etc. : as,

(1.) *Nēmo rēpente fit turpissīmus, No one becomes utterly base all at once.*—Juv.

(2.) *Mūnitiōnes integræ mănēbant, The fortifications remained entire.*—Caes.

Divum incēdo rēgina, I walk queen of the gods.—Virg.

(3.) *Nūma Pompilius rex creātus est, Numa Pompilius was made king.*—Eutr.

Justitia erga deos religio dicītur, Justice towards the gods is called religion.—Cic.

(4.) *Sātis altitudo mūri exstructa vidēbātur, The height of the wall seemed sufficiently raised.*—Nep.

In rēbus angustis animōsus et fortis appārē, In trying circumstances, show thyself courageous and manly.—Hor.

Obs. *Videor* is generally used as a personal verb, though more frequently translated in English as an impersonal : as,

Ne Alpes vīseisse Hannibālem videantur, Lest it should seem that the Alps have conquered Hannibal.—Liv.

§ 233. The Nominative is used even after the Infinitive of the above-mentioned Verbs, when they follow *possum*,

volo, malo, nolo, cupio; incipio, coepi; desino; videor, existimor, and the like: as,

Beātus esse sine virtūte nemo potest, No one can be happy without virtue.—Cic.

Cato bonus esse quam videri mallebat, Cato preferred being good to seeming so.—Sall.

Miltiades non videbatur posse esse privatus, Miltiades did not seem to be capable of being a mere private citizen.—Nep.

Desinant nimium esse timidi, Let them cease to be so excessively fearful.—Cic.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1. Accusative of the Object.

§ 234. The Accusative denotes the *Direct Object* of an Action.

Transitive Verbs of all kinds, both Active and Deponent, govern the Accusative (see, however, § 84, 1, *Obs.*).

Deus mundum aedificavit, God built the world.—Cic.

Glōria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur, Glory follows virtue like a shadow.—Cic.

Nulla ars imitari sollertiam naturae potest, No art can imitate the ingenuity of Nature.—Cic.

Obs. 1. Active Transitive Verbs which govern the Accusative case are capable of becoming Passive, the object of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Nominative of the subject, and the subject of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Ablative of the Instrument or Agent: if the Agent is a living being, the Preposition *a* or *ab* is prefixed: as, *magister puerum laudat, The master praises the boy, becomes in the Passive, puer a magistro laudatur, The boy is praised by the master.*

Obs. 2. But the Verbs which govern any other case can be used in the Passive only impersonally: as,

Invidetur praestanti florentique fortunae, Eminent and flourishing fortune is envied.—Cic. (Lit., Envy is felt by men for eminent fortune.)

Non paratur libori, Labour shall not be spared.—Cic. (Lit., There shall be no sparing for labour.)

The Dative still indicates the *Object* no less after the Passive than after the Active Verb.

Obs. 3. The principal apparent exceptions to the Government of an Accusative by Transitive Verbs will be found at § 291.

§ 235. *Cognate Accusative.*—Intransitive Verbs are sometimes followed by an Accusative of cognate or kindred sense to themselves: as,

Hac nocte mirum somniari somnium, This night I dreamt a strange dream.—Plaut.

Vērissimum jursjūrandum jūrāre, To swear a most true oath.—Cic.

Obs. The Intransitive Verb has in such cases a transitive force: thus, *to dream* a dream = *to have* a dream; *to swear* an oath = *to use* or *utter* an oath. This construction is especially used when an Attributive Adjective is employed, as in examples given.

§ 236. Some other Intransitive Verbs may govern an Accusative by virtue of a transitive sense involved in them. Thus, *sitio, I thirst (for) = I desire eagerly*; *contrēmo, I tremble (at) = I fear*; *horreo, I shudder (at) = I dread*; *fleo, I weep (for) = I lament*; *rideo, I laugh (at) = I ridicule*; *dēpereo, I am dying (for) = I desperately love*: as,

Sanguinem nostram sitiēbat, He was thirsting for our blood.—Cic.

Séquāni Ariovisti crudelitatem horrēbant, The Sequani dreaded the cruelty of Ariovistus.—Caes.

Nemo illic vitia ridet, No one there laughs at vice.—Tac.

Contrēmere hastam, To tremble at the lance.—Virg.

Obs. 1. This construction is widely used in the poets and later writers: as, *pallere pontum, to turn pale at (the sight of) the sea (Hor.)*; *erubescere jura, to blush at, i.e. to respect rights (Virg.)*.

Obs. 2. But such Verbs, not being real Transitives, are not often used as Personal Passives (§ 234, *Obs. 1*): thus such forms as *doleor, horreo*, are never found.

Rideo, to ridicule, takes a personal passive: as, *mérito ridēri, to be deservedly laughed at.—Quint.*

§ 237. In like manner Verbs signifying *to taste of* and *to smell of* (to yield a savour, emit an odour) are used as Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Ōlet unguenta, He smells of perfumes.—Ter.

Piscis ipsum mare sāpit, The fish tastes of the very sea.—Sen.

And in a figurative sense:—

Ōlet pēgrinum, It has a foreign smell.—Cic.

Rēdōlet antiquitatem, It smacks of antiquity.—Cic.

§ 238. All Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions *circum, per, praeter, trans, super, and subter*, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Tīmōtheus Pēlōponnēsū circumvēhens Lācōnīam pōpūlātus est, Timotheus sailing round Peloponnesus, laid waste Laconia.—Nep.

Hannibal Alpes cum exercitu transiit, Hannibal crossed the Alps with an army.—Nep.

Obs. Such verbs are regarded as real Transitives, and sometimes become Personal Passives, the object of an Active Verb becoming the subject of the Passive (§ 234, *Obs. 1*): as,

Rhōdānus nonnullis locis rādo transiitur, The Rhone is crossed in some places by a ford.—Caes.

§ 239. *Many* Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions *ad* and *in*, and *some* verbs compounded with *ante*, *con*, *ex*, and *prae*, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Nāves Gēnuam accessērunt, *The ships reached Genoa.*—Liv.

Urbem invādunt, *They fall upon the city.*—Virg.

Nēmīnem convēni, *I have met no one.*—Cic.

Sociētātem coīre, *To form a partnership.*—Cic.

Mōdum excēdere, *To exceed the limit.*—Cic.

Quantum Galli virtūte cēteros mortāles praestārent, *How much the Gauls surpassed the rest of mankind in valour.*—Liv.

Nēmō eum in amīcitiā antecessit, *no one excelled him in friendship.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. After Verbs compounded with *ex*, the Ablative is more common (see § 306); and after those compounded with *con*, *prae*, *ante*, the Dative (§ 292).

Obs. 2. With many of these verbs the Preposition is very often repeated: as, *accēdo ad*, *invādo in*, *excēdo ex*.

§ 240. Intransitive verbs of rest (as *sēdeo*, *sto*, *sisto*), compounded with *circum*, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Ēquites Rōmāni sēnātum circumstant, *Roman knights stand around the senate.*—Cic.

§ 241. These five Impersonal Verbs, *pūdet*, *it shameth*; *taedet*, *it wearieth*; *poenitet*, *it repenteth*; *pīget*, *it grieveth*; and *mīseret*, *it pitieth* (*affects with pity*): take an Accusative of the Person *whom the feeling affects*. The object of the feeling is put in the Genitive (see § 282): as

Mē pīget stultitiāe meae, *I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

Tīmōthei post mortem pōpūlum jūdicii sūi poenituit, *After the death of Timotheus the people repented of their judgment.*

Obs. The Object (or *cause*) of the feeling is sometimes expressed by an Infinitive mood or clause: as,

Non me rixisse poenitet, *I repent not having lived.*—Cic.

Quintum poenitet, *quod ānimum tuum offendit*, *Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.*—Cic.

§ 242. In like manner *dēcet*, *it is becoming*, and *dēdēcet*, *it is unbecoming*, take an Accusative of the Person: but, unlike the above-named Impersonals, they may have an Impersonal Nominative as their subject: as,

Orātōrem mīnime dēcet irasci, *It very ill becomes a speaker to lose his temper.*—Cic.

Trux dēcet ira fēras, *Savage anger becomes wild-beasts.*—Ov.

Obs. In like manner the Impersonals *oportet*, it behoves; *jūvat*, it delights; *lātet*, fallit, *fūgit*, *praetīrit*, it escapes (notice); take an Accusative of the Person. *Oportet* takes also an Infinitive Mood, but never a Nominative of the subject.

2. Double Accusative.

§ 243. Verbs of *teaching* and *concealing* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, *dōceo*, *I teach* (with its compounds); *cēlo*, *I conceal, hide from*: as,

Quis mūsicam dōcuerit Epāmīnondam, Who taught Epaminondas music.—Nep.

Non cēlavi te sermōnem hōmīnum, I have not kept from you the men's discourse.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The reason of this double Accusative is that we may say, for example, both *dōcuit mūsicam, he taught music*; and *dōcuit Epāmīnondam, he taught Epaminondas*; hence blending the two, *musicam docuit Epaminondam*.

Obs. 2. *Dōceo*, to inform, takes the Ablative with *de*: as,

Praemittit ad Boios qui de suo adventu dōceant, He sends forward men to the Boii to inform them of his arrival.—Caes. (It may also be followed by a relative clause, or by the Accusative and Infinitive.)

Obs. 3. *Cēlo*, to conceal, takes the Ablative with *de* in the Passive, and sometimes in the Active: as,

Est de illo rēnēno cēlata māter, The mother was kept in ignorance of that poisoning.—Cic.

Obs. 4. *Accusative after a Passive Verb.* When a Verb of *teaching* is turned into the Passive, the thing taught may still remain in the Accusative: as,

L. Marcius omnes militiæ artes edoctus fuerat, Lucius Marcius had been taught all the arts of war.—Liv.

Obs. 5. With verbs of *teaching*, the instrument on which an art is practised is put in the Ablative: as,

Sōcrātem fidibus dōcuit nōbīssīmus Idīceus, A most distinguished lyrist taught Socrates the lyre (i.e. to play on the lyre).—Cic.

§ 244. Some verbs of *asking*, *entreating*, and *demanding*, take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, *rōgo*, *I ask*; *ōro*, *I entreat*; *posco* (*rēposco*), *flāgīto*, *I demand*: as,

Lēgāti Verrem simūlācrum Cērēris rēposcunt, The envoys demand back from Verres the statue of Ceres.—Cic.

Cæsar frumentum Aeduos flāgītābat, Caesar kept demanding corn of the Aedui.—Caes.

Obs. 1. *Pēto*, *postūlo*, and *quæro* are not used with a double Accusative. *Postūlo* takes the Ablative of the person with *ab* or *de*; *quæro* and *pēto* the Ablative of the person with *ex*, *ab*, or *de*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of *inquiring* or *asking* often take the Ablative of the thing with *de* (*interrōgo*, *percontor* *āliquem de āliqua re*). The double Accusa-

tive is most frequently used when the thing is expressed by the neuter of a pronoun or an adjective (comp. § 253): as,

Hoc te ōro, I entreat you this; multa me interrōgāvit, He asked me many questions.

Obs. 3. When a verb of asking, &c., is turned into the Passive, the thing may still remain in the Accusative: as,

Prīmus rōgātus est sententiam, He was first asked for his opinion.—Sall.

§ 245. *Factitive Accusative*.—Verbs signifying, *to make or appoint, to name, to reckon or esteem*, and the like, take after them a double Accusative—one of the Object and the other of the Predicate to that object: as,

Ancum Martium rēgem (Fact. Acc.) pōpulus crēavit, The people made Ancus Martius king.—Liv.

Cicēronem ūniversa civitas consulem (Fact. Acc.) dēclārāvit, The whole state declared Cicero consul.—Cic.

Rōmulus urbem ex nōmine suo Rōmam (Fact. Acc.) vōcāvit, Romulus called the city Rome from his own name.—Eutr.

Contempsit Sicīlios, non duxit (cos) hōmīnes (Fact. Acc.), He despised the Sicilians; he did not take them for human beings.—Cic.

Obs. The Factitive Accusative becomes a Predicative Nominative after the Passive of the above verbs: see § 232.

§ 246. Some Transitive Verbs compounded with *trans* and *circum*, as *transjicio, transduco, transporto, to carry across*, and *circumduco, to lead around*, take after them a double Accusative: as,

Āgēsilaus Hellespontum cōpias trājēcit, Agesilaus carried his troops across the Hellespont.—Nep.

Hannibal nōnāginta mīllia pēditum Ibērum trādūxit, Hannibal led ninety thousand foot-soldiers across the Iberus.—Liv.

Pompēius Roscillum omnia sua præsēlia circumduxit, Pompeius led Roscillus round all his entrenchments.—Caes.

Obs. 1. In such cases, one Accusative is governed by the Verb, and the other by the Preposition in composition. Thus the first of the above examples might be read, *Agesilaus trans Hellespontum copias jecit.*

Obs. 2. In the Passive one of the two Accusatives may remain: as,

Māior multitūdo Germānōrum Rhēnum traosdūcitur, A greater multitude of Germans is carried across the Rhine.—Caes.

Obs. 3. Transitive Verbs compounded with *circum* take more frequently an Accusative and a Dative (see § 292, obs. 4).

3. Accusative of Motion towards.

§ 247. Names of Towns and small Islands are used in the Accusative without a Preposition after Verbs signifying *Motion towards*. For examples, see § 259 in the Appendix on the Construction of names of Towns.

§ 248. Similarly the Accusative is used after many Prepositions signifying *motion towards, proximity, or relation to*: as, *ad, in* for *into, inter, prōpē, &c.* See the Chapter on Prepositions.

4. Accusative of Time or Space.

§ 249. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are put in the Accusative, answering to the questions—*How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How thick?* as,

Quaedam bestiōlæ unum diem vivunt, Some insects live but one day.—Cic.

Pēricles quadrāginta annos praeſuit Āthēnis, Pericles governed Athens for forty years.—Cic.

Pēdem e villā adhuc ēgressi non sūmus, As yet we have not stirred one foot from the country house.—Cic.

Campus Mārathon ab Āthēnis circiter millia passuum dēcem ābet, The plain (of) Marathon is distant from Athens about ten thousand paces.—Nep.

Millites aggērem lātum pēdes trēcentos triginta, altum pēdes octōginta exstruxērunt, The soldiers constructed a mound 330 feet broad and 80 feet high.—Caes.

(Without the Adj. *latus, altus*, the Genitive would have been used: see § 274.)

Obs. 1. Duration of Time is also expressed emphatically by *per*: as,

Lūdi dēcem per dies facti sunt, The games were celebrated through ten entire days.—Cic.

Obs. 2. Duration of time is sometimes, but rarely, expressed by the Ablative in the best writers: as,

Pugnātum est continenter hōris quinque, They fought for five hours incessantly.—Caes.

Obs. 3. In the same manner in answer to the question, *how old?* the Accusative is used with *nātus, born*, (so many years): as,

Alcibiādes annos circiter quadrāginta nātus diem obiit suprēmum, Alcibiades died when about forty years old.—Nep.

5. Accusative in Exclamations.

§ 250. The Accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an Interjection (cf. § 516): as,

Me caecum, qui haec ante non viderim, My blindness not to have seen this before!—Cic

O vim maximam erroris, O the enormous power of error!—Cic.

Eheu mihi miserum, O hapless me!

Pro deorum atque hominum fidem! In the name of gods and men!—Cic.

En quattuor aras, Lo, four altars.—Virg.

Obs. 1. But *en* and *ecce* are quite as frequently found with the Nominative: as,

Ecce tuæ literæ (sc. sunt) de Varrōne, There is your letter about Varro!—Cic.

Obs. 2. *Hei* and *eae* are construed with the Dative (*Dativus incommodi*): as,
Vae victis, Woe to the conquered.—Liv.

Hei misero mihi, Woe to wretched me.—Ter.

6. Accusative of Closer Definition.

§ 251. The Accusative is used, especially by the Poets, after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to indicate the part of the Subject specially referred to: as,

Hannibal, adversum fémur graviter ictus, cecidit, Hannibal fell severely wounded in the fore part of the thigh.—Liv.

Equus tremat artus, The horse trembles in its limbs.—Virg.

Feminae nudae brachia et lacertos, Women with both the lower and upper part of the arm bare.—Tac.

Trāiectus pēdes, With the feet pierced.—Virg.

Obs. In prose, the Ablative is more generally used: as,

Pēdibus aeger, Diseased in the feet.—Cic.

Capti oculis talpae, Moles maimed in the eyes (i.e. blind).—Virg.

7. Greek Accusative.

§ 252. Sometimes, by a Greek idiom, a Passive Verb is used in a middle sense, and made to govern an Accusative: as, *induor, amīcior, I clothe, put on myself; exuor, I strip off (from myself); cingor, accingor, I gird on myself; and the like: as,*

Inutile ferrum cingitur, He girds on the bootless steel.—Virg.

Andrōgei galeam induitur, He puts on the helmet of Androgeus.—Virg.

Obs. On this principle must be explained Horace's,

Suspensi lōcnlos tábulamque lacerto, With their satchels and tablet swinging at their elbow. (Suspensi, having fastened to themselves: ἀπηρτημένοι.) But the construction is confined to the poets.

8. Other Uses of the Accusative.

§ 253. The Neuters of some Pronouns (*quid, quod, id, hoc, illud, idem, &c.*), and of Adjectives implying number (*unum, multa, pauca, &c.*), are frequently used with verbs which require a different construction in the case of other words: as,

Idem glōriāri, To make the same boast.—Cic.

Omnes muliēres eādē student, All women have the same inclinations.—Ter.

Id opēram do, I strive after this.—Ter.

Utrumque laetor, I rejoice at both things.—Cic.

Quid ōpus facto sit, What it may be necessary to do.—Ter. (Phor. 5, 1, 35.)

Discipūlos id ūnum mōneo, I remind pupils of this one thing.—Cic.
Saepe non audimus ea, quae ab naturā mōnemur, We often do not listen to those admonitions which we receive from nature.—Cic.

Obs. 1. This Accusative may also be used with the Passive, as in the last example.

Obs. 2. The same construction is used even without verbs : as,
Id tempōris, At that time.—Cic.

Hōmo id aetātis, A man of that age.—Cic.

§ 254. The Accusative is used adverbially in the expressions, *magnam (maximam) partem, for the most part ; vicem, on account of, in the manner of ; sēcus, sex ; cētera, in other respects ; nihil, not at all* : as,

Snēvi maximam partem lacte atque pēcōre vivunt, The Suevi for the most part live on milk and cattle.—Cic.

Tuam vicem saepe dōleo, I often grieve on your account.—Cic.

Hūmānam vicem, After the manner of men.—Hor.

Libērōrum cāpitum virile sēcus ad dēcem millia capta, Ten thousand free persons of the male sex were taken.—Liv.

Vir cētera ēgrēgius, A man admirable in other respects.—Liv.

Sēnātus nihil sānē intentus, The senate (was) not at all on the alert.—Sall.

§ 255. On the construction of the Accusative Case and Infinitive Mood, see the Syntax of Verbs (§ 507).

APPENDIX ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

§ 256. It has been thought advisable to place together all the rules for the construction of the names of towns and small islands, in answer to the questions *Where ? Whither ? Whence ?*

1. Answer to the Question *Where ?*

§ 257. In answer to the question *Where ?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Substantive be of the First or Second Declension and Singular ; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition : as,

Rōmae Consūles, Athēnis Archontes, Carthāgine Suffētes, sive iudices, quōlannis creābantur, At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually.—Nep.

Tibure Rōmanū amo, When at Tiroli I am in love with Rome.—Hor.

Thēbis, Argis, Ulubris, At Thebes, Argos (Argi), Ulubrae.—Hor.

Dionysius Cōrinthi puēros docēbat, Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.—Cic.

Obs. 1. There can be no doubt that these cases were originally *Locatives*, a case which exists in Sanscrit, with the termination *i* in the Singular.

This accounts for the form *ae* in the 1st Declension, which was originally *ai*, for the form *i* in the 2nd Declension, and for such forms as *Carthāginal*,

Lacedaemōni, in the 3rd Declension, which frequently occur in MSS., instead of the Ablative, in answer to the question *Where?* Hence *ruri* rather than *rūre*, in the country. See § 258.

Obs. 2. When the name of a town is qualified by an Adjective, the Ablative is used either with or without the preposition *in*: as,

In ipsā Alexandria, At Alexandria itself.—Cic.

Obs. 3. If the Substantive *urbs*, *oppidum* or *civitas*, be added in apposition, it is put in the Ablative usually with *in*: as, *Milites Albae constitērunt, in urbe opportūnā, The soldiers halted at Alba, (in) a suitable city.*—Cic.

§ 258. After the same manner are used the following Substantives. *dōmi*, at home; *hūmi*, on the ground; *rūri*, less frequently *rūre*, in the country; *militiae*, *belli*, in the field: as,

Vir dōmi non solum sed etiam Rōmae clārus, A man famous not only at home (in his own country) but also at Rome.—Liv.

Non eādē dōmi quae militiae fortuna erat plēbi Rōmānae, The Roman commons had not the same good fortune at home as in the field.—Liv.

Vir dōmi bellicque fortissimus, A man most valiant at home and in the field.—Vell.

Forte ēvenit ut rūri (or rūre) essēmus, It so happened that we were in the country.—Cic.

Obs. *Domi* is also used with *meae*, *tuae*, *suae*, *nostrae*, *restrae*, and *alienae*; but if any other Adjective or a Possessive Substantive is used with it, the preposition *in* is more common, as *in illā dōmo*; *in dōmo publicā*; *in dōmo Caesāris*.

2. Answer to the Question Whither?

§ 259. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as,

Cūrius primus ēlēphantos quattuor Rōmam duxit, Curius first brought four elephants to Rome.—Eutr.

Pausaniam cum classe commūni Cyprum atque Hellespontum misērunt, They sent Pausanias with the combined fleet to Cyprus and the Hellespont.—Nep.

Obs. 1. If *urbs* or *oppidum* be added in Apposition, the Preposition *in* must be used: as,

Consul pervēnit in oppidum Cirtam, The consul arrived in the town of Cirta.—Sall.

Obs. 2. The poets use the same construction with the names of countries, and Substantives generally: as,

Itāliam vēnit, To Italy he came.—Virg.

Verba rēfers aures non pervēnientia nostras, Words thou repeatest which reach not to our ears.—Ov.

Obs. 3. Even in prose writers the preposition is frequently omitted with *Aegyptus*, *Chersōnēsus*, and *Hellespontus*. (See the second example.)

§ 260. The Accusatives *dōmum*, *home*; and *rus*, *to the country*, have the same construction as Names of Towns: as,

Sēmel ēgressi, nunquam dōmum rēvertēre, *Having once gone abroad, they never returned home.*—Cic.

Ego rus ibo, atque ibi manēbo, *I will go into the country and remain there.*—Ter.

3. Answer to the Question Whence.

§ 261. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Diōnysius Plātōnem Athēnis arcessivit, *Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens.*—Nep.

Dēmārius, Tarquīnii rēgis pāter, Tarquīnius Cōrintho fugit, *Demaratus the father of King Tarquinius fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.*—Cic.

Similarly *dōmo*, *from home*; *rūre*, *from the country*; are used in the Ablative without a Preposition.

Obs. When *urbs* or *oppidum* are used in Apposition or before the name of towns, they follow their ordinary construction and take a Preposition (comp. § 259, *Obs.* 1): as,

Expellitur ex oppīdo Gergoviā, *He is driven out of the town of Gergovia.*—Caes.

CHAPTER XXXIX.—THE GENITIVE.

§ 262. The Genitive Case denotes the dependence of a Substantive (or Pronoun) upon another word, which is generally a Substantive or Adjective, but sometimes a Verb.

Obs. 1. The Genitive appears originally to have denoted *origin*, in English *from* or *of*: it can, however, very seldom be translated by *from*, a meaning which is expressed by the Ablative.

Obs. 2. The Genitive is also found after the Preposition *tūus*: see the Chapter on Prepositions, § 557, 10.

A. GENITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 263. *General Rule.*—The Genitive is used to denote the dependence of any one Substantive upon another: as,

Bellum Pyrrhi, *The war of or with Pyrrhus.*

Simulatio Amicitiae, *The pretence of friendship.*

Navis auri, *A ship of, i.e. laden with gold.*

§ 264. Hence the Genitive depends upon *causā*, *gratiā*, *ergā*, *for the sake (of)*, which are Ablatives. The Genitive usually stands before these words: as,

Voluptates omittuntur mājōrum vōluptātum ādīpiscendārum causā, Pleasures are neglected for the sake of obtaining greater pleasures.—Cic.

Dōlōres suscipiuntur mājōrum dōlōrum effūgiendōrum grātiā, Sufferings are submitted to for the sake of avoiding greater sufferings.—Cic.

Sī quid contrā ālias lēges hūjus lēgis ergō factum est, If anything has been done contrary to other laws for the sake of this law.—Cic.

Obs. 1. Causā is commonly used, grātiā less frequently, and ergō (Gr. ἐργῶ) rarely, chiefly in law phrases.

Obs. 2. Instead of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, the Possessive Pronoun is used with causā and grātiā : as, meā causā, for my sake ; tuā causā, for thy sake.

Obs. 3. In the same way the Genitive depends upon the indeclinable substantive instār. (in) the likeness (of) ; on the scale of : as,

Instār montis ēquus, A horse like a mountain.—Virg.

Plātō mīhi ūnus instār est omnium, Plato alone is, in my opinion, worth them all put together.—Cic.

1. Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of the Possessor.

§ 265. The Genitive denotes the *Possessor*, or the person or thing, whereto anything belongs :—

Grāves Cyclōpum officiānae, The heavy forges of the Cyclops.—Hor.

In umbrōsis Hēlicōnis ōris, In the shady regions of Helicon.—Hor.

§ 266. The Possessive Genitive is frequently used after the verb *sum*, when in English the word *property* (*belonging to*), *duty*, *mark*, *characteristic*, or the like, is expressed :—

Omnia sunt victōris, All things are the (property of the) conqueror (i. e. belong to the conqueror).—Liv.

Militum est dūci pārēre, It is the duty of soldiers to obey the general.

Nihil est tam angustī ānīmī quam āmare divitias, Nothing is the characteristic of so petty a mind as the love of riches.—Cic.

Cājusris hōmīnis est errāre, It is (the part) of any man to err.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Substantive or Adjective (as officium, munus, proprium) is sometimes expressed : as,

Sēnātūs officiū est civitatem consilio jūvāre, It is the business of the senate to aid the state with counsel.—Cic.

Obs. 2. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns : thus we must say, meum est, it is mine or my duty ; tuum est, it is thine or thy duty ; not mei, tui est.

Obs. 3. The words "wife," "son," or "daughter," are sometimes omitted before the Possessive Genitive : as,

Verānia Pisōnis, Piso's Verania, that is, Verania the wife of Piso.—Plin. Hasdrūbal Gisgōnis, Gisgo's Hasdrubal, that is, Hasdrubal the son of Gisgo.—Liv.

Obs. 4. The word "temple" (aedes or templum) is frequently omitted after the preposition ad, and before the Genitive of the name of the deity : as, Ventum erat ad Vestae, We had come to (the temple) of Vesta.—Hor.

2. Subjective Genitive.

§ 267. The Subjective Genitive denotes the *Subject* of the action expressed in the word on which it depends, and takes the place of the subject of a verb: thus *amor Dei*, *the love of God* (= *Deus amat nos*): as,

Catōnis nōbile lētum, *Cato's noble death*.—Hor.

Cūra patrū, *Care on the part of senators*.—Hor.

Flūminū lapsūs, *The gliding courses of rivers*.—Hor.

Obs. 1. The possessive pronouns are used instead of the Subjective Genitive of the personal pronouns: as, *consulātus meus*, *my consulate*; *mors tua*, *thy death*.

Obs. 2. Hence a Genitive may stand in apposition to a possessive pronoun: as,
Meā ūniūs op̄rā respublica salva est, *The republic was saved by my exertions alone*.—Cic.

Hi ad vestram omnium caedem Rōmæ restitērunt, *These remained at Rome with a view to the slaughter of you all (of all of you)*.—Cic.

The Genitives *uniūs*, *ipsius* (*ipsorum*) are often so used.

Similarly where the Genitive is that of the Possessor: as,

Tuum, hōminis simpliceis, pectus vidīmus, *We have seen your breast (i. e. heart), an artless man as you are*.—Cic.

Obs. 3. So the Relative may agree with a Genitive implied in a Possessive Pronoun: as,

Nostrā caede qui remansissēmus, *With the massacre of such of us as remained*.—Cic.

3. Objective Genitive.

§ 268. The Objective Genitive denotes the *Object* of the notion expressed in the word on which it depends, and takes the place of the object of a verb: thus *amor Dei*, *love towards God* (= *nos amāmus Deum*): as,

Fortitūdo est dōlōrum libōrumque contemptio, *Fortitude is the despising of sufferings and hardships*.—Cic.

Ex injuriā Sabinārum muliērum bellum ortum est, *From the wrong done to the Sabine women war arose*.—Liv.

Obs. 1. The Objective Genitive is more frequently used in Latin than the Subjective, and the latter does not occur unless where the context prevents ambiguity: thus *cūra Cæsāris* (Hor. Od. l. 12. 30) is "care *of or for* Cæsar" [Objective], while *cūra patrū* (Id. iv. 14. 1) in the example given in § 267, it is equally plain, must mean "care *on the part of* the Senators." In case of any real ambiguity a preposition is used instead of the Objective Genitive, especially in denoting a feeling towards any one: as,

Ōdium in hōminū ūniverſum gēnus, *Hatred against the whole race of man*.

Obs. 2. Both the Objective and Subjective Genitive when dependent upon a Substantive may be reduced to the head *Possessive Genitive*; and may often be translated by the English Possessive Case. The Objective Genitive, however, mostly requires some Preposition.

Obs. 3. An Objective and Subjective Genitive are sometimes dependent upon the same substantive: as,

Pro veteribus Helveticorum injuriis Populi Romani, For old wrongs done by the Helvetii to the Roman people.—Caes.

Here *Helveticorum* denotes the Subject and *Populi Romani* the Object; and the sentence is equivalent to, *The Helvetii did wrongs to the Roman people.*

Obs. 4. With the Objective Genitive, the Genitive of the personal pronoun, (*mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*), and not the possessive pronoun, is used: as,

Misi filium non solum deprecatorem sui, sed etiam accusatorem mei, He sent his son not only to intercede for himself, but also to accuse me.—Cic.

Memoriam nostri quam maxime longam efficere debemus, We ought to make the remembrance of ourselves as lasting as possible.—Sall.

Obs. 5. The Objective Genitive is also found after Adjectives derived from Verbs: see § 276, Obs. 1.

4. Partitive Genitive.

§ 269. The Genitive is used after substantives and words used substantively to denote the whole of which a part is taken: as,

Modius tritici, A peck of wheat.—Cic.

Mille hominum valentium, A thousand of able-bodied men.—Cic. (Mil. 20.)

§ 270. The Partitive Genitive is most frequently found after the Neuter of Adjectives and Adjective Pronouns denoting *quantity*. These Neuters are then virtually Substantives.

The principal Adjectives and Pronouns so used are these:—*multum, much* (with plus and plurimum); *paulum* or *paullum, a little* (with minus and minimum); *tantum, so much*; *quantum, how much*; *aliquantum, a good deal* (with their diminutives, *tantulum, quantulum, aliquantulum*); also, *hoc, this (amount)*; *id, illud, that (amount)*, *aliquid, some (amount)*; *quicquam, any (amount) soever*: as,

Multum temporis, Much of time.—Cic.

Aliquantum equorum et armorum, A considerable quantity of horses and arms.—Sall.

Tantulum morae, So little delay.—Cic.

Hoc copiarum in Hispanias portatum est, This amount of troops was conveyed into the Spains.—Liv. 42, 18, extr.

Num quidnam novi, Is there any news?—Cic.

Id temporis, At that time—Cic.

To the above add the indeclinable Substantive *nihil* (*nūl'*, *nothing, none of*). as, *nihil mali, no kind of evil.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Genitive used with these Neuters is not unfrequently an adjective of the Second Declension, used Substantively. See above.

- *Obs. 2.* But Adjectives of the Third Declension cannot be used as Substantives in the Genitive : hence we have *aliquid difficile, something difficult ; aliquid difficilior, something more difficult.*

- *Obs. 3.* Poets and prose-writers, after Cicero, use the Nenters of any Adjectives as Substantives, with a Partitive Genitive dependent on them : as,

Cuncta terrarum, All (of) the world.—Hor.

Ardua terrarum, The lofty (parts or regions) of the earth.—Virg.

Exiguum campi ante castra erat, There was a small portion of the plain before the camp.—Liv.

Reliquum noctis acquivit, He slept the remainder of the night.—Curt.

Tacitus is fond of this construction.

§ 271. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Adverbs of Quantity,* Place, or Time, used Substantively : as,

Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum, Plenty of eloquence, little enough of wisdom.—Sall.

Ubinam gentium } Where in the world?—Cic.
Ubi terrarum }

Eo miseriarum, To such a pitch of wretchedness.—Sall.

Postea loci, Afterwards.—Liv.

Inde loci, Thereupon.—Lucr.

* These Adverbs are :

<i>satis,</i>	<i>enough.</i>	|	<i>abunde,</i>	} <i>abundantly.</i>
<i>parum,</i>	<i>too little.</i>		<i>affatim,</i>	

§ 272. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Comparatives and Superlatives : as,

Māior iuvenum, (Thou) elder of the youths.—Hor.

Maxime principum, Greatest of princes!—Hor.

Graecorum oratorum praestantissimi, The most eminent of Greek orators.—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the Genitive, the Prepositions *ex, de,* and *in* certain cases *in, inter,* are used : as,

Acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi, The keenest of all our senses is the sense of sight.—Cic.

Croesus inter reges opulentissimus, Croesus, wealthiest among kings.—Sen.

§ 273. The Partitive Genitive is also found after some Numerals, and after Pronouns or Adjectives implying a number : as,

Primi iuvenum, First of the youths.—Virg.

Consulium alter, one of the two consuls.—Liv.

Trium minimus, The youngest of the three.—Ov.

Obs. 1. The Genitive is often used in English with numerals and adjectives when there is no Partitive meaning, but only an enumeration of the whole. In such cases the Genitive is very seldom used in Latin : thus we say in English, "The veterans, of whom few are surviving," but in Latin "qui pauci supersunt," because these few are all. So also "all of us" is in Latin "nos omnes."

Obs. 2. The use of prepositions (*ex, inter, de*) is more frequent after numerals: as,

Unus ex illis dēcemvīris, One of those Decemvirs.—Cic.

De tribus et dēcem fundis tres nobilissimos possidet, Out of thirteen estates, he holds the three finest.—Cic.

Obs. 3. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as Partitive Genitives, but not *nostra* and *vestri*: see § 359.

5. Genitive of Quality.

§ 274. When a Substantive of quality, quantity, or description, has an Adjective joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative (see § 318): as,

(Vir) *priscae ac nimis durae scēritātis, A man of antique and excessively rigorous severity.*—Liv.

Ager quattuor jūgerum, A farm of four acres.—Liv.

Vir maximi corporis, A man of very great stature.—Nep.

Obs. 1. The Genitive of Quality denotes a more inherent and abiding quality than the Ablative.

Obs. 2. The Genitive and Ablative can never be used without an Adjective: thus, *a man of talent*, is *hōmo ingēnīosus* (not *hōmo ingēnii*); but *a man of great talent*, is *hōmo magni ingēnii*.

Obs. 3. It must be particularly noticed that this Genitive of Quality is limited to the connexion of two Substantives: thus we say, *fossa quindēcim pēdum, a ditch of fifteen feet*; but when *longus* or *lātus* is added, we must say *fossa quindēcim pēdes lāta*: in like manner, *puer dēcem annōrum, a boy of ten years*, but *puer decem annos nātus*. See § 249.

6. Genitive of Definition.

§ 275. Sometimes a Substantive is used in the Genitive by way of Definition, where we should rather have expected a Substantive in Apposition: as,

Haec vox vōluptātis, This word pleasure.—Cic. (Fin. 2, 2, *extr.*)

B. GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 276. Adjectives signifying *capacity*; also of *desiring, experiencing, remembering, participating, fullness*, and their opposites, govern a Genitive of the Object: as,

Thēmistocles pētīssīmos bellī nāvālīs Athēnienses fecit, Themistocles made the Athenians the most skilful in naval war.—Nep.

Omnes immēmōrem bēnēficii odērunt, All hate the man who is unmindful of kindness.—Cic.

Ira impōtens sui est, Anger is incapable of governing itself.—Sen.

Hōmo particeps est ratiōnis et cōgitiōnis, Man is partaker of reason and thought.—Cic.

Bestiae ratiōnis et oratiōnis expertes sunt, Beasts are destitute of reason and speech.—Cic.

Plenum Bacchi pectus, A bosom (soul) full of Bacchus.—Hor.
Virtutis compos, Possessed of virtue.—Cic.

The following Adjectives follow the above rule and govern the Genitive:—

1. <i>āvarus,</i>	<i>covetous.</i>	<i>imprudens,</i>	<i>not foreseeing.</i>
<i>aemulus,</i>	<i>jealous.</i>	<i>rudis,</i>	<i>unskilled.</i>
<i>avidus,</i>	<i>greedy.</i>	<i>insolens,</i>	} <i>unaccustomed.</i>
<i>cupidus,</i>	<i>eager.</i>	<i>insolitus,</i>	
<i>studiosus,</i>	<i>fond.</i>	<i>insuetus,</i>	
<i>fastidiosus,</i>	<i>disdainful.</i>	<i>compos,</i>	<i>master of.</i>
<i>invidus,</i>	<i>jealous.</i>	<i>impos,</i>	<i>not master.</i>
<i>timidus,</i>	} <i>fearful.</i>	<i>potens,</i>	<i>powerful.</i>
<i>pavidus,</i>		<i>impotens,</i>	<i>not powerful.</i>
<i>liberalis,</i>	<i>liberal.</i>		
<i>profusus,</i>	<i>lavish.</i>	3. <i>memor,</i>	<i>mindful.</i>
<i>parcus,</i>	<i>stingy.</i>	<i>immemor,</i>	<i>unmindful.</i>
2. <i>peritus,</i>	<i>skilled.</i>	<i>cūrius,</i>	<i>careful.</i>
<i>imperitus,</i>	<i>unskilled.</i>	<i>incūrius,</i>	<i>careless.</i>
<i>consciūs,</i>	<i>conscious.</i>	4. <i>particeps,</i>	<i>participating.</i>
<i>insciūs,</i>	} <i>ignorant.</i>	<i>consors,</i>	<i>sharing.</i>
<i>nesciūs,</i>		<i>exsors,</i>	} <i>not sharing.</i>
<i>praesciūs,</i>	<i>foreknowing.</i>	<i>expers,</i>	
<i>gnārus,</i>	<i>knowing.</i>	<i>inops,</i>	<i>weak.</i>
<i>ignārus,</i>	<i>not knowing.</i>	5. <i>plenus,</i>	<i>full.</i>
<i>prudens,</i>	<i>foreseeing.</i>	<i>inānis,</i>	<i>empty.</i>

Verbal Adjectives in *ax* follow the above rule: as, *ēdax,* devouring; *cāpax,* holding.

Obs. 1. The Genitive after Adjectives enumerated in 1, 2, 3, and those in *ax*, *ans*, and *ens* (see § 277), is an Objective Genitive: thus, *cupidus sum pecūniae* = *cōpio pecūniam*: comp. § 268. The Genitive after Adjectives enumerated in 4, 5, is a Partitive Genitive. Comp. § 269.

Obs. 2. Those signifying *plenty* or *want* are also used with the Ablative: see § 317, Obs.

Obs. 3. The Genitive is also sometimes found after *Verbs* of plenty or want: see § 317.

Obs. 4. *Rudis* and *prudens* are also used with *in* and the Ablative: as, *prudens in jure civili*, skilful in civil law.—Cic.

Obs. 5. Such Adjectives as *amicus*, friendly; *inimicus*, unfriendly; *fidēlis*, fidus, faithful, &c., do not fall under the above rule, but govern the Dative according to § 298.

§ 277. Many Imperfect Participles become Adjectives, and, according to the above rule, govern the Genitive, though as Participles they govern the Case of their Verbs: thus *pātiens* (*adj.*) *lābōrum* signifies *capable of enduring hardships*; *pātiens* (*part.*) *lābōres*, (*actually*) *enduring them*: as,

Epaminondas adeo fuit veritatis diligens, ut ne jūco quidem mentirētur, Epaminondas was so careful of truth that he would not tell a lie even in sport.—Nep.

Alieni appetens, sui profusus, Covetous of what belonged to others, lavish of his own.—Sall.

C. GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. Genitive after to Remember or to Forget.

§ 278. Verbs signifying *to remember* or *to forget* usually govern the Genitive (of the Object). as,

Animus mēminit prætēritōrum, The mind remembers the past.—Cic.

Nec unquam obliviscar illius noctis, Nor shall I ever forget that (memorable) night.—Cic.

Obs. 1. But they govern the Accusative :—

(a) When the *entire object* is represented as retained in the mind or dismissed from it : as,

Rēminisci pristini temporis ācerbitātem, To remember the bitterness of the past.—Nep.

Tu, C. Caesar, oblivisci nihil sōles, nisi injūrias, Thou, Caius Caesar, art wont to forget nothing save injuries.—Cic.

Hence *memini* invariably governs an Accusative to indicate a contemporary : as,

Cinnam mēmini, vidi Sullam, I remember Cinna, I saw Sulla.—Cic.

(b) When the object is a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective : thus, *id, ea, omnia, multa recordāri, rēminisci, &c.*; not *ejus, eorum* [but *earum rerum*], &c. (see § 253.)

Obs. 2. Verbs of *reminding* (*moneo, admoneo, commoneo, &c.*) govern the Accusative of a person and the Genitive of a thing : as,

Cātullina admōnēbat ālium ēgestātis, ālium cūpīdītātis suae, Catiline reminded one of his destitute circumstances, another of his ruling passion.—Salt.

But if the thing is a Neuter Pronoun, it likewise is put in the Accusative, so that a verb of *reminding* is thus joined with two Accusatives : as, *illud me admōnes, you remind me of that.*

Obs. 3. Verbs of *reminding* are frequently constructed with *de* and the Ablative : as,

De aede Tellūris me admōnes, You remind me of the temple of Tellus.—Cic.

Obs. 4. *Recordor* generally governs the Accusative, very rarely the Genitive : as,

Commūnes belli cāsus recordābantur, They called to mind the common chances of war.—Caes.

Obs. 5. The impersonal phrase, "*vēnit mihi in mentem,*" *to think of, to recollect,* is also used with the Genitive : as,

Sōlet mihi in mentem vēnire illius temporis, I am wont to call to mind that time.—Cic. (Fam. 7, 3, *init.*)

But the phrase is also used personally : as,

Non vēnit in mentem pugna apud Rēgillum lacum. Do you not call to mind the battle at lake Regillus?—Liv. (5, 5.)

2. Genitive after to Accuse, Condemn, and Convict.

§ 279. The Genitive is used after Verbs of *accusing, condemning, and acquitting*, to denote the Charge : as,

Accūsātus est prōditiōnis, He (Miltiades) was accused of treason.—Nep.

Caesar Dolābellam rēpētundārum postulāvit, Caesar impeached Dolabella for extortion.—Cic.

Jūdex absolvit injūriarū eum, The judge acquitted the man of wrong-doing.—Auct. ad Her.

Absens prōditionis damnātus est, He (Themistocles) was brought in guilty of treason in his absence.—Nep.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the Ablative crimine is expressed: as *damnātus est crimine rēpētundarū, He was condemned on the charge of extortion.*

Obs. 2. Instead of the Genitive we also find the Ablative with *de*: as,

Appius de pēcūniis rēpētundis est postūlātus, Appius was impeached for extortion.—Cic.

This is the only admissible construction in the case of *via, violence*: as *de vi postulare, damnare, &c.*

Obs. 3. The Genitive is also used with the Adjectives signifying *guilty, innocent, condemned*: as, *reus, noxius, innoxius, insons, manifestus*, and the like.

§ 280. The Genitive is sometimes used to denote the punishment to which a person is condemned: as,

Cāpitis hōmīnem condemnāre, To condemn a man to death.—Cic.

Octupli damnāri, To be condemned in an eight-fold payment.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative is also used: as, *cāpite damnāre.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. If the money-penalty is expressed by an Adjective of Quantity, the Genitive is used, as *tanti, quanti, dupli, quadrupli* (comp. § 281): but if the sum is definitely expressed, the Ablative must be used: as,

Ex his quinquaginta talentis aestimāta est, The damages were fixed at fifty talents.—Nep.

3. Genitive of Price or Valuation.

§ 281. The Genitive is also used with Verbs to denote *Price or Valuation* when not definitely expressed, but indicated by an Adjective of quantity: as *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris*: as,

Quanti Chrysogōnus docet, At what price does Chrysogonus give lessons?—Juv.

Plūris, minōris, vendere, To sell for less or more.—Cic.

Obs. 1. But a definite price is expressed with the Ablative: see § 316, *Obs. 2*; and even the Ablatives *magno, parvo, plūrimo, minimo, &c.*, are of frequent occurrence, when actual money value is meant. *To value (a person) highly*, always *magni* (not *magno*) aestimare.

Obs. 2. In the same manner are used the Genitives *foedi, pili, avari, avaris*, to denote that a thing is of no value at all: especially in the phrases *foedi, pili foedo, pendere, &c.*, "not to care a straw for."

4. Genitive with Verbs of Feeling.

§ 282. The Personal Verbs *misereor, misereco, to pity*; and the Impersonals *misereor, miserecitur, miseretur, it causes pity*; *piget, it vexes*; *poenitet, it repenteth*; *pudet, it causes shame*; *taedet, pertaesum est, it causes weariness*, govern the Genitive of the cause of the emotion: as,

O virgo, mīserēre mei, O maiden, have pity on me!—Ov.

Me pīget stultitiæ meæ, I am vexed at my folly.—Cic.

Nunquam suscepti nēgōtīi Atticū pertaesum est, Atticus never tired of a business he had taken in hand.—Nep.

Obs. 1. With the Impersonals mentioned above, the Subject of the feeling is put in the Accusative : see § 241.

Obs. 2. The object of the feeling is also sometimes expressed by an Infinitive Mood or a clause, with *quod*. See § 241, *Obs.*

Obs. 3. *Mīseror*, and *commīseror* to *commiserate*, follow the regular usage of transitive Verbs and govern an Accusative.

5. Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.

§ 283. The Genitive is used with the Impersonal Verbs *intērest* and *rēfert*, *it is of advantage, importance* [rarely with the latter], to denote the Person to whom a thing is of importance or benefit. as,

Quid Mīlōnis intērerat interfici Clōdium, What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be slain?—Cic.

Rēfert cōpōsitiōnis, It is of importance for the right arrangement of words.—Quint.

Obs. 1. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns, the Adjective forms *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, being used instead : as,

Quid tuā id rēfert, What matters that to you?—Ter.

Vestrā intērest commilitōnes, It is your concern, fellow-soldiers.—Tac.

NOTE.—Rēfert probably = *rei fert*, *it contributes to the interest*; and with *interest*, *rei* may be understood : in that case the forms *meā, tuā, &c.* may perhaps be regarded as datives agreeing with *rei*.

Obs. 2. *Rēfert* is generally used absolutely, very rarely with the Genitive, but less rarely with *meā, tuā, &c.*

Obs. 3. The subject of *intērest* (and *rēfert*) is never a Substantive, but is expressed,

(a) By the Infinitive : as,

Intērest omnium rectē facēre, It is the interest of all to act rightly.

(b) By the Accusative and Infinitive : as,

Meā intērest, te cālēre, It is of importance to me that you should be in good health.—Cic.

(c) By a secondary clause beginning with *ut, nē*, or an interrogative : as,
Illud meā magni intērest, tē ut vīdeam, It is of great importance to me that I should see you.—Cic.

Vestrā, commilitōnes, intērest, nē impērātōrem pessīmi faciānt, It is of importance to you, fellow-soldiers, that the worst men should not have the making of an emperor.—Tac.

Magni rēfert, quid hic vēlit, It is of great importance what this person wishes.—Caes.

(d) By a neuter pronoun, *hoc, illud* (so that the Verbs are not quite impersonal) : as,

Hoc vīhēmenter intērest, This is of prodigious importance to the republic.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The degree or measure of importance is expressed:

- (a) By the Genitives of value, *magni, parvi, pluris, tanti, quanti*: v. § 281.
- (b) By the Adverbs *caldē, cōhēmenter, magnōpēre, māgis, maxīme, &c.*
- (c) By Neuter Adjectives, *multum, plus, plurimum, &c.*

D. EXCEPTIONAL USES OF THE GENITIVE.

§ 284. The Genitive is occasionally used after Verbs and Adjectives of Separation or Removal; whether according to the Greek idiom, or by virtue of the original meaning of the Case (see § 262, *Obs.* 1): as,

Dēsine mollium tandem quērēlūrum, Cease at length from unmanly repinings.—Hor. (Comp. the Greek γόων, κλαυθμοῦ παύεσθαι.)

Scēlēris pūrus, Pure from guilt.—Hor. (Gr. καθαρὸς ἀδικίας.)

Sōlūtus ōpērum, Released from toil.—Hor. (Gr. λελυμένος πόνων.)

§ 285. The Genitive is sometimes used (especially by the poets), in the sense of *with regard to, in reference to, for*: as,

O te, Bōlāne, felicem cērebrī, O my friend Bolanus, lucky for your cholerie rein!—Hor.

Nōtus in trātres ānīmī pāternī, Renowned for right fatherly affection to his brothers.—Hor.

(Comp. the Greek ὄλβιος, μάκαρ τῶν τέκνων, etc.)

Obs. Note especially the use of *animi* in such phrases as *ānīmī pendēre, to be in suspense or anxious in mind*; *cruciāre se ānīmī, to torture oneself in mind, &c.* (But we also find *ānīmō*; which seems to imply that the form is a Locative: see § 237, *Obs.* 1.)

§ 286. The Locatives *dōmī, at home*; *millītiāe, in the field*; *Rōmāe, at Rome*; *Sāguntī, at Saguntum*; and the like, are commonly regarded as Genitives: but see § 237, *Obs.* 1.

CHAPTER XL.—THE DATIVE.

§ 287. The Dative may usually be translated by the Prepositions *to* or *for*, in English. It denotes the *Indirect Object*, as distinguished from the *Direct Object*; the latter being put in the Accusative (see § 234): as,

Assōpo quidam lapīdem impēgerat, A person had cast a stone at Assop.—Phaedr.

Obs. 1. Here the *direct object* of the action is the stone (*lapīdem*) which is cast; while the Dative *Assopo* denotes the *indirect object*, or the person to whom the action has reference.

Obs. 2. Such a Dative is often used in Latin where in English the preposition *from* is required: as,

Ānimēre Jūliū libertātem, to take from a man his freedom.—Cic.

A. DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. Dative of Advantage.

(Dativus Commōdi.)

§ 288. The Dative may be used after any kind of Verb soever, to signify *for, for the good of*: as,

Dōmus dōminis aedificātur, non mūribus, A house is built for its owners, not for the mice.—Cic.

Non vitæ sed scholæ discimus, We learn not for life but for the school.
—Sen. (Epist. ad Luciliū, 106, extr.)

Obs. 1. When *for* signifies *in defence of, in behalf of*, *pro* must be used: see § 537, 8.

Obs. 2. The Dativus Commōdi is also used after Adjectives: see § 298.

Obs. 3. The use of the term Dativus Commōdi is often extended so as to include those cases in which a thing is represented as *happening to or with reference to* a person: as,

In Antūti mētentibus cruentas in corbem spicas ecēdisse, In the territory of Antium, the ears of corn dropped blood-stained into the basket of the reapers (Lit. to them reaping).—Liv. (22, 1.)

Lānlgēris grēgibus sponte suā lānæ cādunt, From (lit. to) the woolly flocks the wool drops off of its own accord.—Ov. (Met. 7, 541.)

§ 289. Hence some Intransitive verbs, which usually do not govern any case, are constructed with a Dative, to express that the action is done with reference to something or somebody. Thus *vāco, to be free*, signifies with the Dative *to have leisure for a thing, to devote oneself to it*: *nūbo, to cover or veil*, signifies with the Dative, in reference to a woman, *to cover herself or put on the veil for a man*, hence *to marry*; *supplicō, to be a suppliant*, signifies with the Dative *to supplicate, to implore a person*; as,

Philōsophiæ semper vāco, I always find leisure to study philosophy.
—Cic.

Vēnus nupsit Vulcāno, Venus married Vulcan.—Cic.

Cæsāri pro te libentissimē supplicābo, I will most cheerfully supplicate Caesar for you.—Cic.

2. Dativus Ethicus.

§ 290. Sometimes the Dative (especially in the case of the Personal Pronouns *mihī, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis*) is used to signify that the matter spoken of is regarded with interest (ἵθος) by some person (Dativus Ethicus): as,

Quid mihī Celsus agit, How does my friend Celsus?—Hor.

Hic Mārius veniet tibi origine parvā, Here shall come your Marius, of stock obscure.—Sil.

Obs. The Dativus Ethicus is a more delicate shade of the Dativus Commōdi.

3. Dative after various Verbs.

§ 291. The following verbs, some of them apparently transitive, govern a Dative, which in many cases is the *Dativus Commodi* or *Incommodi*:

1. *To assist*: subvenio, succurro, auxilior.
2. *To resist, oppose*: resisto, adversor, obnitor, renitor, repugno, obsum, &c.
3. *To favour, study (be devoted to)*: faveo, indulgeo, studeo.
4. *To envy, be jealous of*: invidéo, aemulor (see Obs. 4).
5. *To please*: placeo, arrideo.
6. *To serve, obey, benefit*: pareo, obedio, obtempéro, servio, prorsum.
7. *To trust or distrust*: credo, fido, confido, diffido.
8. *To spare, refrain from*: parco, tempéro.
9. *To advise, persuade*: suadeo, persuadeo.
10. *To flatter*: adulor, assentor, blandior.
11. *To cure*: medeor, medicor.
12. *To pardon*: ignosco.
13. *To congratulate*: gratulor.
14. *To revile*: maledico, obtrecto, convicior.
15. *To be angry*: irascor, succenseo.
16. *To protect*: patrocinor.
17. *To command*: impero. imperito, praecipio, and sometimes dominor, moderor, tempéro

With some others.

Homines hominibus plurimum et prosunt et obsunt, *Men very greatly benefit and harm their fellow-men.*—Cic.

Liber is est existimandus, qui nulli turpitudinī servit, *That man should be deemed a freeman who is in bondage to no disgraceful passion.*—Cic.

Non licet sui commodi causā nocere alteri, *It is wrong to injure another for one's own advantage.*—Cic.

Demosthenes ejus ipsius artis, cui studebat, primam litteram non poterat dicere, *Demosthenes could not pronounce the first letter of the very art which he was studying.*—Cic.

Antiochus se nec impensae, nec labori, nec periculo parsium pollicebatur, *Antiochus promised to spare neither expense, labour, nor peril.*—Liv.

Medici toto corpore curando, minimae etiam parti medentur, *Physicians, by treating the whole of the body, cure also the smallest part of it.*—Cic.

Probus invidet nemini, *The good man envies no one.*—Cic.

Epicūrus Phaedōni turpissīme mālēdixit, Epicurus maligned Phaedo very grossly.—Cic.

Quis Isocrātī est adversātus impensius (quam Aristōtēles), Who opposed Isocrates more strongly than Aristotle?—Cic.

Iis aemulāmur qui ea hābeant quae nos hābēre cūpiāmus, We are jealous of those who have what we want.—Cic.

Omnibus gentibus ac nātiōnibus impērāre, To rule over all peoples and nations.—Cic.

Mōdērārī ānimo et ōrātiōni cum sis irātus, To govern temper and tongue when you are angry.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Passives of these verbs can be used only impersonally : as, *mihi invīdētur, I am envied.* See § 234, *Obs. 2.*

Obs. 2. *Jūvo, adjūvo, I assist ; dēlecto, oblecto, I delight ; cūro, I take care of, or treat medically ;* always govern the Accusative.

Obs. 3. *Mēdeor, mēdicor, I heal ; and adūlor, I flatter,* have sometimes the Accusative, and sometimes the Dative.

Obs. 4. *Aemūlor, in sense of to rival, emulate, is always followed by an Accusative :*

Me Agāmemnōnem aemulārī pūtas, You fancy I am emulating Agamemnon.—Nep.

Obs. 5. *Invīdeo, I envy, begrudge, may take in addition to a Dative of the Person an Accusative (or in later writers an Ablative) of the thing begrudged :* as,

Invīdent nobīs māgīstram optīmam, They envy us the best of teachers (Nature).—Cic.

Nē spectāculo quīdem proelii nobīs invīdērunt, They (the gods) have not even begrudged us the spectacle of a battle.—Tac. (Ger. 33.)

Obs. 6. *Jūbeo, rēgo, and gūberno* are always followed by the Accusative, and *dōmīnor, mōdēror, tempēro,* as frequently by the Accusative as by the Dative ; especially when they mean *to govern :* as,

O dīva grātum qui rēgis Antium, O goddess who rulest thy favourite Antium !—Hor.

Spērāre nos amīci jūbent, Our friends bid us hope.—Cic.

Qui (Jūpīter) res hōmīnum ac deorum, qui mēre ac terras tempērat, Who governs the affairs of men and gods, who governs sea and land.—Hor.

Quum sōlus rempublicam gēreret, orbemque terrārum gūbernāret, When he was carrying on the commonwealth alone, and governing the world.—Cic.

Obs. 7. Some verbs have different meanings, according as they govern the Accusative or Dative : as,

Haec nobīs convēniunt, These things agree with us.

Convēnire aliquem, To have an interview with any one.

Mētno, timeo te, I fear you.

_____ *tibi, I am apprehensive for you.*

Consūlo te, I consult you.

_____ *tibi, I consult for your interests.*

_____ *in te, I take measures against you.*

Prospicio, and providēo te, I see you at a distance.

_____ *tibi, I consult for your interests.*

Cāreo te or a te, I am on my guard against you.

_____ *tibi, I am concerned for your safety.*

Tempēro, mōdēror aliquid, to regulate, arrange.

_____ *mihi, irae, &c., to set bounds to, to check, restrain.*

4. Dative after Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

§ 292. Verbs compounded with the Prepositions

ad, ante, con, in and inter

ob, post, prae, sub and super

govern a Dative, with reference to which the Preposition retains its original force. In the case of transitive Verbs, this Dative is the Dative of the indirect object, the direct object of the verb being denoted by the Accusative: as,

Tu mihi (= in me) *terram in-jice*, *Fling thou earth on me (my corpse)*.—Virg.

In-cubuit tēro (= in tōrum), *She leaned upon her couch*.—Virg.

Quum prōpēmōdo mūris (= ad muros) *ac-cessisset*, *When he had almost got up to the walls*.—Liv.

Caesāri (= ob Caesārem) *vēnienti oc-currit*, *He hastens to meet Caesar on his way*.—Caes.

Prae-ponens ultima primis (= prae primis), *Putting the last before the first*.—Hor.

Quum virtūte omnibus (= prae omnibus) *prae-stārent*, *Whereas they (the Helvetii) surpassed all in valour*.—Caes.

Obs. 1. The preposition, however, is frequently repeated with its case instead of the Dative, especially after compounds of *ad*, *con*, *in*. For instance *commūneco* is always constructed *aliquid cum aliquo: inesse* in the best writers is constructed with *in*. On the contrary *adjūceo*, *assideo*, *adsū*, mostly take a Dative. When a Preposition is compounded with a Verb signifying *motion to or from* a place, it usually governs the same Case as *out* of composition.

Obs. 2. *Assuēficio*, *assuesco* are usually constructed with the Ablative, rarely with the Dative: as,

Cum Lusitānis gēnere quōdam pugnae assuēfacti, *Accustomed to a certain kind of fighting with the Lusitani*.—Caes.

Obs. 3. Verbs compounded with *nite* and *prae*, as *antesto*, *antēcedo*, *antēcedo*, *praeesto*, are usually constructed with the Dative, but sometimes with the Accusative: v. § 239.

Obs. 4. Some compound verbs, especially *aspergo*, *inspergo*, *circundo*, have two constructions, namely, either an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the person, or an Accusative of the person and an Ablative of the thing: as,

Circumdāre brachia collo, *To put the arms about any one's neck*.—Ov.

Oppidum vallo et fossā circumdāre, *To surround a town with a rampart and moat*.—Cic.

Obs. 5. Some compounds of *a* (*ab*), *de*, *e* (*ex*), take a Dative of the indirect object, as *vitam alicuius ēripere*, *to take violently from a man his life*; *dēripere pellem leōni*, *to rob the lion of his skin*.—Ov.

5. Dative after Passive Verbs.

§ 293. The Dative is often used with the Perfect Tenses Passive to denote the Agent, instead of a or *ab* and the Ablative: as,

Mihi consilium coptum est, *My plan has been formed*.—Cic.

Cui non sunt auditiæ Demosthēnis vigiliæ, Who is there by whom the night studies of Demosthenes have not been heard of?—Cic.

Obs. The Dative is by the Poets used with *all* tenses of the Passive Verb : as,
Barbārus hīc ego sum quia non intelligor ulli, *Here I am a barbarian, inasmuch as I am understood by none.*—Ov.

Nēque cernitur ulli, *Nor is she seen by any (visible to any).*—Virg.

Carmīna quæ scribuntur aquæ potōribus, *Poems that are written by water-drinkers.*—Hor. (But here perhaps *potoribus* is the Ablative : v. § 311, *Obs.*)

§ 294. The Dative is regularly used after the Gerundive Participle with the Verb *esse*, to denote the Agent : as,

Quod sc̄rendum est molliter sapiēti, *Which the wise man must bear gently.*—Cic.

Semper ita vivāmus, ut ratiōnem reddendam (esse) nobis arbitremur, *et us always so live as to believe that we must render up an account.*—Cic.

Obs. But the Ablative may be used to prevent ambiguity : see § 536, *Obs.* 3

6. Dative after Impersonal Verbs.

§ 295. The Impersonal Verbs *licet*, *it is lawful* ; *libet*, *it pleases* ; *expēdit*, *it is expedient*, govern the Dative : as,

Licet nēmīni dūcere exercitum contrā patriam, *It is not lawful for any man to lead an army against his country.*—Cic.

Ei libēbit, quod non licet (ei), *It will please him to do that which is unlawful for him.*—Cic.

Obs. After *licet*, &c., we often find a second Dative following the Infinitive Mood *esse* ; as,

Licuit esse Themistōcli ōtiōso, *Themistocles was at liberty to be inactive.*—Cic.

Illis timīdis et ignāvis licet esse, *It is for them to be timid and cowardly.*—Liv.

7. Dative with the Verb Sum.

§ 296. The Verb *sum* with the Dative is used as equivalent to *habeo* : as,

Mhi est injusta nōverca, *I have an unjust stepmother.*—Virg.

Trōja huic lōco nōmen est, *This place has the name Troy.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. When, as in the last example, a *name* is specified after the verb *esse* or any similar Verb, it is usually attracted into the Dative also : as,

Scipio cui Africāno cognōmen ex virtūte fuit, *Scipio, who had the surname of Africanus on account of his valour.*—Sall.

In campis, quibus nōmen erat Raudiis, decertāvere, *They fought in the plains which have the name (are called) Raudii.*—Vell.

Obs. 2. The following use of the Dative is an idiom borrowed from the Greek :

Ut milītibz labor volētibz esset, *That the soldiers might be willing to undertake labour.* (Lit., *That the labour might be to the soldiers as willing persons* : τοῖς στρατιώταις βουλομένοις εἶν.) —Tac.

8. Double Dative.

§ 297. A Dative of the Person (*Dativus Commodi*, § 288) and a Dative of Purpose or Result are used with Verbs signifying *to be or become; to give, send or come; to impute or reckon, &c.* : as,

Ampla dōmus saepe fīl dōmīno dēdēcōri, A spacious house often turns to the disgrace of its owner.—Cic.

Pausānias rex Lacēdaemōniōrum vēnit Atticis auxilio, Pausanias, king of the Lacedaemonians, came to the help of the Athenians.—Nep.

Nec tīmuit sibi nē vitio quis vertēret, Nor was afraid that some one might impute it to him as a fault.—Hor.

Cui bōno fuit, For whose advantage was it?—Cic.

Obs. The Dative of result is also used without a Dative of the Person : as,

Nec eam rem hābuit religiōni, Nor did he deem that circumstance a religious objection.—Cic.

Magno odio esse apud Aliquem, To be an object of intense hatred with anybody.—Cic.

B. DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

§ 298. The Dative (in many cases a *Dativus Commodi*, § 288) is used after the following classes of Adjectives :—

1. *Of Utility* : *ūtilis, commōdus, fructuōsus, &c.*
2. *Of Unprofitableness or injury* : *inūtilis, noxius.*
3. *Of Fitness* : *aptus, accommodātus, idōneus, convēniens, proprius, &c.* (Also often following *ad* and *acc.*)
4. *Of Unfitness* : *incommōdus, inconvēniens.*
5. *Of Acceptableness* : *grātus, jūcundus, cārus.*
6. *Of Displeasure* : *ingrātus, injūcundus.*
7. *Of Friendliness* : *bēnignus, amicus, bēnēvōlus, fidēlis fīdus.*
8. *Of Hostility* : *Inimicus, pernīciōsus, mālēvōlus, mālignus, mōlestus, irātus, infestus, aliēnus.*
9. *Of Similarity and dissimilarity* : *similis, dissimilis.*
10. *Of Equality and inequality* : *aequālis, Inaequālis.*
11. *Of Proximity* : *finītmus, vicinus, prōpinquus.*

Rōmulus multitūdini grātor fuit quam Patrībūs, Romulus was more acceptable to the multitude than to the Fathers.—Liv.

Deiotārus fidelis erat Pōpulo Rōmāno, Deiotarus was faithful to the Roman people.—Cic.

Patriæ solum omnibus carum est, The soil of our country is dear to all.—Cic.

Siculi Ferri inimici infestique sunt, The Sicilians are unfriendly to, and exasperated against Verres.—Cic.

Ingratam Veneri pone superbiam, Lay aside your arrogance, displeasing to Venus.—Hor.

Numquid iratus es mihi propter has res, You are not angry with me for these things, are you?—Pl.

Idque eo facilius credébatur quia simile vero vidébatur, And the thing was the more readily believed, because it seemed like truth.—Cic.

Paupertatem divitiis etiam inter homines esse æqualem volumus, We would have poverty on a level with riches even among men.—Cic.

Obs. 1. Some of these Adjectives are used as Substantives, *amicus, inimicus, finitimus, vicinus, propinquus*, &c., and are then constructed with the Genitive.

Obs. 2. *Similis* and *dissimilis* are quite as often found with the Genitive.

Mutual likeness, &c., is expressed with *inter* : as,

Dissimillimi inter se, Very unlike each other.—Cic.

Obs. 3. An Adjective denoting *fitness* or *utility* may take, in addition to the Dative as above, an Accusative of the *purpose* with *ad* : as,

Multas ad res perutiles (nobis) Xenophontis libri sunt, The works of Xenophon are very useful (to us) for many purposes.—Cic.

Obs. 4. The Adjectives which express *friendliness*, as *benevolus*, *benignus*, &c., are often constructed with *erga* or *adversus* ; and those which express *hostility*, as *malignus*, *malevolus*, with *adversus*, or *in*.

Obs. 5. *Alienus*, when it means *unfriendly*, takes a Dative ; when it means *foreign to*, *ab* and Ablative ; less frequently a Genitive ; when it means *unsuitable*, a Dative or *ad* and Accusative.

§ 299. AFTER ADVERBS.—Any Adverb may govern a Dative which corresponds in sense to the Adjectives above described : as,

Congruenter naturæ vivere, To live agreeably to nature.—Cic.

Propius Tiberi quam Thermopylis, Nearer the Tiber than Thermopylae.

Obs. But *propius* more frequently takes an Accusative or Preposition (*ab*., &c.)

C. EXCEPTIONAL USES OF THE DATIVE.

§ 300. In the Poets, the Dative is occasionally, by a Greek idiom, used after a Verb of *fighting* (instead of the Ablative with *cum*) : as,

Luctantem Icaris fluctibus Africum, The south wind wrestling the Icarian billows.—Hor.

(Compare the Gr. μάχεσθαι τινι.)

§ 301. The Dative is sometimes used by the Poets to express *motion towards* : as,

Il clamor coelo, The shout rises to heaven.—Virg.

CHAPTER XLI.—THE ABLATIVE.

§ 302. The Ablative has two leading significations: it denotes,

(A.) Separation from.

(B.) Various Conditions of an action: as, manner, cause, instrument, time, place, attendant circumstances.

It is usually expressed in English by the help of the Prepositions *from*, *by*, *with*, *in*: as,

Trôjæ vênit ab ôris, *He came from the coasts of Troy.*—Virg.

Fâto prôfûgus, *An exile by destiny.*—Virg.

Carthâgo, stûdiis asperrîma belli, *Carthage, most fierce in the pursuits of war.*—Virg.

1. Ablative of Separation.

§ 303. *From* a Place or Person is put in the Ablative both with and without a Preposition.

§ 304. Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition, to denote *Motion from*. See § 261.

§ 305. All Prepositions denoting *Motion* or *Absence from*, as *a* or *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *sine*, etc., are construed with the Ablative. See Chapter on Prepositions: § 557.

§ 306. The Ablative of Separation is found with Verbs signifying to *separate*, *remove*, *deliver from*; but more frequently, especially in Prose writers, with a Preposition: as,

(A.) *Vêrêcundum Bacchum sanguineis prôhibete rixis*, *Save ye honest Bacchus from blood-stained frays!*—Hor.

Nôdôsâ corpus prôhibete chiragrâ, *To save the body from the knotty gout.*—Hor.

Libërâre âliquem culpâ, *To free a man from blame.*—Cic.

Vercingëtôrîx oppugnâtiône destitit, *Vercingetoriz abandoned the siege.*—Caes.

(B.) *Ab oppûlis vim hostium prôhibent*, *They ward off the violent attacks of the enemy from their walls.*—Caes.

Viri bôni lapîdibus a fôro pellêbantur, *Good citizens were being pelted from the forum with stones.*—Cic.

Eum ab omni errâtione libërâvit, *He freed it (the world) from all possibility of going astray.*—Cic. (But *libëro* is quite as frequent with the abl. alone.)

Tu Jupiter, hunc a tuis aris arcēbis, Thou, O Jove, wilt keep this (villain from thine altars!—Cic.

§ 307. The Ablative is used after some Adjectives denoting freedom or exemption from (see § 317): as,

Robustus Animus omni est liber cūrā, The strong mind is free from all anxiety.—Cic.

Famī aliquo fortūnis expertus, Destitute of character as well as fortune.—Sall.

Obs. 1. The Preposition *ab* is often used along with the Ablative: as,
Liber ab omni sumptu, Free from all expense.—Cic.

Obs. 2. Experts, Inānis, more frequently take a Genitive: liber, vācuus, always the Ablative alone, or with a Preposition.

Obs. 3. For the construction of Allēnus, see § 298, Obs. 5.

§ 308. *opus est*, there is need, like verbs of privation, governs the Ablative: as,

Auctoritāte nobis *opus est*, We have need of authority.—Cic.

Opus est mātare facto, There is need of prompt execution.—Sall.

Obs. 1. But *opus* is also used as an Adjective (indeclinable), in the Predicative: as,

Thēmistocles celeriter, quae *opus* erant, rēperiēbat, Themistocles was quick at finding out what was wanted.—Nep.

Obs. 2. The Ablative after *opus est* is perhaps strictly an ablative of the instrument = there is work (to be done) with something.

2. Ablative of Origin.

§ 309. The Ablative of Origin arises out of the Ablative of separation. It denotes that *from which* anything is made or originates.

§ 310. The Ablative of Origin is found especially after the Participles *nātus*, born from: *ortus*, *oriundus*, sprung from: *gēntus*, begotten of: also in the poets with *sātus*, *ēditus*, *creātus*, *crētus*, sprung from or begotten of: as,

Jōre nātus et Maiā, Born of Jove and Maia.—Cic.

Orto Sāturno, O thou offspring of Saturn!—Hor.

Quo sanguine crētus, From what blood (family) sprung.—Virg.

Albā oriundum sacerdōtium, A priesthood that had its origin in Alba.—Liv.

Obs. But *oriundus* and likewise *ortus* when it refers to more remote origin, are more frequently used with a Preposition: as,

Hippocrātes et Epleydes, nāti Carthāgine, sed *oriundi ab* Syracūsīs, Hippocrates and Epicydes, natives of Carthage, but having their origin from Syracuse.—Liv.

Belgae orti sunt a Germānis, The Belgians are descended from the Germans.—Caes.

3. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Instrument.

§ 311. The Ablative is used after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to denote the *Cause*, *Manner*, *Means*, or *Instrument* of an Action or state of being : as,

Sol cuncta suâ luce illustrat et complet, The sun illumines and fills all things with its light.—Cic.

Helvëtiî reliquos Gallos virtûte præcédunt, The Helvetii surpass the rest of the Gauls in valour.—Caes.

Britanni equitatu atque essedis ad flûmen progressi (sunt), The Britons advanced to the river with cavalry and war-chariots.—Caes.

Epaminondas princeps meo jûdicio Græciæ, Epaminondas, in my judgment, the foremost man of Greece.—Cic.

Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leões, se tûtantur, Bulls with (their) horns, boars with (their) tusks, lions by biting, defend themselves.—Cic.

ic. *Luc. 2. 11* Obs. The Ablative is used after a Passive Verb without a preposition to denote the thing by which a purpose is effected; but if the agent is a person, the preposition *a* or *ab* is required with the Ablative: see § 234.
2um Deum
2a Sanguine
Antauri tunc
= 2um lunicam
inclu'set:
 Obs. 1. By the poets, however, the Ablative is occasionally used without a preposition, especially where there is an attributive: as,
Scrîberis Vârîo Mæônii carminis âlîte, Thou shalt be written of by Vârius, a scan of Mæonian note.—Hor. (See Orell. ad Hor. Od. 1, 6, 2.)
 Comp. Varr. R. R. 1, 17: omnes agri cõluntur hõmînibus servis aut libëris aut utrisque, *either by slaves, by free men, or by both.*

§ 312. 1. If the manner in which anything is done, be expressed by a Substantive and an Adjective, the Ablative is generally used without *cum*:

2. But if the manner is expressed by a Substantive alone, *cum* must be used: as,

Miltiâdes res Chersônësi summâ æquîtâte constituit, Miltiâdes arranged the affairs of the Chersonesus with the greatest fairness.—Nep.

Athênîenses cum silentio auditî sunt, The Athenians were heard with silent attention.—Liv.

Obs. 1. The Substantives signifying manner, as *mõdus, râtio, mos, ritus, consuetûdo*, never take a preposition: as, *hoc modo, in this manner; Persârûm mõe, after the custom of the Persians.*

Obs. 2. The student should observe that where *with* in English means in company with, *cum* is always used; but where *with* denotes the instrument, as, *to kill a person with a sword*, *cum* cannot be used, but only the Ablative of the instrument.

§ 313. The Ablative is used with Intransitive verbs to express the cause of anything happening, especially the cause of feelings or emotions, as, for example, *ardëre stûdio, to burn with zeal; exsultâre gaudio, to exult with joy; intërire (përire, mõri) fâme, to die of hunger; gaudëre (laetâri) âmîci adventu, to rejoice at the arrival of a friend; glõriâri victoriâ*

suā, to boast of his victory; confidēre nātūrā lōci, to trust in the nature of the ground: as,

Dolēto dolēre, correctiōne gaudēre, nos oportet, We ought to grieve at a fault, to rejoice at its correction.—Cic.

Nōmīnibus vērūm glōriantur, They glory in the names of the ancients.—Cic.

Obs. 1. With Transitive Verbs an Ablative of the Cause is for the most part used only in the case of such verbal Substantives as jussu, mandātu, rogātu, permissu, &c.: as,

Adversus Jāsonem Timōtheus pōpūli jussu bellum gessit, Timotheus carried on war against Jason by command of the people.—Nep.

In other cases the preposition *propter* with the Accusative, or *causā* with the Genitive, is generally used instead of the Ablative of the Cause.

Obs. 2. If the Cause is a state of feeling, the Perfect Participle of some verb signifying “to induce” is generally used with the Ablative of the Instrument: as, cūpīditātē adductus, commōtus, incītātus, impulsus, &c.

Obs. 3. Fīdo and confīdo are used with the Dative of a person (see § 291); dōleo, usually with the Accusative (see § 236); glōrior with the prepositions de or in: as,

In virtūte rectē glōriāmur, We rightly glory in virtue.—Cic.

De tuis dīcītīs glōriāris, You boast of your wealth.—Cic.

§ 314. Adjectives which express a state of the feelings are followed by an Ablative of the Cause: as, *contentus, contented, laetus, rejoicing, sūperbus, proud, frētus, relying on, and, less frequently, maestus, sorrowful, anxius, anxious: as,*

Frētus diligentiā restrā, dissēro brēvius, Relying on your attention, I treat the matter more briefly.—Cic.

Paucis contentus, Content with little.—Hor.

Phoebe sūperbe lūrā, Thou Phoebus, proud of thy lyre.—Tib.

Obs. For dignus, indignus, see § 320.

§ 315. The Deponent Verbs *ūtor, fruor, fungor, vescor, nītor, pōtior*, with their compounds, govern an Ablative: as,

Sāpiens rātīōne optime ūtitur, The wise man uses reason in the best way.—Cic.

Plūrimis mārītīmīs rēbus fruimur atque ūtimur, We enjoy and make use of very many maritime productions.—Cic.

Āgēsīlāus magnā est praedā pōtītus, Agesilaus obtained possession of great spoil.—Nep.

Obs. 1. Most of the above are Instrumental Ablatives: the Deponents having been originally Passives or Reflectives. The Ablative with pōtior is perhaps governed by the Comparative implied in it (§ 319).

Obs. 2. Pōtior sometimes takes the Genitive; especially in the phrase rērum pōlīri, to obtain the management of affairs.—Cic.

Obs. 3. Fungor and vescor are sometimes found with the Accusative: as,

Nēque bōnī nēque libērālīs functus officiū est vīri, He has acted the part of neither an honest man nor a gentleman.—Ter.

Coepti vesci singūlas, He began to eat them up one by one.—Phaedr.

§ 316. Verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, exchanging*; and the Adjectives *cārus, dear*, and *vīlis, cheap*, are used with the Ablative of Price: as,

Lycurgus ēmi singula non p̄cūniā, sed compensātiōe mercium jussit, Lycurgus directed that everything should be bought, not with money, but by an equivalent of goods.—Justin.

Viginti talentis unam orātiōnem Isocrātes vendidit, Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents.—Plin.

Quod non ōpus est, asse cārum est, What you don't want is dear at any price (lit., at an as).—Cic.

Mutat quadrata rōtundis, He changes square for round.—Hor. (With *muto*, either of the articles of exchange may be put in the Ablative.)

Obs. 1. The Ablative is used because the Price is the *means* by which a thing is obtained.

Obs. 2. The Ablative of Price is only used when a definite sum is expressed by a Substantive; but an Indefinite Price is expressed by the Genitive of an Adjective of quantity: see § 281. The Ablatives *magno, at a high price*; *permagno, plūrimo, at a very high price*; *nīmo, at too high a price*; *parvo, at a low price*; *minimo, for a very low price*; *nīhilo, for nothing*; are also found with words of *buying, selling, and valuing*, without a Substantive: as,

Permagno dēdmas vendidisti, You farmed the dues (tenths) out at a very high rate.—Cic.

Non pōtest parvo res magna constāre, A great thing cannot cost little.—Sen.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the punishment to which a person is condemned is put in the Ablative, but more frequently in the Genitive: see § 280.

§ 317. Verbs and Adjectives signifying *fulness or want* often govern an Ablative of the means or manner: as,

Germania rivis flāminibusque abundat, Germany abounds in streams and rivers.—Sen.

Neptūnus ventis implēvit vēla sēcundis, Neptune filled the sails with favourable winds.—Virg.

Vōluptāte virtus saepe cāret, nunquam indiget, Virtue is often without pleasure, never needs (it).—Sen.

Cera rēferta nōtis, A wax tablet full of marks.—Ov.

Obs. 1. Verbs of *filling* less frequently take a Genitive of that *with which*; as, *implēre ollam dēnāriōrum, to fill a pot with denaries*, Cic. (Fam. 9, 18); Adjectives of *filling* usually take a Genitive (§ 276). Of Verbs of *want*, *cāreo* takes always an Ablative; *indigeo*, usually a Genitive; *ēgeo*, either the Genitive or Ablative. For the construction of Adjectives of *want*, see § 276.

Obs. 2. The Verbs *afficere, instruere, ornare*, &c., come under this rule, and govern an Ablative of the thing: as,

Prædit afficit pōpūlāres suos, He has enriched his countrymen with booty.—Plaut.

Obs. 3. *Præditus, endowed with*, also governs the Ablative; as,

Mens est prædita mōtu sempiterno, The mind is endowed with perpetual motion.—Cic.

4. Ablative of Quality.

§ 318. The Ablative of Quality is used in describing a Person or Thing. Like the *Genitive of Quality* (§ 274), it requires an Adjective to be in agreement with it : as,

Caesar fuisse traditur *excelsâ staturâ, cōlōre candīdo, tēvītibus membris*, *Caesar is said to have been of tall stature, fair complexion, and well-formed limbs.*—Suct.

Obs. For the difference between the *Ablative of Quality* and the *Genitive of Quality*, see § 274, *Obs.* 1. The Ablative is also generally used of external features, as in the above example.

5. Ablative of Comparison.

§ 319. The Ablative is used after Comparatives instead of *quam* with the Nominative, and also instead of *quam* with the Accusative of the subject in the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive : as,

Nihil est *ōtiōsâ sēnectute* (= *quam otiosa senectus*) *jūcundius*, *Nothing is more delightful than an old age of retirement.*—Cic.

Tullus Hostilius *Rōmūlo* (= *quam Romulus*) *fuit fērōcior*, *T. Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus*—Liv.

Scimus *sōlem multo mājōrem esse terrâ* (*quam terram*), *We know that the sun is much greater than the earth.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative, instead of *quam*, with the Object-Accusative, is less frequent, but is found in the best authors : as,

Quem auctōrem lōcuplētīōrem Plātōne laudāre possūmus, *What weightier authority can we quote than Plato?*—Cic.

When the Object-Accusative is a Pronoun, the Ablative is more frequently used instead of *quam*; and this is always the case with the Relative in negative clauses : as,

Pūnicum bellum, quo nullum mājus Rōmāni gessēre, *The Punie war, than which the Romans carried on none greater.*—Liv.

Obs. 2. The omission of *quam* with the comparative of an adverb is rare in prose : comp. § 548.

Obs. 3. The Ablative is never used when two Predicates are compared : as,

Miltiādes amīcior (fuit) omnium libertāti quam (fuit) suae dōmīnātiōni, *Miltiades was more a friend to the freedom of all, than he was to his own sovereign power.*—Nep.

Obs. 4. The use of the Ablatives *spe, expectātiōne, ōpīniōne, aequo, justo, sōlito*, after the comparative, is idiomatic, and is equivalent to *quam est, or erat*, with the Nominative : as,

Ōpīniōne omnium mājōrem cēpi dōlōrem, *I experienced greater grief than all thought I should* (lit. *greater than the opinion of all men*).—Cic.

§ 320. In like manner *dignus, worthy*, and *indignus, unworthy*, govern the Ablative : as,

Virtus imitātiōne, non invīdiā, digna est, *Virtue is deserving of imitation, not of envy.*—Cic.

Quam multi luce indigni sunt, *How many are unworthy of the light of day!*—Sen.

6. Ablative of Measure.

§ 321. The Ablative of Measure denotes *by how much* one thing is greater or less than another, and occurs in connexion with Comparative words: as,

Turres dēnis pēdibus quam mūri altiōres sunt, The towers are higher than the walls by ten feet.—Curt.

Q. Pompēius, biennio quam nos major, Quintus Pompeius, who was older than I (Cicero) by two years.—Cic.

Nātūra id multo artificiōsius efficit, Nature effects that more ingeniously by far.—Cic.

Quo quisque est sollertior et ingēniōsior, hoc dōcet lābōriōsius, The more (by what degree the more) clever and gifted a man is, with the more labour does he give lessons.—Cic.

7. Ablative of Time.

§ 322. The answer to the question *When?* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Plāto ūno et octogēsimo anno scribens est mortuus, Plato died (while) writing in his eighty-first year.—Cic.

Extrēmā puēritiā miles fuit summi impērātōris, In the last part of his boyhood he was the soldier of a very great general.—Cic.

Sōlis occāsu, At sunset.—Liv.

Sātūni stella triginta fere annis cursum suum conficit, The star of Saturn completes its orbit in about 30 years.—Cic.

§ 323. When the Substantive denoting Time is without an Attributive, the Preposition *in* is generally used: as,

Aurigandi arte in ādōlescentiā fuit clārus, He (Nero) was distinguished in his youth for his skill in driving.—Suet.

Ter in anno, Thrice in the year.—Cic.

Obs. The following Ablatives are exceptions: *die, by day; nocte, by night* (but also *de die, de nocte*); *vespère s. vespēri, in the evening; tempore, in time, in season* which are used without a Preposition.

§ 324. The answer to the question *Within what time?* is expressed by the Ablative alone, or by the Ablative with the Preposition *in*: as,

Agāmēmnōn vix dēcem annis ūnam cēpit urbem, Agamemnon with difficulty in ten years took a single city.—Nep.

Sēnātus dēcrēvit, ut lēgātī Jugurthae in diēbus proximis dēcem Italiā dēcederent, The Senate decreed that the ambassadors of Jugurtha should depart from Italy within the next ten days.—Nep.

§ 325. The answer to the question *How long before?* or *How long after?* is expressed by the Ablative with *ante* or

post after it. But the Accusative may be used with *ante* or *post* preceding it. If the Preposition is placed between the numeral and the substantive, either the Ablative or Accusative may be used. Thus all the following forms may be used with the same meaning :

Accusative.

ante or post tres annos
 „ post tertium annum
 tres ante or post annos
 tertium ante or post annum

Ablative.

tribus annis ante or post.
 tertio anno ante or post.
 tribus ante or post annis
 tertio ante or post anno.

When *ante* or *post* stands last, it may govern a proposition depending upon it : as,

Annis quingentis et decem post Rōmam eonditam Līvius fabūlam dedit, Līvius brought forward a drama 510 years after the founding of Rome.—Cic.

Obs. 1. When *ante* or *post* is followed by *quam* and a verb, the following constructions may be used :

Tribus annis post, quam (or postquam) vēnerat.
 Post tres annos quam vēnerat.
 Tertio anno post, quam (or postquam) vēnerat.
 Post annum tertium quam vēnerat

Or *post* may be omitted :

Tertio anno quam vēnerat.

All these expressions signify equally, *Three years after he had come.*

Obs. 2. *Abhinc, ago,* is used both with the Accusative and Ablative : as,
Abhinc annos quattuordecim, Fourteen years ago.—Cic.

Abhinc triginta diebus, Thirty days ago.—Cic.

8. Ablative of Place.

• § 326. The answer to the question *Where?* is put in the Ablative both without and with a Preposition.

§ 327. The construction of the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question *Where?* is explained in § 257.

§ 328. The following Ablatives are used without a Preposition, in answer to the question *Where?* *dextrā, on the right hand* ; *laevā, sinistrā, on the left hand* ; *terrā mārīque, on sea and land* ; *bello, in the field* (comp. § 258) : as

Intōnuit laerā, It thundered on the left hand.—Virg.

Terrā mūrīque conquirere, To make search by sea and land.—Cic.

§ 329. The following Substantives, *lōcus, terra, rēgio, via, iter*, with similar words, are used in the Ablative without a Preposition, when some Attributive is attached to them : as,

Athēnienses lōco idōneo castra fēcērunt, The Athenians formed their camp in a suitable spot.—Nep.

Aurēliā viā prōfectus est, He set out by the Aurelian way.—Cic.

§ 330. Any Substantive, with the Adjective *tōtus*, may be put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Quis tōto mārī lōcus tūtus fuit, What place was safe throughout all the sea?—Cic.

Tōtā Asiā, Throughout all Asia.—Cic.

Obs. So Livy has *mēdio monte*, along the middle of the mountain range (38, 26): but in *mēdio colle*, Caes. (B. G. 1, 24.)

§ 331. In all cases besides the above the Preposition *in* is used in prose: as,

In Italiā nullus exercitus (erat), There was no army in Italy.—Sall.

In hac solitūdine cāreo omnium collōquio, In this solitude I am without the society of anybody.—Cic.

Obs. These restrictions are not observed by the Poets, who use the Ablative freely to denote place: as,

Sileisque agrisque cūisque corpōra foeda jacent, O'er forest, field, and highway, the loathsome bodies lie.—Ov.

Mēdius Pollūce et Castōre, Betwixt Pollux and Castor.—Ov. (Am. 2, 16, 13.)

9. Ablative Absolute.

§ 332. When a Substantive or Pronoun, together with a Participle or an Adjective, form a clause by themselves, and are not under the government of, or in agreement with any other word, they are put in the *Ablative Absolute*: as,

His rēbus cognitis, Caesar ad nāves rēvertitur, Having learnt these things (lit., these things having been learnt), Caesar returns to the fleet.—Caes.

Pythāgōras Tarquīnio Sūperbo regnante in Italiā vēnit, Pythagoras came into Italy in the reign of Tarquinius Superbus (lit., Tarquinius Superbus reigning).—Cic.

Aliquid salvis lēgibus agēre, To do a thing without breaking the laws (lit., the laws being safe or unbroken).—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative Absolute may often be explained as the Ablative of Time (§ 322, as in the 1st and 2nd of the above examples: sometimes as the Ablative of Manner (§ 311), as in the 3rd. It always denotes some condition or attendant circumstance of that which is described in the rest of the sentence as taking place.

Obs. 2. As there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs, this Participle in English must in Latin usually be changed into the Passive, and put in the Ablative Absolute agreeing with what was before its own object: as,

Caesar, expōsito exercitū, ad hostes contendit, Caesar, having landed his army, hastens against the enemy.—Caes.

§ 333. Sometimes a perfect participle passive is put in the Ablative Absolute, where the Substantive is represented by an entire clause: as,

Nondum comperto, in quam rēgionem vēnisset, It not being yet ascertained into what quarter he had come.—Liv.

Excepto quod non simul esses, cētera laetus, This fact excepted that you are not with me, (I am) happy in all beside.—Hor.

Obs. 1. This construction occurs most frequently in the case of the Ablatives *audito, cognito, comperto*, and the like.

Obs. 2. Tacitus even uses an Adjective in the same way: as,

Juxta pēriculōso, ficta seu vēra prōmēret, It being alike hazardous whether he spoke what was false or true. (Ann. 1, 6.)

§ 334. The Ablative Absolute is frequently used with one Substantive in Apposition to another without any participle, because the verb *sum* has no Present or Perfect Participle: as,

Nātus est Augustus, M. Tullio Cicerōne et Antōnio consūlibus, Augustus was born when M. Tullius Cicero and Antonius were consuls.—Suet.

Si se invito transire cōnārentur, If they should attempt to cross against his will (lit., he being unceilling).—Caes.

CHAPTER XLII.—THE VOCATIVE.

§ 335. The Vocative Case indicates the object spoken to: as,

Recte te, Cŷre, beātum fērun, With reason, Cyrus, do they proclaim thee happy.—Cic.

Et tu, Brūte, And thou too, Brutus!

Obs. Hence the Pronouns of the Third Person, as *sui, hic, ille, iste, &c.*, with the Relative, can have no Vocative.

§ 336. The Vocative is often introduced by the Interjection *o*, especially in the Poets: as,

O lux Dardāniae, O thou light of the land of Troy!—Virg.

O dēcus impērii, O thou glory of the empire!—Lucan.

Obs. This use of the Interjection *O* must not be confounded with that explained in § 250: the Vocative is used only in *speaking to* or *invocation*.

§ 337. A Substantive or other word in Apposition with a Vocative sometimes stands in the Nominative: as,

Audi tu pōpūlus Albānus, Hear, O thou people of Alba!—Liv.

Obs. Perhaps this apparent Nominative is to be regarded as an old form of the Vocative; for it is found even without Apposition: as,

Agēdum pontifex publicus pōpūli Rōmāni, praei verba, Go to now, thou national pontiff of the people of Rome, repeat before me the form of words!—Liv.

CHAPTER XLIII.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 338. The ordinary rules for the construction of Adjectives are given under the Second Concord (§§ 223-227), and the several Cases of Substantives. The following are of a more special nature.

§ 339. A Masculine Adjective is often used without a Substantive to denote *Persons*; and a Neuter Adjective to denote *Things*: as,

Omnes omnia bona dicere, *All (men) say all kinds of good (things)*.
Ter.

Parvum parva decent, *Small (things) befit a small (man)*.—Hor.

Obs. 1. But when the termination of the Adjective alone would not be a sufficient guide, the Substantive *homo* or *res* must be expressed: thus, *multorum hominum, of many persons*; *multarum rerum, of many things*. [*Multorum* alone might refer to either *persons* or *things*.]

Obs. 2. Adjectives are principally used in this way in the Plural: as, *docti, learned men*; *magna, great things*. But in the Singular a Substantive is usually added: as, *homo doctus, a learned man*; *pulehra res, a beautiful thing*.

§ 340. When two Adjectives are attributives to one Substantive they must be connected by a Conjunction. Thus whereas in English we say, "*Many good men*," the Latin idiom requires *multi et boni viri*, etc.

Obs. 1. But if an Adjective and Substantive together form one single notion, an additional Adjective may be used without a Connective: as,

Navis oneraria maxima, A transport of the largest size.—Cic.

Statuae equestres inauratae, Gilded equestrian-statues.—Cic.

Obs. 2. The above rule does not apply to numerals or to Adjective Pronouns: thus we may say, *decem boni viri, illi boni viri, omnes boni viri*.

§ 341. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives*.—Sometimes an Adjective is used in Latin where the English idiom requires a Substantive. This is the case with *summus*, *at the top, the top of*; *infimus* or *imus*, *at the bottom, the bottom of*; *medius*, *the middle*; *extremus*, *last, at the end of*; *primus*, *first, at the beginning of*; *reliquus*, *remaining, the remainder of*; *dimidiatus*, *halved, the half of*: as,

Ad imam quercum, At the foot of an oak.—Phaedr.

Unus dimidiatusque mensis, One month and a half.—Cic.

Extrema hieme, At the end of winter.—Cic.

Reliqua vita, The rest of life.—Cic.

Obs. But *reliquum* is also found as a Neuter Substantive governing the Genitive: as, *reliquum vitae* (= *reliqua vita*), Liv.

§ 342. The Neuter of an Adjective is often equivalent to an abstract Substantive. Thus, *aequum*, *the equitable*, is equivalent to *aequitas*, *equity*; *honestum*, *the honourable*, to *honestas*, *honour*, *virtue*; and the like: as,

Omnis honesti justique disciplina, *The entire training which belongs to honour and justice.*—Quint.

In jure aut in aequo, *In law or in equity.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. This is especially the case in such adverbial phrases as *ex aequo*, *in accordance with equity*; *ex (de) improviso*, *unexpectedly*; etc.

Obs. 2. Adjectives in *is*, *e*, are rarely used in this way except in the Nominative and Accusative. Yet Horace has *miscere utile dulei*, *to mingle the useful with the agreeable* (A. P. 343); and Livy, *pōtior utilis quam honesti cura*, *the care for expediency took precedence of that of honour* (42, 47).

§ 343. *Adjectives equivalent to Adverbs.*—Adjectives are often used along with Verbs where the English idiom requires an Adverb. This occurs when the word may be regarded as describing the condition of the actor, rather than the manner of the action; also in the case of some Adjectives of time, place, or attitude: as,

Ego eum a me invitissimus dimisi, *I parted with him very unwillingly.*—Cic.

Plūs hōdie bōni imprūdēns fēcī, quam sciens ante hunc diē unquam. *I have to-day done more good unwittingly, than I ever before did wittingly.*—Ter.

The following Adjectives are some of those most frequently used in the above manner: *invitus*, *unwilling*, *unwillingly*; *laetus*, *joyful*, *joyfully*; *libens* = *libenter*, *gladly*, *with pleasure*; *sciens*, *knowing*, *knowingly*; *imprūdēns*, *unwitting*, *unwittingly*; *impēritus*, *unskilled*, *unskilfully*: also, *mātūtīnus*, *in the morning*; *vespētīnus*, *in the evening*; *dōmestīcus*, *at home*; *prōnus*, *on one's face*; *sūpīnus*, *on one's back*; *sublīmīs*, *aloft*; *mēdius*, *in the midst*.

— Obs. Of the above *mātūtīnus*, *vespētīnus*, *dōmestīcus* as = *mānē*, *vespērē*, *dōmī* are of rare occurrence.

§ 344. The neuter (accusative) singular is sometimes used adverbially; especially by the poets: as,

Dulce ridēre, loqui, *Sweetly to smile, to speak.*—Hor.

Pectus turbidum laetatur, (*My*) *bosom feels a tumultuous joy.*—Hor.

Sometimes the neuter plural is used: as,

Ācerbā tūens, *looking fiercely.*—Virg.

Obs. 1. This idiom is occasionally found in prose: as,

Falsum rēndens vultu, *Wearing a counterfeit smile on his features.*—Tac.

Obs. 2. This use of the neuter accusative is to be explained on the principle of the cognate accusative (see § 280). Thus *dulce ridere* (Gr. ἡδὺ γελάειν) is equivalent to *dulcem risum ridere*; *turbidum laetari*, to *turbidam laetationem laetari*, etc.

§ 345. *Prior*, *primus*, *posterior*, *postrēmus*, are used in agreement with a Substantive, where in English a relative clause with the verb *to be* is required: as,

Hannibal primus cum exercitu Alpes transiit, Hannibal was the first who crossed the Alps with an army.

Hispania postrēma omnium provinciarum perdomita est, Spain was the last of all the provinces which was thoroughly subdued.—Liv

Obs. The use of *prior*, *primus*, and *posterior*, *postrēmus*, must be carefully distinguished from that of the corresponding adverbs *prius*, *primum*, etc. The Adjectives serve to compare a person with *some one else* (in point of time); the Adverbs, to denote the order of the Subject's own action: thus *primus dixit* means, *he was the first who spoke*; *primum dixit*, *he first spoke, and then, etc.*

Comparatives.

§ 346. When two members of a comparison are united by *quam*, the second member is put in the same case as the first, when the verb or governing word belongs to both: as,

Neque habet [hērus meus] plus sapientiae quam lapis, Nor has he [my master] any more sense than a stone (has).—Pl.

Dēet nobis cāriorem esse patriam quam nosmetipsos, Our country ought to be dearer to us than ourselves.—Cic.

§ 347. But if the first member of a comparison is governed by a word which does not belong to the second, the verb *sum* must be used with the latter, though in English the verb *to be* is frequently omitted: as,

Haec verba sunt Varrōnis, hōmīnis doctiōris quam fuit Claudius, These are the words of Varro, a more learned man than Claudius.—Gell.

Argentum reddidisti L. Cordio, hōmīni non gratiōsiōri, quam Cn. Calidius est, You restored the silver to L. Cordius, a man not more influential than Cn. Calidius.—Cic.

Obs. If the first member of the clause is in the Accusative, the second is frequently put in the same case by attraction: as,

Ego hōmīnem callidiōrem vidi nēmīnem quam Phormiōnem (for, quam Phormio est), I have never seen a cleverer fellow than Phormio.—Ter.

Patrem tam plācidum reddo quam ovem (= quam ovīs est), I make (your) father as quiet as a sheep.—Ter.

§ 348. The Comparative frequently governs the Ablative, with the omission of *quam*. This is explained under § 319.

§ 349. *Plus* and *amplius*, *more*, and *minus*, *less*, are used with numerals and words of quantity, either with or without *quam*, as indeclinable words, and without influence upon the construction: as,

Non plus quam quattuor millia effugerunt (not *effugit*), *Not more than four thousand escaped*.—Liv.

Pictores antiqui non sunt usi plus (not *pluribus*) *quam quattuor coloribus*, *The ancient painters did not use more than four colours*.—Cic.

Minus duo millia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt, *Less than two thousand men escaped out of so great an army*.—Liv.

§ 350. When two Adjectives are compared together, *magis* is either used with the first Adjective, or both Adjectives are in the comparative degree: as,

Corpora magis quam firma, *Bodily frames rather big than strong*.—Liv.

Paulli contio fuit verior quam gratior populo, *The speech of Paullus was more true than popular*.—Liv.

Obs. Tacitus departs from this construction, and uses the positive in the second member of the comparison, or even in both: as,

Claris majoribus quam vetustis, *Of a family more distinguished than old*.—Tac. (See § 720.)

§ 351. The Comparative also denotes that the quality exists in a considerable or too high a degree: as,

Senectus est natura loquacior, *Old age is naturally somewhat talkative*.—Cic.

Volutas, quum major est, omne animi lumen exstinguit, *Pleasure, when it is too great, extinguishes all light of the mind*.—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Too great in proportion to something* is translated by the Comparative and *quam pro*: as,

Proelium atrocius quam pro numero pnantium, *A fiercer battle than one might expect from the number of the combatants*.—Liv.

Obs. 2. The same notion in connexion with a Verb is expressed by the Comparative and *quam qui* or *quam ut*: as,

Majior sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere, *I am too great for fortune to be able to injure*.—Ov.

Damna majora sunt quam quae aestimari possint, *The losses are too great to be able to be estimated*.—Liv.

§ 352. *Atque* and *ac* are sometimes used by the poets instead of *quam* after Comparatives: as,

Artius atque hedera, *More closely than ivy*.—Hor.

Superlatives.

§ 353. To express the highest possible degree, the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs is used with *quam*, or in

the case of *maximus* with *quantus* also, either with or without *possum*: as,

Jugurtha quam maximas potest copias armat, Jugurtha raises the largest force he can.—Sall.

Tanta est inter eos, quanta maxima potest esse morum studiorumque distantia, There is the greatest possible difference in character and in pursuits between them.—Cic.

Dicam quam brevissimè, I will speak as briefly as possible.—Cic.

Obs. We also occasionally find *ut* instead of *quam* without any difference of meaning.

§ 354. The Superlative may be strengthened by the addition of:

1. *Unus* or *unus omnium*: as,

P. Scævolam unum nostræ civitatis et ingenio et justitiâ præstantissimum audeo dicere, I venture to call P. Scævola by far the most distinguished man in our state both in ability and justice.—Cic.

Miltiades et antiquitate generis et gloriâ majorem unus omnium maximè florebat, Miltiades was distinguished above all others both by the antiquity of his family and the glory of his ancestors.—Nep.

2. By *longè* or *multo*: as,

Alcibiades omnium ætatis suæ multo formosissimus fuit, Alcibiades was by far the most handsome of all persons of his age.—Nep.

§ 355. Comparison may also be made with *quam* *qui* and the Superlative: as,

Tam sum mitis quam qui lenissimus, (i. e. est), I am as mild as the gentlest man in the world.—Cic.

Tam sum amicus reipublicæ quam qui maximè, I am as much a friend to the commonwealth as any one in the world.—Cic.

§ 356. "All the best," "all the wisest," and similar phrases are expressed by *quisque* with the Superlative: as,

Sapientissimus quisque acquiescimo animo moritur, All the wisest of men die with the most resignation.—Cic.

Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur, (All) the deepest rivers flow with the least noise.—Curt.

Obs. 1. A similar meaning may be expressed with the comparative; thus the former of the above sentences might be expressed,

Quo (or ut) quisque est sapientior, ita acquiesce animo moritur.

Obs. 2. A like sense may be expressed by *quam... tam* with the Superlative: as,

Quam vim facillime agitis, . . .

Tam maxime vos æquo animo æqua noscere

Oporet, In proportion as you here meet at your case, ought you above all others with fairness to entertain fair sentiments.—Ter. (Ad. 3, 4, 16).

CHAPTER XLIV.—PRONOUNS.

1. The Personal Pronouns. (See § 75.)

§ 357. The Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of personal Verbs. But they must be expressed where emphasis is required: as,

Ego te laudavi, tu me culpasti, I have praised thee, thou hast blamed me.

Nos, nos consules dēsūmus, It is we, we the consuls, who are wanting (in our duty).—Cic.

§ 358. The speaker often uses the first Person Plural when he does not wish to intrude his own personality: as,

Sex libros de republicā scripsimus, We (= I), wrote six books upon the commonwealth.—Cic.

Reliquum est ut de felicitate Pompēii pauca dicāmus, It remains for us (= me) to say a few words respecting the good fortune of Pompey.—Cic.

Obs. *Noster* is used in the same way instead of *meus*.

§ 359. The plural forms *nostrum*, *vestrum*, must be carefully distinguished from *nostri*, *vestri*. The former alone (being true Plurals) are used as Partitive Genitives, or in connexion with *omnium*. Thus *one of us* is *unus nostrum* (not *unus nostri*); *the wish of you all*, *omnium vestrum* (not *vestri*) *voluntas*.—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Nostri*, *vestri*, are not true Plurals, but the Genitives Singular Neuter of *noster*, *vester*, used abstractly. Thus, *mēmōr nostri* = *mindful of our interest* (i. e. of us).

Obs. 2. But *nostri* is used as a Partive when a division of human nature is spoken of: as,

Nostri mēlior pars ānīmus est, The better part of us is the soul.—Sen.

2. Reflective Pronouns of the Third Person.

(See § 76.)

§ 360. The Reflective Pronoun *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, with the Possessive Pronoun *suus*, refer to the subject or Nominative case of the sentence: as,

Nicias tuā sui mēmōriā dēlectātur, Nicias is delighted with your recollection of him.—Cic.

Bestiis hōmīnes ūti possunt ad suam ūtilitātem, Men can make use of animals for their own advantage.—Cic.

Obs. These pronouns also refer to a Noun which is not the Nominative case, provided it be the real subject: as,

Jam inde ab initio Faustulo spes fuerat, rēgiā stirpem apud se ēdūcāri, Faustulus had from the very beginning entertained the hope that the children brought up with him were of royal origin.—Liv.

A Caesare invitōr, sibi ut sibi lēgātus, I am invited by Caesar to become his lieutenant.—Cic.

§ 361. The Possessive Pronoun *suus* in principal sentences sometimes refers to the Object or to another case, when there is a close connexion between the two words: as,

Hannibālem sui cīves ē civitāte ejēcērunt, His own citizens drove Hannibal out of the state.—Cic.

Cātilīna admōnēbat ālium ēgestātis, ālium cūpīditātis suae, Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his (ruling) passion.—Sall.

Sua cūjusque ānimantis nātūra est, Every living creature has its own nature.—Cic.

§ 362. In subordinate propositions, *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, and *suus* may refer, not only to the subject of that proposition, but also to the subject of the principal proposition, especially when that proposition expresses the thoughts or wishes of the previous subject: as,

(Prōcūlus) dixisse fertur, a se vīsum esse Rōmūlum, Proculus is reported to have said that Romulus had been seen by him.—Cic.

Ariovistus respondet, si quid Caesar a se vēlit, illum ad se vēnīre ōportēre, Ariovistus replies that, if Caesar wishes anything of him (Ariovistus), he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).—Caes.

Obs. Inter se is used to denote reciprocity: as,

Vēri āmīci inter se dīlligent, True friends will love one another.—Cic.

3. Possessive Pronouns. (See § 77.)

§ 363. The Possessive Pronouns are frequently omitted in Latin, when they are not emphatic, and can be easily supplied from the context; as,

Apud mātrem recte est, All is well with (your) mother.—Cic. ad Att.

De frātre confido ita esse ut semper vōlui, As for (my) brother, I feel confident that all is as I desired.—ib.

Obs. 1. The Possessive Pronouns often denote something *proper* or *favourable* to: as, *suo loco, suo tempore, at a favourable place or time.*

Obs. 2. On the use of the Possessive Pronoun instead of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, as, *nulla tua epistola, no letter from you,* see § 267, *Obs. 1.*

4. Demonstrative Pronouns. (See § 78.)

§ 364. *Hic* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the First Person, and denotes *this near me*. Hence it may frequently be translated by *present* or some similar word: as,

Ōpus vel in hac magnificentiā urbis conspiciendum, A work worthy of being seen even in the present magnificence of the city.—Liv.

Qui haec vitāpērāri vōlunt, Those who wish the present state of things to be blamed.—Cic.

Sex. Stōla, jūdex hic noster, Sextus Stola, who sits here as our judge.—Cic.

§ 365. *Ille* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Third Person, and denotes *that near him or yonder*. Hence it is used to denote something at a distance, which is well known or celebrated: as,

Ex suo regno sic Mithridates profūgit, ut ex eodem Ponto Mēdēa illa quondam profūgissee dicitur, Mithridates fled from his kingdom just as the famous Medea fled once upon a time from the same Pontus.—Cic.

§ 366. When *hic* and *ille* are used together, referring to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* refers to the nearer, *ille* to the more remote: as,

Caesar beneficiis atque mūnificentiā magnus habēbātur, integritate vitae Cato. *Ille* mansuetudine et misericordiā clarus factus, *huic* severitas dignitatem addiderat, *Caesar* was deemed great for his generosity and munificence, *Cato* for the spotlessness of his life. The former had gained renown by his gentleness and clemency: on the latter, severity had conferred distinction.—Sall.

Obs. *Hic* sometimes refers to that which is nearest in the mind of the speaker, though more distant in the order of words: as,

Cave Cātōni antepōnas ne (Socrātem) quidem *hujus* enim facta, *illius* dicta laudantur, *Beware of preferring to Cato even Socrates, for while it is the deeds of the former (Cato), it is the words of the latter (Socrates) that receive praise.*—Cic.

Melior tūtorque est certa pax quam spērāta victōria, *haec* (pax) in tuā, *illa* in deōrum potestate est, *Sure peace is better and safer than anticipated victory: the former is in your own control, the latter in the control of the gods.*—Liv.

§ 367. *Hic* and *ille* are both used to denote *the following*, or something to be mentioned; but *hic* refers to something present, *ille* to something new or different from the previous subject: as,

Unum hoc dēfinio, esse nēcessitatem virtūtis, *This one thing I would lay down, that there exists a necessity for virtue.*—Cic.

Illud in his rēbus vīdeor, ne forte reāris, *There is one thing (however) I fear, in connexion with these matters (namely) that you should perchance suppose, &c.*—Lucr.

§ 368. *Iste* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Second Person, and denotes *that near you or that of yours*: as,

De *istis* rēbus exspecto tuas littēras, *Concerning those things (where you are) I am expecting your letters.*—Cic.

Ista oratio, *That speech (which you make).*—Cic.

§ 369. *Iste* often has a contemptuous meaning, especially in addressing an opponent: as,

Iste vir optimus, *That excellent man of yours (ironically).*—Cic.

Obs. The distinction in meaning between *hic*, *ille*, *iste* is found in the adverbs derived from them.

5. Determinative Pronouns. (See § 79.)

§ 370. *Is* refers to some person or thing determined by the context: as,

P. Asinius Asellus mortuus est C. Sacerdote praetore. Is quum haberet unicam filiam, eam bonis suis heredem instituit. P. Asinius Asellus died in the praetorship of C. Sacerdos. Since he had an only daughter, he appointed her heir to his property.—Cic.

Obs. Hence it may sometimes be rendered *the said*, as in the above example.

§ 371. The Accusative and Dative of *is* are frequently omitted, when they would be in the same case and refer to the same object as in the previous clause: as,

(Multos) illustravit fortuna dum vexat (sc. eos), *Many Fortune has made famous while persecuting them.*—Sen.

Non modo non invidetur illi aetati, verum etiam favetur (sc. ei), *We not only do not envy that time of life, but we even favour it.*—Cic.

Obs. Sometimes the pronoun is omitted, even when it would be in a different case: as,

Huic meae voluntati ut faveas adiutorque (sc. ejus) sis, *That you would favour this my intention and be the furtherer (of it).*—Cic. (Fam. 15, 4).

§ 372. *Is* or its strengthened form *idem* is the regular attendant of the Relative *qui*: as,

Bestiae in quo loco natae sunt ex eo se non commovent, *Beasts do not move from the region in which they were born.*—Cic.

Eadem utilitatis quae honestatis est regula, *The rule of expediency is the same as that of honour.*—Cic.

§ 373. *Is* and *idem* are emphatic, if placed after the relative clause: as,

Quod virtute effici debet, id tentatur pecunia, *What ought to be done by worth, the same is attempted by means of money.*—Cic.

Qui multa loquuntur idem multa mentiantur, *Those who talk much, (the same,) tell many falsehoods.*

§ 374. *Et is* (isque, atque *is*, et *is* quidem) or *nec is*, make the preceding substantive more emphatic, and define it more particularly: as,

Habet homo memoriam et eam infinitam rerum innumerabilium, *The man has a recollection, and that an unbounded one, of innumerable subjects.*—Cic.

Episcurus una in domo et ea quidem angusta tenuit amicorum greges, *Episcurus in one house, and that a small one, entertained troops of friends.*—Cic.

Uno atque eo facili proelio caesi hostes, *The enemy were cut to pieces in a single engagement, and that a slight one.*—Liv.

§ 375. *Idem* may often be translated by *also* or *on the other hand*, when it denotes similarity or opposition in reference to a person or thing already mentioned: as,

Thorius utēbatur eo cibo, qui et suāvissimus esset et ūlem facillimus ad concoquendum, Thorius used such food as was at once most palatable and also easiest of digestion.—Cic.

Nihil ūtile, quod non idem honestum, (There is) nothing expedient which is not also honourable.—Cic.

Inventi multi sunt, qui vitam prōfundere pro patriā parati essent, ūdem glōriæ jacturam ne minimam quidem facere vellent, There have been found many who were prepared to pour out life for their country, and at the same time would not make the very least sacrifice of glory (on her behalf).—Cic.

§ 376. *Ipse* gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and may often be translated by *very*, *just*, or *exactly*: as,

Quaeram ex ipsā, I will enquire of the woman herself.—Cic.

Accipio quod dant; mihi enim sātis est, ipsis non sātis, I accept what they give: for it is plenty for me though not for themselves.—Cic.

Ibi mihi Tulliola mea fuit praesto, nātali suo ipso die, There met me my (daughter) Tullia: just on her very birthday.—Cic.

Crassus triennio ipso minor erat quam Antōnius, Crassus was younger than Antony by exactly three years.—Cic.

§ 377. *Ipse*, when joined to a personal pronoun, agrees with the Subject or the Object, according as either one or the other is more emphatic. Thus “*me ipse laudo*,” *I (but not another person) praise myself*; but “*me ipsum laudo*,” *I praise myself (but not another person)*: as,

Non ēgeo mēdicinā [i. e. ut alii me consolentur]; me ipse consolor, I do not require any medicine; I comfort myself.—Cic.

Drusus se ipse intērēmit, Drusus slew himself [i. e. others did not slay him.]—Vell.

Frātre suum dein seipsum interfēcit, He slew his brother and afterwards himself.—Tac. (See also § 617.)

6. Relative and Correlative Pronouns. (See § 80.)

§ 378. The chief rules for the agreement of the Relative and its antecedent are given in §§ 228–230.

§ 379. *Correlation.*—The following is a list of the principal Relative Pronouns, with their respective correlatives or regular antecedents, and their corresponding Adverbs:

RELATIVES.	CORRELATIVES.
qui	is, idem
quālis	tālis
quantus	tantus
quot (indecl.)	tot (indecl.)

ADVERBS.

ut
quāliter
quantōpère
quōties (-ens)

ita
tāliter (rare)
tantōpère
tōties (-ens)

Quāles . . . principes, (tāles) . . . cives, *Like rulers, like people.*—Cic.

Tantas ōpes quantas nunc habet, non habēret, *He would not be in possession of such wealth as he now possesses.*—Cic.

Quōtiescunque dico, tōties mihi videor in iudiciū vēire, *As often as I speak, so often do I seem to stand my trial.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. For a complete list of the Relative Adjectives, see § 83, and of the Relative Adverbs, § 133.

Obs. 2. After tālis, tantus, tot, and the corresponding Adverbs, the Relatives quālis, quantus, etc., are often left to be understood: as,

Quaeso tam angustam tālis vir (sc. quālis tu es) pōnis dōmum, *Frythoe being such a man (as thou art), buildest thou so small a house?*—Phaedr.

Conservāre urbes tantas atque tāles (sc. quāles eae sunt), *To preserve cities so great and so remarkable (as those).*—Cic.

Similarly the correlative is frequently left to be understood in the relative.

Obs. 3. It must not be supposed that the Relative qui is regularly preceded by is or idem: but these pronouns are used when such a determinative antecedent is necessary, and not hic, ille, or iste. When the last-named Pronouns occur as Antecedents, they retain their proper demonstrative force: as,

Ille fulgor quī dīcitur Jōvis, *Fonder splendour which is called (that of) Jupiter.*—Cic. (Rep. 6, 17.)

§ 380. *Special constructions of the Relative.*—Instead of the full construction is . . . qui, the Relative is often made to agree, as if attributively, with the Substantive to be defined: as,

Quae cūpīditūtes a natūrā prōficiscuntur, facīle explentur sine ullā injuriā, *Such (= eae cupiditates quae) passions as proceed from nature, are easily gratified without any wrong-doing.*—Cic.

(So Horace, Sat. I. 1, iuit.)

Obs. Virgil's urbem quam statuo vestra est (Aen. I. 573), for urbs quam, &c., is an irregular extension of this usage.

§ 381. When in English a Relative sentence defines and limits the extent of a Superlative in agreement with the antecedent, the Superlative is in Latin inserted in the Relative clause; as,

Thēmistōcles noctu do servis suis [eum] quem habuit fidēliissimum, ad Xerxem misit, *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave whom he possessed, by night to Xerxes.*—Nep.

Obs. Horace has a construction the reverse of this: quis non mālārū quas amor cūras habet obliviscitur? = mālārū curarū quas amor habet. (Epid. 2, 37).

§ 382. The Relative Adjectives quālis, quantus, are capable of being governed (like the simple Relative) by a Verb Substantive or Adjective in their own clause: as,

Quum tālis esset quālem te esse vīdeo, *Since he was such a man as I see you to be.*—Cic.

Nullam unquam vīdi tantam (coniōnem), quanta nunc vestra est, *I never saw so large a meeting as yours now is.*—Cic.

Obs. Tālis, tantus are often followed by the Subjunctive with *ut*.

7. Indefinitive Pronouns. (See § 82.)

§ 383. *Aliquis*, *some one*, is more definite than *quis*. *Āliquis* often stands by itself, while *quis* is an enclitic, used with relative clauses and after the conjunctions *si*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num* : as,

Grāvis āliquis cāsus, *Some severe calamity.*—Cic.

Non tua ulla culpa est, si te āliqui timuērunt, *It is no fault of yours if some persons have feared you.*—Cic.

Illis prōmissis standum non est, quae coactus quis mētū prōmisērit, *One is not bound by those promises which one has made under compulsion of fear.*—Cic.

Si quis quid reddit, *If one repays anything.*—Ter.

Divitiācus Caesārem obsecrāvit, ne quid grāvius in frātre stātuēret, *Divitiacus besought Caesar, not to resolve on anything too severe against his brother.*—Caes.

§ 384. *Quispiam* is similar to *quis*, but is capable of taking a more independent and emphatic position ; as,

Quid, si hoc vōluit quispiam Deus? *What if some deity hath willed this?*—Ter. (See also Cic. de Sen. 3, 8.)

Obs. Hence it is not always possible to distinguish between the use of *quispiam* and *aliquis*.

§ 385. *Quīdam*, *a certain one*, denotes a person or thing of which no further definition is considered necessary : as,

Quīdam ex advōcātis, *One of the friends called in.*—Cic.

Hābitant hic quaedam mūlicrūlae, *There dwell here certain young women.*—Ter.

Obs. *Quīdam* and *quāsi quīdam* are often used to soften an expression : as,

Ex tuis littēris cognōvi praepostēram quandam festinātiōnem tuam, *I learnt from your letters your ill-timed haste—so to call it.*—Cic.

Non sunt isti audiendi, qui virtūtem dūram et quāsi ferream quandam vōlunt, *Those are not to be heeded who will have a hard and, so to speak, iron virtue.*—Cic.

§ 386. The substantive *quisquam* and the adjective *ullus*, *any one whatever*, are used in negative propositions, in questions with the force of a negation, and with *sine* : as,

Iustitia nunquam nocet cuiquam, qui eam hābet, *Justice never harms any one who possesses it.*—Cic.

Sine sociis nemo quidquam tāle cōnātur, *No one attempts anything of the sort without associates.*—Cic.

Sine virtūte necque amicitiam neque ullam rem expetendam consequi possumus, *Without virtue we cannot attain either to friendship or to any desirable object.*—Cic.

Quid est, quod quisquam dignum Pompēio afferre possit? *What is there that any one can advance worthy of Pompey?*—Cic.

Obs. In Plautus and Terence *omnis* is sometimes used, instead of *ullus*, with *sine* : as,

Sine omni periculo, *Without any danger.*—Ter.

§ 387. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are also used with emphasis after comparatives and conditional and relative propositions. as,

Tētrior hic tyrannus Syracūsānus fuit quam *quisquam* sup̄iorum, *This tyrant of Syracuse was more bloodthirsty than any one of his predecessors.*—Cic.

Si tempus est *ullum* jure hōmīnes necandi, certē illud est justum, quum vi vis illata defenditur, *If there be any time for justly putting men to death, certainly that is the just time when violence offered is repelled by violence.*—Cic.

Quamdiu *quisquam* erit, qui te defendere audeat, vives, *As long as there shall be a single man who will venture to defend you, you shall live.*—Cic.

Obs. The two rules above mentioned apply also to *unquam* and *usquam* : as,

Bellum maxime mēmōrābile omnium, quae *unquam* gesta sunt, *The most memorable of all wars that have ever been waged.*—Liv.

§ 388. *Quisque* denotes *each one by himself* (distributively), *every single one*. It often appears in the strengthened form *ūnusquisque* (or as two words) : as,

Pōnite ante oculos ūnumquemque rēgum, *Set before your eyes each one of the kings.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. When used with *se*, *suus*, *quisque* usually stands immediately after those pronouns : as,

Sibi *quisque* maxime consūlit, *Everybody consults chiefly his own interests.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. In relative sentences *quisque* stands immediately after the relative, as an enclitic : as,

Quam *quisque* nōrit artem, in hac se exerceat, *Let each practise himself in the art which he is acquainted with.*—Cic.

§ 389. *Quisque* is also used with the Comparative and Superlative. See examples under § 356.

§ 390. *Alius*, when repeated signifies *one . . . another*; alter, when repeated, signifies *the one . . . the other* (being used of only two persons or things) : as,

Prōfērebant alii purpuram, tus alii, gemmas alii, *They brought forward some purple, others incense, others precious stones.*—Cic.

Alter exercitum perdidit, alter vendidit, *The one has lost an army, the other sold one.*—Cic.

CHAPTER XLV.—THE VERB: INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 391. The Indicative Mood is used,

(A.) To state a proposition; or, Predicatively.

(B.) To ask a question; or Interrogatively.

Obs. On the use of the Indicative Mood in Hypothetical sentences, see § 424.

(A.) THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY.

§ 392. *Present Tense*.—(1.) The Present Tense is used both of that which is now taking place, and of that which is generally true: as,

Dextrā laevāque duo mǎria claudunt (nos), On the right and on the left two seas shut us in.—Liv. (Hannibal to his soldiers.)

Vōluptas sensibus nostris blanditur, Pleasure wins upon our senses.
—Cic. (General statement.)

Obs. With *jam pridem*, *jam dūdum*, the present tense has the force of a present perfect: as, *jam pridem cūpio, I have long desired* (Cic.): so, *jam dūdum flēbam, I had been for some time weeping* (Ov.) In poetry and in later writers, they are also used with the perfect tenses.

§ 393. The Present Tense is often used (for a past) in narrative for the sake of greater vividness, and is hence called the *Historical Present*: as,

Dum haec g'rruntur, Cassivellaunus nuntios mittit, While these events are going on, Cassivellaunus sends messengers.—Caes.

Obs. 1. This mode of speech, in English, found only in quasi-Dramatic passages, is in Latin very frequent.

Obs. 2. The Present is almost always used with *dum*, though the rest of the sentence may be in a *Past* tense: as,

Dum haec pǎrantur, Saguntum jam oppugnābātur, While these preparations were (Lit., are) making, Saguntum was already being assaulted.
—Liv.

But when *dum* signifies *as long as*, it may take a *Past* or *Future*: as,
Hoc feci dum licuit, I did this as long as I was permitted.—Cic.

§ 394. *Past-Imperfect Tense*.—The *Past-Imperfect Tense* is used of that which was going on at the time spoken of: as,

Ānus subtēmen nēbat: praeterea ūna ancillūla erat: ea texēbat, An old woman was spinning a woof; there was only a little maid besides: the girl (herself) was weaving.—Ter.

Obs. For the use of this tense with *jam pridem*, etc., see § 392, *Obs.*

§ 395. The *Past-Imperfect* is often used of what *was wont* to be done: as,

Archytas nullam cǎpitāliōrem pestem quam vōluptātem corpōris dicēbat hōminibus ā nātūrā dātā. Archytas used to say that no more fatal scourge had been brought upon men by Nature than bodily pleasure.—Cic.

Ut Rōmæ cōsules, sic Carthāgine quōtannis annui bīni rēges creābantur, *As at Rome two consuls, so at Carthage two kings were annually appointed.*—Nep.

§ 396. The Past-Imperfect is also used to signify that something was attempted to be done: as,

Cato pro lōge quae abrogābatur ita dissēruit, *Cato thus spoke in defence of the law which it was purposed to abrogate.*—Liv.

Gladium in pectus iſſerēbat, nī . . . &c., *He was just plunging his sword into his bosom (and would have done so) had not, &c.*—Tac.

Antiochus filiam suam in mātrimonium mihi dēbat, *Antiochus offered to give me his daughter in marriage.*—Liv.

§ 397. The Past-Imperfect of the Verb *sum* is sometimes used in the sense of the Past-Indefinite or Aorist: as,

Crimen nullum erat; res iudicata: Verres nummos accēperat, *There was no accusation; the matter was already adjudged; Verres had received the cash.*—Cic.

Homo erat Siculus, *The man was a Sicilian.*—Cic.

Classis communis Graeciae, in quā ducentae erant Athēnensium, *The combined fleet of Greece, in which 200 ships belonged to the Athenians.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. But the Perfect or Past-Indefinite is preferred when a thing is simply spoken of as an historical fact, not viewed as continuing: as,

Pater ejus Noves generosus fuit, *His father Noves was of noble birth.*—Nep.

Obs. 2. The same remarks apply to the Past-Imperf. of *possum*.

§ 398. The Past-Imperfect is often used in epistolary correspondence, of that which is *present* to the writer, but will appear as *past* to the reader, of the letter (compare § 404): as,

Ita erant omnia quae isthinc afferebantur incerta, ut quid ad te scriberem non occurreret, *All the news that is brought from your quarter is so uncertain, that I cannot tell what to write.*—Cic. Ep.

Obs. But the Present is quite as frequent, and is always used when a thing is stated generally and without reference to the precise time of writing: as,

Non hic edissimus recte, *I am enjoying good health here.*—Cic. Ep.

Sed Albigat tabellarius, valdebit igitur, *But the postman is pressing, so good-bye.*—Cic. Ep.

Spero homines intellecturos, quanto sit omnibus odio crudelitas, *I hope people will understand how odious cruelty is to every one.*—Cic. Ep.

§ 399. *Future Tense.*—The Future Tense is used of that which is to take place in time to come: as,

Cris ingens iterābimus aequor, *To-morrow we shall again traverse the boundless ocean.*—Hor.

Obs. The Future is also used with the force of an imperative: see § 426.

Obs. 2.

§ 400. *Perfect Tense*.—This Tense is used both as a Present-Perfect and Past-Indefinite Tense (Aorist). Thus *feci* is either *I have done* or *I did*. The context enables us to tell in which sense it is used: as,

Nemo parum diu vixit qui virtutis perfunctus est munere. No one has lived Pres.-Perf. too short a time who has fully discharged the part of virtue.—Cic.

Appius caecus multos annos fuit (Past.-Indef.), Appius was blind for many years.—Cic.

§ 401. The Perfect Tense is used after *postquam*, *after that*; *ut primum simul atque (ac), as soon as*; *ut, ubi, when*; where in English we often use the Past-Perfect: as.

Pelopidas non dubitavit, simul ac conspexit hostem, confligere, Pelopidas did not hesitate, as soon as ever he saw (had seen) the enemy, to engage.—Nep.

Ubi de Caesaris adventu Helvetii certiōres facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, No sooner had the Helvetii got information of Caesar's arrival than they sent ambassadors to him.—Caes

Ut Hostus cecidit, confestim Rōmāna inclinātur acies, As soon as Hostus fell (had fallen), the Roman line immediately gave way.—Liv.

Obs. 1. But *postquam* takes a Past-Perfect when a precise time is specified: as, *Hannibal anno tertio postquam dōmo profugerat, in Africam venit, Hannibal came into Africa three years after he had fled from home.*—Nep.

Obs. 2. But *quum, when*, usually takes the Subjunctive: v. § 483.

§ 402. *Past-Perfect Tense*.—The Past-Perfect Tense indicates that something *had taken place* at the time spoken of: as,

Prōgēniem Trōjāno a sanguine dūci audierat, She had heard that a race was being derived from Trojan blood.—Virg.

§ 403. The Past-Perfect Indicative is sometimes used by the Poets for the Past-Perfect Subjunctive, for the sake of greater vividness: as,

Me truncus illapsus cērebro,

Sustulērat, nisi Faunus ictum

Dextrā lēvasset, Me a tree-trunk upon my brains descending had else dispatched, had not Faunus, with his right hand, lightened the blow.—Hor. (This is probably a Greek idiom: the Past-Perfect being equivalent to a Past Tense Indie. with *ἄν*.)

§ 404. The Past-Perfect is also, like the Past-Imperfect, sometimes used in epistolary correspondence, in order to accommodate the time to the position of the reader rather than of the writer: as,

Nihil habēbam quod scribērem, neque enim quicquam nōvi audieram, *I have nothing to write, for I have heard no news.*—Cic. Ep.

Obs. But this is only allowable when the reference is expressly to the time when the letter was being written. See § 393.

§ 405. *Future-Perfect Tense.*—The Future-Perfect Tense indicates that something *will have* taken place by the time spoken of: as,

Rōmam quum rēnēro, quae perspexēro, scribam ad te, *When I (shall) have got to Rome, I will write to you what I (shall) have seen.*—Cic.

Dum tu haec lēges, ego illum fortasse contrēnēro, *While you will be perusing this, I shall perhaps have had an interview with him.*—Cic

§ 406. Sometimes the Future-Perfect is used to indicate that a thing will be finished and gone immediately: as,

Dum loquimur, jūgērit invida aetas, *E'en while we speak, jealous time is fled.* (Lit., *will have fled.*)—Hor.

§ 407. Both the Future-Perfect and the simple Future are sometimes used in compound sentences where in English the sign of future time is not expressed: as,

Hoc, dum ērimus in terris, ērit coelesti vitae simile, *This, while we are on earth, will be like the life of the gods.*—Cic.

Nātūram si sequēmur dūcem, nunquam aberrābimus, *If we follow nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.*—Cic.

De Carthagine vēreri non ante dēsīnam, quam illam excisam esse cognōrēro, *I shall not cease to have fears about Carthage, till I learn she has been utterly destroyed.*—Cic.

Obs. But the future sense is sure to be expressed in one of the clauses, as in the above examples.

(B.) THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED INTERROGATIVELY.

1. Single Direct Question.

§ 408. The Indicative Mood is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs in asking *Direct Questions*: as,

Quousque tandem, Cātīlina, abūtēre pātentiā nostrā, *How far, I pray thee, Catiline, wilt thou abuse our forbearance?*—Cic.

Ut rālet? ut inēmīnit nostri? *How does he? how does he think of me?*—Hor.

Quōta hōra est? *What o'clock is it?*—Hor.

Thrax est Gallīna Sŷro par? *Is the Thracian Gallina a match for Syrus?*—Hor.

§ 409. In addition to the Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, the following particles are used to indicate a question:—*nē* (enclitic), *num*; *utrum* and *an*. The latter two are used only in asking *Double questions*; i. e., questions with two (or more) alternatives.

§ 410. *The Interrogative Particle -nē*—The Particle *nē* is an enclitic, being always joined to some other word. It is used in asking a simple, straightforward question as,

Tarquīnius rex interrogāvit: Estisne vos lēgāti orātōresque missi a pōpulo Collātino? Sāmus—King Tarquīnius asked: are ye ambassadors and spokesmen sent from the people of Collatia? We are.—Liv.

Dātūrne illa hōdie Pamphīlo nuptum, Is she to be given to Pamphilus in marriage to-day?—Ter.

Obs. *Nē* is always joined to the first word in the interrogative sentence, except when united with *non*, as *nonne* [see next sect.].

§ 411. *Nonne*.—In questions put with a negative, such as, *Is it not so? Was it not so?* where the answer *Yes* is evidently expected, the enclitic is always joined with the negative; thus, *nonne*: as,

Cānis nonne similis lūpo (est, Is not the dog like a wolf?—Cic.

Nonne emōri per virtūtem praestat, Is it not better with valour to die outright?—Sall.

§ 412. *The Interrogative Particle num*.—The Particle *num* indicates that the answer *No* is taken for granted. It always begins its sentence: as,

Num negare audes, Do you dare deny it?—Cic.

Num facti Pamphīlum pīget, Pamphilus isn't sorry for what he has done, is he?—Ter.

Num Viscellinum amīci regnum appetentem debuerunt adjuvare, Think you the friends of Viscellinus ought to have assisted him in aiming at regal power?—Cic.

Obs. In *Indirect questions num* ceases to have a negative force: v. § 435.

§ 413. *Ecquid* and *Numquid*.—These words are compounded of the interrogative and indefinite pronoun *quid*; but they are frequently used as mere interrogative particles equivalent to *ne* and *num* respectively: as,

Quid est, Cātīlīna? Ecquid attendis? Ecquid animadvertis hōrum silentium? What means it, Catiline? Mark you it? Observe you the silence of these men?—Cic.

Numquid duas habētis patrias, Have ye forsooth two native countries?—Cic.

2. Double Direct Questions.

§ 414. The Particles used in asking Double direct questions are *utrum*, *an*, *-nē*. *Utrum* is used only in the first alternative, and *an* only in the second, while *-nē* is used in both: as,

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, Is that your fault or ours?—Cic.

Isne est quem quaero annon, Is that the man I am seeking, or not?—Ter.

Sunt haec tua verba necne, Are these your words or no?—Cic.

Obs. 1. Necne and annon, "or no," are written as single words.

Obs. 2. Ne is rare in the second alternative; unless that alternative may be stated in the form "or no," necne.

Obs. 3. The first particle (utrum) is often omitted, as in the last of the above examples.

§ 415. *An* is sometimes apparently used in single questions; but when so, it always has reference to an alternative implied though not expressed: as,

Quid ais? An Pamphilus venit? What say you? Or is Pamphilus really come?—Ter.

Quid dicis? An bello fugitivorum Stetliam virtute tuâ liberatam? What say you? Or is it that Sicily was by your valour delivered from the fugitive-slave war?—Cic.

Obs. In the above examples the former alternative is involved in the first question, "Have you anything else to say, or will you say that, &c."

§ 416. The following table exhibits the sequence of the Interrogative Particles in questions presenting more than one alternative:—

First Alternative	Second, Third, etc.	
<i>utrum,</i>	<i>an,</i>	<i>an</i>
<i>-nē,</i>	<i>an,</i>	<i>an</i>
(omitted)	<i>an,</i>	<i>an</i>
(omitted)	<i>-ne</i>	

Obs. 1. Concerning Indirect Questions, see § 434.

Obs. 2. When num (numquid) is used in the former part of the question it retains its negative force: an,

Numquid vos duas habetis patrias, an est illa una patria communis, Have you perchance two native-countries? or is the one country common also to you?—Cic.

CHAPTER XLVI.—THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 417. *Present Tense (Jussive).*—The Present Imperative is used in giving orders, directions, or advice, with reference to the immediate Present, or without reference to any definite time; also in salutations: as,

Dissolve frigus, ligna super foco large repone, Throw away the cold; piling the logs freely upon the fire.—Hor.

Fessae date certa carinae, Crown with chaplets my tired bark.—Ov.
Carpe diem, Seize the (present) day.—Hor.

Salve! Ave! Hail to thee, farewell!—Cic.

Obs. Not in prohibitions is expressed by *ne* never non; and in double sentences by *ne . . . , neque* (neu); *nēve . . . , nēve* : as,

Ne crucia te, obsecro, Do not torment yourself, I pray!—Ter.

(Compare following sections.)

§ 418. *Future Tense.*—The Future Imperative is used in commands and exhortations extending to the future as well as the present; hence it is always employed in laws : as,

Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito, nēve urito, Thou shalt not bury or burn a corpse within the city.—XII. Tables.

Rēgio imperio duo sunt, Let there be two persons with regal power.—Vel. Lex. in Cic.

Non satis est pulchra esse poemata, dulcia sunt, It is not enough for poems to have beauty; they must be sweet.—Hor.

Hunc tu, Rōmāne, cūrto, Against such an one, man of Rome, thou wilt have to be on thy guard.—Hor.

§ 419. The Subjunctive Present is sometimes used (not in laws) instead of the Imperative, especially in the Third Person : as

Aut bibat aut abeat, Let him either drink or be gone.—Cic.

Status, incessus, vultus, oculi, teneant decōrum, Let the attitude, gait, features, and eyes maintain propriety.—Cic.

Injūrias fortunæ, quis ferre nōqueas, dēfugiendo relinquoas, The injuries of fortune which you cannot bear, escape by flying from.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Second Person of the Subjunctive Mood is properly used only in general propositions, when it may be translated by "one" : as,

Emas, non quod opus est, sed quod nēcesse est, One should buy not what is necessary, but what one wants.—Sen.

Obs. 2. The Subjunctive when thus used is usually less authoritative than the Imperative.

§ 420. A prohibition may also be expressed by *nē* (also *nemo, nihil*) with the Subjunctive : generally with the Third Person of the Present, and the Second Person of the Perfect Tense : as,

Ne quid rē tibi sit cum Saguntinis, Meddle not with the Saguntines.—Cic.

Ne transieris Rērum, Cross not the Ebro.—Liv.

Nihil ignōvērīs, Show no charity for anything!—Cic.

Obs. 1. A prohibition is often expressed by the periphrasis *nōli, nōlita* : as,

Nōli pātāre, Brūte, quenquam, &c., Do not suppose, Brutus, that any single person, &c.—Cic.

Obs. 2. Also the Second Person Singular of the Future Indicative has sometimes an Imperative force : as,

Tu nihil invītā dicere fūciēsve Minervā, Do not thou say or do anything against the bent of Nature.—Hor.

CHAPTER XLVII.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 421. The Subjunctive Mood expresses a thing not as a *fact* like the Indicative, but merely as a *conception* of the mind.

Hence the Subjunctive Mood is used to indicate,

(A). An hypothesis.

(B). Doubt or uncertainty (including *indirect* questions).

(C). A wish.

(D). Purpose or result.

(E). A proposition borrowed from another, and not adopted by the writer (*narratio obliqua*).

(A). *Si ita esset, ignoscērem, If it were so, I would excuse it.*—Cic.

(B). *Cur dubitas quid de republicā sentias? Why do you doubt what opinion to entertain concerning a commonwealth?*—Cic.

Non dubitat quin Trōja brevi peritura sit, He has no doubt that Troy will soon fall.—Cic.

(C). *Valeas et meminēris nostri, May you be prosperous and think of me!*—Cic.

(D). *Lēgibus servimus ut libēri esse possimus, We submit to the laws that (Purpose) we may be able to be free.*—Cic.

Accidit ut unā nocte omnes Hermæ deſicerentur, It happened that (Result) in one night all the Hermæ were demolished.—Nep.

(E). *Dēcent quanto in discrimine sit Nōlāna res, They point out in what peril Nola is.*—Liv.

§ 422. The Subjunctive Mood is always dependent upon either

(1). Some hypothetical Conjunction (see § 423); or,

(2). Some antecedent sentence or clause to which it is subjoined (*subjunctum*), and which deprives it of the character of a positive ("objective") assertion.

Obs. The antecedent member of the sentence is very often not expressed, but left to be understood (see § 429).

§ 423. *Sequence of Tenses.*—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood must be in concord with the Tense of the antecedent Verb upon which it depends. Thus Present or Future time is followed by Present or Future, and Past time by Past.

Present and Future Time.

PRESENT.	Scio quid agas,	<i>I know what you are doing.</i>
	Scio quid egēris,	<i>I know what you have done.</i>
	Scio quid acturus sis,	<i>I know what you are going to do.</i>
PRESENT PERFECT.	Cognōvi quid agas,	<i>I have learnt what you are doing.</i>
	Cognōvi quid egēris,	<i>I have learnt what you have done.</i>
	Cognōvi quid acturus sis,	<i>I have learnt what you are going to do.</i>
FUTURE.	Audiam quid agas,	<i>I shall hear what you are doing.</i>
	Audiam quid egēris,	<i>I shall hear what you have done.</i>
	Audiam quid acturus sis,	<i>I shall hear what you are going to do.</i>

Past Time.

PAST IMPERFECT.	Sciēbam quid agēres,	<i>I knew what you were doing.</i>
	Sciēbam quid egēsses,	<i>I knew what you had done.</i>
	Sciēbam quid acturus esses,	<i>I knew what you were going to do.</i>
PAST INDEFINITE.	Cognōvi quid agēres,*	<i>I learnt what you were doing.</i>
	Cognōvi quid egēsses,	<i>I learnt what you had done.</i>
	Cognōvi quid acturus esses,	<i>I learnt what you were going to do.</i>
PAST PERFECT.	Cognōvēram quid agēres,	<i>I had learnt what you were doing.</i>
	Cognōvēram quid egēsses,	<i>I had learnt what you had done.</i>
	Cognōvēram quid acturus esses,	<i>I had learnt what you were going to do.</i>

* But the Perfect Subjunctive may be used after the Past Indefinite when the subordinate proposition is conceived of as a distinct historical statement : as,

Aemilius Paullus tantum in aerarium pecūniæ *invenit*, ut unius imperatoris praeda finem attulērit tributorum, *Aemilius Paullus brought such an immense sum of money into the treasury, that the spoils of a single general put an end to the taxes.*—Cic.

Obs. The Historical Present (§ 393) being in reality a past tense, is often followed by Past Tenses Subjunctive : as,

Helvētii lēgatos ad Caesārem mittunt, qui dīcērent, *The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar, to say, &c.*—Caec.

1. Hypothetical Sentences.

§ 424. An hypothetical sentence consists of two parts, the *Protasis* and the *Apodosis*: the former containing the supposition or ground of argument, the latter the conclusion based upon it.

(N.B. For the sake of convenience the use of the Indicative in Hypothetical sentences is brought to this place.)

(1). *Hypothetical sentences with the Indicative.*—If both members of the sentence deal with *facts*, either actual or assumed for the purpose of argument, both their Verbs are in the Indicative Mood: as,

Si est boni consulis ferre opem patriae, est etiam bonorum civium, etc., If it is the duty of a good consul to render help to his country, it is also the duty of good citizens, etc.—Cic.

Si tonuit, etiam fulsit, If it thundered, it also lightened.

(2). *Hypothetical sentences with the Subjunctive.*—But if the sentence implies only that something *may* or *might* happen, or might have happened, both its Verbs are put in the Subjunctive: as,

Si negem, mentiar, If I were to deny it, I should tell an untruth.—Cic.

Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias, You, if you were in my place, would think differently.—Ter.

Necassem jam te verbis, nisi iratus essem, I would have beaten you to death, if I were not angry.—Cic.

§ 425. The Conjunctions used in formally stating hypothetical propositions are *si, if*; and *nisi (ni), sin, if not*. The last (*sin* shortened from *si ne*) is used only when another hypothesis with *si* (expressed or implied) has preceded.

Obs. To these may be added compounds of *si*, as *etsi, etiamsi*; and *dummodo* (see §§ 498, 503).

§ 426. The *Present* and *Perfect* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when it is indicated that a thing *may possibly happen* or *may have happened*: as,

Me dies, vox, lātera, deficiant, si hoc nunc vociferari velim, Time, voice, strength, would fail me if I were to purpose expressing now, etc.—Cic.

Si scieris (Perfect) aspidem occulte latere uspiam,..... improbe feceris, nisi monueris alterum ne assideat, If you should have become aware that an asp were lying concealed in some place, you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn your neighbour not to sit there.—Cic.

At memoria minuitur:—Crēdo, nisi eam exerceas, But (you say), memory decays: I believe you, if you do not exercise it.—Cic.

(Apodosis not expressed, *minuatur, it would fail*.)

Obs. In such cases we in English often use a *Past Tense Subjunctive*, and translate the Latin Present by *should, would, were, &c.*, as in the above examples.

§ 427. The *Past* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when a thing is conceived of as *not actually taking place*, whether *now* (*Past-Imperfect*), or in the *Past* (*Past-Perfect*): as,

Sapientia non expeteretur si nihil efficeret, Wisdom would not be coveted if it answered no end.—Cic.

(*Si*) *ūno praelio victus (esset) Alexander, bello victus esset, Conquered in one battle, Alexander would have been conquered in the (entire) war.—Liv.*

§ 428. Instead of a *Past Tense Subjunctive* of a thing

regarded as not taking place, a Past Tense of the *Indicative* is sometimes used in the *Apodosis*, for the sake of greater vividness: as,

Pons sublicius iter paeno hostibus dedit, ut unus vir fuisset, The Sublician bridge well nigh gave a passage to the enemy, had it not been for one man—Liv.

Compare § 403.)

Obs. The *Indicative* of the verbs *dēbeo*, *dēcet*, *oportet*, *possum*, and *sum* with a gerundive or neuter adjective, is frequently used in this way in the *Apodosis*: as,

Si victoria, praeda, laus dubia essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicae subvenire dēcebat, If victory, plunder, praise, were uncertain, it would still be the duty of all good citizens to come to the aid of the commonwealth.—Sall.

Si ita Milo putasset, optabilius ei fuit, etc., If Milo had so thought, it would have been more desirable for him, &c.—Cic.

429. *Hypothetical sentences without regular Protasis.*—The *Subjunctive* is sometimes used to signify that something would take place *if only* some condition too obvious to be expressed were fulfilled (*Subjunctivus Potentialis*): as,

Crēdat Jūdacus, non ego, The Jew may believe it (if it were told him), not I.—Hor.

Dieas adductum prōpius frondere Tarentum, You would say Tarentum had actually been transported and was blooming nearer home (if you were to see the place).—Hor.

Pecūniae an famae minus parceret, haud facile discerneres, You would not easily tell (if you tried) whether she were more careless of her money or of her reputation.—Sall.

Obs. The *Past-Imperfect* is generally used where in English we say, *you would have thought*; *you would have said*: as,

Crēderes victos esse, (Had you seen them) you would have thought they had been the vanquished.—Liv.

§ 430. The *Subjunctive* is similarly used in expressing a modest wish or affirmation: as,

Velim mihi ignoscas, I should be glad if you would pardon me.—Cic.

Hoc vērō sine ullā dubitatione affirmāvērīm, This I am prepared (if necessary) without any hesitation to assert.—Cic.

Quacrendum eenseam, I should think we ought to make enquiry.—Cic.

§ 431. The *Subjunctive* is sometimes used when a virtual hypothesis is contained in another part of the sentence: as,

An ego in hac urbe esse possim, his pulsus qui me hujus urbis cōpitem fecerunt, Could I exist in this city with those in banishment (i. e., if they are banished) who enabled me to enjoy it?—Cic.

Mōri nemo sapiens miserum dixerit, No wise man (= if he were wise) would think of pronouncing it miserable to die.—Cic.

§ 432. The Subjunctive is also used with or without a Conjunction, to signify that an hypothesis is assumed or granted for the purpose of argument (*Subjunctivus Concessivus*): as,

Mālus cīvis Cn. Carbo fuit:—fuerit aliis: tibi quando esse coepit, Cnaeus Carbo was a bad citizen, was he? (Granted that) he was so to others, when did he begin to be so to you?—Cic.

Vērūm, ut ita sit, tamen non pōtes hoc prædicāre, Yet (granting) that it is so, yet you cannot affirm this.—Cic.

2. The Subjunctive of Doubt or Uncertainty.

§ 433. The Subjunctive is used in dependence upon clauses or sentences denoting doubt, uncertainty, or conditionality (see following sections).

Obs. But the Subjunctive cannot stand by itself with this force.

§ 434. *Indirect Questions.*—An Indirect Question is one which is *quoted* as being asked, or which is dependent upon some word signifying doubt or perplexity in the sentence. Such a question is expressed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Quālis sit ānīmus ipso ānīmus nescit, What is the nature of the mind, the mind itself knows not.—Cic.

(Here the *Direct Question* would be, *Qualis est animus?* § 408.)

Diogēnes dispūtare solēbat, quanto rēgem Persarūm vitā fortunāque sup̄erāret, Diogenes used to argue how much he had the advantage of the king of Persia in living and fortune.—Cic.

(*Direct Question*: *Quanto regem Persarum supero?* *How much have I the advantage?* etc.)

Dii utrum sint, necne sint, quaeritur, The question is raised whether there are gods or not—Cic.

(*Direct Question*: *Utrum dii sunt, necne sunt?*)

Multae gentes nondum sciunt, cur luna deficiat, Many nations are still in ignorance why the moon is eclipsed.—Cic.

(*Direct Question*: *Cur luna deficit?*)

Obs. Thus, *quae tu scias scio*, is *I know what it is you know*: but *quae tu scis, scio*, *What you know, I know also*.

§ 435. In expressing Indirect single Questions, *num* (see § 412) is used without any negative force: as,

Quaero . . . num, aliter ne nunc eveniunt, evenirent, I ask whether they would turn out otherwise than they do?—Cic.

Exsistit hoc loco quaedam quaestio subtilitellis, num quando ameli nōvi vērētibz sint antepōnendū, A somewhat difficult question here arises: whether new friends are ever to be preferred to old ones?—Cic.

§ 436. In Indirect Questions with more than one alternative the following particles are used:—

Quaeritur,	utrum	...	an	...	an.
	-nē	...	an	...	an.
	(omitted)	...	nē	...	-nē.
	num	...	an	...	an.

§ 437. Sometimes the Indicative is found in what are *apparently* Indirect Questions: in such cases the Verb of question must be treated as entirely independent in Syntax: as,

Quaero: *quid faciūri fuistis?* I put the question to you: What were you meaning to do?

Et vide, *quam conversa res est!* And see! How the case has altered!—Ter.

§ 438. The particle *an* is used after some expressions denoting uncertainty or hesitation; especially after *haud scio*, *nescio*, *dūbīto*, *dūbium est*, *incertum est*: as,

Aristotēlem, excepto Plātōne, *haud scio an recte dixērim* principem philosophōrum, *With the exception of Plato, I am inclined to think I should be right in calling Aristotle the first of philosophers.*—Cic.

Dūbīto an Vēnūsiā tendam, et ibi expectem de lēgiōnibus, I am half-inclined to direct my course to Venusia, and there wait news concerning the legions.—Cic.

Contigit tibi quod *haud scio an nēmīni*, *The lot has fallen to you which perhaps has fallen to no one else.*—Cic.

Obs. The phrases *haud scio an*, *nescio an*, *dūbīto an*, always imply the probability of the truth of the proposition which they introduce. They have thus the opposite force to the English "I don't know whether."

§ 439. Propositions about which doubt and uncertainty are distinctly *denied* are expressed with *quin* and the Subjunctive; as *non dūbium est quin*, etc. (see § 461).

§ 440. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in questions indicating *perplexity*, where the Verb *dūbīto* may be supplied (*Subjunctivus dubitativus*): as,

Quid hoc hōmīne faciātis, *What are ye to do with this man?*—Cic.

Quid aliud faceret, *What else was he to do?*—Cic.

Quid enūmērem artium multitudīnem, *Why should I enumerate a multitude of arts?*—Cic. (*Quid enumero* would imply that the speaker was actually doing so.)

§ 441. Verbs of *fearing* take the Subjunctive with *ne* or *ut* according as the fear is expressed that a thing *will* (*ne*) or *will not* (*ut*) happen (see § 460).

§ 442. In all cases where the Subjunctive is found in *apparently* independent propositions, it is in reality dependent upon some *condition*, *doubt*, or *uncertainty*, present to the mind of the speaker or writer ("*subjunctive*"), though not expressed.

3. The Subjunctive expressing a Wish.

§ 443. *Subjunctivus Optātivus*.—The Subjunctive is often used without any preceding Verb, to express a wish.

§ 444. The Present Tense Subjunctive expresses a wish regarded as attainable : as,

Intēream si vāleo stāre, May I be a dead man, if I can stand bail!—Hor.

Vāleant cives mei, sint beāti, May my fellow-citizens prosper, may they be happy!—Cic.

Especially with *utinam*. *O that!* as,

Utinam mōdo cōnāta perficēre possim, O that I may only accomplish my aims!—Cic.

§ 445. The First Person Plural of the same Tense is used to express *mutual encouragement* : as,

Dum vivimus, vivāmus, While we live, let us live!

Imitēmur nostros mājōres, Let us imitate our ancestors!—Cic.

Obs. In the same way is used the Pres.-Perf. *mēmnerim* : as,
Mēmnerimus, Let us remember!

§ 446. The Past-Imperfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive are used in expressing a wish for a thing regarded as no longer attainable : as

Utinam prōmissa licēret non dāre, Would it were lawful not to fulfil promises!—Cic.

Utinam, Cn. Pompēi, cum Cæsare societātem nunquam coisses aut nunquam dirēmissa, I would, Cnaeus Pompeius, you either had never entered into league with Caesar, or else had never broken it off.—Cic.

Obs. Similarly *vellem, mallet, nollem*, are used of wishes regarded as not attainable; while *velim, mālīm, and nōlim* are used of those considered to be so comp. § 426, 427; as,

Vellem Adesae posset Panaetius, I could fain wish Panaetius were present.—Cic.

§ 447. Very often a Verb of *wishing* is expressed, and followed by the Subjunctive either with or without *ut* :

(1.) *Opto, I wish*, is generally construed with *ut* and the Subjunctive (less frequently with the Infinitive) : as,

Optavit ut in currum patris tollēretur, He (Phaethon) desired that he might be taken up into his father's chariot.—Cic.

(2.) *Volo, Nōlo, and Mālo*, are frequently found with *ut* and the Subjunctive; also very often with *ut* omitted : as,

Equidem vellem uti (res tuae) pedes haberent, ut aliquando redires, For my part I should be glad if your business had feet to it, that you might at length return.—Cic.

Mulo te sapiens hostis metuat, quam stulti cives laudent, I had rather a wise enemy should fear you, than that foolish citizens should praise you.—Cic.

Nolo accusator in iudicium potentiam afferat, I would not have an accuser bring personal influence with him into a court of justice.—Cic.

Obs. 1. In the same way *sino*, *I allow*, is sometimes used: as,
Sine . . . sciam, *Let me know.—Liv.*

Obs. 2. For the construction of *cōlo*, &c., with Infinitive, see § 512.

§ 448. To this place must be referred the use of the Present and the Second Person Singular of the Perfect Subjunctive as *Jussives* (see § 420).

4. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

§ 449. The Subjunctive is used with the following Conjunctions, *ut* (*utī*), *quō*, *that, in order that*; *nē* (or *ut nē*), *lest, in order that . . . not*; *quā*, *quōmīus*, *that not*, to denote Purpose and Result.

§ 450. The Conjunction *ut*, *that, in order that, so that*, is used with the Subjunctive Mood to denote either *Purpose* or *Result*: as,

(a.) Purpose.

Rōmāni ab ātrātro abduxērunt Cincinnātum, ut dictātor esset, The Romans fetched Cincinnatus from the plough in order to be dictator.—Cic.

Pylādes Ōrestem se esse dixit, ut pro eo necrētur, Pylades affirmed himself to be Orestes, in order that he might be put to death in his place.—Cic.

Obs. Under this head falls the Subjunctive with *ut* after Verbs of commanding, persuading, striving, wishing, &c. (see § 451).

(b.) Result.

Tarquīnius sic Servium diligēbat, ut is ejus vulgo hābēretur filius, Tarquinius was so attached to Servius, that the latter was currently regarded as his son.—Cic.

Tempērantia sēdat appētitiōnes et efficit ut hae rectae rātiōni pāreant, Temperance calms the appetites and causes that they submit to right reason.—Cic.

Saepe fit ut, ii qui dēbeant, non respondeant ad tempus, It often occurs that those who owe money, do not meet their liabilities at the time.—Cic.

Si haec nuntiatio vērā non est, sequitur ut falsa sit, If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.—Cic.

Thrasylbulo contigit ut patriam liberaret, It fell to the lot of Thrasylbulus to deliver his country.—Nep.

Obs. The phrases, *sequitur, it follows*; *restat, it remains*; *necesse est, it is necessary*; *aequum, justum est, it is right or just*; and the like, take for the most part, either *ut* and the Subjunctive, or an Infinitive Mood (see § 509).

§ 451. *Ut* and *ne* are used with the Subjunctive after Verbs signifying to command, advise, request, exhort, endeavour; *ut* in a positive, *ne* in a negative sense: as,

Civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis exirent, He (Orgetorix) persuaded the community to leave their own territories.—Caes.

Te hortor ut hos libros de philosophiâ studiôse lægas, I urge you to read attentively those books of mine on philosophy.—Cic.

Præcor nē me dēscrās, I beg you not to forsake me.—Cic.

Obs. 1. This Subjunctive with *ut* is usually translated by the Infinitive in English. The Latin Infinitive *nerer* expresses a purpose.

Obs. 2. *Jūbeo, I order*; *vēto, I forbid*; *cōnor, I attempt*; and, sometimes, *nitōr, I strive*, take the Infinitive: as,

Jūbet nos Pŷthius Apollo noscēre nosmet ipsos, The Pythian Apollo bids us "know ourselves."—Cic.

Lex peregrinum cētat in mūrum ascendēre, The law forbids a foreigner to go up upon the walls.—Cic.

Ter sunt cōnti impōnēre Pēlio Ossam, Thrice they essayed to pile Ossa on Pelion.—Virg.

Jugurtha Cirtam irrumpēre nīlītur, Jugurtha endeavours to force an entrance into Cirta.—Sall.

Obs. 3. *Impēro* is occasionally found with the Accusative and Infinitive: as, *Ipsos abducī impērabat, He ordered the men themselves to be led away.*—Cic.

§ 452. Verbs which signify a resolution or decision are usually followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive: as,

Dēcrēit sēnatus ut consul rēlērēt, nō quid detrimenti republica cāpērēt, The senate decreed, that the consul should look to it, that the commonwealth suffered no damage.—Cic.

Āthēniensēs statnērunt ut, urbe rēlictā, libertātem Græciæ classe dēfendērēt, The Athenians came to the resolution to abandon their city and defend the liberty of Greece with their fleet.—Cic.

Obs. When the determination of an individual about himself is signified, the Infinitive is generally used: as,

Dēcrēam cum Hortensio valde familiārīter vivēre, I had determined to live on very friendly terms with Hortensius.—Cic.

§ 453. *Quo.*—The Conjunction *quo*, *In order that*; *that thereby*, is used with the Subjunctive to denote a Purpose: as,

Corruptisē dicitur Cluentius jūcēum pŷnā, quo infamem suum innocentem condemnāret, Cluentius is said to have bribed the court, that thereby it might condemn his enemy though innocent.—Cic.

Especially when there is a Comparative Adjective in its clause : *as*,

Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur, A law ought to be short, in order that it may the more easily be grasped by the unlettered.—Cic.

(Here *quo* = *ut eo*.)

Obs. 1. But *quo* is not used like *ut* to denote a result.

Obs. 2. Concerning non *quo*, not *that*, see § 457. *Obs.* 1.

§ 454. *Nē* is used with the Subjunctive to denote a Purpose, *ut* being omitted : it is equivalent to *ut non*, *quo non*, in order that . . . not ; lest : *as*,

Nōlo esse laudātor, nē videar adūlātor, I am reluctant to be an applauder, lest I should seem a flatterer.—Anct. ad Her.

Gallinae avesque reliquae pennis fovēt pullos, ne frigore laedantur, Hens and other birds cherish their young under their wings, in order that they may not be hurt by the cold.—Cic.

§ 455. Sometimes *ut* (*quo*) is expressed with *nē* : *as*,

Trebatio mandāvi, ut, si tu eum velles ad me mittere, ne recūsaret, I have charged Trebatius, if you wished to dispatch him to me, not to refuse.—Cic.

Pergunt turbare usque ut ne quid possit conquiescere, They proceed to make such a disturbance that nothing can rest.—Plaut.

Obs. This is especially the case with *ne quis, qua, quid, &c.*

§ 456. Similarly, when a Purpose is signified, we find

<i>nē quis</i>	instead of	<i>ut nēmo,</i>	<i>that no one.</i>
<i>nē ullus</i>	„ „	<i>ut nullus,</i>	<i>that none.</i>
<i>nē unquam</i>	„ „	<i>ut nunquam,</i>	<i>that never.</i>
<i>nē usquam</i>	„ „	<i>ut nusquam,</i>	} <i>that nowhere.</i>
<i>nēcūbi (i. e. ne alicubi)</i>	„	„	
<i>nēcunde (i. e. ne alicunde),</i>			<i>that from no quarter.</i>
<i>nēquando (i. e. ne aliquando),</i>			<i>that at no time.</i>

Caesārem complexus obsecrare coepit ne quid grāvius in frātrē stātuēret, Embracing Caesar, he began to implore him not to come to any too severe decision against his brother.—Caes.

Circumspectans nēcunde impētus in frūmentātōres fīret, Looking carefully round to see that no attack was made upon the foragers from any quarter.—Liv.

§ 457. But if only a Result is signified, the forms *ut non*, *ut nemo*, *ut nullus*, etc., must be used : *as*,

Ex hoc efficitur . . . ut voluptas non sit summum bonum, From this it follows that pleasure is not the chief good.—Cic.

Dēmōsthēnes perfecit meditādo, ut nēmo plānius eo locūtus putāretur, By exercise Demosthenes so succeeded, that no one was considered to have been a plainer speaker than he.—Cic.

§ 458. *Ut* and *nē* are used in parenthetical sentences, where some such notion as “supposing,” “granting that,” is implied : as,

Nam ūt ōmittam Phīlippum..., *For to say nothing of Philip. ...*—Nep.

Ah nīmium simplex Hēlēne, ne rustica dicam, *Ah, too artless Helen, not to say too rude!*—Ov.

§ 459 Similarly *nēdum*, *not to say, much less*, is followed by the Subjunctive : as,

Sēcundae res sāpientium ānimos fātigant; nēdum illi corruptis mōribus victōriāe tempērant, *Prosperity overpowers the spirit of the wise: far less could they, with their morality destroyed, use restraint in victory.*—Sall.

Viri clārissīmi vim tribūnīciā sustinēre non pōtuerunt; nēdum his tempōribus sine sapientiā vestrā salvi esse possimus, *The most illustrious men have failed to withstand the tribunicial force: much less can we, in these times, be secure without your wisdom.*—Cic.

§ 460. After words signifying *fear* or *anxiety*, *ne* expresses the apprehension that something *will* occur; *ut*, that it *will not* occur : as,

Tīmēbam ne evēnīrent ea quae accidērunt, *I dreaded that those very things which have happened would come to pass.*—Cic.

Tīmor Rōmae grandis fuit, ne itērum Galli Rōmam rēdīrent, *There was great fear at Rome, lest the Gauls should return again to Rome.*—Eutr.

Pater terruit gentes, grāve ne rēdīret sēcūlum Pyrrhae, *The sire put the nations in dread, that the terrible age of Pyrrha might be coming again.*—Hor.

Omnes labōres te excipere vīdeo; timeo ut sustīneas, *I see you undertake all possible labours; I am afraid you will not stand them.*—Cic.

Obs. But instead of *ut*, we often find *ne* non; especially in negative sentences : as,

Timeo ne non impetrem, *I fear I shall not prevail.*—Cic.

Non vēcor ne tua virtus ōptiōnī hōmīnum non respondeat, *I have no fear that your worth will fail to answer the expectations of men.*—Cic.

§ 461. *Quān*, *that not, so that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after negative, or virtually negative sentences only. It is used,

(1.) After negative sentences containing Verbs of *hindering* : as, *Non prōhibeo*, *I do not prevent*; *Non retīneo*, *I do not restrain*; *Non repugno*, *I do not object*; and the like.

(2.) After such negative phrases as *Non est dūbium*, *There is no doubt*; *Quis dūbitat*, *Who doubts?* *Fieri non potest*, *It cannot be*; *Negāri non pōtest*, *It cannot be denied*; and the like.

(3.) After negative sentences generally, to denote that a certain thing never happens *without* something else happening.

Obs. Under negative sentences are included those virtually so; as when *quis* expects the answer *No.*; also those containing such words as *vix*, *scarcely*; *pārum*, (*too*) *little*, &c.

(1.) *Non possumus, quin Alii a nobis dissentiant, rēcūsāre*, We cannot object to it that others should differ from us.—*Cic.*

Vix me continet quin in illum incōlem, I can scarcely restrain myself from flying at him.—*Ter.*

Haud multum absuit quin Ismēnias interficēretur, A little more and Ismenias would have been killed.—*Liv.*

Obs. The expressions *haud multum absuit*, *minimū absuit*, and the like, are always impersonal.

(2.) *Non erat dubium quin Helvētii plurimum possent*, There was no doubt that the Helvetii had the most influence.—*Caes.*

Haud dubia res visa..... quin circumlūcēret agmen, There appeared to be no question but he must conduct his army by a circuitous route.—*Liv.*

Obs. In some cases a twofold construction is admissible: thus,

Quis ignorat quin tria Græcōrum gēnēra sint, Who knows not (i.e., there is no one who knows not) that there are three classes of Greeks!—*Cic.*: where we might equally well have had, *Quis ignorat tria . . . esse* (§ 307).

(3.) *Eguldem nunquam dōmum misi ūnam ēpistōlam, quin esset ad te altera*, In fact, I have never sent a single letter home without there being a second to you.—*Cic.*

Nullus fere dies est quin Satrius meam dōmum ventilet, There is hardly a day that Satrius does not keep coming to my house.—*Cic.*

§ 462. *Quin* is also used with the Indicative in the sense of *Why not?* (*quī ne*); and expresses an animated appeal: as,

Quin igitur expergisemini? Why not then be up and doing?—*Sall.*

Quin conscendimus equos? Why not to horse at once?—*Liv.*

Obs. *Quin* with the Imperative is used in expostulations: as,

Quin tu hoc audi, Nay but do you hear me.—*Ter.*

§ 463. *Quōmīnus*, *that not, so that not*, is similar to *quin*, and is used with the Subjunctive after words and phrases which signify *hindrance*; as, *impēdio*, I impede; *prōhibeo*, I prevent; *offīcio*, I obstruct, etc.; also after *per me stat*, *fit*, it is owing to me (that something does *not* take place): as,

Non rēcūsābo quōmīnus omnes mea scripta legant, I will not object to all men's reading my writings.—*Cic.*

Cæsar cognōvit per Afrōnium stāre quōmīnus dimicārētur, Cæsar ascertained that it was owing to Afranius an engagement, and not take place.—*Caes.*

Obs. In the former of the above examples *quin* might have been used instead of *quōmīnus* (comp. § 462), but not in the second: also, in the other applications of *quin* (*ib.* 2, 3), *quōmīnus* cannot be used for it.

5. Oratio Obliqua.

NOTE.—For the sake of convenience, the Rules for *Ōrātio obliqua* are brought together.

§ 464. When a speech is reported not in the exact form in which it was delivered, but so as to make the speaker the Third Person instead of the First, it is called *oratio obliqua*: as,

—Caesar lēgātis respondit: diem *se* ad dēlibērandum sumptūrum (esse), *Caesar made answer to the ambassadors that he would take time to consider.*—Caes.

(Words of Caesar reported in their original form: *Diem ego ad dēlibērandum sūmam, I will take time to consider.*)

§ 465. When a speech is thus transferred to the *oblique* form, the following changes of Mood take place:—

(A.) The Indicative Mood used in *direct* and *independent* statements is changed into the Infinitive.

inf. li. de Fin. 1. g.
nam mult
oportere exqu
akimbu
inani
(B.) The Indicative Mood used in *dependent*, *Relative* sentences is changed into the Subjunctive.

(C.) The Indicative Mood used in *Questions* becomes the Subjunctive.

(D.) The Imperative Mood becomes the Subjunctive.

(E.) The Subjunctive Mood used in the *Apodosis* of an hypothetical sentence becomes the Infinitive.

§ 466. (A.) All direct and independent statements, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, become dependent upon some such Verb as *dixit*, *he said*, expressed or implied, and therefore the Accusative Case takes the place of the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood the place of the Indicative (§ 507): as,

Ariovistus respondit, . . . Aeduis *se* obsides reddītūrum non esse, *Ariovistus answered that he would not restore the hostages to the Aedui.*—Caes.

Ariovistus ad Caesārem legātos mittit, "*velle se de his rebus agere cum eo*," *Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying) that he wished to speak with him on these points.*—Caes.

Obs. Such an Infinitive is very often introduced quite abruptly, especially to indicate feelings entertained rather than a direct speech: as,

Plēbem ira prōpe armāvit: "*Fāme se jam sicut hostes pēti*; *elbo viētusque fraudāri*," *Indignation all but armed the commons*; "*They were now attacked like open enemies*; *they were robbed of their bread and living.*"—Liv.

§ 467. (B.) The subordinate Verbs in Relative sentences, used by the original speaker in the Indicative Mood, are turned into the Subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit, .. haec esse quae ab eo postularet, *Caesar sends ambassadors with these instructions, .. that the following were the demands he made of him, &c.*—Caes.

(Direct form: Haec sunt quae a te postulo.)

Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristoteles ait, bestiolas quasdam nasci, quae unum diem vivant. *On the banks of the river Bog, Aristotle tells us there are insects produced which live only one day.*—Cic.

(Direct form: Sunt bestiolae quaedam quae unum diem vivunt.)

Obs. But if a statement of the writer's be interwoven with the *oratio obliqua*, it of course stands in the Indicative: as,

Quis potest esse tam aversus a vero, qui neget haec omnia, quae videmus, deorum immortalium potestate administrari, *Who can be such a stranger to truth, as to deny that all these things, which we see, are managed by the power of the immortal Gods!*—Cic.

§ 468. (C.) Questions transferred to the *oratio obliqua* take the Subjunctive Mood: being dependent upon *rogavit*, or some such word, expressed or understood (§ 434): as,

Furere omnes tribuni plebis .. "quidnam id rei esset?" *All the tribunes of the commons were furious: (they asked) "What did that mean?"*—Liv.

(Direct question: Quidnam id rei est?)

Quid de praeda faciendum censerent, *What did they think should be done about the spoil?*—Liv.

(Direct question: Quid de praeda faciendum censetis?)

§ 469. But when the Interrogative form is merely rhetorical, the question containing its own answer, and being therefore equivalent to a direct statement, it is usually expressed with the Accusative and Infinitive; as,

"Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum memoriam depōnere posse?" *"Even if he were willing he said, to forget an ancient affront, could he banish the recollection of recent injuries?"*—Caes.

(Here, num depōnere posse = non depōnere posse.)

Interrogabat .. "quando ausuros exposcere remedia, nisi .. etc." *He asked "When would they venture to demand redress, if not .. etc.?"*—Tac.

(Quando ausuros = nunquam ausuros.)

An quicquam esse superbius? *Could anything be more arrogant?*—Liv.

(An quicquam esse = nihil esse.)

Obs. Madrig's rule is, that questions originally asked in the First or Third Person, are expressed in the *oratio obliqua* with the Subjunctive; and only those in the Second Person, by the Subjunctive. But the distinction seems arbitrary, and is not sufficiently supported. No rule, however, can be laid down on the subject without exceptions.

§ 470. (D.) *Commands and exhortations, when transferred to the oratio obliqua, also take the Subjunctive; imperatū, or some such word, being expressed or understood (see § 451):* as,

(Orāre) .. *ferrent opem, adiūcērent, (He begged them) to come to his assistance and help.*—Liv.

"Sin bello persēqui persēvēraret, reminiscitur pristinae virtutis Helveticorum." "*If however he should be bent on prosecuting the war against them (he baul him) remember the original prowess of the Helvetii.*"—Caes.

§ 471. (E.) *Verbs used by the speaker in the Subjunctive for the most part remain in the same Mood in the oratio obliqua:* as,

Caesar respondit .. "*nullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae multitudini possint.*" *Caesar replied .. that "there were no lands in Gaul that could be given to so vast a multitude."*—Caes.

(Direct form: "*Nulli in Gallia vacant agri, qui dari possint:*" comp. § 480.)

"Intellectarum quid invicti Germani, .. *qui inter quattuordecim annos tectum non subissent, virtute possint.*" "*He (Caesar) would learn what the unconquered Germans, who for fourteen years had not had a roof over their heads, could do in the field of battle.*"—Caes.

(Direct form also: "*Qui subissent [§ 476] .. possint*" (§ 434).

§ 472. But the Subjunctive used in the *apodosis* of an hypothetical sentence becomes changed into the Infinitive in the *oratio obliqua:* as,

Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: "*Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sine ullo cum venturum fuisset.*" *Ariovistus made answer to the embassy, "that if he had wanted anything of Caesar, he would have come to him."*—Caes.

(Direct form: "*Si quid .. opus esset, venissem.*"")

"Neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta cum contumptione nostri ad castra venturos esse." "*Nor would the Eburones, he urged, if he (Caesar) were at hand, approach the camp with such contempt for us.*"—Caes.

(Direct form: "*Si .. adesset .. venirent.*"")

(*Note.* In such cases, the Past-Imperfect is represented by the Future Infinitive with *esse*, and the Past-Perfect by the same with *fuisset*. (See examples above.)

§ 473. *TENSES OF VERBS IN THE ORATIO OBLIQUA.*—The Tense of the Subjunctive Mood in *oblique* narration is determined by the ordinary laws for the Sequence of Tenses (§ 423). The following apparent exceptions require to be noticed:—

- (1.) The *Præteritum Historicum* is often treated as a Past Tense, and followed accordingly by Past Tenses Subjunctive (see § 423. *Obs.*).

(2.) For the sake of greater vividness, a Past Tense like *dixit, he said*, is often followed by Present Tenses Subjunctive: as,

Edicunt, ne quis L. Quinctium consulem faceret, They issue a proclamation that no one should endeavour to make L. Quinctius consul.—Liv.

Cicero respondit . . "Si ab armis discedere vellent, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem mittant," Cicero made answer, "If they wish to lay down their arms, they can use him as their coadjutor, and send ambassadors to Caesar."—Caes.

6. Use of the Subjunctive with the Relative Pronoun and Conjunctions.

§ 474. The Relative and Relative particles take the Subjunctive (according to § 421) when they are used in stating not simply a fact, but a conception of the mind.

§ 475. *Qui hypothetical.*—The Relative *qui, quae, quod*, is followed by the Subjunctive when the clause to which it belongs contains a virtual *hypothesis* (§ 431): as,

Hac qui videat, nonne cogatur fatēri deos esse, Would not the man, who should see these things, be forced to confess that there are gods?—Cic.
(*Qui videat = si quis videat, if any one were to see.*)

Nec quisquam rex Persarum potest esse, qui non ante Magorum disciplinam percēperit, Nor can any one be king of the Persians who has not first learnt the discipline of the Magi.—Cic.

(*Qui non perceperit = nisi perceperit, unless he has learned.*)

Obs. 1. To this head belongs the phrase *quod sciam, as far as I know, if only I know.*

Obs. 2. Sometimes when Relative Pronouns or Adverbs are used with past tenses of the Subjunctive, they suggest the recurrence of a condition: as,

Semper [ii] fortissimi habiti sunt, qui summam imperii potirentur, Those were always regarded as the most warlike people, who [from time to time] attained to supreme empire.—Nep.

Ubi avaritiam, aut crudelitatem consensu objectavissent, solvēbatur militiā, In whatever case, they unanimously charged [a centurion] with covetousness or cruelty, he was dismissed the service.—Tac.

§ 476. Hence the Relative takes the Subjunctive in stating the reason of something: as,

O fortunāte adolescens, qui tuae virtutis Hōmērum praecōnem invēneris, O fortunate youth, who hast found (i. e. in that thou hast found) a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess.—Cic.

Ut cūbitum discessimus, me et de viā et qui ad multam noctem vigilassem, arctior quam solēbat somnus complexus est, No sooner had we retired to rest, than what with the journey and my having sat up to a late hour of the night, sounder sleep than usual embraced me.—Cic.

(*Qui vigilassem = quum vigilassem, § 483.*)

§ 477. The force of *qui* as introducing a *reason* is augmented by *ut, utpōte, quippe*: as,

Magna pars Fidenātium, ut qui cōlōni additi Rōmānis essent, Lātine sciēbant, A great part of the Fidenates (as might well be), from their having being joined as settlers with Romans, knew Latin.—Liv.

Multa de meâ sententiâ questus est Caesar, quippe qui ab eo in me esset incensus, Caesar complained much of the opinion expressed by me, having been goaded on against me by him (Crassus).—Cic.

Obs. But *quippe qui* is also found with the Indicative : as,

Anîmus fortunâ non eget, quippe quae pröbitatem . . . neque dare neque eripere potest, The soul needs not fortune, since goodness she can neither give nor take away.—Sall.

§ 478. *Qui* of Purpose.—*Qui* takes the Subjunctive when it involves the meaning of *ut*, and denotes a Purpose (§ 449) : as,

Sunt multi qui eripiunt aliis quod aliis largiantur, There are many who take from one to bestow on another.—Cic.

(*Quod largiantur = ut largiantur.*)

Clusini legatos Romam qui auxilium a senatu peterent, misere, The people of Clusium sent ambassadors to Rome to beg help from the senate.—Liv.

(*Qui peterent = ut peterent.*)

§ 479. *Qui* of Result.—*Qui* is also followed by the Subjunctive when there is involved in it the force of *ut* as indicating a Result (§ 449) : as,

In enodandis nominibus, quod miserandum sit, laboratis, In explaining names you (Stoics) trouble yourselves to a degree that is pitiable.—Cic.

(*Quod miserandum sit = ut miserandum sit.*)

Majus gaudium fuit quam quod universum homines caperent, The joy was too great for men to receive all at once.—Liv.

(*Major quam quod caperent = major quam ut caperent.*)

§ 480. *Qui* is especially so used after the adjectives dignus, indignus, idoneus, and the like, to denote what a person is worthy of or fit for : as,

Liviânae fabulae non satis dignae sunt quae iterum legantur, The plays of Livius are not well worthy of being read a second time.—Cic.

Nulla mihi videbatur aptior persona quae de senectute loqueretur, quam Catonis, No character seemed to me fitter to speak concerning old-age than that of Cato.—Cic.

Homines scelérati indigni mihi videbantur, quorum causam agerem, The wicked men seemed unworthy that I should plead their cause.—Cic

Obs. 1. The poets and later writers in general, also construe these Adjectives with the Infinitive : as,

Fons rivo dare nomen idoneus, A fountain fit to give name to a stream.—Hor.

Obs. 2. Similarly *qui* takes the Subjunctive when it is the correlative of the Pronouns *is*, *talis*, *tantus* : as,

Ego is sum qui nihil unquam . . . fecerim, I am such an one as have never, &c.—Cic.

Affectio talis animi quae noceat nemini, Such a disposition of mind as to harm no one.—Cic.

§ 481. SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPETITION.—The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are often used in narrative, after Relative Pronouns and Particles, to denote the recurrence of an action under a given condition : as,

Primi quia modo praeirent duces, signa sequēbantur, The foremost, wherever their guides only led the way, kept up with the standards.—Liv.

Alii ubi semel proceubuissent, inter jumenta . . . moriētes, Others when once they had fallen to the ground amongst the baggage cattle, dying there.—Liv.

Tyrannus ut quisque maxime laboraret locus, aut ipse occurrēbat, aut aliquos mittebat, The tyrant, as each post was most in danger, either hastened thither himself or dispatched some to do so.—Liv.

Obs. But the Indicative may also be used : cf. with the last example, Liv. 22, 6, Consul, quaecunque in parte laborare senserat suos, impigre ferebat opem. See also Liv. 3, 11, Qui obvius fuerat, mulectus nudatus abibat, *Whoever encountered (them), went off beaten and stripped.*

§ 482. The Subjunctive is generally used after such expressions as *sunt qui*, *there are some who* ; *non desunt qui*, *there are not wanting men who* ; *reperiuntur*, *there are found some who* : as,

Sunt qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem, There are some who think death to be the departure of the mind from the body.—Cic.

Fuere qui crederent M. Crassum non ignarum ejus consilii fuisse, There were some who believed M. Crassus to be no stranger to this scheme.—Sall.

Obs. 1. But if certain definite persons or things are indicated, such phrases are followed by the Indicative : as

Fuere tamen extra conjurationem complures qui ad Catilinam profecti sunt, There were however a good many [whose names might be given], not in the plot, who went to join Catiline.—Sall.

Obs. 2. The poets and the later writers often construe *sunt qui* with the Indicative, treating it like a single word (Gk. *ἐνιοι* : cf. Ilor. Od. 1, 1, *ini*).

§ 483. *Quum*.—The Conjunction *quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes cause (*quum causale*) ; it may then generally be translated by *as*, *since*, or *although* : as,

Quum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare, Since life without friends is full of treachery and alarm, reason itself bids us form friendships.—Cic.

Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset, Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.—Nep.

Obs. *Quum* like *qui* (§ 477) may be strengthened with *quippe* : as,

Nec reprehendo (te) : quippe quum ipse istam reprehensionem non fugerim, Nor do I blame you ; inasmuch as I myself have not escaped that censure.—Cic.

§ 484. *Quum* also takes the Subjunctive in describing the sequence of events in proper historical narrative : as,

Socrâtes in pompâ *quum* magna vis auri argentique *ferritur*, *quam* multa non dēsidēro! inquit, *When a great quantity of gold and silver was being carried in procession, said Socrates, "How many things there are I don't want!"—Cic.*

Quos *quum* tristiōres vidisset, trīginta mīnas accēpit, nē aspernāri Rēgis liberalitatem vidērētur, *When he (Xenocrates) saw them rather disappointed, he accepted thirty minae, in order not to seem to slight the king's liberality.—Cic.*

Quum tridui viam pfectus esset, nuntiātum est ei, Ariovistum cum omnibus suis cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontionem contendere, *When he had advanced three days' journey, news was brought him that Ariovistus was hastening with all his forces to seize Besançon.—Cæs.*

Obs. The Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive with *quum* supply the lack of a Perfect Participle Active in Latin (comp. § 526).

§ 485. But *quum* is used with all Tenses of the Indicative to denote the precise time *at which* something takes place: as,

Pugiles etiam *quum* feriunt adversarium, ingemiscunt, *Prize-fighters even when they are in the act of striking an antagonist, fetch a groan.—Cic.*

Crēdo tum *quum* Sicilia florēbat opibus et cōpiis, magna artificia fuisse in eā insula, *I believe that at the time when Sicily flourished in resources and military strength, the arts were in great perfection in the island.—Cic.*

Quum testes dābo ex Sicilia, quem volet ille eligat, *When I shall produce my witnesses from Sicily, let him choose which he pleases.—Cic.*

Quum autem ver esse coepērat .. dābat se labōri atque itinēribus, *But when it began to be spring-time, he then gave himself to labour and journeying.—Cic.*

§ 486. *Quod* (quo) and *quia*.—The Conjunctions *quod* and *quia*, *because*, both take the Indicative in stating the actual reason of something: as,

Ideirō sum tardior *quod* non invēnio fidum tabellarium, *I am the more backward because I cannot find a trusty letter-carrier.—Cic.*

Urbs *quae* *quia* postrēma aedificata est, Neopolis (νέα πόλις) nōmīnātur, *A city which, because it was the last built, is called Neopolis (New-town).—Cic.*

Obs. *Quia* states a reason more directly and positively than *quod*.

§ 487. But when it is implied that a supposed reason is *not* true in point of fact, the Subjunctive with *non quod*, *non quia*, is used.

The difference between the use of *quia* or *quod* with the Indicative and with the Subjunctive, is clearly seen in the following example:—

Pugiles etiam *quum* feriunt adversarium ingemiscunt, *non quod* dolent autem mori succumbant, sed *quia* profundenda voce omne corpus intenditur, *Prize-fighters even when in the act of striking an antagonist,*

fetch a groan; not because they are in pain (supposed, but false reason), but because, in discharging the sound, the whole body is put in tension (real reason).—Cic.

Obs. 1. Instead of *non quod*, we find also *non quo* and (rarely) *non quin* (negative).

Obs. 2. Out of this use of *quod* arises such an expression as the following :

Quod religiōnibus sese dīceret impediri, Because, said he, (alleged but false reason) "he was prevented by religious scruples."—Caes.

(The *diceret* is brought under the government of *quod*, instead of *impēdretur*, by attraction.)

§ 488. In addition to the above cases, *quod* (not *quia*) is used as a causal Conjunction after such Verbs as *grātūlor*, *I congratulate*; *glōrior*, *I boast*; *quēror*, *I complain*; *mīror*, *I wonder*; *laudo*, *I praise*; and the like, when, as before (§ 486), the Indicative denotes that the ground of rejoicing, grief, censure, etc., is an *actual fact*, which the Subjunctive of course cannot do: as,

Grātūlor tibi, quod e prōvinciā saluum te ad tuos rēcēpisti, I congratulate you that you have got back safe from your province to your friends.—Cic.

Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, I am glad that I interrupted you.—Cic.

Non tibi objicio quod hōmīnem .. qui nunc A. Clōdīus vōcātur, omni argento spoliasti, I am not laying it to your charge that you robbed a fellow who now bears the name of Aulus Clodius of all his silver (which you did).—Cic.

Sōcrātes accūsātus est quod corrumpēret jūventūtem, et nōvas sūperstitionēs introducēret, Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth and bringing in new superstitions.—Quint.

Obs. In the last of the above examples, as in many similar ones, the Subjunctive may be regarded as belonging to the oratio obliqua (§ 466): so,

Glōriābātur Hortensius, quod nunquam bello cīvili interfuisset, Hortensius used to boast that he had never been engaged in civil war.—Cic. (The Subj. indicates that the assertion is made by *Hortensius*.)

§ 489. *Quod* is also used with the Indicative after sundry Impersonal expressions corresponding to those referred to in the preceding section: as, *jūvat*, *it delights*; *vītium est*, *it is a fault*; *laudābile est*, *it is praiseworthy*, and the like, with the same distinction as before between the Indicative and Subjunctive: as,

Jūvat me, quod vīgēt stūdia, prōfērunt se ingēnia hōmīnum, It is a pleasure to me that intellectual pursuits flourish, that the abilities of men display themselves.—Plin. Ep.

Magnum bēnēficiū nātūrae est, quod nēcesse est mōri, It is a great boon of nature that we must die.—Sen.

§ 490. *Quod* is sometimes thus used of an hypothetical case, and then of course it takes the Subjunctive: as,

Nemo oratorem admiratus est, quod Latine loqueretur, No one ever admired an orator because he spoke good Latin.—Cic.

§ 491. *Quod* is originally a Relative Pronoun, and in some of its applications seems to waver between the use of the Relative Pronoun and of a Conjunction: it is on this principle we must explain such sentences as the following:—

Cujus corpus a me crematum est, quod contra decuit ab illo meum, His body was laid by me on the funeral pile, whereas [which office] mine should rather have undergone that office from him.—Cic.

Obs. The use of *quod si*, but if; *quod ulsi* (ni), but if not, &c., at the beginning of sentences, is to be explained by the fondness of the Latin language for connecting the parts of a narration by means of the Relative.

9 § 492. *Quippe* (*quia-pe*), because, as being, is chiefly used in connexion with the Relative Pronoun (see § 477), as also before Relative or illative particles, as, *quum*, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *ubi*, *enim*, etc. It takes the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood according as fact or hypothesis is indicated: as,

Ego vero laudo: .. quippe quia magnarum saepe id remedium aegritudinum est, I do praise it, inasmuch as that is often the remedy for serious troubles.—Ter.

Quippe ubi nulla forent aeterno corpore, Inasmuch as in that case (i. e. on a certain hypothesis, which is denied) there would be no objects with eternal substance.—Lucr.

Leve nomen habet utraque res: quippe leve enim est hoc totum, risum movere, Both things have a trivial name: for in fact this whole matter of provoking laughter is trivial.—Cic.

§ 493. *Quippe* is also used with the Indicative in giving an ironical reason:—

Quippe vector fatis! Because forsooth I am forbidden by the fates!—Virg.

Movet me quippe lumen curiae! Forsooth that luminary of the senate-house disturbs me!—Cic.

§ 494. *Quoniam* (*quum jam*), since, is used in stating a reason, and generally, but not always, takes the Indicative: as,

Quam me stultitiam (quoniam non est genus unum), insanire putas? What kind of folly (since there is more than one kind) do you think I am mad with?—Hor.

Quoniam res in id discrimen adducta est, Seeing matters have been brought to such a crisis.—Cic.

De suis privatum rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, They began to make petition to him concerning their own private concerns, seeing they could not consult the safety of the state, —Caes.

(The Subj. appears to be used here to indicate that such was the reason by which they justified *themselves* merely : v. § 487.)

Itaque quoniam ipse pro se dicere non posset, verba fecit frater ejus, Accordingly, seeing he could not speak on his own behalf, his brother acted as spokesman.—Nep.

§ 495. Quando is sometimes used as a causal Conjunction, equivalent to quoniam. It then takes the Indicative. as,

Quando ita tibi lubet, vale, Since such is your humour, Good-bye.—Plaut.

Cur non sit orator, quando, quod difficilius est, oratorem facit? Why should not he be an orator, seeing that—what is harder,—he makes an orator?—Quint.

§ 496. Quoad, as long as, as far as, until, takes the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as it refers to actual fact or not: as,

Ipse quoad potuit, fortissime restitit, He himself, so long as he was able, resisted most valiantly.—Caes.

Jubeo te salvare voce summā, quoad vires valent, I bid you good day, at the top of my voice; as far as my powers avail.—Plaut.

Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocasset, in Galliā morari constituit, He himself meanwhile resolved to remain in Gaul till he had put the legions into winter quarters.—Caes.

§ 497. Dum, whilst, is construed with the Indicative; dum, until, with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as a simple fact or a purpose is indicated: as,

Ea redemptio mansit.....dum iudices rejecti sunt, That bargain remained in forceuntil the judges were rejected.—Cic.

Obsidio deinde per paucos dies magis quam oppugnatio fuit dum vulnus ducis curaretur, The siege then took the form of a blockade rather than an assault for a few days, so that meanwhile (dum) the general's wound might be cured.—Liv.

Iratis subtrahendi sunt ii, in quos impetum facere conantur, dum se ipsi colligant, Angry persons must have the objects of their attacks put out of their reach, so that meanwhile they may collect themselves.—Cic.

Mihi usque curae erit quid agas dum, quid egēris, sciro, It will continue to be matter of concern to me what step you take, until I have learned* what step you have actually taken.—Cic.

* The writer regards it as certain that he will learn.

§ 498. Dummōdo (also simply dum or modo), provided that (Hypothetical, § 425), is construed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Odērint, dum mētuant, Let them hate provided only they fear.—Suet.

Omnia recta et honesta negligunt, dummōdo potentiam consequantur, They disregard all that is right and honourable, if they can only obtain power.—Cic.

Obs. We also find *dummōdo nē, dum nē, mōdo nē : as,*

Sit summa in jure dicendo sēvēritas, dummōdo ea nē vāriētur grātiā, Let there be the utmost severity in administering justice, so long as it does not fluctuate through partiality.—Cic.

§ 499. *Dōnec, whilst, until,* has the same construction as *dum* (§ 497).

Obs. 1. *Dōnec* is rare in Cicero, and is not found at all in Caesar or Sallust. But it is frequent in the poets, as well as in Livy and Tacitus.

Obs. 2. Livy and Tacitus sometimes use *dōnec* with the Subjunctive, when speaking of simple facts : as,

Elēphanti trēpidātiōnis ālquantum fēdēbant, dōnec quīetē ipse tīmor fēcisset, The elephants made some disturbance, until their very fears made them quiet.—Liv.

§ 500. The (so-called) Conjunctions, *antēquam, priusquam,* before that, take the Subjunctive when they refer to an hypothetical case : as,

In omnibus nēgōtiis, priusquam aggrēdiāre, adhibenda est praepārātiō diligens, *In all undertakings, before you attempt anything, you must make careful preparation.—Cic.*

§ 501. When *antēquam, priusquam,* and *postquam,* are used with reference to actual facts, they usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive : as,

(a.) *With Indicative.*

Antēquam ad sententiam rēdeō, de me pauca dīcam, Before I return to the resolution, I will say a few words about myself.—Cic.

Non ante finitum est proelium, quam tribūnus militū interfectus est, The battle was not brought to a close till a tribune of soldiers had been slain.—Liv.

Ante ālquanto quam tu nātus es, A good while before you were born.—Cic.

Neque ante dimisit eum quam fidem dedit ādōlescens ab his sacris se tēpēratūrum, Nor did she leave him till the young man gave her his word that he would refrain from taking part in these rites.—Liv.

Dēcessit post annum quartum quam expulsus erat, He died four years after he had been banished.—Nep.

(b.) *With Subjunctive.*

Prius Placentiam pervēnere quam sātis sciret Hannibal ab Ticīno prōfectos, They reached Placentia before Hannibal was well aware that they had left the Ticinus.—Liv.

Interfuit pugnae nāvāli apud Salāmīna, quae facta est prius quam poenā liberaretur, He was present at the naval battle of Salamis, which was fought before he was liberated from his penalty.—Nep.

Obs. 1. The Subjunctive is rare when only a specification of priority or subsequence of Time is indicated.

Obs. 2. *Ante . . . quam, post . . . quam,* are usually separated from each other : see above examples.

§ 502. *Quamvis*, however much, and *licet*, although, used concessively, govern the Subjunctive: as,

Quamvis Elysios mirētur Græcia campos, However much Greece may admire her Elysian plains.—Virg.

Assentatio quamvis perniciosa sit, nocere tamen nemini potest, nisi ei, qui eam recipit atque eā delectatur, Flattery, however injurious it may be, can harm no one saving the man who takes it in and is gratified by it.—Cic.

Quamvis sit magna (expectatio), tamen eam vinces, Though expectation be ever so high, you will yet go beyond it.—Cic.

Licet ipsa vitium sit ambitio, frequenter tamen causa virtutum est, Though ambition in itself is a fault, yet it is often the cause of virtues.—Quint.

Vita brevis est licet supra mille annos exeat, Life is short even if it should exceed a thousand years.—Sen.

Obs. 1. Quamvis is most often found in connexion with an adjective.

Obs. 2. In the poets and later writers quamvis is often equivalent to quamquam, and takes the Indicative: as,

Erat inter eos dignitate regiā, quamvis cārēbat nōmine, He enjoyed the rank of king amongst them, though he had not the title.—Nep.

§ 503. *Quanquam*, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, although, take either the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the fundamental distinction between these Moods (§ 421): as,

Quanquam,—etsi priore foedere stārētur,—satis cautum erat de Saguntinis, Although,—even if the former treaty were adhered to,—sufficient security had been taken for the Saguntines.—Liv.

Quanquam festinas, non est mōra longa, Though thou art in haste, it would involve no long delay.—Hor.

Sed quanquam nēgent, nec virtutes nec vitia crescere, attamen, etc., But although they (the Stoics) should deny (it), affirming that neither virtues nor vices increase, yet, &c.—Cic.

Obs. Later writers make quanquam govern the Subjunctive, whilst they use quamvis with the Indicative (§ 502. Obs.): as,

Phrautes quanquam depulisset exercitus dūcesque Rōmānos, cuncta vērērantium officia ad Augustum vertērat, Phraates, though he had repulsed the armies and generals of Rome, had yet directed all the observances of respect towards Augustus.—Tac.

CHAPTER XLVIII.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

504. The Infinitive Mood is an indeclinable verbal Substantive, capable of being used as a Nominative or an Accusative only. For the other Cases, the Gerund takes the place of the Infinitive

1. The Infinitive as Subject.

§ 505. The Infinitive is used as Subject chiefly in connexion with such quasi-impersonal Verbs as *jūvat*, *delectat*,

(it) *delights*; or such phrases as *pulchrum, dēcorum est, (it) is fine, becoming, &c.*; as,

Jūvat integros accēdere fontes, atque haurire, It is delightful to repair to untroubled fountains and quaff.—Lucr.

(Here *accēdere, haurire*, form subjects to *jūvat*.)

Dulce et dēcorum est pro patriā mōri, It is sweet and glorious to die for me's country.—Hor.

Usque ad eōne scire tuum nihil est, nisi hoc sciat alter, Is your knowledge so utterly worth nothing, unless your neighbour knows it!—Pers.

(This use of an Infinitive with an *attributive Adjective* is rare, and not to be imitated.)

2. The Infinitive as Object.

§ 506. The use of the Infinitive as Direct Object is rare and chiefly confined to the poets: as,

Quid sit fūturum cras fūge quærere, What is to be on the morrow forbear inquiring.—Hor.

Pro nōbis mitte precāri, Give over praying for us!—Ov.

Obs. 1. For the Infinitive after Verbs of *willingness, ability, &c.*, see § 512.

Obs. 2. The Infinitive is sometimes used by the poets where a prose writer would employ the Gerund, or Gerundive: as,

Necquiequam . . vitābis . . cēlūrem sēqui Ajācem, In vain wilt thou try to avoid Ajax, swift to pursue.—Hor.

(*Celer sequi* = *celer ad sequendum*.)

3. Accusative and Infinitive.

§ 507. Verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing, hearing*, and the like, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive in the proposition which they introduce: as,

Thāles Milēsius aquam dixit esse initium rērum, Thales of Miletus affirmed that water was the first principle of all things.—Cic.

Sentit animus se mōverē, The soul is conscious that it moves.—Cic.

Non enim ambrosiā deos aut nectāre lactūri arbitror, For I do not believe the gods delight in nectar and ambrosia.—Cic.

Seio tibi ita placere, I know that to be your opinion.—Cic.

(The Subject or Accusative before *placere* is involved in *ita*.)

Obs. Occasionally after a Verb of *saying*, the Nominative is found with *esse*, being descriptive of the subject. This is called *attraction*: as,

Alit esse parātus (= se parātum esse), He declares himself to be ready.—Hor. (Ep. 1, 7, 22.)

This is a Greek construction (= *ἔφηεν εἶναι αὐτὸν εἰρᾶν*), and not found in good prose. Similarly, Virgil has, *sensit dolapsa (= se dolapsam esse), He perceived that he had fallen.* . . . (lik. *ᾤσθηεν ἐμπεσῶν*).

§ 508. Not only Verbs of the above kind, but Phrases equivalent or analogous to them are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Ea erat confessio, cāput rērum Rōmāe esse, That was a confession (=to confess) that Rome was at the head of affairs.—Liv.

Auctōres sūmus tūtā ibi mājestatem Rōmāni nōminis fore, We will answer for it that the majesty of the Roman name shall be safe there.—Liv.

Caesārem certiōrem faciunt sese non facile ab oppōdis vim hostium prōhibēre, They inform Caesar that they find it no easy matter to beat off the violence of the enemy from their towns.—Caes.

§ 509. Also many Verbs denoting various feelings of the mind, as, joy, grief, wonder, etc., may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Salvum te advēnīre gaudeo, I rejoice that you come in safety.—Plaut.

Inferiōres non dōlēre (dēbent) se a suis sup̄rari, Inferiors ought not to be grieved at being surpassed by their friends.—Cic.

Miror te ad me nīhil scribere, I am surprised that you write nothing to me.—Cic.

Peccasse enim se non anguntur, objurgari moleste fērunt, They are not sorry that they have done wrong; they take it amiss that they are found fault with.—Cic.

Obs. 1. But the above Verbs more frequently take *quod*, with Indicative or Subjunctive (v. § 488).

Obs. 2. Concerning the construction of *pudet, p̄get*, &c., v. § 241.

§ 510. Various impersonal phrases, such as *certum est*, it is certain; *māifestum est*, it is manifest; *aequum, justum est*, it is fair or just; *opus, nēcesse, est*, it is necessary; *sēquitur*, it follows; *constat*, it is acknowledged; *expēdit*, it is expedient, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Certum est liberos a p̄rentibus amari, It is certain that children are loved by their parents.—Quint.

Quae liberum scire aequum est adolescentem, Things which it is proper a young gentleman should know.—Ter.

Constat ad salutem civium inventas esse leges, It is acknowledged that laws were devised for the safety of citizens.—Cic.

Nēcesse est igitur legem haberi in optimis rebus, It is a necessary consequence then, that law should be reckoned among the best of things.—Cic.

Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imp̄ritis tēcatur, A law ought to be short, that it may the more readily be comprehended by the illiterate.—Cic.

Cato negat jus esse, eum qui miles non sit, cum hoste pugnare, Cato affirms that it is not right for one who is not a soldier to fight with the enemy.—Cic.

Nec sequitur illico esse causas immutabiles, Nor does it follow therefore that there are immutable causes.—Cic.

Obs. Restat, reliquum est, it remains; proximum est, the next thing is, and the like; as also sometimes, *sēquitur*, it follows; *expēdit*, it is expedient; *mos (moris) est*, it is a custom, are often followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive: as,

Proximum est ut doceam deorum providentiâ mundum administrari, The next thing is for me to show that the world is managed by the providence of the gods.—Cic.

Si hæc enuntiatio vera non est, sequitur ut falsa sit, If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.—Cic.

§ 511. Verbs signifying *willingness*, or *permission* (including *jūbeo*), and the like, with their contraries, govern the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Majores corpora juvenum firmari labore voluerunt, Our ancestors wished the bodies of youth to be strengthened by hardship.—Cic.

Senatui placet, Crassum Syriam obtinere, It is the pleasure of the senate that Crassus should hold Syria.—Cic.

Verres hominem corripî jussit, Verres ordered the man to be arrested.—Cic. (comp. § 451).

Cupio me esse clementem, I desire that I may be merciful.—Cic.

Delectum haberi prohibebo, I will not suffer the levy to be held.—Liv.

Obs. 1. Verbs of wishing are in many cases followed by ut and the Subjunctive, or the Subjunctive alone (v. § 443, seq.).

Obs. 2. Impero is sometimes used like jūbeo (v. § 451), with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Has omnes æturiâs imperat fieri, He orders that all these (vessels) be made swift-sailers.—Caes. (B. G. 5, 1.)

4. Verbs which govern the Infinitive without the Accusative Case.

§ 512. Verbs signifying *willingness* or *determination*, *ability*, *lawfulness*, *duty*, or the like, with their contraries, govern the Infinitive without an Accusative: as,

Studeo ex te audire quid sentias, I desire to hear from you what you think.—Cic.

Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest, Friendship can only exist between the good.—Cic.

Optat arare caballus, The nag would like to draw the plough.—Hor. (cf. § 447).

Dies beatus ante obitum nemo debet, No one ought to be called happy before his decease.—Ov.

Caesar bellum cum Germaniâ gerere constituit, Caesar resolved to make war upon the Germans.—Caes.

Obs. 1. When a wish respecting the Subject is expressed, either the Infinitive alone or the Accusative and Infinitive may be used: thus, instead of Cupio esse clementem, we may have Cupio me esse clementem (Cic.).

Obs. 2. The Infinitive is also used after certain equivalent phrases: as, (mihi) in animo est, certum est, consilium est, It is my purpose, &c. : as,

Certum est (mihi) omnia audacter libereque dicere, It is my determination to say everything boldly and freely.—Cic.

Obs. 3. Also after jūbeo, vëto, edico: v. § 451, Obs. 2.

§ 513. When a predicative Adjective or Substantive is attached to the Infinitive Mood in the above cases, it agrees in case with the Subject of the Infinitive: as,

Ubi völes päter esse, ibi estö, When you choose to be the father, then you must be so.—Plaut.

Capio in tantis reipublicae përiculis, me non dissolutum videri, I am desirous in such perils as menace the state, that I may not seem lax.—Cic.

Obs. The Imperfect and not the Perfect Infinitive (as in English), is used after the above Verbs: thus, *I wished to have been consul*, is *Völui me consulem esse, not fuisse*: see last example.

§ 514. Verbs signifying to begin, continue, or leave off; also to be or become accustomed, govern the Infinitive: as,

Incipe, parve puer, matrem cognoscere risu, Begin, little child, to know thy mother by her smile!—Virg.

Illud jam mirari desino, That I am now ceasing to wonder at.—Cic.

Qui mentiri solet, pejerare consuevit, He who is in the habit of lying, has learned to be a perjurer.—Cic.

§ 515. The Verbs to seem, to be thought, said, believed (*videor, ūtor, crëdor, dicor, feror, nuntior*, etc.), are generally used personally (see § 232, *Obs.*): thus we find,

Lectitavisse Plätönem studiöse Dëmsthënes (not Demosthenem) dicitur, Demosthenes is said to have been a most diligent reader of Plato.—Cic.

Luna (not lunam) solis lumine collustrari putatur, It is thought that the moon is illumined by the sun's light.—Cic.

Obs. But the impersonal construction is not uncommon with *videor*.

5. The Infinitive in exclamations.

§ 516. The Infinitive is used in exclamations to denote surprise, without any preceding Verb being expressed: as,

Mënë desistere victam, (To think that) I should give over as vanquished!—Virg.

O Aeschine! haecine flagitia facere te, O Aeschinus, to think that thou should disgrace yourself in this way!—Ter.

Adeöne rem rediisse, To think it should have come to this!—Ter.

6. Historical Infinitive.

§ 517. The historical writers often use the Imperfect Infinitive instead of the corresponding tenses of the Indicative: as,

Intëreü Manlius in Etrüriä plëbem sollicitäre, Meanwhile Manlius in Etruria was stirring up the common people to insurrection.—Sall.

Suo quisque mëtu përicula mëtiri, Each one was measuring the extent of the danger by his own fears.—Sall.

Obs. This use of the Infinitive is most frequent in descriptive passages: where it serves rather to place a circumstance in a lively manner before the eye, than merely to state that it took place.

7. Circumlocution for the Future Infinitive.

§ 518. Instead of the Future Infinitive, whether in the Active or Passive Voice, we often find *fōre ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

Clāmābant hōmīnes, fōre ut ipsi se dii immortāles ulciscērentur, The men exclaimed, that the immortal gods themselves would avenge them.—Cic.

Especially of course when a Verb wants the Supine: as,

Spero fōre ut contingat id nobis, I hope such a piece of good fortune may fall to us.—Cic.

§ 519. Infinitive in Oratio Obliqua: see § 466.

CHAPTER XLIX.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 520. The Participle expresses the same notion as the Verb to which it belongs, but in the form of an Adjective. It does not contain the *Copula* (§ 213, *Obs.* 1) involved in the Verb, and is chiefly used in the way of *Apposition*: as,

Dionysius, cultros mētuens tonsōris, candenti carbōne sibi adūrēbat capillum, Dionysius, being afraid of barbers' razors, singed his hair with a live coal.—Cic.

§ 521. Active Participles govern the same Case as the Verb to which they belong: as,

Ipsa suā Dido concidit ūsa mānu, Dido fell, by (Lit., using) her own hand.—Ov

Puer bōne sibi fidens, A youth trusting well to himself.—Cic.

Obs. When a Participle is used as an Adjective denoting *disposition* or *capacity* for, it governs the Genitive: see § 277.

§ 522. The Latin Verb is deficient in its Participles, having in the Active Voice only an *Imperfect* and a *Future*; and in the Passive only a *Perfect* and the Gerundive Participle of *Necessity*. Thus the Active Voice has no *Perfect* Participle and the Passive no *Imperfect*.

Obs. 1. Deponents are the only Verbs in Latin which regularly form a *Perfect* Participle Active: as, *ādeptus, having acquired*; *ūsus, having used*, &c. (See § 103.)

Obs. 2. The lack of an *Imperfect* Participle Passive is in some cases supplied by the Gerundive: as,

Multi in equis pārandis adhibent cūram, in amīcis cōligendis negligentes eunt, Many take pains in getting horses (Lit. horses being got), but are careless in choosing friends.—Cic.

This construction of the Gerundive is explained in § 537.

§ 523. The *Imperfect Participle Active* represents a thing *as going on* at the time spoken of: as,

Curio ad focum sedenti magnam auri pondus Samnites quum attulissent, repudiati sunt. *When the Samnites brought Curio as he was sitting at his fireside a great weight of gold, their offers were rejected.*—Cic.

Scripta tua jam diu expectans non audeo tamen flagitare, *While expecting for a long while past your writings, I yet do not venture to importune you for them.*—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the *Imperfect Participle*, *quum* with the *Past-Imperfect* is often used: as,

Audivi quum diceret, *I heard him saying.*—Cic.

§ 524. The *Perfect Participle Active* represents a Person *as having done* something at the time spoken of. It is found only in *Deponents* and in certain *Active Verbs*.

The following is a list of the principal *Active Verbs* which have a *Perfect Participle* with an *Active* sense:—

Audeo,	<i>I dare,</i>	ausus,	<i>having dared.</i>
Gaudeo,	<i>I rejoice,</i>	gāvisus,	<i>having rejoiced, rejoicing.</i>
Soleo,	<i>I am wont,</i>	sōlītus,	<i>having been wont.</i>
Fido (& comp.),	<i>I trust,</i>	fīsus,	<i>having trusted.</i>
Jūro,	<i>I swear,</i>	jūrātus,	<i>having sworn.</i>
Coeno,	<i>I dine,</i>	coenātus,	<i>having dined.</i>
Prandeo,	<i>I breakfast,</i>	pransus	<i>having breakfasted.</i>
Nūbo,	<i>I am married,</i>	nupta	<i>having married.</i>
Ōdi,	<i>I hate,</i>	ōsus	<i>having hated, hating.</i>

§ 525. Some *Deponents* use their *Perfect Participle* both in an *Active* and a *Passive* sense: the following are among the principal ones that do so:—

Adīpiscor	<i>I attain to,</i>	ādēptus, <i>having attained, or having been attained.</i>
Cōmītor,	<i>I accompany,</i>	cōmītātus, &c.
Confīteor,	<i>I confess,</i>	confessus, &c.
Mētor,	<i>I measure,</i>	mensus.
Expērior,	<i>I try,</i>	expertus.
Mēdītor,	<i>I practise,</i>	mēdītātus.
Testor,	<i>I call to witness,</i>	testātus.
Mōdēror,	<i>I control,</i>	mōdērātus.
Pōpūlor,	<i>I devastate,</i>	pōpūlātus.
Partior,	<i>I divide,</i>	partītus.
Pāciscor,	<i>I bargain,</i>	pactus.

§ 526. The want of a *Perfect Participle* in other *Verbs* is supplied in two ways:

(A.) By the Perfect Participle *Passive* in agreement with its Substantive as an *Ablative Absolute*.

(B.) By *quum* with the Subjunctive Mood.

(A.)

Mucius solus in castra Porseuinae venit, eumque interficere, *præposita sibi morte, conatus est, Mucius went alone into the camp of Porseuna, and having set death (Lit., death having been set) before his eyes, attempted to slay him.*—Cic.

Cognito Cuesaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit, *Having heard of Caesar's arrival, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to him.*—Cæsar.

Dextrâ Hercûles datâ omen se accipere ait, *Hercules offering his right hand, said he accepted the omen.*—Liv.

(B.)

Epaminondas *quum* vicisset Lacedæmônios apud Mantinæam, atque ipse grâvi vulnere se exanimari cerneret, quæsiuit, saluusne esset clipeus, *Epaminondas, having conquered the Lacedæmonians in the battle of Mantinea, and seeing himself to be dying of a bad wound, asked if his shield were safe.*—Cic.

(For more examples see § 332.)

Obs. Similarly the want of an Imperfect Participle in the *Passive* may be supplied by *quum* and the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive: as,

Quum civitas in labore assiduo restitendâ urbis induritur, *The people being occupied in the incessant labour of restoring the city.*—Liv.

(Similarly with *dum* and the Present Indicative, § 393.)

§ 527. The *Future Participle Active* is used to denote (1) *simple futurity*; (2) *intention or purpose*: as,

Delli moritûre, *O Delli, who art (one day) to die.*—Hor.

Persens rediit, belli cûsum de integro tentaturus, *Persus returned, intending to try the chances of war afresh.*—Liv.

Obs. The *Future Participle* occurs most frequently in combination with the verb *sum*.

§ 528. The *N neuter of the Perfect Participle* is sometimes used as an *Abstract Substantive*: as,

Num priusquam incipias, conanto; et ubi consuleris, matura facis opus est, *For before you make a beginning, you want counsel; and when you have taken counsel, you want prompt action.*—Sall.

Nihil pensi neque moderatû habere, *They exercised no reflection, no restraint.*—Sall.

§ 529. The use of the *Gerundive Participle* is explained in the next chapter.

§ 530. *Frequent use of Participles.*—Participles are very often used in Latin, so as to avoid the use of Conjunctions where several predications are united in a sentence: as,

Victus pietas facit, *Piety is vanquished and lies prostrate.*—Ov.

Rursus in obliquum verso pertumpit aratro, Again he turns the plough, and breaks up (the soil) in a cross direction.—Virg.

Tyrtæus carmina compōita exercitui recitavit, Tyrtæus composed songs and repeated them to the army.—Justin.

CHAPTER L.—THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE.

§ 531. The Gerund is a Verbal Substantive used in all cases except the Nominative and Vocative; as, *rēgendi*, of ruling; *rēgendo*, to, for, or by ruling; *ad rēgendum*, for the purpose of ruling.

Obs. Instead of a Nominative Case of the Gerund, the Infinitive Mood is used (see § 503).—In such sentences as *pārendum est*, we must obey; *mōriendum est*, we must die; the form in -*alum* is the neuter of the Gerundive Participle, not the Gerund. See § 536.

§ 532. The Cases of Gerunds have the same construction as the corresponding Cases of ordinary Substantives: as,

Gen.—*Practēreāmus igitur præcepta Lātīnē loquendi* (§ 263), *Let us then pass over the rules for speaking Latin.*—Cic.

Dat.—*Āqua nitrōsa utilis est bibendo* (§ 298), *Water full of natron is useful for drinking.*—Plin.

Acc.—*Brève tempus actātis sātis longum est ad hēnē hōnestūquo vivendum* (§ 248), *The brief time of life is long enough for living virtuously and honourably.*—Cic.

Ab.—*Orātor in dicendo* (§ 331) *exercitatus*, *An orator practised in speaking.*—Cic.

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is found only with Prepositions, and cannot be used as the direct object after a transitive verb.

§ 533. The Gerund, though virtually a Substantive, still retains the power of governing its proper case as a Verb: as,

Parsimōnia est scientia vitandi sumptus supervacuus, *Economy is the science of avoiding needless expense.*—Sen.

Publica prōtendo tua necquicquam serves, *By betraying the public seal, you would in ruin try to preserve your own.*—Liv.

§ 534. The Gerundive Participle signifies that a thing is necessary or proper to be done. It is always Passive in meaning, whether coming from a Verb strictly Passive or from a Deponent. It has the following modes of construction:—

(A.) It is used in the Nominative Case along with the Verb *est*, *sunt*, etc., in agreement with a

Substantive, to signify that something *ought to be done*.

(B.) It is used (impersonally) in the *Neuter Gender* along with the Verb *est*, with the same force as in the former case.

(C.) It is used in all Cases except the Nominative or Vocative, in agreement with a Substantive, as equivalent to a Gerund governing the Accusative.—NOTE. *The agent or doer in both (A) and (B) is put in the Dative Case.*

§ 535. (A.) If the verb governs an Accusative, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative of its substantive: as,

Diligentia est cōlenda, We must practise diligence.—Cic.

Obs. Such a construction as *poenas timentum est, we must fear punishment* (Lucr.), is exceptional, and is borrowed from the Greek.

§ 536. (B.) If the verb governs any other case than the Accusative the Gerundive is used impersonally with *est* in the Nominative Singular Neuter: as,

Rēsistendum sēnectūti est.....pugnandum tanquam contra morbum, sic contra sēnectūtem, We must resist old-age; we must combat with old-age as with a disease.—Cic.

Corpōri subvēniendum est, We must aid the body.—Cic.

Obs. 1. In such cases the Gerundive Participle governs the same Case as the Verb to which it belongs. (See examples.)

Obs. 2. The Dative of the Agent is frequently omitted. (See examples.)

Obs. 3. The Gerundives of Deponent Verbs which govern the Ablative are used both impersonally and in agreement with Substantives in the Nominative case: as,

Ūtendum ērit verbis, We shall have to make use of words.—Cic.

Non p̄randa nōbis solum s̄pientia sed etiam fr̄uenda est, We must not only get wisdom, but also enjoy the use of it.—Cic.

Obs. 4. Instead of the Dative of the agent, the Ablative with *a* or *ab* may be used to avoid confusion: as,

Quibus est a vobis cōsulendum, Whose interests should be consulted by you.—Cic. (Manil. 2, extr.)

§ 537. (C.) The Gerundive is frequently used instead of the Gerund, when the verb governs the Accusative. The following changes then take place:

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.

2. The Gerund is changed into the Gerundive.

3. The Gerundive being an Adjective agrees with its Substantive in gender, number, and case: thus,

Ars puēros ēducandi difficilis est

becomes

Ars puērōrum ēducandōrum difficilis est

in the following way : (1.) The Substantive *pueros* is put in the same case as the Gerund *educandi* ; consequently *puerorum*. (2.) The Gerund *educandi* is changed into the Gerundive *educandus*, *a*, *um*. (3.) The Gerundive is made to agree with *puerorum* in gender, number, and case ; consequently, *educandorum*. For example :

Nihil Xenophonti tam regale videtur, quam studium agri colendi.
Nothing seems to Xenophon so princely as the pursuit of tilling the soil.—Cic.

Régulus retinendi officii causâ cruciatum subiit voluntarium. *Regulus*
for the sake of keeping to his duty submitted to voluntary torture.—Cic.

Obs. 1. So also are used the Gerundive Participles of *utor*, *fruor*, *potior rescor*, *fungor* : as,

• *Ad agrum fruendum invitât atque allectat seneectus*, *Old age invites and tempts us to the enjoyment of the country.*—Cic.

• *Hostes in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant*, *The enemy had got hopes of obtaining possession of the camp.*—Caes.

Obs. 2. The Gerund is used in preference to the Gerundive, when the use of the latter would cause any ambiguity, especially when the Object of the Verbal Substantive is a *neuter* Adjective : as,

• *(Pars honesti) in tribuendo suum cuique versatur*, *A part of virtue consists in giving to every one his own.*—Cic.

§ 538. The Dative of the Gerundive is very often used with its Substantive to denote a *Purpose* or *Result* : as,

• *Valerius consul comitia collegae subrogando habuit*, *Valerius the consul held the elections for choosing him a fresh colleague.*—Liv.

Decemviri legibus scribundis, *Decemvirs for framing a code of laws.*—Liv.

Tiberius quasi firmandae valetudini in Campaniam concessit, *Tiberius withdrew into Campania ostensibly for the purpose of recruiting his health.*—Tac.

(But here Cic. would have written *ad firmandam valetudinem*.)

Obs. 1. This use of the Gerundive is most frequent in describing the function of an official person or body : as in the expressions, *Triumviri agris dandis*, &c. (See examples above.)

Obs. 2. To this head belong the phrases, *esse solvendo* (*sc.*, *aeri*, for which *aere* also occurs, *alieno*), *to be capable of paying, solvent* ; *oneri ferendo* *esse*, *to be adequate to the bearing of the burden*.

§ 539. The Gerundive is sometimes found with a similar meaning in the Genitive Case : as,

Régium impérium, quod initio conservandae libertatis atque augendae reipublicae fuerat, *The kingly government, which at the outset, had tended to the preservation of liberty and the increase of the Commonwealth.*—Sall.

Obs. This is to be regarded as a *Genitive of Quality* (§ 276).

§ 540. The following usage has been variously explained:—

In castra vēnērunt causā purgandi sui, They came into the camp for the purpose of clearing themselves.—Caes.

(Where we might have expected *purgandorum*.)

Non vēreor nē quis hoc me restri adhortandi (*adhortandorum*) *causā magnifice lōqui existimet*, I have no fear that any one will think I am herein speaking boastfully for the sake of encouraging you.—Liv.

(*Aliquid facere*) *eorum* (= ea § 537, Obs. 2), *quae secundum naturam sunt, adipiscendi causā*, To do a thing for the sake of attaining to those things which are in accordance with nature.—Cic.

Permissā.....licentiā diripiendi (= *diripiendorum*) *pōmōrum*, Giving leave to pilfer the fruit.—Suet.

Obs. It is possible that the Gerund may in the above cases be treated as an ordinary Substantive, as we say, "The clearing of themselves," "The doing of those things which are, &c."

§ 541. The Gerund (or Gerundive) is sometimes used in the Ablative Case, after the manner of an Ablative Absolute when it has the force of an Imperfect Tense: as,

L. Cornēlius, complexus Appium, non cui simulabat consulendo, dirēmit certāmen, Lucius Cornelius embracing Appius—being concerned in reality not for the person for whom he pretended—put an end to the dispute.—Liv.

Ut non pētisse Saguntinos, sed sērie, finitimis dōmitis gentibus, jungendoque, tractus ad id bellum vidēri posset, So that he might seem not to have singled out the Saguntines for attack, but in the natural order, after having subdued the neighbouring tribes, and as he was linking them together, to have been dragged into the said war.—Liv.

(In the above examples, *consulendo*, *jungendo* = *quum consuleret*, *jungeret*.)

CHAPTER LI.—THE SUPINES.

§ 542. The two Supines in *um* and *u* are properly the Accusative and Ablative Cases of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension.

§ 543. The Supine in *um* is used only after Verbs signifying motion, and denotes a Purpose. It is thus equivalent to *ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

Fābius Pictor Delphos ad ōrāculum missus est scītātum quibus precibus deos possent placāre, Fabius Pictor was sent to Delphi, to the oracle; in order to enquire by what prayers they might propitiate the gods.—Liv.

Cūbitum im (or, of several persons, *cūbitum discēdere*), To go to bed.—Cic.

Themistocles.....Argos *hābitātum concessit*, *Themistocles retired to live at Argos*.—Nep.

Obs. The phrase *ire perditum*, *to set about deliberately to destroy* (Cic., Sall.), should be noted.

§ 544. The Supine in *u* (which is properly an Ablative of *Manner*, § 311) is used after such Adjectives as *jūcundus*, *pleasant*; *fācilis*, *easy*; *hōnestus*, *honourable*; *crēdibilis*, *credible*; *mīrābilis*, *wonderful*; and the like, with their contraries, to denote in *what respect* they are predicated of anything: as,

Quid est tam jūcundum cognītu atque auditu, quam sāpientibus sentiis grāvibusque verbis ornāta oratio? *What is so delightful, whether in the learning or the hearing, as speech adorned with wise sentiments and weighty words?*—Cic.

Id dictu quam re fācilius, *That were easier in the saying than in the doing*.—Liv.

Nēfas est dictu, *There were an impiety in so saying!*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Tacitus uses the Supine in *u* instead of the Infinitive Mood after the Verb *pūdet*: as,

Pūdet dictu, *I am ashamed as I say it!*—(Agr. 32.)

Obs. 2. The Supine in *u* may often be translated by the English Infinitive Mood: as,

Mīrābile dictu, *Marvellous to relate!*—Virg.

CHAPTER LII.—ADVERBS.

§ 545. Adverbs qualify Verbs, Adjectives, and (other) Adverbs. To these parts of speech they sustain a corresponding relation to that of the Adjective to the Substantive; as in the following examples:

Tantus amor, *So great love*.

(Substantive qualified by Adjective.)

Adeo amāre, *To love to such a degree*.

Adeo amans, *So loving (affectionate)*.

Adeo amanter, *So lovingly*.

(Verb, Adjective, and Adverb, qualified by corresponding Adverb.)

§ 546. In the following cases an Adverb is found joined with a Substantive:

- (1.) In the case of the Numeral Adverbs *it̄rum*, *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., as denoting the number of times an office has been held: as,

Consul it̄rum, tertium, *Consul for the second, third time*, etc.—Liv. (Where in Greek the word *consul* would appear as a participle: ὑπατεύων.)

- (2.) Some Adverbs of place: as, *circa* (very often), *extrinsecus*, and some others: as,

Multae circa civitates, Many surrounding states.—Liv.
Gravibus superne ictibus conflictabantur, They encountered severe blows from above.—Tac.

- (3.) With some Substantives used participially: as,
Populus late rex, A nation icidely ruling.—Virg.
 (A poetical construction.)

- (4.) Occasionally with other Adverbs: as,

Inter duo simul bella, Betwixen two wars going on at once.—Liv.
Nulla magnopere clade accepta, No serious disaster having been suffered.—Liv.
Paene miles, Hardly (yet) a common soldier.—Cic.

§ 547. **Partim.**—The Adverb *partim* (originally accus. of *pars*) is often used as the Subject of a sentence; especially where *partim . . . partim* = *alii . . . alii*: as,

Eorum autem beneficiorum partim ejusmodi sunt ut ad universos cives pertineant, partim singulos ut attingant, Of those acts of beneficence, some are of a nature to extend to one's fellow-countrymen generally, others to affect individuals only.—Cic.

Obs. In the above example *partim* governs the Genitive (of *beneficiorum*) according to § 371.

N.B. Concerning the use of a neuter Adjective as an Adverb, see § 344.

§ 548. The Comparative of Adverbs is in prose usually followed by *quam*: as,

Vox me citius defecerit quam nomina (not nominibus), Voice would sooner fail me than names.—Cic.

Odiam multo pejor hunc quam Clodium ipsum (rather than Clodio ipso), I hated him worse than Clodius himself.—Cic.

Obs. 1. But in verse the Ablative is more common: as, *blandius Orpheo, more bewitchingly than Orpheus*; *cautius sanguine viperino, (to avoid anything) more carefully than viper's blood.*—Hor.

Obs. 2. Also in short phrases, the Ablative is preferred in prose: as, *magis solito, more than usual* (Liv.), *dicto citius, no sooner said than done* (Pete.). To these we may add the proverb: *lacrima nil citius arecit, Nothing dries faster than tears.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. For the construction of *amplius, plus, minus*, see § 349.

§ 549. Adverbs are compared together in the same way as Adjectives (see § 350): as,

Avidius quam consultus, More eagerly than advisedly.—Tac.

§ 550. Some Adverbs derived from Adjectives govern a Dative : see § 299.

§ 551. *Sic, Ita.*—*Sic* is derived from *hic* and *ita* from *is*, and the two Adverbs strictly differ from each other as do the Pronouns from which they are derived. Thus *sic* takes the place of a description, while *ita* simply makes reference to something in the context : as,

Macte virtute puer : sic itur ad astra, A blessing on thy valour, boy! Thus do men go heavenwards.—Virg.

(Compare the well-known *Sic vos non vobis*, etc.)

Ut binæ regum faciès, ita corpōra gentis, As there are two species of kings [queen-bees], so there are (two) sorts among their subjects.—Virg.

Ut quisque est vir optimus, ita difficillime esse alios imprōbos suspicatur. Just in proportion to a man's excellence [in that proportion] does he find most difficulty in suspecting others to be evil.—Cic.

Obs. From the two preceding examples it will be seen that *ita* is the regular correlative of *ut*.

§ 552. An Adverb occasionally appears as Predicate after the Verb *to be* : see § 213, *Obs.* 2.

CHAPTER LIII.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 553. Prepositions serve to show the relation of one Substantive to another, or to some other word in the sentence.

§ 554. Some Prepositions are found with the Accusative only; others with the Ablative only; some with the Accusative or Ablative, according to the sense; and some with either the Accusative or Ablative indiscriminately.

Obs. *Tenus* is sometimes found with the Genitive : see § 557.

§ 555. Lists of the Prepositions, with the cases they govern, are given in §§ 134-137. The following are the principal uses of the several Prepositions. For further details the student is referred to the Dictionary.

§ 556. I. With the Accusative only.

1. *Ad*.—*To, at, or near; for, in relation to, in comparison with* : as,

Ventum erat ad Vestae (sc. aedem), We had come to the temple of Vesta.—Hor.

Ad quintum lapidem, By the fifth milestone.—Nep.

Ad arbitrium cuncta agit.

Ad Veios, *Before the walls of Veii.*—Liv.

Omnes ad unum, *All to a single man.*—Cic.

Ad unguem, *To the very nail, i. e. perfectly.*—Hor.

Ad nuptias cōquēre, *To cook for a wedding-feast.*—Plant.

Nātus ad agendum, *Born for action.*—Cic.

Agere ad praescriptum.—*To act according to express rule.*—Caes.

Vir bonus et non illiteratus, sed nihil ad Persium, *A respectable man and no mean scholar, but nothing (in comparison) to Persius.*—Cic.

Obs. Ad Rōmam, *before the walls of Rome, in the vicinity of Rome*, must be distinguished from Rōmae, *actually at Rome*. Before numerals ad is occasionally an Adverb; as,

Oecsis ad hominum millibus quattuor, *As many as 4000 being slain.*—Caes. (B. G. 2, 33.)

Ad duo millia et trēcenti, *As many as 2300.*—Liv. (10, 17.)

2. **Adversus, adversum.**—Used of motion, direction, disposition, *towards, or against*: as

Adversus montem, *Towards or up a hill.*—Caes.

Piētas justitia adversus deos (est), *Piety is justice in relation to the gods.*—Cic.

Adversus lēges, *Contrary to the laws.*—Cic.

Adversus vētērem impērātōrem comparābitur, *He will be matched against a veteran general.*—Liv.

Obs. Adversus differs from contra in that it does not, like the latter, always signify *opposition*: from erga, in having a greater variety of applications (see No. 9).

3. **Ante.**—*Before*; of place, time, comparison: as,

Ante ostium stāre, *To stand before the door.*—Ter.

Ante urbem conditam, *Before the building of the city.*—Cic.

Ante omnes rarissimus, *Before all most beloved.*—Nep.

Obs. Note especially the phrase ante diem (A.D.) in giving the day of the month: as, ante diem xiii Kāendas Jānuārias (*the 20th of December*), where the preposition strictly belongs to Kāendas, but is made to govern diem as well.

4. **Āpūd.**—*Near*; in the presence of; in the writings of: as,

Āpud Mantinēam, *In the neighbourhood of Mantinea.*—Nep.

Āpud Lācrum, *In the house of Laca.*—Cic.

Verba āpud sēnātum facere, *To make a speech before the senate.*—Cic.

Āpud Xēnōphontem, *In (the writings of) Xenophon.*—Cic.

Obs. Āpud is sometimes used with names of towns in the sense of *at* or *in*: as,

Āpud urbem Nōlam, *In the city of Nola.*—Tac. (Ann. 1, 3.)

5. **Circum, circā.**—*Around, about, near about.* These forms are used somewhat differently

(a.) **circum.**—More precise than *circā*, *all round*: as,

Urbes quae circum Cāpuam sunt, *The cities which lie round about Capua.*—Cic.

Terra circum axem se convertit, *The earth turns round upon its axis.*—Cic.

Ligāto circum collum sūdārio, *With a handkerchief tied round one's neck.*—Suet.

Omnium flagitiōrum (= flagitiosorum) circum se cātervas hābēbat, *He had about his person gangs of all kinds of profligate characters.*—Sall.

(b.) **circā.**—Of place; *round, about, in the neighbourhood of*: of time; *about, towards*: of number (= *circiter*); *near about*: of relation; *about, respecting*: as,

Circa montem Amānum, *In the vicinity of Mount Amanus.*—Caes.

Lēgātōs circa vicīnas gentes mīsit, *He dispatched ambassadors round to the neighbouring nations.*—Liv.

Circa eandem hōram, *About the same time of the day.*—Liv.

Circa quingentos Rōmānorum, *About 500 of the Romans.*—Liv.

Circa verba dissensio, *A dispute about words.*—Quint.

Obs. *Circa* in the sense of *concerning* (usually *de* with *abl.*) is chiefly found in later authors.

6. **Circiter.**—*About*: as a preposition used only with numerals: as,

Octāvam circiter hōram, *About the eighth hour.*—Hor.

N.B. But *circiter* is usually an Adverb.

7. **Cis, citrā.**—*On this side of; without* (rare): as,

Citra or eis Rhēnum, *On this side the Rhine.*—Caes.

Citrā speciem, *Without* (lit. *on this side, on the wrong side of*) *beauty.*—Tac.

Citra fidem, *Beyond belief.*—Tac.

Obs. The form *citra* alone is used in the latter (figurative) sense.

8. **Contrā.**—*Opposite to; against*: as,

Insulae tertium lātus est contra septentriones, *The third side of the island is opposite to (faces) the north.*—Caes.

Contra nātūram, officiū, *Contrary to nature, duty.*—Cic.

Contra Pōpulum Rōmānum conjūrāre, *To conspire against the Roman people.*—Caes.

Obs. For the distinction between *contra* and *adversus* see above.

9. **Ergā.**—*Towards* ; of feeling or conduct : as,

Dīvina bōnitas erga hōmīnes, *The divine goodness towards man.*—Cic.

Obs. Erga is almost always used of friendly feelings or conduct ; *contra* being used of hostility.

10. **Extrā.**—*Outside of, free from ; except* (rare) : as,

Extra portam Collinam, *Outside the Colline gate.*—Cic.

Extra noxiam, *Free from guilt.*—Ter.

Extra dūcem paucosque praeterea, *Excepting their leader and a few besides.*—Cic.

11. **Infrā.**—*Beneath* ; of place or relation : as,

Infra coelum et sidērā, *Beneath the sky and stars.*—Tac.

Infra se, *Beneath oneself* (in figurative sense).—Cic.

12. **Inter.**—*Between, among ; during* (esp. with gerunds) : as,

Inter Pādum atque Alpes, *Between the Po and the Alps.*—Liv.

Inter tela versari, *To be in the midst of weapons.*—Cic.

Inter falcarios, *In the quarter (or street) of the scythe-makers.*—Cic.

Inter hōram tertiam et quartam, *Between the third and fourth hour.*—Liv.

Haec inter coenam dictavi, *The above I dictated in the course of supper.*—Cic.

Inter bibendum, *During drinking.*—Just.

Hi omnes inter se differunt, *These all differ from one another.*—Caes.

Pueri inter se amant, *The boys love each other.*—Cic.

Quod inter nos liceat, *Between ourselves.*—Cic.

13. **Intrā.**—*Within* ; of place, time, or any other relation : as,

Intra muros, *Within the walls.*—Cic.

Intra hōs sex menses, *Within the last six months.*—Phaedr.

Intra centum, *Within one hundred.*—Liv.

Intra legem, *Within the law* (the limit prescribed by law).—Cic.

14. **Juxtā.**—*Hard by ; next to* : as,

Juxta murum, *Close to the wall.*—Caes.

Hōmo juxta Varrōnem doctissimus, *The most learned man after Varro.*—Gell.

Obs. Juxta denotes closer proximity than *ad* or *prope*.

15. *Ob.*—*Before* (of place); *on account of*: as,

Mors ob oculos sæpe versata est, *Death was often before his eyes.*—Cic.

Ob rem iudicandam pecuniam accipere, *To take a bribe for one's judicial vote.*—Cic.

Mortem ob rempublicam obire, *To encounter death on account of the state.*—Tac.

16. *Penes.*—*In the possession, or power of*: as,

Quem penes est potestas, *To whom belongs the power.*—Cic.

Penes te es, *Are you in your senses?*—Hor.

Hi (servi) centum dies penes accusatorem (erant), *These slaves remained in the hands of the accuser one hundred days.*—Cic.

Obs. Penes is often put after its case, especially a Relative.

17. *Për.*—*Through, throughout, during; by means of; in the way of; on account of; by* (in oaths): as,

Per agros vagari, *To roam over the country.*—Liv.

Per hiemem, *Throughout the winter.*—Cato.

Per indutias, *In time of truce.*—Liv.

Per exploratores cognoscere, *To learn by means of scouts.*—Caes.

Per iram facere (aliquid), *To do anything through anger.*—Cic.

Per summum dedecus vitam amittere, *To lose life in circumstances of extreme disgrace.*—Cic.

Per actatē, *Through (on account of) age.*—Cic.

Per deos atque homines, *By gods and men.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The meaning *on account of* is rare.

Obs. 2. In adjurations *per* is often separated from its Accusative: as,

Per ego te deos oro, *By the gods I entreat you!*—Ter.

Per ego te, inquit, fili, quaecunque iura liberos jungunt parentibus, precor, *By whatever claims bind children to their parents, I entreat thee, my son!*—Liv.

18. *Pōne.*—*Behind* (rare): as,

Pōne castra, *Behind (in the rear of) the camp.*—Liv.

Vinctae pōne tergum manus, *Hands bound behind the back.*—Tac.

19. *Post.*—*Behind* (in lit. and fig. sense); *after*: as,

Post me erat Aegina, ante Mēgara, *Behind me was Aegina, before me Megara.*—Sulpic. ap. Cic.

Post tergum, *Behind one's back.*—Caes.

Nēque erat Lȳdia post Chloen, *Nor was Lydia behind Chloe (in favour).*—Hor.

Post M. Brūtum prōconsulem, *After the proconsulate of M. Brutus.*—Cic.

Maxīma post hōmīnum mēmōriam classis, *The largest fleet in (lit. since) the memory of men.*—Nep.

Obs. Post is usually preferred by classical writers to pōne, which, as a preposition, became nearly obsolete.

20. **Praeter.**—*Along, past (of motion); besides, except, contrary to:* as,

Praeter castra Caesāris cōpias suas transduxit, *He marched his forces past the camp of Caesar.*—Caes.

Praeter cēteros lābōrāre, *To labour beyond (more than) the rest.*—Cic.

Amīcum tibi nēmīnem esse praeter Lucullum, *I see you have no friend except Lucullus.*—Cic.

Praeter spem, ōpiniōnem, *Contrary to expectation.*—Cic.

21. **Prōpe.**—*Near to; usually of place:* as,

Prōpe oppīdum, *Near to the town.*—Caes.

Prōpe lūcem, *Towards daybreak.*—Suet.

Prōpe sēditionem ventum est, *It came very near to a mutiny.*—Tac.

Obs.—Prōpe is often an Adverb, and followed by the Preposition ab (a). So also is the compar. adverb prōpius, and less frequently proxīme.

22. **Proptēr.**—*Near (close) to; on account of (the most frequent meaning):* as,

Propter Plātōnis stātūam consēdīmus, *We sat down close to the statue of Plato.*—Cic.

Pārēre lēgibus propter mētum, *To obey the laws on account of fear.*—Cic.

Obs. Propter sometimes follows its case.

23. **Sēcundum.**—*By, along; directly after, following upon; according to:* as,

Iter sēcundum māre facēre, *To journey along the sea-coast.*—Cic.

Sēcundum vindēmiam, *Directly after the vintage.*—Cato.

Vivēre sēcundum nātūrā, *To live according to nature.*—Cic.

Sēcundum libertātem vindicias dāre, *To grant a claim in favour of personal freedom.*—Liv.

24. **Suprā.**—*Above (in lit. or fig. sense), beyond:* as,

Supra me Atticus (accūbuerat), infra Verrius, *Next above me sat Atticus, below me Verrius.*—Cic.

Ille supra sēgētes nāvīgat, *One sails over corn-fields.*—Ov.

Dux hostium cum exercītu supra cāput est, *The enemy hovers over our head with an army.*—Sall.

Supra millia vīginti, *Beyond (more than) 20,000.*—Liv.

Supra mōdum, *Beyond measure.*—Liv.

Obs. It is rarely used of time: as,

Paullo supra hanc mēmōriam, *A little before the present date.*—Caes.

25. **Trans.**—Across, on the farther side of: as,

Trans mǎro currunt, They hurry across the sea.—Hor.

Trans Tibērim hābitat, He lives on the farther side of the Tiber.—Hor.

26. **Ultra.**—Beyond: as,

Cis Padum ultraque, On the nearer and farther side of the Po.—Liv.

Ultra modum, Beyond a (certain) limit.—Cic.

Ultra fas, Beyond what is right.—Hor.

Ne sutor ultra crepidam, Let not the shoemaker go beyond his last.—Vet. Prov.

27. **Versus.**—Of direction towards (only of local direction): as,

Arpinum versus, Towards Arpinum.—Cic.

Itāliam versus nāvigāre, To sail in the direction of Italy.—Sulpic. ap. Cic.

Obs. 1. Versus is often used in combination with *ad* or *in*: as,

T. Labiūnum ad Ocelūnum versus prōfiscisci jābet, He directs T. Labienus to set out in the direction of the Ocean.—Caes.

Obs. 2. Versus is put after its case, like the English -wards.

§ 557. II. With the Ablative only.

1. **Ab. a.**—Of separation or origin. *from, by*: of proximity, *on the side of*; to denote the agent after a Passive Verb: as,

Non longe a finibus Tolosātium absunt, They are not far from the territories of the Tolosates.—Caes.

Rem omnem a principio audies, You shall hear the whole matter from the beginning.—Ter.

A puero, From a boy (= from boyhood.)—Cic.

Cornix est ab laeva, The crow is on the left.—Plaut.

Haec a nobis sunt, These things are on our side.—Cic.

Nihil est ab omni parte beātum, Nothing is in every respect happy (from every point of view).—Hor.

Ossa ejus clam in Attica ab amicis sepulta (sunt), His bones were secretly buried in Attica by his friends.—Nep.

A frigore laborare, To suffer from cold.—Plin.

A manu servus, An amanuensis.—Suet. (See also § 715.)

Obs. 1. Sometimes only the context can determine whether *ab* is used in the sense of *by* or *from*: as,

Postulatur a populo, The demand is made by (or from) the people.—Cic.

Obs. 2. In such expressions as *a manu* (servus), *ab epistolis*, etc., the preposition denotes the province in which service is rendered.

Obs. 3. *Ab* is used chiefly before consonants and *a* before vowels (including *h*) only: *ab* is rare, except in compounds.

Obs. 4. The primary meaning of this preposition appears to have denoted origin.

2. *Alsque* (rare).—*Without* : as,

Absquē to *esset*, *Without you ; were it not for you.*—*Plant.*

Obs. According to Zumpt, *absque* occurs but once in Cicero, and there only for the sake of euphony.

3. *Cōram*.—*In the presence of* : as,

Cantābit vācuus cōram lātrōne viātor, *The empty-pocketed traveller will whistle in the presence of the highwayman.*—*Hor.*

4. *Cum*.—*With, along with* : as,

Esse cum tēlo, *To be (provided) with a weapon.*—*Cic.*

Cum pāce laxior annōna rēdiit, *Along with peace returned greater cheapness of provisions.*—*Liv.*

Ex sēmine cum dēcimo rēdit, *There is a tenfold (lit. with a tenth) return from the seed.*—*Varr.*

Obs. 1. *Cum* is not used to introduce the instrument of an action : thus *cum gladio interfectus est* would not mean, *he was slain with a sword*, but *he was slain having a sword with him*.

Obs. 2. But *cum* is often used of the attendant circumstances, or characteristics of an action : as,

Summa cum celeritate ad exercitum rēdiit, *He returned with the utmost speed to his army.*—*Hirt.*

Obs. 3. With the Ablatives of Pronouns *cum* is written as an enclitic : as, *mecum, tecum, nobiscum, quibuscum*, etc.

5. *Dē*.—*Down from, from* ; of time, *during, in the course of* ; of material, *made of* ; concerning : as,

De mūro se prōjēcit, *He cast himself down from the wall.*—*Caes.*

Caupo de via Lātina, *An innkeeper from the Latin way.*—*Cic.*

Pauci de nostris cādunt, *A few from amongst our men fall.*—*Caes.*

Diem de dio prōferre, *To put off from day to day.*—*Liv.*

De die, de nocte, *By day, by night.*—*Cic.*

De tertiā vigīlia, *In the course of the third watch.*—*Caes.*

Niveo factum de marmōre signum, *A statue made of snow-white marble.*—*Ov.*

De republica (scripti libri), *Books written on the subject of the commonwealth.*—*Cic.*

Obs. The adverbial phrases, *de novo, de integro*, *anew, afresh* ; *de improviso*, *unexpectedly* ; *de industria*, *on purpose* ; should be noted : also, *de* (Gallia, &c.) triumphare, *to triumph for victories gained over (the Gauls, &c.)*.

6. *Ex*, &.—*Out of, from* ; of time, *immediately after* ; of material, *mads out of* ; on account of ; in pursuance of, in accordance with ; as,

Solem e mundo tollere videntur, qui amicitiam e vita tollunt, *They seem to take the sun out of the world, who take friendship out of human life.*—*Cic.*

Ex equo cadere, *To fall from one's horse.*—Cic.

Statim e somno levantur, *They (the Germans) bathe immediately on rising from sleep.*—Tac.

Cotta ex consulatu est profectus in Galliam, *Immediately after his consulate, Cotta started for Gaul.*—Cic.

Quidam ex militibus, *(A certain) one of the soldiers.*—Caes.

Statua ex aere facta, *A statue made of bronze.*—Cic.

Urbem e suo nomine Romam iussit nominari, *He directed the city to be called Rome from his own name.*—Cic.

Quum esset ex aere alieno commota civitas, *The city being in a commotion on account of debt.*—Cic.

Ex litteris Caesaris supplicatio decreta est, *A supplication was decreed in accordance with Caesar's dispatch.*—Caes.

Obs. Note also the phrases, e regione, *over against*; ex aequo, *in an equal degree*; ex improviso, *unexpectedly*, &c.

7. **Prae.**—*Before*; *because of*; *in comparison with*: as,

Prae se gregem agens, *Driving the herd before him.*—Liv.

Prae se ferre, ostentare, *To make a public show of.*—Cic.

Prae maerore loqui (non) potuit, *He could not speak for grief.*—Cic.

Prae ceteris Cato in senectute floruit, *Cato was distinguished above others in the character of an old man.*—Cic.

Obs. Prae in the sense of *because of* chiefly occurs in negative sentences. Plautus, however, has such sentences as, Prae laetitia lacrimae praesiliunt mihi, *Tears start to my eyes for joy.* (Stich. 3, 2, 13.)

8. **Pro.**—*Before*, *in front of*; *instead of*, *on behalf of*; *in consideration of*; *in proportion to*: as,

Castra pro moenibus locata erant, *The camp had been pitched in front of the walls.*—Liv.

Pro suggestu (dicere), *To speak from the front of a platform.*—Caes.

Ego pro te molam, *I will grind for you.*—Ter.

Pro patria mori, *To die for one's country.*—Hor.

Pro vectura solvere, *To pay for freight.*—Cic.

Pro Caesaris in se beneficiis, *In consideration of Caesar's favours done to him.*—Caes.

Proelium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium, *A battle more sanguinary than might have been expected from the number of the combatants.*—Liv.

9. **Sine.**—*Without*: as,

Non sine dis, *Not without the help of the gods.*—Hor.

Nullus dies sine linea, *Not a day without a line.*—Prov. in Plin.

10. *Tēnus*.—*Ūp to, as far as : as,*

Cūpūlo tēnus abdīdit ensem, He buried his sword up to the hill.—Virg.

Tauro tēnus, As far as Mount Taurus.—Cic.

Obs. 1. Tēnus is sometimes found with the Genitive : as,

Crūrum tēnus, Up to the legs.—Virg.

Obs. 2. Tēnus always follows its case.

§ 558. III. With the Accusative and Ablative.

1. *In*.—*In, into ; towards, until ; against.*

(a.) With the Accusative : always implying motion or direction towards : as,

In coelum ascendēre, To ascend into heaven.—Cic.

Chōrus virtūtum in equūleum impōsītus, A whole company of virtues put on the rack.—Cic.

Belgae spectant in septentriones et orientem sōlem, The Belgae face towards the north and east.—Caes.

Dormiet in lūcem, He will sleep till broad day.—Hor.

Sōlis defectiōnes itemque lūnae praedicuntur in multos annos, Eclipses of the sun and moon are foretold for many years to come.—Cic.

In praesens, in futūrum, in perpētuum, For the present, for the future, for ever.—Cic.

In liberos nostros indulgentia, Fondness towards our children.—Cic.

In utramque partem dispūtare, To argue a question on both sides.—Cic.

Oratiōnes in Cātulinam hābitae, The speeches delivered against Catiline.

Obs. 1. Note the adverbial phrases, in commūne, for the common good ; in unīversum, in general ; in pējus, for the worse.

Obs. 2. Occasionally the Accusative after in has the force of the Ablative : as,

Eam optīmam rempublicam esse dūco, quae sit in pōtestatem optimātium, I deem that the best form of government which is in the power of the aristocracy.—Cic. (Leg. 3, 17.)

(b.) With the Ablative : of rest or action in a place ; in or during ; among : as,

Caedes in Appia via facta (est), A murder was committed on the Appian road.—Cic.

Sedēre in equo, To sit on horseback.—Cic.

In omni vīta, In the whole of one's life.—Cic.

In summo omnium timōre, During the excessive alarm of all.—Cic.

Thāles qui sapientissimus in septem fuit, Thales who was the wisest among the seven.—Cic.

2. Sub.—*Under, up to, etc.*

- (a.) With the Accusative:
- under, up to*
- (of motion); of time,
- just after or before*
- : as,

Exercitum sub iugum mittere, *To pass an army under the yoke.*—Caes.

Sub montem succedunt milites, *The soldiers make their way up the hill.*—Caes.

Sub noctem, *At nightfall.*—Caes.

Sub galli cantum, *Just about cock-crow.*—Hor.

Sub eas (litteras) statim recitatae sunt tuae, *Directly after that letter was read yours.*—Cic.

- (b.) With the Ablative:
- under*
- (usually without motion); of time,
- just upon, after*
- : as,

Sub pellibus hiemare, *To winter under skins (or tents).*—Caes.

Sub divo, *Under the open sky.*—Hor.

Sub hoc iugo Dictator Aequos misit, *Under this kind of yoke the Dictator made the Aequians pass.*—Liv.

Sub ditione alicujus esse, *To be under any one's power.*—Caes.

Adhuc sub iudice lis est, *The matter is still before the judge undecided.*—Hor.

Sub adventu Romanorum, *Just before the arrival of the Romans.*—Liv.

3. Super.—*Above, beyond, concerning.*

- (a.) With the Accusative:
- above, whether of place or some other relation*
- : as,

Super vallum praecipitatus est, *He was pitched headlong over the ramparts.*—Sall.

Nomentanus erat super ipsum, *Nomentanus sat next above (our host) himself.*—Hor.

Super omnia, *Above all things.*—Liv.

- (b.) With the Ablative:
- above, of place; concerning*
- : as,

Ensis (illi) super cervice pendet, *A sword hangs suspended over his neck.*—Hor.

Multa super Priamo rogatans, super Hectore multa, *Asking many a question concerning Priam, many concerning Hector.*—Virg.

4. Subter.—*Under*: in Prose almost always with the Accusative: as,

Manum subter togam exserere, *To thrust the hand out from under the toga.*—Liv.

Rhoeteo subter litore, *'Neath the Rhoetean shore.*—Cat.

5. *Clam*.—*Without the knowledge of*: used indifferently with the Accusative or the Ablative: as,

Clam patrem, Without a father's knowledge.—Ter.

Clam vōbis, Without your knowledge.—Caes.

Obs. *Clam* is properly rather an adverb than a Preposition.

CHAPTER LIV.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 559. Conjunctions connect sentences together and show the relation between them. They thus sustain the same relation towards sentences which Prepositions sustain towards Substantives (see § 553).

Obs. Sometimes Conjunctions appear to connect words; where however it may generally be shown that they virtually connect sentences: as,

Ēgo et tu crēdimus, I and you believe = *ego crēdo et tu crēdis.*

§ 560. Conjunctions may be arranged in the following classes: Connective, Adversative, Hypothetical, Concessive, Causal, Conclusive, Final, Temporal.

N.B. For lists of the above, see § 139.

1. Connective Conjunctions.

§ 561. *Et* is the Conjunction most used simply to connect words and sentences: as,

Virtus hōmīnibus instituendo et persuādendo trādītur, Virtue is imparted to men by instruction and persuasion.—Cic.

Cāri esse et diligī vōlāmus, We wish to be dear (to others) and to be loved by them.—Cic.

§ 562. *Et* often introduces the first member as well as subsequent ones. it may then be translated by *both and*; *in the first place and then*; *not only, but also*; and similar expressions: as,

Te et mōneo et rōgo, ut rēcordēre consilium nostrum, I both advise you and request you to call to mind my advice.—Cic.

Ōrātiunculās et quas postūlas, et plūres etiam mittam, I will send you not only the little speeches you ask for, but others too.—Cic.

Sed et ipse errābat, et ālios etiam errāre cōgēbat, But in the first place he was himself in error, and then he forced others likewise to err.—Cic.

Obs. Very often the introductory *et* is not translated in English: as,

Hoc et rātio doctis, et nēcessitas barbāris, praescripsit, This lesson reason has taught the civilised and necessity the uncivilised.—Cic.

(Concerning the Concord of the Predicate in such cases, see § 220.)

§ 563. The enclitic *quē* is used in preference to *et* when things are closely connected in any way: as,

Arma contra deos ārasque et fūcos tālit. He bore arms against the gods and their altars, and against our fire-sides.—Cic.

Pēdestres nāvālesque pugnae, Battles by land and sea.—Cic.

§ 564. *Et* *nēque* (*nec*). When two propositions are connected, one of which is positive and the other negative, the following arrangements are found:

et *nēque* (*nec*); *et non*.

nēque (*nec*), *et non*, . . . *et*.

nēque (*nec*), *que*.

Intelligitis et ānimum ei praesto fuisse, nec consilium dēfuisse, You see that not only had he presence of mind, but that counsel was not lacking.—Cic.

Sextus et rem agnoscit, neque hōmīnem ignōrat, Sextus is [both] acquainted with the affair, and no stranger to the individual.—Cic.

Africānus nēque [cessabat] unquam, et interdum collōquio altērius non ēgēbat, Africanus was never idle, and at times could do without the intercourse of another.—Cic.

Is locus mēlior quem et non cōquit sol et tangit ros, That is a better situation where on the one hand the sun does not scorch, and the dew reaches.—Varr.

Sed nec illa extincta sunt, ālunturque pōtius et augentur cōgitatione et mēmōria, But in the first place those things are not dead; and then they rather derive nutriment and increase from thought and recollection.—Cic.

Obs. In such cases the *neque* (*nec*) is usually resolved in English into *and not*, on the $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{one} \\ \text{other} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$ hand . . . *not*, or the like.

§ 565. *Atque* (*ac* before consonants only) is mostly used when a second member is at the same time to be brought into comparison or contrast with the preceding one:

Divina atque hūmāna prōmiscua nihil pensī nēque mōdērātī hābēre, Things divine and human without distinction they treated without respect or restraint.—Sall.

Vita misēra atque inhōncsta, A life at once wretched and dishonourable.—Sall.

Obs. 1. *Atque* does not differ essentially from *que*, and is preferred to it when *que*, if used, would follow short and unaccented syllables. See the above examples.

Obs. 2. When several members are connected together, the conjunction may either be repeated after each member, or else omitted altogether: as,

Virtus et hōnestas et pūdōr, Virtue, honour, and shame.—Cic. (Not virtus, honestas et pūdōr.)

Mētellum multi filii, filiae, nēpōtes, nēptes, in rōgum impōsuerunt. A number of sons and daughters, grandsons and daughters, joined to place Metellus on the funeral pile.—Cic.

(This latter construction is called *Asyndeton*, ἀσύνδετον; the former *Polysyndeton*, πολυσύνδετον.)

§ 566. **Quum** (*tum*) . . . *tum*. *whilst, not only . . . also*, are used chiefly in introducing different particulars respecting the same thing: as,

Impārātus quum a militibūs tum a pecūniā, Unprepared not only in the article of men but also of money.—Cic.

Epistola summae quum bēnēvolētiæ tum etiā prūdētiæ, A letter characterised by the utmost good-will as well as the utmost sagacity.—Cic.

Tum semper tum in his temporibus, Both in general, and (especially) in these times.—Cic.

Dissēro in utramque partem, tum Græcē tum Latīnē, I debate on both sides, now in Greek, now in Latin.—Cic.

§ 567. **Non mōdo** (*solum*) . . . *vērū* (*sed*) *etiā*, *not only . . . but also*, are used to give emphasis to a statement: as,

Non solum naturā sed etiā studio, Not only by nature, but also by industry.—Cic.

Obs. When there is a double negative in the sentence, as, *not only not excellent, but not even middling*, the negative particle may be omitted from the former member, the latter being usually expressed by *sed ne . . . quidem* (636): *non mōdo præstantes, sed ne mediocres quidem.* (Cf. Cic. Rep. 2, 15, *quæ non solum facta, sed ne fieri quidem potuisse, not only not actual facts, but not even possible*). But the negative is quite as often expressed in both.

§ 568. **Nēque** (*neque*), *neither . . . nor*. When two or more Subjects of the Third Person are connected by *neque* (*neque*) . . . *neque* (*neque*), the Predicate is made to agree with that Subject along with which it is expressed: as,

Nec lōga nec focus est, Neither toga nor fire-place is there.—Mart.

[Vōbis] nec ætas, neque hōnōres, neque virtus . . . dulcedinem vivendi minūere poterit, For you neither years, nor honours, nor worth, will avail to lessen your fondness for life.—Cic.

§ 569. But in the case of the Personal Pronouns *ego* or *tu*, the Verb may be put in the Plural Number: as,

Hæc si nēque ego nēque tu fecimus, If neither you nor I have done these things.—Ter. (Ad. 1, 2, 23.)

[Indignābantur] quod in decemviris neque ego neque Cæsar habiti censemus, They were indignant that neither I nor Cæsar should have been appointed among the Decemvirs.—Brut. ap. Cic.

Obs. 1. In such cases the Person of the Verb is of course determined according to the regular rule. See § 221.

Obs. 2. *Neque, nec* are used indifferently before vowels and consonants.

§ 570. **Aut**, *vel* (*-vê*), *or*. *Aut* is a disjunctive word, and introduces something quite different from what has gone

before: *vel* is copulative, and implies not so much a new alternative as a modification of the preceding one: as,

Omne enunciātum aut vērum aut falsum est, Every proposition is either true or false.—Cic. (New alternative "*false*," and exclusive of the other.)

Pāce vel Quīrīni vel Rōmūli dixerim, By favour of Quirinus or (shall I call him) Romulus.—Cic.

Vi aut clam āgendum est, It must be managed by open force or else by secrecy.—Cic. (Alternatives directly opposed.)

Ordo vel pāci dēcōrus vel bello, An order seemly whether for peace or war.—Liv. (Both alternatives included.)

Obs. 1. The above distinction cannot however be always traced with equal clearness.

Obs. 2. *Ve* is abbreviated from *vel*, and has a similar use: as,
Duābus trībusve hōris, In two or three hours.—Cic.

Obs. 3. *Ve* is also found in the compound *sive* (seu): as,
Sive cāsū sive consilio deorum immortalium, Whether by accident or by the counsel of the immortal gods.—Cacs.

2. Adversative Conjunctions.

§ 571. Adversative Conjunctions are those which are used in stating a proposition in some way opposed to what has preceded. They are the following: *sed, autem, vērum, vēro, at* (poet. *ast*), *atqui, cēterum, tāmen, attāmen, vērantāmen*, in English, *but, yet*. They do not affect the structure of a sentence

§ 572. *Sed, autem, but.*—*Sed* denotes a more direct and emphatic opposition than *autem*, and therefore stands at the head of its sentence, while *autem* takes the second place: as,

Non ego hērus tibi, sed servus sum, I am not your master, but your slave.—Plaut.

Hoc non mōdo non laudāri, sed ne concēdi quīdem pōtest, This not only cannot be praised, but cannot even be allowed.—Cic.

Gyges a nullo vidēbatur, ipse autem omnia vidēbat, Gyges was seen by no one, while he himself saw everything.—Cic.

Ōratiōes Caesāris mihi vēhementer prōbantur; lēgi autem complūres, Caesar's speeches have my warm admiration; and I have read a good many.—Cic.

§ 573. *Vērum* and *vēro, but*, are used with the same distinction as *sed* and *autem*. *Cēterum* is similar in its use to *vērum* or *sed*.

§ 574. *Vēro* is often used as an affirmative particle: as,

Ego vēro cūpio te ad me scribere, I do in truth desire you to write to me.—Cic.

Immo vēro, inquit, vivunt, Yea, verily, they do live.—Cic.

Sometimes it is used where in English we say *yes* : as,

Fuisti, crēdo, in schōlis philōsōphorum? Vēro, ac libenter quidem,
*You have attended the schools of the philosophers, I believe? Yes, and
 with pleasure too.*—Cic.

§ 575. *At*, *but* ; *on the other hand* ; *but*, *you say* ; is especially used in stating objections : as,

At mēmōria mīnuītur : crēdo, nīsi eam exerceas, *But, say you, the
 memory decays. I believe, if you do not keep it in practice.*—Cic.

Obs. In stating an objection, *at* is often strengthened by *enim* : as,

At enim cur a me pōtissimum hoc praesidium pētīverunt, *But, you say,
 why have they come to me rather than any other for this protection?*—
 Cic.

§ 576. *At* is idiomatically used in sudden transitions, vehement exclamations of displeasure, etc. : as,

Consurgit Turnus in ensem et fērit. . . . At perfīdus ensis
 frangitur in mēdio, *Turnus rises upon his sword and strikes. . . . But,
 lo! the faithless sword snaps in two.*—Virg.

Una māter Cluentium oppugnat. At quae mater, *The mother of
 Cluentius is his only assailant. But then what a mother!*—Cic.

At o deorum quidquid in coelo rēgit, . . . quid iste fert tāmulus,
Why, in the name of all the gods that rule above, what means this to-do?
 —Hor. (at the beginning of a piece.)

§ 577. *Atqui*, *and yet*, is similar to *at* : as,

Magnum narras et vix crēdibile. Atqui sic hābet, *What you say is
 astonishing and hardly credible. And yet so it is.*—Hor.

§ 578. *Quodsi* (negative *quodni*, *quod nisi*), *but if*, *and if*, is about equivalent to *si autem* : sometimes the *quod* serves as a pure connective : as,

Quodsi quis illorum vētērānorum lēgat acta, *But if (or now if) any-
 one would read the actions of those veterans.*—Nep. (Eum. 8, 2.)

Quodsi te sors Afris aut Hispānis aut Gallis praefēcisset, *Now if
 fortune had placed you over Africa, Spain, or Gaul.*—Cic. (Q. Fr. i. 1, 9.)

3. Hypothetical Conjunctions.

§ 579. Hypothetical Conjunctions are those which are used in stating an hypothesis : concerning their syntax see §§ 422, sqq.

4. Concessive Conjunctions.

§ 580. Concessive Conjunctions are those which may be rendered in English by *although*, *even if*, *granting that*. They

aro etai. etiam. tamet. (tamenet). quanquam. quamvis. licet. u. quum. They are discussed in treating of the use of the Subjunctive Mood. (See §§ 456, 481, 500, 501.)

5. Causal Conjunctions.

§ 581. Causal Conjunctions are those which are used in stating a reason: they can mostly be translated by *because*, *since*, *for*, *seeing that*. (For a list of them see p. 93.) Their syntax, with the exception of *nam* and *enim*, is treated under the Subjunctive Mood (§§ 477, 483; 486-495).

Nam (*namque*), is more emphatic than *enim*, and begins its own clause; *enim* stands second and is often used as a Particle (see § 654): as,

Percontatorem fugito; *nam* garrulus idem est, *Shun an inquisitive person; for he is also a gossip.*—Hor.

Scribe ad me quam saepissime; nonnihil *enim* me levare tuae litterae. *Write to me as often as possible, for your letters relieve me a little.*—Cic. ad Att.

Obs. 1. *Nam* is often used elliptically, where the thought is readily supplied: as, *Nam* quid ego de Cicerone dicam, [I will not], *for why need I, speak of Cicero.*—Cic. (Fam. 14, 1.)

Obs. 2. *Namque* sometimes stands after the first word in a sentence, especially in Livy: see § 716.

6. Conclusive Conjunctions.

§ 582. Conclusive Conjunctions are those which are used in drawing a conclusion, and may be translated by *therefore*, *accordingly*, *wherefore*. (For a list of them see p. 94.) They have no effect upon the structure of a sentence.

§ 583. *Ergo*, *therefore*, stands usually, though not always, at the head of its sentence: as,

Ergo ararus (is) erit sed finite, *Accordingly such a person will be covetous, but to a limited degree.*—Cic.

Ergo Quintilium perpetuus sopor urget, *So then perpetual slumber weighs upon Quintilius!*—Hor.

Nemo ergo non miser? Prorsus nemo. *Is there no one who is not miserable? Absolutely none.*—Cic.

Obs. *Ergo* is also used after a Genitive in the sense of *causa*: see § 264.

§ 584. *Igitur*, *accordingly*, *then*, is less emphatic than *ergo*, being rather a particle to express transition, and does not regularly stand at the head of a sentence: as,

Est igitur id quo illa conficiuntur homines melius, *That power, then, by which those things are done, is more excellent than man.*—Cic.

Rationem igitur pontis hanc instituit, The following, then, was the plan of a bridge he resolved on.—Caes.

Obs. Sallust often begins with *igitur* (§ 693): as,

Igitur, ex divitiis luxuria atque avaritia . . . invasere, Accordingly, as the consequence of wealth, luxury and covetousness made their way in.—Sall.

§ 585. *Itaque*, and so, accordingly, is similar to *igitur*, but denotes a consequence in action rather than in reasoning: as,

Itaque rem suscipit, Accordingly he undertakes the business.—Caes.

It is sometimes used with *ergo*: as,

Itaque ergo, ut magistratu abire, Accordingly, therefore, when they had retired from their office.—Liv.

7. Final Conjunctions.

§ 586. Final Conjunctions are such as are used to denote the purpose or consequence of an action. They are treated in dealing with the Subjunctive Mood (§§ 449-463).

8. Temporal Conjunctions.

§ 587. Concerning *antequam*, *priusquam*, *postquam*, see § 501. Concerning *ut*, *ut primum*, *simul atque* (*ac*), *as soon as*, see § 401.

PART II. (SYNTAX.)—*Continued.*

BOOK II.—SYNTAXIS ORNATA.

§ 588. The preceding portion of the Syntax comprises the ordinary grammatical rules: the following is devoted chiefly to peculiarities of the Latin idiom.

CHAPTER LV.—SUBSTANTIVES.

1. Common Substantives.

§ 589. *Concrete for Abstract.*—Concrete Substantives are used in preference to abstract to denote,

- (1.) The period of a person's life during which something happens: as,

Me puëro, In my boyhood.—Cic.

Dēfendi rempublicam jūvénis, non dēsēram sēnex, I defended the commonwealth in my youth, I will not abandon it in my old age.—Cic.

Obs. Similarly sexāgēnarius, octōgēnarius, In one's sixtieth or eightieth year.

- (2.) The office held: as,

Consul idem fēci, I did the same in my consulate.—Cic.

Consūle Planco, In the consulate of Plancus.—Hor.

Sāturno rēge, In the reign of Saturn.—Virg.

§ 590. *Collective for Plural.*—Singular Substantives are not unfrequently used in a collective sense: as,

Ager bōnus pēcōri, arbōre infēcundus, Soil good for stock, unproductive in trees.—Sall.

Pulvīnus rōsā fartus, A cushion stuffed with roses.—Cic. (So Hor. *multa in rosa*, Od. 1, 5, 1.)

Armāto milite, With armed men.—Virg.

§ 591. *Plural for Abstract.*—In cases where the corresponding abstract Substantive is wanting, we often find the plural of the concrete Substantive used to supply the deficiency: as,

Quum videamus tanta officia morientis, *When we see such conscientiousness displayed by him on his deathbed.*—CIC. (Fin. 2, 31, 99.)

Studia literarum, numerorum, sonorum, *The study of literature, arithmetic, acoustics.*—CIC.

Lēpos quidam facētiaeque, *A certain elegance and facetiousness.*—CIC.

§ 592. *Abstract for Concrete.*—The use of abstract Substantives for concrete occurs chiefly in the following cases:

- (1.) Some Substantives denoting *age, rank in life or office*, are used as *Collectives*: as *jūventus*, a *body of young men*; *nōbilitas*, the *nobility*; *servitium* (also *servitia*, pl.), the *slaves*; *impēria* (pl.), *persons in office*; *lēvis*, *grāvis armātura*, *light or heavy-armed troops*: also less frequently, *advocatio*, the *body of advocati*; *sālūtatio*, of *morning callers*; *rēmīgium*, the *rowers*; *mīnistērīum*, the *servants*; *lātrōcīnīum*, *banditti*, etc.

Obs. Not *adolescētia* or *senectus* however.

- (2.) Substantives of *quality or character* are used for the persons to which they apply: as,

Neque ego per ignāviam incerta pro certis captārem, *Nor would I by the help of cowardly men grasp at uncertainties for certainties.*—SALL. (Cat. 20.)

Omnium flagitiōrum atque scelēdrum circa se cātervas hābēbat, *Catiline had about him gangs of profligate fellows and desperadoes.*—SALL. (Cat. 14.)

Parcendum est caritati hōmīnum, *We must spare those who are dear to us.*—CIC. (Or. 2, 58, 237.)

§ 593. *Generic Plural.*—Sometimes the plural of a Substantive may be rendered by “*kinds of*,” as,

Quattuor perturbationes sunt, tres constantiae, *There are four kinds of mental disturbance, three of tranquillity.*—CIC. (Tusc. 4, 6, 14.)

Somno et quīetibus cēteris, *By sleep and other kinds of repose.*—CIC. (Off. 1, 29, 103.)

§ 594. Similarly the plural is used to denote *repeated manifestations of a quality*: as,

Utilitātibus tuis possum cārere, *I can dispense with your services.*—CIC. (Fam. 16, 3, 11n.)

Ipsōrum Deōrum saepe praesentiae, *The repeated instances of appearance of gods themselves.*—CIC. (N. D. 2, 66, 166.)

So *crūdēlītatēs*, *acts of cruelty*; *perfidīae*, *of treachery*; *bōnītatēs*, *of goodness*, etc.

§ 595. *Verbal Substantives*.—A Verbal Substantive is often generalised by the addition of *rerum* (not needing to be translated): as,

Cognitio, ignōrātiō rerum, *Knowledge, ignorance*.—Cic.

Nīmīs cēlērī dēspērātiōne rerum, *By too precipitate despair*.—Liv.

Nātūra rerum, *Nature* (in widest sense).—Cic.

§ 596. Instead of a Verbal Substantive we not unfrequently find used a Perfect Participle Passive (see § 525): as,

Post Hasdrubalis exercitum dēlētū, *After the destruction of Hasdrubal's army*.—Liv.

Propter crēbrius de cōelo lapidātum, *On account of unusually frequent showers of stones*.—Liv. (29, 10.)

Obs. Rarely as the Subject of a sentence however:

Quum occisus dictator . . . pulcherrimum facinus vidēretur, *When the assassination of the dictator seemed a most glorious achievement*.—Tac. (Ann. 1, 5.)

§ 597. *Substantives governing the case of their Verbs*.—This takes place chiefly with Substantives derived from Verbs governing the Dative: as,

Iustitia est obtemperātiō legibus, *Justice is obedience to the laws*.—Cic. (See § 291, 6.)

Spe dōmum rēditiōnis sublātā, *The hope of returning home having been taken away*.—Caes.

Obs. The above construction is, however, exceptional. Still more rare is the Accusative after Substantives derived from a Transitive Verb: as,

Quid tibi hanc digito tactio est, *What right have you to touch this woman with your finger?*—Pl.

(For such a construction as *id dare operam*, see § 253.)

§ 598. *Substantives as Adjectives*.—Substantives derived from Verbs denoting the *agent* are sometimes used as Adjectives: as,

Contemptor animus, *A scornful temper*.—Sall.

Foederum ruptor dux et pōpulus, *The treaty-breaking general and his people*.—Liv.

Illa scēlērā et pēne dēlētrix lujus impērii sica, *That accursed dagger [and] well nigh fatal to this empire*.—Cic.

Plēbicola tribūnus plēbis, *A popularity-courting tribune*.—Cic.

Obs. Similarly we find such expressions as *exercitus tiro*, *a raw army* (Cic.), and the like.

§ 599. *Nēmo*.—Instead of *nullus* we frequently find *nēmo* in apposition with Substantives denoting *men*: as,

Nēmo vir bonus, nēmo adulescens, nēmo pictor, No good man, no youth, no painter.—(all in *Cic.*)

Obs. In the same manner we find *quisquam homo, quisquam civis, etc.*

§ 600. *Diminutives*.—These are used with great variety of signification: implying *affection, pity, contempt*, and kindred feelings (cf. § 703): as,

Hac tamen oblectabar speculā, However I pleased myself with this gleam of hope.—*Cic. Fam.*

Mercēdulā adducti, Induced by paltry gain.—*Cic.*

Graeculū ēsūriens, The poor half-starved Greek.—*Juv.*

Illa aureola orātiunculā, That golden little speech.—*Cic. (N. D. 3, 17, 43.)*

§ 601. *Ellipsis*.—The following Substantives are often left to be understood from the Gender of Adjectives: as,

Aqua, water; in the expressions *frigida, calida (calda), cold, hot water.*

Cāro, flesh, meat: as, *fērīna, the flesh of wild animals, game, venison*; *agnīna, lamb*; *būbūla, beef*; *porcīna, pork.*

Castra, -orum, camp, soldiers' quarters: as, *hiberna, winter quarters*; *aestiva, summer quarters*; *stātiva, fixed quarters.*

Febris, a fever: as, *tertiana, quartana, a tertian, quartan fever*; *frigida quartana, a quartan ague.*

Pecūniae, moneys; in the phrase *reptundae, moneys to be reclaimed*; *extortion.*

Pars, part; esp. in *pl.*: as, *primas, secundas agere, to play the first or second part.*

Tempus, time: especially in the phrases, *ex quo, from what time*; *ex illo, from that time, &c.*

§ 602. *Hendiadys* (cf. § 724, 2).—Sometimes two Substantives are used to convey a single notion (*ἐν δὲ δύοῖν*): as,

Pateris libavit et auro, He poured out libations from bowls of (Lit. and) gold.—*Virg.*

Huc necedit summus timor, quem mihi natura pudorquo meus attri- buit, To this is added an extreme timidity, which my natural bashfulness (Lit. nature and bashfulness) occasions me.—*Cic.*

§ 603. *Plural equivalent to Singular*.—The following Plurals among others are used (especially in poetry) without considerable difference from Singulars:

pectora,	the breast.	regna,	realms, a kingdom.
cervices,	the (back of the) neck.	teeta,	abode.
colla,	the neck.	otia,	repose.
ora (os),	the face.	silentia,	silence.
terga,	the back.	pondera,	weight.

Obs. This usage is especially frequent in the case of words whose singular would be less manageable in verse.

§ 604. *Metonymy*.—Sometimes a Substantivo is by a figure of speech used to denote something with which it is closely connected: as,

ālea,	<i>a gambling-table,</i>	is used for	<i>gambling.</i>
Bacchus,	<i>god of wine,</i>	„	<i>wine.</i>
Ceres,	<i>goddess of corn,</i>	„	<i>corn.</i>
fascēs,	<i>the fascēs,</i>	„	<i>the consulate.</i>
mānus,	<i>the hand,</i>	„	<i>violence; ownership.</i>
Mars,	<i>god of war,</i>	„	<i>war, strife.</i>
Minerva,	<i>goddess of art,</i>	„	<i>art, genius.</i>
nōmen,	<i>name,</i>	„	<i>nation; debt.</i>
sāgum,	<i>a war-cloak,</i>	„	<i>a state of war.</i>
sēcūres,	<i>axes,</i>	„	<i>power of life and death.</i>
sica,	<i>a dagger,</i>	„	<i>assassination.</i>
stilus	<i>a writing-style,</i>	„	<i>writing; style.</i>
stōla,	<i>a matron's gown,</i>	„	<i>a matron.</i>
tōga,	<i>the gown of peace,</i>	„	<i>the state and arts of peace.</i>
venter,	<i>the belly,</i>	„	<i>gluttony.</i>
Vēnus,	<i>goddess of love</i>	}	<i>love, beauty.</i>
	<i>and beauty,</i>		
Vulcānus,	<i>god of fire,</i>	„	<i>fire.</i>

§ 605. *Synecdōche*.—Sometimes a characteristic part of a thing is put for the whole. The following Substantives among others are so used:

eārina,	<i>a keel,</i>	is used for	<i>a ship.</i>
eāput,	<i>a head,</i>	„	<i>an individual.</i>
pecten,	<i>a quill or stick</i>	}	<i>the lyre.</i>
	<i>for a lyre,</i>		
puppis,	<i>a stern,</i>	„	<i>a ship.</i>
tectum,	<i>a roof,</i>	„	<i>a house.</i>

2. Proper Names.

§ 606. *Names of tribes for countries*.—The names of tribes and nations, especially those less known, are often used for the country in which they live: as,

Caesar ex Mēnāpiis in Trēvīros vēnit, *Caesar came out of the country of the Menapii into that of the Treviri.*—Caes.

Lēgātus in Persas prōfectus est, *He set out as ambassador into Persia.*—Nep.

Obs. In the case of obscure tribes there often exists no separate name for the country.

§ 607. The singular of a national name, as Rōmānus, Poenus, Graecus, and the like, is often used where the sense requires the plural (comp. § 590): as,

Romanus consēdēre pugnam contra elūdēre Poenus, *The Romans were for coming to close quarters; the Carthaginians on the other hand were content to baffle them.*—Liv.

Obs. This idiom is common in Livy, especially in his more animated passages.

§ 608. Names of nations are sometimes used adjectively by the poets : as,

Galla (= Gallica) *crūdēlitas*, *Gallic cruelty*.—Mart.

Syra (= Syria, *Syriāca*) *merx*, *Syrian wares*.—Hor.

Obs. Similarly *Rōmūlus*, and some other proper names, are used as Adjectives : as,

Romula (= *Romulea*) *tellus*, *The land of Romulus*.—Virg.

§ 609. *Patronymics*.—In the poets Masculine and Feminine *Patronymics* (see § 184) are used instead of *filius* and *filia* : as,

Priāmides Hēlēnus, *Helenus son of Priam*.—Ov.

Atlantis Maia, *Maia daughter of Atlas*.—Ov.

Obs. 1. But the proper name and the patronymic are not used together as above, except where needful for the sake of distinction.

Obs. 2. In the plural number the poets often use a characteristic patronymic as a national name : as,

Aeneīdae, *The house of Aeneas*, i.e. *the Romans*.—Lucr.

Rōmūlīdae, *The sons of Romulus* (in same sense).—Virg.

CHAPTER LVI.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 610. The principal uses of Adjectives have been already explained (Chap. XLIII.). It only remains to notice a few peculiarities.

§ 611. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives* (comp. §§ 340-342).—Under this head two cases remain to be noticed :

- (1.) A Substantive and Adjective are often equivalent to a Substantive and a Genitive Case (§ 263) : as,

Servilis tāmultus (= *tumultus servorum*), *The servile tumult or war*.—Caes.

Pecūniā alīenae (= *aliorum*), *The money of others*.—Cic.

Decemvirāle (= *decemvirorum*) *ōdium*, *The hatred entertained for the Decemviri* (§ 268).—Liv.

Xenōphontēs (= *Xenophontis*) *Hercules*, *The Hercules of Xenophon*.—Cic.

- (2.) An Adjective is used in agreement with a Substantive, where the English idiom would employ the corresponding abstract Substantive derived from the Adjective : as,

Definire amicitiam p̄ribus officiis et v̄luntātibus, *To define friendship to consist in reciprocity of good offices and good-will*.—Cic.

Ōpes factionis, vestra pātientia, nullum jus, The strength of the oligarchy; your tameness of spirit; the absence of rights Lit. the no right).—Sall.

Obs. The converse is perhaps as frequent: as,

In hac varietate studiorum, In these various pursuits (= in his variis studiis).—Cic.

§ 612. **Nullus.**—The Adjective *nullus* in colloquial language is sometimes used adverbially (= non): as,

Philotimus non modo nullus venit, sed, etc., Philotimus not only does not come, but, &c.—Cic. (Att. 11, 24.)

Si non querit, nullus dixeris, If he does not ask, don't you say.—Ter. (Hee. 1, 2, 4.)

Obs. 1. In such cases *nullus* is more emphatic than *non*.

Obs. 2. Very often we may trace the proper force of *nullus* with verbs: as,
Nōlle existimāre, me quum a vōbis discessēro, nusquam aut nullum fore,
Do not suppose that when I have left you I shall not exist any where or
AT ALL (= be a person at all).—Cic. (Cat. de Sen. 22, 79.)

Hæc bona in libulas publicas nulla rōdiērunt, No such goods have been entered in the public books AT ALL.—Cic. (Rosc. Am. 44, 128.)

§ 613. **Sexcenti.**—This numeral is used to denote an indefinitely large number: as,

Sexcenta millia mundōrum, Hundreds of thousands of worlds.—Cic.

Sexcentae epistolæ, An immense number of letters.—Cic.

CHAPTER LVII.—PRONOUNS.

§ 614. *Strengthening of Pronouns.*—It has been already observed (§ 357) that the Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of sentences, unless for the sake of emphasis. They may be rendered still more emphatic by the following means:

(1.) By the addition of *ipse*; with which however the words *ego*, *tu*, etc., are not usually expressed (see § 377).

(2.) By the suffixes *met*, *te* (see § 75, *Obs.* 1): as *egōmet*, *tēmet*, *nosmet*, etc. The suffix *met* may be added to all cases of the pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, excepting the Gen. Pl. of *ego*, *tu*, and the Nom. Sing. of *tu*: *-te* is used only with *tu* (*tūte*).

Obs. The suffixes are often combined with *ipse*: hence, *nosmētipso*, *nobismetipsis*, etc.

(3.) By the addition of the enclitic *ādeo*: as,

Tuque ādeo, And thou especially.—VIRG. (G. 1, 24).
(Comp. Catull. 64, 28.)

Similarly with other Pronouns (comp. § 653): as,

Id ādeo, si placet, considerāte, That very point, if you please, consider.—CIC. (Cacc. 30, 87.)

§ 615. Sometimes a Pronoun (especially *ille*) is redundant in the second member of a double sentence, when it has been expressed or implied in the former. It then adds vivacity to the expression: as,

Nunc dextra ingēmians ictus, nunc ille sinistra, Now with his right hand redoubling his blows; now [he does it] with his left.—VIRG. (Æ. 5, 457.)

Nec dulces amōres

Sperne puer, neque tu chorēas, Nor scorn in youth sweet loves, nor scorn [thou] the dance.—HOR. (Od. 1, 9, 16.)

Obs. This idiom appears to be imitated from the Greek. Compare

**ἢ τινὰς ἐκ ἡύλου ἄξει ἀμύντορας . . .*

**ἢ ὃ γε καὶ Σπάρτηθεν.*—HOM. (Od. 2, 327.)

§ 616. *Ille* is also sometimes used idiomatically with an appositive Adjective (§ 216), to which it gives emphasis: as,

Philōsophi quīdam, minime mali illi quīdem, sed non satis acūti, Certain philosophers [those] far from bad men indeed, but not very acute.—CIC. (Off. 3, 9, 39.)

Similarly with an Adverb: as,

Enucleāte ille quīdem et pōlite, sed . . ., Clearly it is true [he speaks], and with polish, but, &c.—CIC. (Br. 30, 115.)

Obs. When so used, *ille* is attended by *quīdem*.

§ 617. *Ipsē*.—The ordinary rule for the case of *ipse* has been already given (§ 377). The following remarks are added by Zumpt (§ 696):

(1.) Cicero is partial to construing *ipso* as the subject even when the emphasis belongs to the object: as,

Ut non mōdo pōpulo Rōmāno sed etiam sibi ipse condemnātus viderētur, So that he seemed not only to the Roman people a condemned man, but even [himself] to himself.—CIC. (Verr. 1, 6, 17.)

(Compare the foll.: *non ita abundo ingēnio ut te consōler, quum ipse me non possim, id. Fam. 4, 8: quid est negōtīi continēre eos quibus praeis, si te ipse contineas, id. Q. Fr. 1, 1, 2.*)

(2.) When joined to a possessive pronoun in a reflective clause *ipso* usually takes the case of the subject: as, *meam ipso legem negligo, tuam ipse legem negligis*, not *meam ipsius, tuam ipsius*, etc. The genitive is necessary only where *ipso* refers to another than the subject: as, *tuā ipsius causā [ego] hoc feci*, etc. But exceptions to this rule occur both in Cic. and elsewhere.

§ 618. *Et ipso* is used when a new subject is added to a predicate already expressed or implied: as,

Cornelio minus copiarum datum, quia L. Manlius et ipse . . . in Galliam mittēbatur, *To Cornelius was allotted a smaller force, because L. Manlius was also being sent into Gaul.*—Liv. 21, 17. (It having been already mentioned that Cornelius was going into Gaul.)

Is et ipse Alpinus amnis . . . difficillimus transitu est, *This (the Durance) being also an Alpine stream, is very difficult to cross.*—Liv. 21, 31. (Two Alpine streams having been before mentioned.)

§ 619. The neuter of *is* (*et id, idque*) is used without reference to any particular substantive (comp. § 374), when an additional particular is stated (= “and that”) as,

Doctum hominem cognovi, et studiis optimis deditum, idque a puero, *I have known him to be a man of letters and devoted to the best pursuits, and that from a boy.*—Cic. (Fam. 13, 16.)

(Similarly in Greek *καὶ ταῦτα*.)

§ 620. *Idem*.—The ordinary correlative of *idem* is *qui* (see § 379). Instead of the Relative we also find *atque* (*ac*), *et*; more rarely *ut, cum*; and (in poetry only) the Dative: as,

Animus (est) erga te idem ac fuit, *Her feelings towards you are the same as they were.*—Ter.

Si quaeratur idemne sit pertinacia et perseverantia, *If the question be asked whether obstinacy is the same thing as perseverance.*—Cic.

Utrique idem faciunt, ut si laevam partem negligērent, dexteram tuērentur, *Both act as if they were to neglect the left side and defend the right.*—Cic.

Eodem mecum patre genitus, *Born of the same father with me.*—Tac.

Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti, *He who saves a man's life against his will does the same as one who should murder him.*—Hor. (Comp. Gr. *ταῦτὰ ἐμοὶ βούλει*.)

§ 621. *Qui, quis, aliquis*, etc.—The following use of *qui* in parenthetical clauses, and stating the ground of something requires to be noted:

Si mihi permisisses rem, qui meus amor in te est, confēcissem, *If you had left the matter in my hands, such is my affection for you (= pro meo in te amore), I would have settled it.*—Cic.

Pater tuus si vivēret, quā sēvēritatē fuit, tu pōtēto non vivēres, If your father were living, such was his sternness, you certainly would not be living.—Cic.

(Qua severitate, Abl. of Quality : see § 318.)

§ 622. *Quis* is sometimes used in a tone of impatience or indignation (Gr. *ποῖός* cf. Aristoph. Eq. 162) : as,

Quem tu mihi Staseam, quem Peripatēticum narras? Don't talk to me of your Staseas, your Peripatetics!—Cic. (Or. 1, 23).

§ 623. The interrogative *quid* is used in animated language to pass from one point to another, where it may be rendered by “and then :” as,

Quid lēges vētēres mōresque mājōrum? quid auspīcia? etc., And then, the laws and customs of our ancestors; and then the auspices, etc.—Cic. (Or. 1, 10).

Quid in lēviōribus studiis? And then in less serious pursuits, etc.—Cic. (Cat. Maj. 14, 50.)

Obs. The expression is elliptical, *dicam* or some other word being understood.

§ 624. The neuter *quid* is often used interrogatively where persons are concerned : as,

Quid nobis duobus lābōriōsius dici aut fingi pōtēst? What can be mentioned or conceived more overwhelmed with trouble than we two?—Cic. (Mil. 2, 5.)

Obs. Similarly *nihil* : cf. Cic. Fam. 4, 4, *victor quo nihil erat mōdēratius* : and with a partitive genitive, *quantum* (e.g. *hōmīnum*, Ter. Ph. 5, 6, 13) ; *quiquid* (e.g. *deōrum*, Hor. Epod. 5, *inīl*.)

§ 625. *Quis*.—It has been already stated that *quis* as an Indefinite Pronoun, is chiefly found after *si*, *ne*, *num*, or in composition (§ 383). But it is sometimes used alone as the least emphatic *any* (= Gr. *τίς*), when it is generally an enclitic : as,

Simplīciōr quis est? Is one simpler than ordinary?—Hor. (S. 1, 3, 63.)

Morbus aut ēgestas aut quid ejusmōdi, Disease or privation or anything of that kind (= *τοῦτόν τι*).—Cic.

§ 626. *Nescio quis*, *I know not who*, i. e. *some one or other*, is treated as if it were a compound of *quis*, the *nescio* having no effect upon the syntax : as,

Pacōnii nescio cūjus quērēlis, By the complaints of one Paconius, whoever he may be.—Cic.

Prōpe me hīc nescio quis loquitur, Some one or other is speaking here close to me.—Pl.

Obs. Strictly *nescio quis* forms a sentence by itself, its verb being supplied from the other part of the sentence.

§ 627. *Si quis*, if any, is sometimes nearly equivalent to *quicumque*, *whosoever*, *whatsoever* (like Gr. *εἴ τις* = *ὅστις*): as,

Nūla fere Alpium cæcūmina sunt, et si quid est pābali, obruunt nives, The summits of the Alps are mostly bare, and if there is any pasture (= what little pasture there is) is buried beneath the snows.—Liv.

Arāneolæ quāsi rēte contexunt, ut si quid inhaeserit conficiant, Spiders spin a kind of net that they may destroy whatever gets stuck fast in it.—Cic.

Illī etiam, si quos fūlimus, apparent, Those also whomsoever we have put to rout appear again.—Virg.

Especially when a modest statement is to be made: as,

Ea, si quam habemus, facultas, Whatever ability—if any—I possess.—Cic.

§ 628. *Quōtus*, what number? is an ordinal, corresponding to *primus*, *secundus*, etc. It is used idiomatically: as,

Tu quōtus esse vēlis rescribe, Write back what number you mean to make.—Hor. (Ep. 1, 5, 30.)

Quōtus erit iste dēnārius, qui non sit fērendus, What shall be the precise number of denarii that is not to be allowed?—Cic. Verr. 2, 3, 94.

Especially *quōtusquisque* (or as two words), when it is implied that the number is small: as,

Quōtus enim quisque formōsus est, For what a small proportion of men are handsome!—Cic. N. D. 1, 28, 79.

§ 629. *Alius*.—The use of *alius* . . . *alius* has already been noted (§ 390). The following additional examples may be useful:

Dolus mālus est, cum aliud āgitur, aliud simulatur, It is frowl, when one thing is actually done, and another pretended.—Cic.

Aliis mīserandus, aliis irridendus esse videtur, To some he seems to deserve pity, to others ridicule.—Cic.

Alius is often repeated in a different case (= one . . . another): as,

Alius alio mōre viventes, Living one in one way, another in another.—Sall.

Alias ex aliis fingendo mōras, Inventing one excuse for delay after another.—Liv.

Alii super alios, One on the top of the other.—Liv.

Obs. So with an adverb in the second place, as *alius alio*, *alius aliter*, one in one way, another in another, etc.

§ 630. *Alius* is followed by *atque* (ac). et. praeter. nisi. quam: as,

Tullia longe aliā in fortunā est atque ejus pietas et dignitas postulat, Tullia is in a much worse position than her affection and rank entitle her to.—Cic.

Lux longe alia est solis et lychnorum, The light of the sun is very different from that of lamps.—Cic.

Nihil aliud est discere nisi recordari, Learning is nothing else than remembering.—Cic.

Rogavit num quid aliud ferret praeter arcam, He asked whether he was carrying anything else besides the box.—Cato ap. Cic. (A rare construction.)

Lysander nihil aliud molitus quam ut omnes civitates in sua teneret potestate, Lysander attempted nothing short of holding all the states under his own power.—Nep.

Obs. The Ablative (of comparison, § 319) after *alius* is altogether exceptional :
Necesse patet alium sapientem beneque beatum, And deem none happy other than the wise and good.—Hor. (Ep. 1, 16, 20.)

CHAPTER LVIII.—VERBS.

§ 631. The principal uses of the Moods and Tenses have been already explained (§§ 392, sqq.). The following observations are of a miscellaneous character

§ 632. *Impersonal use of the Passive.*—This construction (see § 234, *Obs.* 2) is very frequent in the best writers, and is often preferred even where the same sense might be expressed by the Active Voice : especially—(1) When the Subject, being obvious, is readily supplied ; (2) When it is indefinite : as,

(1.) *De Tarentinis magna contentione in senatu actum, The case of the Tarentines was warmly debated in the senate.—Liv.*

Supplémentum scriberent consules permissum, The consuls were empowered [by the Senate] to fill up vacancies by enlistment.—id.

Tamalus in quo pugnatum erat, The rising ground where the battle had taken place.—id.

(2.) *Tamultuatum in castris fuit, There had been a disturbance made [by some persons] in the camp.—id.*

Ipse appropinquare legatus allatum est, News was brought that the envoy himself was at hand.—id.

De quo patris ad me missum esse, sit missum necne nescio, As to the point you think word has been sent me about [name of the sender purposely kept back], whether it has been sent or no, I know not.—Cic. Att. 12, 28. (See Nägelsbach, p. 313.)

Obs. In such cases, for the most part, attention is called rather to the action than the agents.

§ 633. *Passive as Middle or Reflective* (see also § 252).—Passive Verbs have not unfrequently a reflective sense,

like the Greek Middle Voice : as, *mōvēri*, to move (oneself); *verti*, to turn (oneself), *revolve*; *prēmi*, to depress (oneself), *sink*; etc. as,

Quod semper mōvētur aeternum est, That which moves for ever is eternal.—Cic.

Vertitur intēra coelum, Meantime the heavens revolve.—Virg.

Mundus . . . prēmītur Līb̄yae dērexis ad Austros, The world sinks and slopes downwards towards the south of Africa.—id. (G. 1. 211.)

Obs. Such was probably the origin of the Deponent Verbs (comp. Greek Deponents in -ομαι) : as, *ūtor*, I serve or help myself, hence use; *nitor*, I support myself (upon), lean (upon), *fungor*, I quit myself; etc.

§ 634. *Perfect used ἀορίστως*.—The Perfect Indicative is often used, especially in poetry, of that which regularly or repeatedly takes place : as,

Illius immensae rūpērunt horrea messes, That man's enormous crops burst his barns.—Virg. (G. 1. 49.)

Saepe etiam stēriles incendēre prōfuit agros, Often too it does good to fire the barren fields.—ib. 84.)

Hinc apīcem Fortūna sustūlit, illie pōsnisse gaudet, From one head Fortune removes the diadem, on another she is pleased to rest it.—Hor. (Od. 1. 34. fin.)

Obs. In the last example, the Perfect Infinitive is used in the same way. The term *Aoristic* is applied to this construction, because the Aorist is regularly so used in Greek.

§ 635. *Ellipsis of the Verb*.—This of course occurs only in the case of verbs which may be without difficulty supplied :

(1.) The Copula (§ 213, *Obs.* 1) is very often omitted in short aphoristic sentences : as,

Omnia praeclāra rāra, All fine things [are] rare.—Cic.

Quot hōmīnes, tot sententiae, Many men, many minds.—Ter.

Also in descriptions : as,

Anīmus audax, subdōlus, vārius; *cujuslibet rēi simūlātor ac dissimūlātor*; etc., His spirit [was] daring, crafty, versatile; capable of assuming any mask or any disguise.—Sall.

(Sallust is partial to this kind of brevity : § 689.)

Obs. This ellipsis chiefly occurs where the Verb would be in the Present Tense (including the *Praesens Historicum*: § 393).

Esse is more frequently omitted than expressed in the Future Infinitive Active : as,

L. Cineio n̄s xxcd constitui me cūrātūrum Idibus Febr., I have settled to pay into the hands of L. Cineius 20,600 sesterces on the 13th of February.—Cic.

- (2.) *Inquam, inquit*, or some such verb is frequently omitted when the words spoken follow. Especially in such phrases as

Tum Cotta, tum Crassus, Then [said] Cotta, Crassus, etc.—Cic. de Or. (passim).

Quid multa, Why [should I say] many words?—id.

Obs. 1. But after *tum* the verb is very often presently added: as,
Tum ridens, Scaevola, non luctabor, inquit, tecum Crasse amplius, Thereupon with a smile, says Scaevola, I shall not dispute the point with you any further, Crassus.—id.

Obs. 2. To this head belongs the common superscription of letters, *sālūtē* (*sc. dicit*), *Cic. Ep. (passim).*

- (3.) In dedications, *dicat*, or some such word: as,

Aenēas haec de Dāniīs victōribus arma, Aeneas this trophy [dedicates], from the victorious Greeks.—Virg.

Obs. So in titles of books: as,

Cicēronis de Officiis ad filiū suū liber [scriptus], A book of Cicero concerning moral duties, addressed to his son.

- (4.) *Dent, duint*, in prayers: as,

Di mēliora, The gods [grant] a better lot (like our God forbid!—Cic.

- (5.) In colloquial language, any verb that may be readily supplied: as,

Inde cōgito in Arpinū (sc. ire), After that I purpose [going] to Arpinum.—Cic.

A me Caesar pecūniā (sc. postulat), Caesar [expects] money from me!—id. (Phil. 2, 29, 72.)

No multa [sc. dicam]: clamōres [sc. secūti sunt], Not to make a long story of it, acclamations [followed].—id. (Att. 1, 16.)

. . . . Verbum cāve [sc. dicas] de nuptiis,

Ne ad morbum hoc etiam [sc. accēdat], Take care not [to say] a word about the wedding, lest in addition to her illness [there be added] this further shock.—TER. (And. 1, 5, 65.)

- (6.) When it may be supplied from another Verb in the same sentence: as,

Ventrem nihil aliud [facere] quam datis vōluptātibus frui, The belly they said [did] nothing else than enjoy the pleasures afforded it.—Liv. (2, 32.)

§ 636. Repetition of Verb.—This takes place—

- (1.) In answering a question (where in English “Yes” or “No” would be used): as,

Nempe nōus ad beātō vivendū sātis posse virtutē?—Prosus nōgo, You deny then that virtue is of sufficient avail for a happy life?—Yes, I do, altogether.—Cic. (Tusc. 3, 5, 12.)

Dame aut manēre ānimos post mortem, aut morte ipsā intērire?—Do vēro, Do you grant that the soul either survives death, or perishes at the moment of death?—Yes I do.—1, 11, 25.)

Obs. But not always: as,

An tu hæc non crēdis?—Minime vēro, Don't you believe in those things?—No, indeed!—ib. 1, 5, 10.

- (2.) Instead of the brief expression *idque, et id*, “and that” (§ 619), the verb of the preceding clause is often repeated: as,

Pompēius summus in republica hōnōres assēcūtus est, et assecutus est (= idque) māturius quam quisquam ante eum, Pompey attained to the highest honours in the state, and that at an earlier period than any one before him.—Cic.

- (3.) When a second action is performed on the same object, the preceding verb is often repeated as a participle: as,

Quum urbem vi cēpissent, captamque dirīpuissent, Having taken the city by storm, and then pillaged it, &c.—Liv. (22, 20.)

Eam rem consūles ad Patres dēfērunt; sed dēlātam consūlere ordine non licuit, The consuls laid the matter before the senate; but they were not allowed to consider it [the matter as laid before them] in a regular way.—id. (2, 28.)

§ 637. *Substantival Use of Participles.*—What has been said (§ 339) respecting the use of Adjectives Substantively, applies generally to Participles. The following remarks are of a more special nature.

§ 638. *Imperfect Participle.*—The substantival use of this Participle is most frequent in the Plural. It is less frequent in the oblique cases of the Singular, and in the Nom. Sing. does not occur at all: as,

Addidit et aliam fidentis spēciem, He added an additional token of confidence [Lit. of one feeling confidence].—Liv. (27, 2.)

Erranti monstrāre viam, To point out the way to one who has strayed.—Enn. ap. Cic.

[Quisque] acutius atque acrius vitia in dicente quam recta videt, Everybody sees faults in a speaker more keenly and critically than excellencies.—Cic. (Or. 1, 25, 116.)

Soli ratione ūtentes jure ac lēge vivunt, Only those who make use of reason live according to right and law.—id. (N. D. 2, 62, 154.)

Hoc gēnus dēlibērantium pellātur e mēdio, Let this class of questioners be banished from our midst.—id. (Off. 3, 8, 37.)

Quid est tam commūne quam . . . mārē fluctuantibus, litus ējectis, What is so common as to those tossed on the waves, the sea; to those shipwrecked, the shore?—id. (Ros. A. 26, 72.)

Multae bestiae insectantes odoris intolerabili foeditate depellunt, Many creatures drive away their pursuers by the intolerable disgustingness of their smell.—CIC. (N. D. 2, 50, 127.)

Obs. 1. Instead of the Nom. Sing., and often of the Nom. Plur. of the Participle, we find either the verbal substantive in -tor, or a Relative clause.

Obs. 2. Sometimes, especially in the Gen. Plur., the Imperfect Participle is so used as to be equivalent to an abstract Substantive: as,

Clamores parentium, Cries of dismay (lit. of persons dismayed).—LIV. (12, 3.)

Diversitas traditionum, Disagreement of tradition (lit. of those handing down, viz., the accounts).—Suet. (Cal. 3.)

Obs. 3. Such words as *animans, an animal*; *amans, a lover*, being true Substantives, stand on a different footing from the above.

§ 639. *Future Participle.*—The substantival use of this participle is less frequent, and belongs chiefly to later writers: as,

Illud quod tantum perituri vident, An object which only the doomed to death behold.—TAC. (G. 40.)

Miro auditurum dicturi curam delectat, Care on the part of one about to speak greatly pleases him who is to hear.—QUINT. (11, 9, 157.)

Tam varie se gessit, ut nec laudaturum magna, nec vituperaturum melioris materia deficiat, He conducted himself in such different ways that while to the eulogist ample material, to the censor what is not inconsiderable is afforded.—VELL. (2, 101.)

§ 640. *Perfect Participle Passive.*—This participle is used substantively, both in the Masculine of persons, and in the Neuter of things or acts.

§ 641. The Masculine is so used chiefly in the Plural: as,

Numerum iure caesarum obtinere, To be put in the category of the justly slain.—CIC. (Off. 2, 12, 43.)

Ut de vi et maiestate damnati ad populum provdeant, That those condemned for violence and treason should appeal to the people.—ID. Phil. 1, 9, 21 (Nag. p. 89.)

§ 642. The Neuter is so used—

(1.) To denote a thing done: most frequently in the Plural, but also in the Singular: as,

Facta illustra et gloriosa, Deeds distinguished and glorious.—CIC. (Flu. 1, 11, 37.)

Ceterorum nequo dictum obscurum potest esse, . . . nequo timore dicto concedi, As for the rest, neither can what they say remain in the dark, nor what they say indiscreetly be condoned.—ID. (Rose. A. 1, 3.)

Obs. Sometimes the use of such words fluctuates between that of Substantives and that of Participles; as in the second of the above examples. So we find *recte facta* (Cic. Leg. 2, 4, 2), as well as *facta illustra, fortia*, etc. In the following example the two usages seem to be combined:

Movemur saepe aliquo acuto confuso, We are often affected by some acute argument.—CIC. Tusc. (1, 32, 78.)

- (2.) In the Neut. Sing. (but not in the Nom. Case), with the force of abstract Substantives: v. § 528. Especially in such phrases as *ex compōsito*, *by agreement*; *ex empto*, *ex vendito*, *by purchase*, *by sale*, etc.

§ 643. *Zeugma*.—Sometimes a Verb which is strictly appropriate only as applied to one Substantive, is by a modification of its meaning applied to two: as,

Rōmānis Germānisque Idem conducere [patābam], et pacem quam bellum probābam, I deemed the interests of Romans and Germans to be the same, and approved of peace rather than war.—TAC. (Ann. 1, 58.)

(Here *probābam* has to be taken in the modified sense of *putābam* in the first member of the sentence.)

Nos Maurici Rusticique visus, nos innocenti sanguine Sēncio perfudit, Us the sight of Mauricius and Rusticius [horrified], us Senecio drenched with guileless blood.—TAC. (Agr. 45.)

Tacitus is fond of this construction.

Obs. *Zeugma* may also occur with other parts of speech besides Verbs: as,

Vir farundus et pacis artibus [hābilis, aptus], belli Inexpertus, An eloquent man and fitted for the arts of peace, inexperienced in war.—TAC. (Hist. 1, 8).

CHAPTER LIX.—ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

§ 644. *Adverbs*.—*Ita*, besides its ordinary use (§ 551) has the following peculiar constructions:

- (1.) After *non*, *haud*, it is equivalent to *admodum*, *very*: as,

Sunt ea (simulāera) p̄rampla et p̄aeclāra, sed non ita antiq̄ua, Those statues are very magnificent and admirable, but of no very great antiquity.—CIC.

Haud ita multum (praedae) militi dātum, No very large proportion of the spoil was given to the soldiers.—LIV.

Nec ita multo post, And not very long after.—CIC.

Obs. In such cases there is an ellipsis: *not so much so as might have been expected*, &c.

- (2.) In adjurations: as,

Ita me dii āment, hōnestus est, So may heaven love me, he is a fine gentleman!—TER. (Eun. 3, 2, 21.)

Obs. In the same way *sic* is used: see HOR. Od. 1, 3, 1.

§ 645. *Satis* not unfrequently = “considerably,” “fairly,” “well:” as,

Satis cum p̄riculo, *With considerable risk.*—TER. (AND. 1, 1, 104.)

Planities erat magna et in ea t̄mulus satis grandis. *There was an extensive plain, and in it a mound of considerable size.*—CAES. (B. G. 1, 43.)

Homo nec inflectus et satis literatus, *A person not without elegance and a fair scholar.*—CIC. (OFF. 3, 14, 58.)

§ 646. *Minus*, *p̄rum*, *m̄le*.—These three Adverbs are often used with a negative force, when they are equivalent to a softened *non*: as,

Terentia minus belle habuit, *Terentia has not been very well.*—CIC. (FAM. 9, 9.)

L. Cotta . . . minus in S̄n̄atum venit, *L. Cotta hardly comes into the Senate at all.*—(ib. 12, 2.)

P̄rum succ̄dit quod ago, *My business is not getting on much.*—TER. (AND. 4, 1, 56.)

P̄rum cl̄aris lucem dare c̄get, *He will make him throw light on what is not clear.*—HOR. (A. P. 418.)

Ego illum m̄le s̄n̄um semper pat̄avi, *I have always thought him of unsound mind.*—CIC. (ATT. 9, 15.)

M̄le gr̄atus, *Ungrateful.*—OV. (HER. 7, 27.)

Obs. *Minus* especially = *non*, after *quo* [quominus], *sin.* *P̄rum* is never a decided negative; but always means *less than might be expected*.

§ 647. *Nullus* in colloquial language = *non*: see § 612.

§ 648. *Prepositions* (see § 553, sqq.).—When a Preposition occurs in composition with a Verb, it is often repeated after the Verb: as,

Exire ex n̄avi, *To disembark from a ship.*—NEP.

Exire ex urbe, *To depart from the city.*—CIC.

Sometimes a different Preposition is used: as, *exire de n̄avi*, *a patria* (CIC.).

§ 649. When in English two Prepositions are joined with the same Substantive, in Latin the Substantive is usually repeated: as,

Hæc quum contra legem proque l̄ge dicta essent, *When these speeches had been made for and against the law.*—LIV. (34, 8.)

D̄rius d̄ced̄lit; r̄lictis filiis et in regno et ante regnum susceptis, *Darius died leaving behind him children born both during and before his being king.*—JUST. (2, 10.)

Obs. But in the case of Prepositions which may also serve as Adverbs, the construction may be as in English: as,

Intra extr̄que m̄nitione, *Within and without the fortifications.*—CAES. (B. C. 3, 72.)

Sup̄ra subterque terram, *Above and below ground.*—LIV. (39, 4.)

Or the Substantive may be expressed with one Preposition and understood with the other: as,

Sûper theâtrum circûque, Above and round about the theatre.—Liv. (24, 39.)

Illicios intra mûros et extra, Within the Trojan walls and without them.—Hor. (Ep. 1, 2, 16.)

§ 650. *Inter* is sometimes repeated: as,

Inter Péliden et inter Achillem, Between the son of Peleus and Achilles.—Hor. (Ep. 1, 2, 12.)

Nihil inter te atque inter quadrupêdem interesse (pâtas), You think there is no difference between you and a brute.—Cic. Par. 1, 14.

Certatum inter Ap. Claudium maxime, et inter P. Decium Murem, The contest was very warm between Ap. Claudius and P. Decius Mus.—Liv. (10, 7.)

Obs. Zumpt remarks that this construction is especially frequent with *interesse*.

§ 651. When the *same* Preposition belongs in English to two Substantives, the corresponding Preposition in Latin is repeated with the latter Substantive only when it denotes something quite distinct from the former: as,

Lêgâti ab Aeduis et ab Trêviris veniebant, Embassies arrived [separately] from the Aedui and from the Treviri.—CAES. (B. G. 1, 57.)

Cur de suâ virtute aut de ipsius diligentia dêsperarent, Why did they despair either of their own valour, or of his conduct?—(ib. 40.)

Otherwise it is not repeated: as,

In Caesare pöpulôque Rômâno, In Caesar and the Roman people.—(ib. 32.)

Apud Ariövistum et Sêquânos, In the hands of Ariovistus and the Sequani.—(ib. 33.)

CHAPTER LX.—CONJUNCTIONS AND OTHER WORDS AS PARTICLES.

§ 652. The Conjunctions, as such, being treated above (§§ 550, sqq.), the following observations will be devoted to their use, and that of other short words as particles.

Obs. The term *particle* (see § 11) is especially applied to uninflected words without any syntactical power, but serving to call attention to some particular part of a sentence.

§ 653. *Adéo*—This particle is attached to single words for the sake of emphasis. In this way it is used after

Pronouns (§ 614) and other words, including the Conjunction *atque* : as,

Multum adeo [is] . . . *arva jūvat*, *Much does such an one improve the soil.*—Virg.

Hoc significant, atque adeo aperte ostendunt, *This they hint and indeed openly show.*—Cic.

§ 654. *Ēnim*, though often used elliptically, for the most part retains its logical sense of *for* (see § 581). It is however sometimes merely a particle of emphasis = *indeed*, in *fact* : as,

Tum Metilius Tr. Pl., id enim ferendum esse negat, *Thereupon Metilius, tribune of the commons, declares that that is really not to be put up with!*—Liv. (22, 25.)

Quid tute tecum?—*Nihil enim*, *What were you saying to yourself?*—*Nothing at all.*—Plaut.

Illā enim se negat (facturam), *The woman declares she cannot on any account do so.*—Ter. (Phor. 1, 2, 63.).

Obs. In the same way is sometimes used *nam* and also the compound *et̄enim* (= Gr. καὶ γάρ).

§ 655. *Nempe* (= *nam-pe*), *forsooth*, so it seems, *why*, occurs at the beginning of a sentence, and gives animation : as,

Si Flacīdīus dat tantam pecūniam Flacco, nempe idcirco dat ut rāta sit emptio, *If Flacīdīus gives so large a sum of money to Flaccus, I suppose the reason he gives it, is that the bargain may be good.*—Cic.

Nempe dixi, *I said, did I?*—Hor. (S. 1. 10, 9.)

Nempe negas ad beatē vivendum sātis posse virtutē, *You deny then, it seems, that virtue is sufficient for a happy life?*—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 12.)

In quā tandem urbe . . . ? Nempe in eā quae, etc., *In what city pray? Why (or forsooth) in that which, &c.*—Cic. (Mil. 3, 7.)

§ 656. *Quīdem*, *indeed*, *at least*, *even*, is usually placed next after the most emphatic word of a sentence, which it serves to mark : as,

Sibi quīdem persuādēri, etc., *He for his part was convinced, etc.*—Cic.

Nihil sāne ex me quīdem audire pōtuisses, *You would not have been able to hear a word from me, at any rate.*—Cic.

Especially in connexion with *ne* : when *ne . . . quīdem* = *not even* (see also § 567, *Obs.*) : as,

Nulla no mīnīma quīdem aura, *Not even the least breath of air.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Quīdem* is often equivalent to the Greek γάρ. When *ne . . . quīdem* = *not even*, the emphatic word is put between the two particles.

Obs. 2. For the use of *quīdem* after *ille*, see § 616.

Obs. 3. With the first person singular, *quīdem* (= *ego quīdem*) is used : also sometimes with other persons, see Lat. Dict. s. v.

§ 657. *Utique* is formed from *ut* or *uti*, and signifies *at any rate, certainly*: it usually follows the word to which it chiefly refers: as,

Illud vëro utique (= Gr. γούρ) *scire cūpio*, *There is one thing at any rate I should like to know.*—Cic.

Annum quidem utique tēnēto, *You must at any rate maintain the limit of a year.*—Cic.

After *non* it may be translated by *certainly*: as,

Univërso pars continētur: *non utique accēdit parti quod univërsum est*, *The part is contained in the whole: but certainly the whole does not belong to a part.*—Quint.

§ 658. *Duntaxat* is similar to *quidem*, but usually *precedes* the word to which it refers: it may be translated by *just, at least, only*: as,

Duntaxat ad hoc, *Just for this purpose.*—Hor.

Gēnus eloquentiæ duntaxat aulōlescens adhuc Strabōnis Cæsaris scūtus vidētur. *He appears, at least while still a young man, to have imitated Strabo Cæsar's style of oratory.*—Suet.

Peditātu duntaxat prēcūl ad spēcīem ūtitur, *He employs his cavalry, only at a distance for show.*—Caes.

§ 659. *Certē*.—The use of the Adverb *certe* = *certainly, at least*, must be distinguished from that of *certo*, *for certain, of a truth*: as,

Certe equidem pējōrem pūerum quam te vidi nēmīnem, *Verily, a worse lad than you I never saw.*—Pl.

Res fortasse vërac; certe grāves, *Matters, perhaps true, but at least important.*—Cic.

Certo scio, *I know for certain.*—Cic.

§ 660. *Vëro, dēmum*, *indeed, at length*, are used for the sake of giving a strong emphasis to the words to which they are attached: especially in the phrases, *is dēmum*, *that and nothing short of it*; *tum vëro* (Gr. τότε ἐν), *then if never before, then verily*: as,

Tum vëro ardēmus scītāri, *Then more than ever we are fired with curiosity.*—Virg.

Is dēmum vitā aquā laneē pensitābit, *That man, and no other, will form a fair appreciation of life who, etc.*—Plin.

§ 661. *Cunque* is rarely found alone; occurring for the most part in such compounds as *quicunque, ubicunque, etc.* When it does occur alone, it is equivalent to the Greek *πότε, ever, at any time*: as,

Mihi cunque salve ritē vōcanti, *Be gracious to me whensoever duly invoking thee.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 32, 15.)

Obs. In poetry *cunque* is not unfrequently separated from the word to which it belongs by *Tmesis*: as,

Quæ dēmant cunque dōlōrem, *Whatever things may remove pain.*—Lucr.

CHAPTER LXI.—ON THE ORDER OF WORDS.

§ 662. The terminations of the *inflected* words in Latin show at once their relation to each other; and the arrangement of these may therefore be varied without affecting the sense. Thus the words,

Scipio Hannibālem vicit

will have the same meaning whether they are arranged thus or in any other way: as,

Hannibalem Scipio vicit,

Hannibalem vicit Scipio, etc.

In English, from the Subject being only known by its position at the beginning, only one arrangement yields a certain sense.

Obs. But the *uninflected* words have in general the same positions as in English: see §§ 678, sqq.

§ 663. In ordinary language, however, the arrangement of words is pretty regular; the Subject leading off the sentence, and the Predicate following: as,

Alexander mortuus est; Nix est alba, etc.

Obs. According to the preceding section (*Obs.*), various preliminary uninflected words may precede the sentence proper: such as Conjunctions, Adverbs of Time and Place, etc.

§ 664. *Object.*—When a sentence consists of Subject, Verb, Object, the usual order in Latin is,

1	2	3
Subject,	Object,	Verb,

these several parts being each attended by their adjuncts. The following may serve as examples of such simple sentences:

Hæc Bābylōniam condidit, *She (Semiramis) it was who founded Babylon.*—Just.

Hannibal urbem tripartito aggrēditur, *Hannibal attacks the city with his army in three divisions.*—Liv.

Ingrātus unus omnibus mīseris nocet, *A single ungrateful person does injury to all the unfortunate.*—P. Syr.

Obs. 1. The same rule applies to Verbs Transitive proper (§ 234), and to such as govern a Dative or Ablative case.

Obs. 2. Not only the Accusative, but also the other oblique cases usually precede the Verb: as, *glādiis* pugnāre, *glādio* hūmērum appētēre; *viam ferro* pātēficēre, *vitam* alicui eripēre, etc. The Accusative generally precedes another Case, unless the latter be emphatic.

§ 665. But when the Predicate or Object is emphatic it may be brought to the beginning, the Subject often coming last: as,

Vicit rationem amentia, The victory was gained over reason by frenzy.—Cic.

Arma virumque cano, Arms and the man I sing!—Virg.

Hæc ego omnia compæri, All these things have I brought to light.—Cic.

Obs. Inquam, inquit, say I, says he, are always used parenthetically: as, *mihi vero, inquit, Cotta, etc.*: cf. § 635, 2.

§ 666. The first place in a sentence being the most prominent, it is, where emphasis is needed, assigned to the most emphatic word: as,

Fuit, fuit, ista quondam in republica virtus, There was,—yea there was once—that vigour in the commonwealth.—Cic.

Ad mortem te Cætilina duci jampridem oportebat, To execution, Catiline, thou oughtest long since to have been conducted!—Cic.

Elephanto nulla beluarum prudenter est, Than the elephant there is not a single quadruped more sagacious.—Cic.

§ 667. Also the last place in a sentence may become strikingly emphatic for any word whose ordinary place would have been earlier: as,

Arbores scriit diligens agricola quarum adspiciet bacam ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman plants trees the fruit whereof he will NEVER see AT ALL.—Cic.

Provinciam cepisti duram, The task you have undertaken is hard.—Ter.

Apud Helveticos longe ditissimus fuit Orgetorix, Among the Helvetii by far the richest man was Orgetorix.—Cæsar.

Mæcenas atavis editæ regibus, Thou Mæcenas sprung from the loins of kings.—Hor.

Especially, sometimes, the last word of an Hexameter: as,

Tantum religio potuit suadere malorum, To such ill could superstition tempt!—Lucr.

Parturiunt montes, nascetur ridiculus mus, The mountains are in labour; forth will come an insignificant mouse!—Hor.

Albanique patres atque altae moenia Romæ, And Alban sires, and walls of lofty Rome.—Virg.

Obs. In free conversational language or familiar letters, the arrangement approaches the English more closely: as,

Ego quum accepissem tuas litteras Nonis Aprilibus, Having received your letter on the 5th of April.—Cic.

(Periodic order: ego quum litteras tuas Non. Apr. accepissem.)

§ 668. A *Substantive or Adjective in Apposition* follows the word to which it refers: as,

Cicero orator, Consul Tullius, Plinius minor, etc.

Obs. 1. Consul Tullius or Tullius consul might be equally correct. The former would inform us that the consul's name was Tullius; the latter that Tullius held the office of consul (cf. Cic. Div. Q. Caecil. 10).

Obs. 2. Any adjuncts serving to qualify either word, may separate the two: as,
Attius Navius, inclitus eū tempestāte augur, A. Navius, a famous augur of the time.—Liv.

Egerius (frātris hic filius erat rēgis) Collatiae in praesidio relictus, Egerius—this was the king's brother's son—being left in charge of Collatia, &c.—Liv.

Obs. 3. Sometimes one or more unimportant words not adjuncts of either, are allowed to stand between: as,

Evander tum ea profugus ex Peloponneso regēbat Itea, Evander, at the time an exile from Peloponnesus, ruled in these parts.—Liv.

Lucumoni contra, omnium heredi bonorum, quum divitiae jam animos facerent, Wealth now inspiring the Lucumo, on the contrary, who was heir to [his] entire property, with arrogance.—Liv.

§ 669. *Dependent Genitive*.—No universal rule can be laid down for the position of a Genitive dependent upon another Substantive. But in the periodic style, at least, the Genitive more frequently precedes. Compare the following examples from Cic. Verr. v. 1-3:—

Bellicula pericula (his)—accusationis rationem—imperatorum penuria—Siculorum testimoniis—hostium duce—P. Romani laudem—judicium crudelitatem—defensionis ratio—citiorum princeps—reipublicae tempora [tempora reipublicae, above: rhetorical effect]—victoriae gloriam—fugitivorum bello, copiae [also, bello fugitivorum, above; with emphasis on bello]—illorum adventum, etc.

But where the style is simpler and less elaborate the order is very often the same as in English. Compare the following examples from Liv. I. *init.*, where the legendary history is treated in a somewhat easy and familiar manner:—

Ducem advenarum—filium Anchisae et Veneris—fidem futurae amicitiae—nomen uroris—rex Rutulorum—adventum Aeneae—comes paternae fugae—auctorem nominis—pars Romanae urbis—voluntas patris—reconditio aetatis—speciem honoris—spem patriae, etc.

§ 670. When the Subjective and Objective are combined, the former generally precedes and the latter follows the Substantive: as,

Cognoscite hominis (Subj. Gen.) principium magistratum gerendorum (Obj. Gen.), Mark the man's commencement of holding office.—Cic. (Verr. 1, 13, 34).

Cur eorum (Subj. Gen.) spem reliquam fortunarum (Obj. Gen.) vi extorquere conaris, Why do you attempt to wring from them their (only) remaining hope of recovering their fortunes?—Cic. (Div. in Q. Caecil. 6, 21).

§ 671. *Adjectives*.—The ordinary position for an attributive Adjective is immediately before its Substantive: as,

Multas virtutes,—majore religione,—in tam propinquo loco (all from Nep. Them. 8 ; — ingens multitudo,—tam longi operis,—amplissimis verbis,—publica laetitia,—inscquens annus,—consularis potestas,—Fidēnāti bello,—anelpiti proelio,—ex majōribus castris (from Liv. 5. 8, 9) ; etc.

Obs. 1. Some of the Adjectives in the above examples are emphatic ; but the position does not render them so. On the contrary, the place next *after* the Substantive, as being less usual, is not unfrequently more emphatic : as, tempestate maximā (Nep. Them. 8), donum amplum (Liv. 5, 16), O puerum pulchrum (Cic. Off. 1, 40, 144), etc.

Obs. 2. A monosyllabic Substantive more frequently precedes its Adjective : as, res rusticae, res nāvālis, di immortales. Yet Cic. has magna spes, omnis spes, etc.

§ 672. Great emphasis may be given to an Adjective by separating it from its Substantive, so as to let it produce a more independent impression : as,

Num tibi haec parva videntur adjumenta, *Decem you these small helps?*—Cic. (Mur. 18, 38.)

Sit idem magnificētissimos et nullos unquam fecisse ludos, *Be it all the same thing (for a candidate) to have given the most magnificent games or none ever at all.*—ib. (19, 41.)

Filiam ejus parvulam arripuit, *He seized hold of his daughter, an infant.*—NEP. (Them. 8.)

Tribus in unum bellis collātis, *Three wars being accumulated all in one.*—Liv. (5, 13.)

Obs. In poetry, it is very common for a Substantive to be separated from its epithet by several words, without any special emphasis being intended. The Substantive and epithet then often stand in corresponding parts of a line.

Especially if the Adjective becomes in this way either the first or last word in a sentence : as,

Lābor omnia vincit
Imprōbus, Toil untiring conquers all (difficulties).—Virg.

Hanc naturae tam diligentem fabricam, imitata est hominum vērēcundia, *This so careful contrivance of nature, human modesty has copied.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 35, 127.)

Quod aliud iter haberent nullum, *Because, other route (they said) they had none.*—CAES. (B. G. 1, 8.)

§ 673. But the place immediately before a Substantive is for the (quasi-enclitic) pronominal Adjectives meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, an emphatic position : as,

Clāmōres maximos pro vestrā salūte neglexit, *He thought little of the loudest outcries in comparison with the safety of you.*—Cic. (Mil. 2, 3.)

Per vos, ac per vestram fidem, *By means of you, and your protection.*—ib. (2, 4.)

Quum suā manu sororem esse interfectam faterētur, *When he confessed that by his own hand his sister had been put to death.*—ib. (3, 7.)

Meam potentiam invidiōse criminābatur, *He made invidious charges against (what he called) MY unconstitutional power.*—ib. (5, 12.)

(Compare Nep. Paus. IV. 2, where, writing to Xerxes, Pausanias says, *des ei filiam tuam*, and immediately after, *Graeciam sub tuam potestatem se redacturum pollicetur*. In the former case a prominence of the word *tuam* might seem likely to give offence, in the latter it could not be other than flattering.)

§ 674. Different forms of the same word, when used to indicate some contrast, correspondence, or reciprocity, are put close to each other: as,

Mānus mānum lavat, *Hand washes hand* (= *One good turn deserves another*);—Vet. Prov. in Sen.

Haeret pēde pes densusque rīro vir, *Foot is locked to foot and man to man, in dense array*.—VIRG. (Aen. 10, 361).

Omnia mea mēcum porto, *I carry all my property about me*.

Magnāque cum magno veniet trītūra cālōre, *And a great crop* [Lit. thrashing] *with great heat will ensue*.—VIRG. (G. 1, 190.)

Magnum magno cōnāmīne mīsit, *The mighty (stone) with mighty effort he threw*.—OV. (Met. 3, 59).

§ 675. The *ille* of celebrity (§ 365) follows the Substantive to which it refers; as,

Mēdēa illa. Acādēmīa illa (Cic.), *testūla illa*, *The (fatal) oyster-shell used in ostracism* (Nep.): comp. § 365.

Obs. But when an Adjective is added, the *ille* may precede the Substantive: as, *vīhēmens ille consul*, Cic. in Cat. 2, 6.

§ 676. Some Adjectives regularly follow the Substantives to which they refer. So do especially those which are equivalent to a dependent Genitive, or may be rendered in English by a Substantive and a Preposition: as,

Pōpūlus Rōmānus, *Pōpūlus Albānus* (= *Romae, Albae*); *vincūla publicā* (= *pōpūli*), *the prison of state*; *dīi publicī*, *the gods of one's country* (Nep.); *mōtus civīcus* (= *civium*), *a commotion amongst citizens*; *pontifex maximus*, *ues aliēnum*; etc.

Obs. But we find always *tribūni militum consūlārī pōtestātē*, not *potestate consulari*; and in the case of some words the usage varies, as *pugna nāvālis* or *navalis pugna*; *civitas mārītīma* or *maritima civitas*.

§ 677. Sometimes an Adjective is put after a Substantive because of its close connexion with what immediately follows: as,

Bellum multiplex fuit eōdem tempōre, *There were going on at the same time a multitude of wars*.—LIV.

Rōmānis indignitas māior quam cūra, *The Romans felt more indignation than concern*.—LIV.

Cavendum est ne tarditātibus utāmur in ingressu molliōribus, *ut* [= *adeo molles ut*] *pompārum fereclis similes esse videāmur*, *We must take care not to use in walking such effeminate slow movements as to look like the vessels carried in religious processions*.—CIC.

Non Idibus Dēcēmbribus, die sollemni, sed extemplo Kalendis Octobribus, [They had entered on office] not on the 13th of December, the day proper for so doing, but at once on the 1st of October.—Liv.

§ 678. *Adverbs* are usually placed immediately before the word they qualify: as, *satis magnus, diligenter cūrare*, etc. But they may be emphasised in a similar manner to *Adjectives* (comp. §§ 672, sqq.): as,

Nunquam ōpera sine emolumento est, No where is work without its meed.—Liv.

Clam se ab custodibus subduxit, He, without being noticed, got away from his keepers.—Nep.

(For *nunquam* at the end of a sentence, see § 667.)

Obs. *Non* when it refers to a single word, stands immediately before it: as,

Dāvus sum, non Ōedipus, Darus am I, not Ōedipus.—Ter.

Nōmo nan aptissimus ad Jōcandum, A man not the best hand at a joke.

—*Cic.*

But when it refers to the entire proposition, it often stands at the beginning: as,

Non, medius fidius, possum prae lacrymis reliqua scribere, I cannot, I row, write the rest for tears.—Cic. (ad Att.).

§ 679. When two words stand in the same relation to another word, they must either both precede or both follow it: as,

Divinitus datum atque oblatum (not datum divinitus atque oblatum); —sua spe ne praesolatione (not spe sua, &c.); —cum summa voluntate et expectatione Populi Romani (not cum voluntate summa P. R., &c.); —severe religiosèque dicere; —amicorum studio officioque; —homo audacissimus atque amentissimus.—(All from Verr. Act. I. 1-3.)

§ 680. *Prepositions.*—The ordinary position of the different *Prepositions* has been explained above (Chap. LIII.). Concerning the connexion of two *Prepositions* with the same *Substantive* see § 649.

A *Preposition* may be separated from its *Case* not only by an *attributive* (as, *ex maritimis civitatibus, ad bene vivendum*), or a *dependent Genitive* (as, *ex Caesaris castris*), but also (1) by the *enclitic que* (poet.); or (2) by an *Accusative* of the object governed by a *transitive participle*: as,

(1.) *Eque sacra resonant examina quereu, And the swarms hum from the sacred oak.—Virg.*

(N.B.—*Adque regem*, in *Nep. Dat. 7*, is probably a false reading for *ad regemque*.)

(2.) *Nec enim in constituentibus rempublicam, nec in bella gerentibus, etc., For not among those who manage politics or wage wars, etc.—Cic. (Br. 12, 45.)*

In suum cuique tribuendo, In giving each his due.—(ib. 21, 85.)

Obs. 1. Sometimes when the governed Substantive has an attributive, the Preposition stands between the two : as, *una ex re* (Cic.); &c.

Obs. 2. Concerning *per* separated from its Substantive in adjectives, see § 556, 17. *Obs.*

§ 681. *Conjunctions*, as connecting and showing the relation between sentences, naturally precede the members they serve to introduce : for examples see Chap. LIV. The principal exceptions are there treated. Concerning *ne quidem*, see § 656.

Also some Adverbs of Time and Place, as *intērim*, *intērea*, *sīmul*, *jam*, *nunc*, *tunc*, *tum*; *ibi*, *hic*, *illic*, etc., when they contain a reference to what has preceded, stand at the beginning.

Obs. *Inde* is very often treated as an enclitic : as,

Dēdi inde inermes coepti, &c. ; *Agī inde de Apollinis dōno*, &c. ; *Obstidio inde urbis*, &c.—Liv.

§ 682. *Subordinate clauses*.—Participial or adverbial clauses and clauses with *quum* (see § 526), also Relative clauses when serving the purpose of definition, are let into the body of a period : as,

At Xerxes *Thermōpylis expugnātis*, *prōtinus accessit astu*, *But Xerxes after having forced the pass of Thermopylae, approached the city*.—Nep.

Jamque, *nuntiāto augūrio*, *quum duplex nūmērus Rōmūlo se ostendisset*, *utrumquo rēgem sua multitudo consālūtāverat*, *And now, when the augury had been published, and the double number presented itself to Romulus, the different parties had each saluted their own king*.—Liv.

Compare also the following :

Pālatium primum, in quo ipse erat edūcātus (Rel. clause), *mūniit : sacra diis aliis Albāno ritu* (Adverb. clause), *Græco Herculi ut ab Eranthro institūta erant* (Adv. clause), *fācit*.—Liv. (1, 7).

Magna pars [virginum] forte, ut in quem quæque inclērat (Adv. clause), *raptæ*.—Liv. (1, 9).

Athēnienses dixit suo consilio, *quod commūni jure gentium facere possent* (Rel. clause), *deos publicos suosque, patrios ac pēnates, quo facilius ab hoste possent defendere* (comp. § 684), *miris saepsisse*.—Nep. (Them. 7).

§ 683. But when a Relative clause introduces an altogether fresh predication it forms a new sentence or clause by itself : as,

Inde non prius ēgressus est quam rex eum, datā dextrā, in fidem rēcepit, Quam praestitit, *He did not quit the spot, until the king, giving him his right hand, took him under his protection : which he made good*.—Nep.

Postquam audiērent mūros instrui, lēgatos Athēnas misērunt, qui id fieri rētarent, *When they heard that the walls were being built, they sent ambassadors to Athens, to forbid its being done*.—Nep.

Obs. In accordance with the above is the idiomatic practice of Latin authors of carrying forward narrative by means of the Relative.

§ 684. Similarly a Subjunctive clause with *ut* or *ne*, when not simply explanatory, follows the sentence to which it is attached: as,

Triplex portus constitutus est, isque moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitate aequipararet, A threefold port was formed and surrounded by walls, so as to vie with the city in importance.—Nep.

Tullius præcepērat suis, ne quid prius quam mandata agerent, Tullius had instructed his envoys not to attend to anything before their commission.—Liv.

But in the following examples the clause with *ut*, *ne*, being explanatory, naturally precedes:

Sed quia in civitate bellicosa, plures Romuli quam Numaē similes reges putabat fore, ne sacra regiae ritibus desererentur, flaminem Jovi assiduū sacerdotem creavit, But as in a martial commonwealth, he thought there would be more kings like Romulus than like Numa,—to prevent the sacred rites falling to the share of the king from being neglected,—he appointed a perpetual flamen to Jove.—Liv.

His, ut assidue templi antistites essent, stipendium de publico statuit, To these—in order that they might serve the temple uninterruptedly—he assigned a salary from the public treasury.—Liv.

Obs. It is not possible to define precisely the kinds of clauses treated of in the preceding sections. The longer clauses more frequently follow.

§ 685. Most sentences, and even clauses, are capable of being divided into shorter members, each of which is arranged according to the same general principles as an entire sentence: as,

Atqui totus hic locus, philosophorum putatur proprius, The whole of this subject, however, is regarded as belonging to philosophy (not rhetoric).—Cic.

Quidquid erit igitur, quacunque ex arte, quocunque de genere, id orator si tanquam clientis causam didicerit, dicet melius et ornatus quam ille ipse ejus rei inventor atque artifex, Whatever it may be, therefore, from whatever art or science, and from whatever branch, the orator will, if he will only study it as he would his client's brief, speak upon it more effectively and impressively, than even the original discoverer or proficient therein.—Cic. (Or. 1, 11, 51.)

Obs. After the enunciation of an emphatic word, the remaining words in the same member are unemphatic. In the second sentence the adverbs *melius*, *ornatus*, follow the verb *dicet* because of their close connexion with the following words *quam*, etc. (comp. § 677.)

§ 686. Regard must in all cases be had to euphony, concerning which it is impossible to lay down precise rules. It may however be remarked that a trochaic ending (— ◡) for a sentence is preferable to an iambic or dactylic one. Thus the following endings occur in the first chapter of the *De Oratore*:

Esse possent, constitisset, fefellerunt, exstiterunt, recolendas, discrimen, redundarunt, roganti, voluntati; the only iambic ending in the same chapter being conferram (a creticus).

PART II. (SYNTAX.)—*Continued.*BOOK III. — REMARKS ON THE STYLES OF SALLUST,
CAESAR, CICERO, LIVY AND TACITUS.

CHAPTER LXII.—STYLE OF SALLUST.

§ 687. The style of Sallust is marked by brevity and frequent use of antithesis; also by the recurrence or peculiar use of certain words and constructions; and by some archaisms.

Obs. There is something artificial about the style of Sallust. This is most apparent in the moralising introductions with which he has prefaced his *Catiline* and *Jugurtha*. In simple narrative or description he is often exceedingly vigorous and animated: see for example his delineation of the character of *Catiline* (c. 5); his account of the seizure of the dispatches of the *Allobrogian* embassy (ib. 44, 45); of the siege of *Zama* (Jug. 60); of the *Philaeni* (ib. 79).

§ 688. *Brevity*.—This is a general feature of the style of Sallust, and is seen most strikingly in such concise expressions as the following:

Vitam silentio transire, to go through life without causing one's name to be heard of, (Cat. 1);—*ingénium, corpus, the entire faculties of the human mind or body*, (ib. 2);—*quae homines arant, nāvigant, aedificant, the different kinds of activity put forth in husbandry, navigation, and building or architecture*, (ib. 2).—*amāre, pōtare, to indulge in the pleasures of licentiousness or intoxication*, (ib. 11);—*mānus, venter, gambling, gluttony*, (ib. 14);—*virtus, all kinds of excellent qualities; especially of the mind*, (passim);—*ars, any kind of occupation or course* (passim).

§ 689. *Asyndeton* (§ 565. *Obs.*).—In accordance with his love of brevity, Sallust is fond of dispensing with connectives; as in the following examples:

Quibus profecto contra naturam, corpus voluptati, animus oneri fuit, To whom—in opposition to what nature intended, unquestionably—the body was the only source of pleasure [and] the mind a burden.—(Cat. 2.)

Mare saevum, importunos; ager frugum fertilis, bonus pecori, arbore infecundus: coelo terraeque penuria aquarum, The sea [is] rough [and] without harbours; the soil fertile [and] good for stock [though] unproductive in trees; sky and earth [are alike] deficient in supply of water.—(Jug. 17.)

(Compare also Cat. 5.)

Obs. Sallust is equally partial to the omission of the copula; as in the latter of the above examples.

§ 690. *Antithesis*.—The following may serve as specimens of the very frequent use of this figure by Sallust:

Nam pro pudōre, pro abstinentiā, pro virtūte, audācia, largitio, āvāritia vigēbant, *For in place of modesty, of clean-handedness, of virtue, flourished effrontery, corruption, covetousness.*—(Cat. 3.)

Laudis āvidi, pccūniæ libērales, *Covetous of praise; liberal with money.*—(ib. 7.)

Concordia maxīma; mīnīma āvāritia, erat, *There was the utmost degree of harmony, the least of covetousness.*—(ib. 9.)

(Compare the whole of the last-named chapter: also Cat. 54, etc.)

§ 691. *Historical Infinitive*.—Sallust makes very frequent use of this construction (see § 517), which is particularly suited to animated description. This is well seen in his vivid picture of the state of the capital during the panic caused by the conspiracy (Cat. 31), or of the restlessness and insecurity of the guilty Jugurtha (Jug. 72).

§ 692. *Alius . . . aliud*.—This concise idiom (see § 629) is probably more frequent in Sallust than in any other writer. Thus we find—

Aliud ālio ferri.—(Cat. 2.)

Alius ālii nātūra iter monstrat.—(same chapter.)

Alius ālio mōre viventes.—(ib. 6.)

Alius ālium hortāri.—(same chapter.)

Practēca ālium ālio [mittit].—(ib. 27.)

Alios in ālia lōca [praemississe].—(same chapter.)

And so in many other places.

§ 693. *Sed, nam, igitur*.—Sallust begins a great many of his sentences with one or other of these conjunctions (probably after the model of the Greek *τε* or *ἀλλὰ*—*γάρ*—*οὖν*). This has a somewhat bald and monotonous effect. Thus in the first short chapter of the Catiline, *nam* and *sed* each begin two sentences; and in five consecutive chapters (ib. 7—11), *sed* begins *nine* sentences; *igitur*, *four*; and *nam* (or *namque*), *three*.

Obs. By other authors *igitur* is placed second in a sentence, not first.

§ 694. *Favourite or peculiar words*.—There are some words (1) which Sallust is fond of repeating; others (2) which are rarely used by other writers or not in the same sense: the following are the principal of these:

- (1.) *Mortāles* in sense of *hōmīnes* (*passim*). *Pōpūlāres*, for *accomplices* (Cat. 22, 24).

Tempestas for (*particular*) *time* (Gr. *καίρος*): *as*,

Eā tempestāte (Cat. 7, 17, 22, 26; Jug. 8, &c.), *quā tempestāte* (Jug. 79).

Āgo and its frequentative *āgĭto*, in various senses: *as*,

Civitas laeta āgĕre, *The whole city* (acted *as*) *full of joy*.—(Jug. 55.)

Incultius āgĕre, *To live in a more uncivilized manner*.—(id. 89.)

Multa āgĭtāre, *To turn over, meditate upon many things*.—(Cat. 53.)

Vāgos āgĭtāre, *To live a wandering life*.—(Jug. 19.)

Agĭtāre (absol.), *To move, gesticulate*.—(Jug. 60.)

Vārius incertusque āgĭtābat, *He acted in an inconstant and hesitating way*.—(ib. 74.)

Hābeo, in various senses: *as*,

Virtus elāra aeternaque hābĕtur, *Virtue is a glorious and imperishable possession*.—(Cat. 1.)

Acquābilis sēsē res hūmānae hābĕrent, *Human affairs would go on more steadily*.—(ib. 2.)

Aetātem prōcul a rēpublica hābĕre, *To spend one's life aloof from public affairs*.—(ib. 4.)

Nēque quiequam pensi hābĕbat, *Nor had he any consideration*.—(ib. 5.)

So, condidĕro atque hābnĕre, sicūtī plērāquo mortālium hābentur, nōmen rēgium hābĕbant (ib. 6)—*in promptu hābĕre, libīdinem hābĕbant* (ib. 7), and so on.

(2.) **Peculiar uses of words:**

Mēdiocris, in *sensu* of *equitable, good* (Gr. *ἐπιεικής*): Jug. 6.

Gignentia, for *plants, vegetation*: Jug. 79, *med*.

§ 695. *Archaisms*.—Sallust somewhat affects these: the following may be noted:—

- (1.) Accusative pl. of Substantives and Adjectives in *es* and *is* in *is* rather than *es*: *as*, *omnis*, etc.
- (2.) Genitive sing. of 4th Decl. in *i* for *us*: *as*, *sēnāti* (Cat. 30, 36, 51).
- (3.) Such contracted Genitives as *ingĕni* (Cat. 1), *impĕri* (ib. 6), *auxili* (ib. 40), &c.
- (4.) He always uses *o* after *v*, and not *u*: *as* *dīvorsī* (Cat. 2), *convortit* (ib. 6), &c.

Obs. This last mode of spelling, however, appears to have been the usual one in the time of Sallust.

CHAPTER LXIII.—STYLE OF CAESAR.

§ 696. The style of Caesar has few peculiarities. It is clear, direct, and unaffected. He is said to have carefully avoided unusual words or expressions.

Obs. The 'Commentaries' of Caesar were designed, as the name implies, to serve as "notes" or memoranda for history (see Suet. Caes. 56). But Cicero remarks that while "silly persons" (inepti) might think the unadorned materials of Caesar a good field to show off their fine writing, sensible people would shrink from meddling with what was in itself so excellent ("sanos quidem homines a scribendo deterruit : " Brut. 75).

§ 697. Caesar is generally brief and concise, though evidently without studying to be so like Sallust. Perspicuity is evidently more consulted than brevity. Hence perhaps, he often repeats the antecedent along with the Relative pronoun; as in the following :

Eraut omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire posset.—B. G. I, 6.

Diem dicunt quā die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant.—(same chapter.)

Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat.—ib. 4, 7.

§ 698. He is partial to the construction of the *Ablative Absolute*. Thus many passages begin with some such phrase as "Quibus rebus cognitis" (B. G. 19, etc.), "bello confecto" (ib. 30), "eo consilio dimisso" (ib. 31), "hac oratione habita" (ib. 32), "his rebus cognitis" (ib. 33), &c.

§ 699. A great many particulars are often gathered up in one sentence. Thus some of Caesar's periods contain perhaps more members than those of any other narrative writer : as,

Quod ubi Caesar compertit, omnibus his rebus confectis quarum causa transducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum injecteret, ut Sigambros ulesceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret,—diebus omnino decem et octo consumptis,—satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus,—se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit, *When Caesar was informed of this, as he had accomplished all the objects he had in view in crossing [the Rhine],—namely, to strike terror into the Germans, to inflict vengeance on the Sigambri, and to raise the blockade of the Ubii,—having spent in all eighteen days and no more; thinking that enough had been achieved whether for his credit or his ends, betook himself back into Gaul and broke down the bridge.*—(B. G. iv. 19).

Obs. These inconveniently long periods doubtless owe their origin to haste of writing (see § 696, *Obs.*). For other examples see B. G. vii. 33, 34, 36.

CHAPTER LXIV.—STYLE OF CICERO.

§ 700. The style of Cicero is that of a man who has at his command all the resources of the language. Every period is a work of art, and the cadences are full and sonorous. But perhaps the finest charm is to be found in his letters. He there allows himself more natural liberty in the use and coining of words, as well as in the structure of his sentences, while yet we nowhere miss that grace which is inseparable from him.

Only a few points will be noticed here, since the peculiarities of Cicero are mostly rhetorical rather than grammatical.

§ 701. He is fond of doubling his words; that is to say, he often uses together two or more words of nearly identical meaning, in order to convey a fuller or more precise sense. Thus we often meet with such combinations as the following:

Amicus necessariusque,—superbia atque arrogantia,—sermo atque fama,—ignominia et turpitudine,—levitas et inconstantia,—cura atque opera,—sine iudicio controversiæque;—regere et administrare,—molestè graviterque ferre,—committere et credere,—struere et moliri, etc. (all from the Cluentius).

Obs. In his frequent use of such parallel words Cicero was no doubt studying partly a more complete and exhaustive expression, and partly the cadence of his sentences.

§ 702. In his more rhetorical passages Cicero makes a bold use of Abstracts for Concretes (§ 592, 2): as,

Pròvinciam ad summam stultitiam nèquitiæque vènisse, The province had fallen into the hands of the greatest fools and knaves.—(Verr. 5, 15.)

Exercitus collectus ex agraria luxuria, An army collected from all the profligates of the country.—(In Cat. 1, 3.)

§ 703. *Diminutives.*—He makes a free use of these, and appears to coin them when it suits his purpose: as,

Contortulæ quaedam et minutæ conclusivunculæ, Paltry little quibbling arguments.—(Tusc. 2, 18.)

Nummulis acceptis, Having received some paltry coins.—(Att. 1, 16.)

Bruti nostri vulticulus, The dear (little) face of our Brutus.—(Att. 14, 20.)

Quintus filius Antōnii est dextella, My nephew Quintus is Antony's right-hand man (perhaps implying some contempt).—(ib.)

Obs. This free use of diminutives is found chiefly in his letters and the conversational parts of his philosophical and other works.

§ 704. *Vulēri*.—Cicero is partial to the use of this verb, and sometimes uses it to soften a statement, where in English it cannot be translated: as,

Restat ut de impērātōre ad id bellum dēligendo dicendum videātur, It remains for me to speak respecting the choice of a commander for the said war.—(Manil. 10, 27.)

(Comp. ib. 20, where the same phrase is repeated.)

Obs. This use of *videor* corresponds to that of *δοκέω* in Greek (cf. Xen. Anab. 1, 3, 12); and sometimes occurs in other authors besides Cicero: as,

Nēque id sine causā arbitrāri vīdēbantur, Nor were they [did they seem to be] without reason for that opinion.—(Nep. Alc. 6.)

§ 705. *Versāri, rātio*.—These two words are used by Cicero very frequently, and in various senses: the following examples are taken from a large number in Nügel'sbach (Stilist. pp. 167, 297):

- (1.) *Versāri*: *to be engaged in; to be in connexion with, in the domain of; to deal with; to be at work*: as,

In omni gēnere fūrandi atque praedandi versāri, To be engaged in every kind of thieving and robbery.—(Verr. 5, 1.)

Uterque in summā sēvēritāte versatur, Both of them (Cato and Caesar) take the ground of extreme severity.—(In Cat. 4, 4.)

Meus lābor in privātorum pēriculis versatus, My exertions which have to do with the perils of private citizens.—(Manil. 1, 2.)

Versatur magnus error, A great delusion prevails.—(Leg. Agr. 2, 3, 7.)

- (2.) *Rātio*: *account, consideration; dealings; relation, province or domain (German, verhältniss); calculation; reasoning; theory, system, mode*: as,

In ratiōnem inducere, To take into account.—(Verr. 1, 4.)

Ratiōnem habent eum terrā, They (farmers) have to do with the soil.—(de Sen. 15.)

Diversa stūdia in dissimili ratiōne, Diverse activities in a different field.—(In Cat. 2, 5.)

Dōmestica, bellica rātio, The domain or department of home affairs, of war.—(Off. 1, 22.)

Rātio venēficii, The domain, department or ground of the (alleged) poisoning.—(Clu. 1.)

Pētitiōnis tuae rātio, The question or matter of your cause (little more than = petitio tua).—(Fam. 15, 13, 1.)

Sine ullā divīnā ratiōne, Without taking the gods into consideration at all.—(N. D. 3, 35.)

CHAPTER LXV.—STYLE OF LIVY.

§ 706. Livy is the greatest master of prose narrative. The periods of Cicero are those of a public speaker; those of Livy combine the stateliness of a historian with the copious flow and artistic grouping suitable to descriptive narration.

Obs. There seems to be no foundation for the opinion that the later decades were inferior in excellence to the earlier ones. (See Lewis, R. Hist. i. p. 253.) Livy was charged by his contemporaries with a certain provincialism (*Patavinitas*); but it is not known wherein the alleged peculiarities consisted.

§ 707. *Figurative language.*—Livy makes frequent use of metonymy (§ 604), and other figures of speech. Thus we find Mars for bellum (*passim*); ministēria, servitia, for ministri, servi (§ 592); praetōrium, not only for the office of commander-in-chief (21, 3), but also for a commander-in-chief's council of war (21, 54); praerōgātiva, for a prior election (21, 3); agrestium fūga, for agrestes fūgientes (3, 69); rōbōra vīrorum for rōbusti vīri (21, 54); etc.

§ 708. *Genitive.*—Livy uses the Genitive after Adjectives with more freedom than earlier writers: as,

Trēpidi rerum suarum (= de rebus suis), *In alarm about their own interests.*—(5, 11.)

(See remarks on style of Tacitus: § 721).

§ 709. *Singular for Plural.*—This use has been already noticed (§ 607).

§ 710. *Indicative for Subjunctive.*—Instead of the Subjunctive in Relative clauses of the *oratio obliqua* (§ 465), Livy not unfrequently uses the Indicative (even when such usage cannot be explained by 467, *Obs.*): as,

Proconsulem P. Cornēlium, multorum exemplo qui in māgistrātu non triumphāverunt (= triumphaverint), triumphāturum esse, *P. Cornelius might (he said) enjoy his triumph as proconsul, after the precedent of a number who had not done so while actually in office.*—(36, 39.)

Q. Fabium dicere, se . . . ab Rōmā Aequis bellum afferre, eūdem dextrā armatā, quam pācatam ille antea dederat (= dederit), *Q. Fabius said, he brought war from Rome to the Aequians, with the same right hand armed which he had before offered them in peace.*—(3, 2.)

§ 711. The Subjunctive is often preferred to the Indicative after dōnec, antequam, priusquam, even when simple facts are spoken of: see §§ 499, 501 (*U.*)

§ 712. *Perfect Subjunctive after Past Tenses.*—This construction (§ 433) is perhaps more frequent in Livy than in any other writer. Compare the following:

Eo fuit (past-indef.) habitu oris, ut... ridentis etiam specie[m] praeberet. He wore such an expression on his features as to present the appearance of a laugh. (Lit. of one laughing).—(21, 2.)

Haec dubium [fuit], quin nisi firmata extrema agminis fuissent ingens in eo saltu accipienda clades fuisset. There was no doubt that had not the rear-guard been strengthened, a serious defeat must have been sustained in that pass.—(21, 34.)

Transeuntem Apenninum adeo atrox adorta tempestas est, ut Alpium foeditatem prope superaret. As he was crossing the Apennines, he was assailed by a tempest of such violence as almost to surpass the horrors of the Alps.—(21, 58.)

(In all the above cases Cicero would probably have used the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.)

§ 713. *Hypothetical use of Future Participle.*—Other writers use the Imperfect participle active and Perfect participle passive hypothetically: Livy extends this use to the Future participle in -rus: as,

Dedituris se Hannibali non fuisse arcessendum Romanorum praesidium. If they had intended to give themselves up to Hannibal, they ought not to have sent for a Roman garrison.—(23, 44.)

§ 714. *Gerund and Gerundive.*—Livy is partial to the use of these verbal forms, which he uses with greater freedom than any other writer. (Compare § 541.) The following examples of his use of the Gerundive may be useful:

[Saguntinis] oppugnandis (Abl. Absol.) haud dubie Romana arma movebantur, *By the attack upon Saguntum there was no question of a war with Rome being provoked.*—(21, 5.)

(Cicero would have said Saguntinis oppugnatis.)

Possidendis agris (= possessione agrorum, contentus, *Content with holding the (public) lands.*—(3, 14.)

Quum vix movendis armis (= ad arma movenda) spatium esset. *There being hardly room to move their arms.*—(23, 27.)

Ubi promovendo adjunctam (= promotam atque adjunctam muro) viderunt turre[m], *When they saw that the tower, by being gradually pushed forward, had been brought close to the wall.*—(23, 38.)

His avertendis terroribus (= ad hos avertendos terrores: cf. § 538). *In triduum feriae indictae.* To avert these terrors, a holiday of three days was notified.—(3, 5.)

Ante conditam condendamve urbem, *Before the city was founded or designed to be founded.*—(Pref.)

§ 715. *Prepositions.*—Livy is somewhat peculiar in his use of certain Prepositions, especially ab (a), ad, as seen in the following examples:

- (1.) *Ab. a.*—*Directly after; by way of: on the part of* (cf. § 557, 1): *as,*

Ab (= ex) his praeceptis cōtiōnem dimisit, Immediately after (giving) these instructions, he dismissed the assembly.—(44, 34.)

Ab irrisu (= per irrisum) linguam exserere, To put out the tongue in ridicule.—(7, 10.)

Ab regiis, On the part of the royalists.—(37, 23.)

Ad exsolvendam fidem a consule (= consulis), To the making good of a promise on the part of the consul.—(27, 5.)

Mettus Curtius ab Sabinis (= Sabinorum) princeps, Mettus Curtius leader on the part of the Sabines.—(1, 12.)

- (2.) *Ad.*—*At the instance of; in the department of: as,*

Ad (= propter) metum, ad spem veniae dedere se, To surrender in (at the promptings of) fear, or of hope of pardon.—(36, 13.)

Ad desiderium reliatarum (sc. bovm), mugire, To bellow at missing the heifers that had been left behind.—(1, 7.)

Tribuni militum ad legiones (= legionum), The military tribunes of the legions.—(7, 5.)

Servi ad remum, The slaves at the oar.—(34, 6.)

§ 716. *Namque* is frequently placed by Livy (as by later writers generally) second instead of first in a sentence: *as,*

Omnium namque laborum, etc., (5, 11.)

Ibi namque in tabernis, etc., (3, 44.)

CHAPTER LXVI.—STYLE OF TACITUS.

§ 717. Tacitus lived a century after the latest of the aforementioned masters of Latin prose. The language had then lost somewhat of its original chasteness and severity, but from an increased vocabulary and greater freedom of expression, it was perhaps better fitted to express the conceptions of so original and vehement a writer.

§ 718. Tacitus delights to express himself in striking and original ways. He has great variety of phraseology; his turns of thought are often abrupt and even startling; and he frequently suggests much more than he expresses. He uses freely many idioms rarely or never found in writers of the preceding century, and his language has much of a poetical complexion.

§ 719. The scale of this work does not admit of a full treatment of so various a subject as the style of Tacitus. For fuller particulars the student is referred elsewhere.* We shall notice only the more prominent points.

§ 720. (A.) VARIETY.—This is shown chiefly in the following particulars :

(1.) *Different forms of the same word* : as,

Plebs and plēbes—sēnectus and sēnecta—oblivium and ob-
livio—quōtiens and quōties—tēgumen, tēgūnen and tegmen—
pārentum (*gen. pl.*) and pārentium, &c.

(2.) *Different grammatical constructions without difference of meaning* : as,

(Lēgiōnem pro ripā compōnēret), *subsīdio* (*Dat. of Purpose or Result* : § 297) *victis et terrōrem* (*Apposition*) *adversus victōres*, *As an assistance to them if conquered, and a terror to their conquerors.*—(Ann. 12, 29.)

Corpore ingens, animi (§ 285) *immōdicus*, *In body huge in mind (ambition) unmeasured.*—(Hist. 1. 53.)

Cum Parthus (§ 607) *distrahēret turmas*, *Sarmatæ irruērent*, *While the Parthians tried to separate the squadrons, and the Sarmatians rushed, &c.*—Ann. 6. 35.)

Especially in comparisons (§ 350) :

Vehēmentius quam caute.—Agr. 4.)

Clāris mājōribus quam vētustis.—Ann. 4, 61.)

Quanto inōpīna, tanto mājōra.—Ann. 1, 68.)

Quanto quis clārior, mīnus fīdus.—Hist. 3, 58.)

(3.) *Various words and phrases employed to denote the same thing* : as,

Finis sponte sumptus—quaesīta mors—suo ictu mortem invēnīre—finem vitæ sibi pōnēre—vōluntārio exitu eādēre—vitam rēlinquēre—etc., all to denote *self-destruction*.

Vēnas, brāchia exsolvēre, rēsolvēre, abrumpēre, interscindēre, abscindēre, incidēre—lēvem ictum vēnis inferre—all of opening the reins in order to cause death.

(4.) *Peculiar uses of words.*—Tacitus not only uses (a) many new words, but also (b) old ones in rarer meanings : the following may serve as examples :

(a) Centūriōnātus, exstīmūlātor, instigātrix, inturbātus, quinquīplicāre, prae posse, prōvivēre, pervigēre, sūperstagnāre, sūperurgēre.

* See Bötticher's 'Remarks on the Style of Tacitus,' prefixed to Dr. Smith's Tacitus, from which the present sections are partly taken.

(b) *Adductus* (*drawn to; tight*), in sense of *severe*: hence, *adductus regnari, to be under stricter rule.*—(Ger. 43.)

Expédire, to go on an expedition (Gr. *στρατεύεσθαι*).—(Hist. 1, 88.)

Externus, hostile: hence *externa mōliri, to make hostile movements*—(Hist. 3, 5.)

Diversus, also hostile: as *diversa acies, the enemy's line.*—(Ann. 14, 30.)

Annus, yearly crop.—(Ger. 14.)

Sinister = mālus.—(Agr. 5.)

§ 721. (B.) PECULIAR IDIOMS.—Under this head fall—

(1.) *His use of the Genitive* (see § 285):

(a) After Adjectives; as, *immōdicus animi, ingens animi, vētus opēris ac lāboris, virtutum stērilis, &c. &c.*

(b) With the Gerundive, to denote a purpose (see § 539): as, *Aegyptum prōfiscitur cognoscendae antiquitātis, He sets out for Egypt, in order to study its antiquities.*—(Ann. 2, 59.)

Vitandae suspiciōis, an quia pāvdis consilia in incerto sunt, Either in order to avoid suspicion, or else because the plans of the timid fluctuate.—(Ann. 3, 9.)

(2.) *His free use of the Dative of purpose* (see § 297); as,

Rēpertus est nūdus . . . exercitādo corpōri, He was found stripped for exercise.—(Ann. 14, 59.)

Num . . . cētera expugnandis urbibus attālissent, (He asked) whether they had brought the other (appliances) for taking cities.—(Hist. 3, 20.)

(3.) *Of the Accusative without a Preposition after verbs of motion*: as,

Ripam accēdere—oppidum irrumpere—advolvi gēnua—incidere locum, &c.; in which cases a Preposition is mostly used by Cicero. Tacitus has also such expressions as *vertices montium insidēre*, Ger. 43; *summa collium insidere*, Agr. 37. (Comp. § 236.)

(4.) *Of the Ablative Absolute* (see § 333. Obs. 2).

(5.) *His frequent use of an Adjective instead of the Genitive of a Substantive*: as,

Calianae expeditiōes, The expeditions of Caius (Caligula).—(Hist. 4, 15.)

Mētus hostilis, Fear of the enemy.—(Ann. 12, 51.)

Obs. This idiom is found in earlier writers (§ 611): it is its frequent use that is peculiar to Tacitus.

(6.) *Of the plural of Abstract Substantives*: as, *audāciae* (Ann. 1, 74), *irācundiāe* (14, 4), etc., where the use of the plural indicates *separate manifestations of the abstract quality* (see § 594).

(7.) Of the *Infinitive* :

(a) As Historical (comp. § 517) :

Tacitus uses this idiom more frequently than any other writer (Sallust included : § 691). He has it even after such Adverbs of time as *ubi, cum* : as,

Ubi crūlescere sēditio, When the mutiny was growing fiercer.
—(Hist. 3, 10, &c.)

(b) After verbs of *advising, commanding, preventing, &c.*, instead of the Subjunctive and *ut, ne, quin, quōminus*. Thus we find,

Obstitit Oceānus in se sīmul atque in Hercūlem inquiri
(= *quominus inquireretur*, § 463), *Ocean prevented inquiry at once into himself and Hercules.*—(Ger. 34.)

(8.) *Zeugma* (see § 643).

§ 722. (C.) ABRUPTNESS, &c.—This is seen in the unexpected turns often given by Tacitus to a sentence : as,

Ferrum clātum dēfērebat in pectus—ni proximi dextram vi attinuisent, He raised his sword, and was in the act of plunging it into his bosom—[and would have done so] had not the by-standers held his hand by main force.—(Ann. 1, 35.)

Germania a Sarmātis Daciisque mētū aut montibus sēpāratur, Germany is bounded on the side of the Sarmatians and Dacians by fear or by mountains.—(Ger. 1.)

Cibos et hortāmīna pugnantibus gestant, They carry to the combatants provisions and encouragement.—(Ger. 7.)

§ 723. Tacitus is a writer who suggests more than he says, and his brief comments are frequently marked by bitterness and irony. This is seen in the following sentences :

Nec corrumpere et corrumpi saeculum vocatur, Nor is the conduct of seducer and seduced there called "the [fashion of] the age."—(Ger. 19.)

Maneat, quaeso, dūretque gentibus, si non amor nostri, at certo ōdium sui ; quando urgentibus impērii fātis, nihil jam praestare fortuna mājus potest quam hostium discordiam, —Heaven grant there may remain and abide in the nations, if not love of us, at least hatred of one another ; since, now that the destiny of the empire weighs upon us, Fortune can no longer confer on us anything better than strife amongst our foes.—(Ger. 33.)

Sanctiusque ac reverentius visum de actis deōrum credere quam sciret —It seemed more pious and devout to believe in the doings of the gods than to know about them.—(Ger. 34.)

§ 724. (D.) POETICAL COMPLEXION.—This is felt throughout in reading Tacitus ; and consists partly in the use of the "poetical" constructions which have been illustrated. The following points may be added :

- (1.) The use of abstract substantives in concrete sense :
as,

Titus ingens rerum fiducia accessit, *In Titus he found a great prop of his fortunes.*—(Hist. 4.)

Militiae = milites (Hist. 3, 18).

Exsilia = exsules (Hist. 1, 2).

Matrimonía = uxores (Ann. 2, 13).

- (2.) Hendiadys (see § 602) : as,

Nec ullum in barbaris saevitiae genus omisit ira et victoria,
Nor did the rage of the victors fail to practise any species of cruelty known among barbarians.—(Agr. 16.)

Super sexaginta millia . . . oblectationi oculisque ceciderunt,
More than 60,000 were slain for the gratification of our eyes.—(Ger. 33.)

Impetu et ira, *In a fit of passion.*—(Ger. 25.)

- (3.) A general use of elevated and figurative language :
as,

Glória frontis, *Pride of aspect (of the tall, handsome horns of cattle).*—(Ger. 5.)

Nudi aut sagulo leves, *Naked or lightly [clad in] a soldier's mantle.*—(ib. 6.)

Sera juvenum Venns, *Their youth are late in arriving at the age of puberty.*—(ib. 20.)

Silvam, | auguriis patrum et priscā formidine sacram [a Hexameter line], *A forest consecrated by the auguries of ancestors, and awe of old.*—(ib. 39.)

Domitae gentes, capti reges, et monstratus fatis, Vespasianus, *Tribes were subdued ; kings led captive ; and Vespasian pointed out (by the finger of) destiny.*—(Agr. 13.)

Urbs incendiis vastata : . . . plenum exsiliis mare ; infecti caedibus scopuli, *The capital was ravaged by fire ; the sea crowded with exiles ; the cliffs stained with carnage.*—Hist. 1, 2.)

Non tumultus, non quies : quale magni metus et magnae irae silentium est, *There was neither uproar nor calm ; like the stillness of deep dread or deep wrath.*—(Hist. 1, 40.)

N.B.—The book entitled *Dialogus de Oratoribus* differs greatly in style from the other works ascribed to Tacitus ; being characterised by a fluent rhetorical diction. It seems probable that it was one of the historian's juvenile productions.

PART III.—PROSODY.

§ 725. PROSODY treats of the *Quantity* of Syllables and *Metre*, or the laws of Verse.

Obs. *Prosody* is a Greek word (*προσῳδία*), which signifies literally the tone or accent of a syllable.

CHAPTER LXVII.—QUANTITY.

§ 726. The Quantity of a Syllable is either long (—), short (·), or doubtful (≈).

(A.) GENERAL RULES.

§ 727. All diphthongs are long : as, *ā*urum, *gold*, *pō*ena, *punishment*, *cū*, *to whom*.

EXCEPTION.—*Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel : as, *prae*-acutus, *sharpened at the end*.

Obs. 1. A vowel arising from a diphthong remains long : as, *oc*-cīdo, *to kill*, from *ea*edo, *to strike* ; *eon*-clūdo, *to shut up*, from *clau*do, *to shut*.

Obs. 2. Some Greek diphthongs are shortened : as, *pō*esis (*ποίησις*). *platē*a (*πλατεία*) as well as *platē*a.

§ 728. All contracted syllables are long. as, *cō*go from *cō*āgo, *to collect*, *bō*bus from *bō*vībus, *to or by oxen*, *jū*nior from *jū*vēnior, *younger*, *prū*dens from *prō*vīdens, *possessed of foresight*.

§ 729. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants, by a double consonant (*x*, *z*), or by *j* : as, *mē*nsa, *a table*, *dū*x, *a leader*, *Amā*zon, *an Amazon*, *ē*jus, *of him*.

Obs. In Prosody, quantity is for the sake of convenience regarded as belonging only to Vowels. Thus in the word *nū*x (*a nut*), root *nūc*-, the vowel *u* is said to be long (by position) : though strictly speaking, it is the syllable which is lengthened by the addition of the consonant *s*, the vowel retaining its quantity as in other cases ; *nūc*-i, *nūc*-em, *nūc*-es, etc.

EXCEPTION 1. *Bijugus, yoked two together, quadrijugus, yoked four together.*

Obs. 1. *Qu* is a single consonant: hence, *ŭqua, water. H* is a simple breathing: hence, *ŭdhuc, as yet.*

Obs. 2. A syllable is also long by position when one consonant ends a word, and another consonant begins the next word: as, in *mare, into the sea; fruitŭr vita, he enjoys life.*

Obs. 3. But if a word ends in a short vowel, and the following word begins with two consonants, the vowel *usually* remains short: as,

In solio Phoebus claris lucēntē smāragdis.—Ov.

Obs. 4. But a short vowel rarely stands before *sc, sm, sp, sq, and st.*

EXCEPTION 2. Before a mute and either of the liquids *l* or *r*, a vowel naturally short becomes doubtful: as, *dŭplex* or *dūplex, twofold, pātris* or *pātrīs, of a father.* It generally remains short before *tl, as, Ātlas; cl, as assēcla; and jl, as mellidŭus, flowing-with-honey.*

Obs. 1. It is only in Greek words that a vowel remains short before a mute and either of the liquids *m* or *n*: as, *Tēcnessa* or *Tēcnessa, Frēcne* or *Prēcne, cŷgnus* or *cŷgnus, a swan.*

Obs. 2. A vowel *naturally long* remains long before a mute and a liquid: as, *ŭeres* from *ŭer, sharp.*

Obs. 3. In composition, if one syllable ends with a mute, and the other begins with a liquid, the vowel is long by position: as, *ŭb-rus, not ŭb-rno, to overwhelm, sŭb-latŭm, not sŭb-latŭm, lifted up.*

§ 730. A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: as, *pŭus, pious, flēo, to weep, pŭer, a boy*: or if *h* intervenes between the vowels, as *trāho, vēho.*

EXCEPTIONS. The following vowels are long before another vowel: :

1. The *a* in the old Genitive of the First Declension: as, *aquāi.*
2. The *a* and *e* of proper names in *-aius, -eius*: as, *Caius, Pompēius* (*Cājus, Pompējus*).
3. The *e* in the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: as, *diēi*: but *rēi* and *fidēi* except in archaic poets.
4. The *e* in the Interjection *ēhen.*
5. The *i* in the Genitive *alius* (but always short in *alterŭs*). In the other Genitives in *ius*, the *i* is long in prose, but doubtful in poetry: as, *illŭs, ipsŭs, uniŭs.*
6. The *i* in *fio* when not followed by *r*: as, *fŭo, fiebam, fiam, but fierem, fieri.*
7. The *i* in *dia* (*δία*), *divine.*
8. The *i* in *Diana* is doubtful: *Dŭana* and *Dŭana.*
9. The *o* in the Interjection *ohe* is doubtful: *ŭhe* and *ŭhe.*
10. All vowels long in the original Greek words: as, *ŭēr* (*ἄηρ*), *Aenēas* (*Αἰνείας*), *Alexandria* (*Ἀλεξάνδρεια*) *Brisēis* (*Βρισηΐς*).

§ 731. *Radical Vowels*.—No rules can be given for the quantity of Root Vowels, which is only to be learnt from the Dictionary: as, *lēvis*, *light*, *lēvis*, *smooth*, *lēgo*, *I pick*, *read*, *lēgo*, *I depute*, etc.

§ 732. The Root Vowel has sometimes been lengthened in the Present Tense: as, *dūco*, *I lead*, root *dūc* (compare *dux*, *dūcis*: *ēdūco*, *I educate*); *dīco*, *I say*, root *dīc* (compare *index*, *-dīcis*, *mālēdīcus*, etc.).

§ 733. The Vowels used in connecting two or more roots are short: as, *rēgīfūgium* (name of a festival), *rēgīficius*, *kingly* (*rex*, *fūgo*, *fācio*); *ōpīfēr*, *aid-bringing* (*ops*, *fēro*); *lānīger*, *wool-bearing* (*lāna*, *gēro*); *magnīlōquus*, *grandly speaking* (*magnus*, *lōquor*), etc.

Obs. In *levāmentum*, *instrāmentum*, *lenīmentum*, etc., *a*, *u*, *i* are Stem Vowels.

§ 734. Derivative or Compound words retain the quantity of the words from which they are derived: as,

gēr-ēbam, *gēr-ens*, *lānī-gēr*, from *gēr-o*.

rēg-ius, *rēg-īna*, *rēg-ī-fūgium*, from *rex*, *rēg-is*.

EXCEPTIONS: <i>cūrūlis</i> 'sella',	<i>the curule chair</i> , from <i>currus</i> (?)
<i>tēgūla</i> ,	<i>a tile</i> , .. <i>tēgo</i> .
<i>sēdes</i> ,	<i>a seat</i> , .. <i>sēd-eo</i> .
<i>lūcerna</i> ,	<i>a lantern</i> , .. <i>lūc-eo</i> .
<i>sēcūs</i> ,	<i>ath-erise</i> , .. <i>sēcus</i> .
<i>prōnūba</i> ,	<i>match-maker</i> , .. <i>nūbo</i> .
<i>jūcundus</i>	<i>pleasant</i> , .. <i>jūvo</i> .
<i>hūmānus</i> ,	<i>human</i> , .. <i>homo</i> .
<i>sōpor</i> ,	<i>sleep</i> , .. <i>sōpio</i> .
<i>pējēro</i> and <i>dējēro</i> ,	compounds of <i>jūro</i> .

with some others.

Obs. 1. Some exceptions are rather apparent than real: as, *index*, *-dīcis*, *an informer*; *prædīco*, *I affirm*; *mālēdīcus*, *evil-speaking* (all with *i* short, compared with *dīco*, *I say*, *addīco*, *I assign to*, etc. Here all the words must alike be referred to the root *dīc*, which is lengthened in the Present Tense of *dīco*, but keeps its natural quantity in the other derivatives.

Obs. 2. In *cognitum*, *agnitum* (from *nōtum*), the Prefix has led to the abbreviation of the Vowel. Compare *cōpio*, *accōpio*, etc., *a* being a fuller vowel sound than *i*.

§ 735. In dissyllabic Perfects and Supines the first syllable is long: as,

<i>lāvo</i> ,	<i>lāvi</i> ,	<i>lōtum</i> ,	<i>to wash</i> .
<i>video</i> ,	<i>vīdī</i> ,	<i>vīsum</i> ,	<i>to see</i> .
<i>mōveo</i> ,	<i>mōvī</i> ,	<i>mōtum</i> ,	<i>to move</i> .
<i>jūvo</i> ,	<i>jūvī</i> ,	<i>jūtum</i> ,	<i>to assist</i> .

EXCEPTIONS. 1. A vowel before a vowel remains short: as, *rūi*.

2. The following Perfects have the first syllable short :

Bibi, dēdi, fūi, tūli,
Stēti, stiti, fidī, scēdi.

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

3. The following Supines have the first syllable short :

Dātum, rātum, sātum, rūtum,
Ītum, cītum, lītum, sītum (quītum).

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

From *sto* comes *stātum* : from *sisto* comes *stātum*.

§ 736. The first syllable of the reduplicated Perfect is short : as *pōposci* from *posco*, *to demand* ; *tētīgi* from *tango*, *to touch* ; *cēcīdi* from *caedo*, *to cut*.

§ 737. The prefix *pro* is short in *prōcella*, *a storm*, *prōcul*, *far off*, *prōfanus*, *profane*, *prōfestus*, *not kept as a holiday*, *prōficiscor*, *to set out*, *prōfecto*, *truly*, *prōfiteor*, *to profess*, *prōfugio*, *to flee to a distance*, *prōfundus*, *deep*, *prōfundo*, *to pour forth* (with a few exceptions, *e.g.* : “ *Has postquam moesto prōfudit pectore voces*,” *Cat.*), *prōnepos*, *great-grandson* (but *prōnepos* once in *Sidonius*), *prōpitius*, *propitious*, *prōtervus*, *wanton* : it is doubtful in *prōcuro*, *to manage another's affairs*, *prōpago*, *layer*, *offspring*, *prōpago*, *to propagate*, *prōpino*, *to drink to another*, *prōpello*, *to push forward* (*ō* in *Lucr.* only) : it is long in all other words : as, *prōcedo*, *to go forward*, *prōcurro*, *to run forward*, &c.

Obs. *Prōpago*, in sense of *layer* ; *prōpago*, *offspring* (*Virg.*).

§ 738. *Di* is short only in *dīrimo* (*disimo*), *to separate*, and *dīsertus*, *eloquent*.

§ 739. *Ne* is short only in *nēque*, *neither* ; *nēqueo*, *to be unable* ; *nēfas* (and its derivatives), *unlawful* ; *nēfandus*, *abominable* : long in other words, as *nēmo* (*ne-hemo* or *homo*), *no one* ; *nēquicquam*, *in vain*.

§ 740. *O* for *ob* is short in *ōmitto*, *to let go by*, and *ōperio*, *to shut up*.

§ 741. *Si* is short in *sīquidem*.

§ 742. *Re* is always short, except *rēfert* (= *rem fert*), *it concerns* (but *rēfert* from *rēforo*).

§ 743. *Ve* is long, except in *vēhemens* (= *vē-mens*), *forcible*.

§ 744. Monosyllabic words ending in a vowel are long : as, *sī*, *tū*, *tē*, *mē*, *sē*, *nē*, *ē*, *dē*.

EXCEPTIONS. The enclitics are short : as, *quē*, *vē*, *nē*, *cē*, *tē* (*tutē*) *psē* (*repsē*), *ptō* (*snoptē*) : *quā* (*usu*, preceded by *sī*, *num*, etc.) *Nom. Sing. Fem.* and *Nom. Acc. Pl. Neut.* from *quis*.

(B.) RULES RESPECTING FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. FINAL VOWELS.

§ 745. *a* is *long* :

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the First Declension : as, mensā.
 2. In the Vocative Sing. of the First Declension of Substantives in *as* and *es* (excepting *tes*) : as, Aeneā, Anchisā.
- Obs.* But those in *es* (excepting *tes*) more frequently make *ē* : see § 746, 2.
3. In the Imperative Active of the First Conjugation : as, amā.
 4. In Prepositions, Adverbs, and Numerals : as ā (āb), contrā, suprà; anteā, frustrā; trigintā, quinquagintā.

(But see next paragraph : 4.)

a is *short* :

1. In the Nominative and Vocative Sing. of the First Declension : as, mensā
2. In the Voc. of Greek nouns in *tes*, as Orestā.
3. In the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural of all Neuters : as, regnā, mariā, cornuā.
4. In the Adverbs itā, postea, the Conjunction quia, and the Interjection ejā.

Obs. *a* in Acc. Sing. from a Gk. word in *eus* is doubtful : as Thesē.§ 746. *e* is *long* :

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the Fifth Declension : as, diē; and consequently in hodiē, quarē. Also in the contracted forms of the Genitive and Dative : as, fidē (= fidēi).
2. In Greek words in *e* of the First Declension : as, epitomē, Anchisiadē (Voc. of Anchisiades); and in Greek Neuters Plural contracted : as, Tempē, ectē.

3. In the Imperative Active 2nd Person Sing. of the Second Conjugation : as, *monē*. But the following are doubtful : *vidē*, *valē*, *cavē* ; and sometimes (esp. in the comic poets), *habē*, *tacē*, *manē*, *jubē*.

Obs. In conversation *care* appears to have been pronounced *cau* : cf. Cic. Div. 2, 40.

4. In the Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declension : as *doctē*, *aegrē* : with the exception of *benē*, *malē*, *supernē*, *infernē* (in Lucr. and Auson.), *internē*.

5. In the Adverbs *ferē*, *fermē*, and the Interjection *ohē*.

Obs. Concerning monosyllables in *e*, see § 744.

e is short in all other words : as, *dominē*, *regē* (subs. and verb), *fuerē*, *impunē*.

§ 747. *i* is generally long : as, *puerī*, *corporī*, *dieī*, *audī*, *docuistī*, *vigintī*.

i is short :

1. In *niſī*, *quasi*, *sicubi*, *necubi*, and in the very rare form *cūi* for *cū*.
2. In the Dative and Vocative of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension : as, Dat. *Paridī*, Voc. *Alexī*.

i is doubtful in *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ibī*, *ubī*.

Obs. *ūtiq̄ue* always ; but always *ibidem*, *ubiq̄ue*. We find also *cūliq̄ue*.

§ 748. *o* is mostly common : as, *amō*, *amatō*, *leō*, *octō*.

But *o* is long :

1. In Datives and Ablatives of the Second Declension : as, *dominō*, *deō*, *magnō*.
2. When it represents the Greek ω : as, *Didō*, *Plutō*.
3. In monosyllables : as, *dō*, *prō*.

o is short in *egō*, *duō*, *modō*, *only*, *putō*, *I think*, and *cedō*, *tell me* (both used parenthetically), *nesciō*, *I know not* (in the phrase *nesciō quis*), and *quando* when compounded with *quidem* : as, *quandōquidem*.

§ 749. *u* is always long : as, *cornū*, *auditū*.

II. FINAL CONSONANTS.

§ 750. *as* is almost always *long*: *as*, *mensās*, *civitās*, *laudās*.

as is *short* only:

1. In *anās*, *anātis*, *a duck*.
2. Acc. Plur. of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension: *as*, *Arcadās*. And some Greek Noms. *as Iliās*, &c.

Obs. In *vas* (*vādis*) the Nom. is probably doubtful.

§ 751. *es* is almost always *long*: *as*, *vulpēs*, *a fox*, *leonēs*.

es is only *short*:

1. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing. of some dissyllabic and polysyllabic Substantives in *es*, which have the penultimate short in the Genitive: *as*, *milēs*, *ītis*, *interprēs*, *ētis*: and *adj.* *praepēs*, *ētis*; but *mercēs*, *ēdis*; *pēs*, *pēdis*; *abiēs*, *abiētis*.
2. In the Nom. and Voc. Plur. of Greek Substantives: *as*, *Arcadēs*: also *Hippomanēs* (Nom. Sing. Neut.), *Demosthenēs* (Voc. Sing.).
3. From *esse*, *to be*; *as*, *es*, *adēs*, *potēs*.
4. In the Preposition *penēs*.

§ 752. *is* is usually *short*: *as*, *navīs*, *lapidīs*, *regīs*, *regerīs*.

But *is* is *long*:

1. In Dat. and Abl. Plural of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns: *as*, *musīs*, *dominīs* (contr. from *musa* + *is*, *domino* + *is*: see §§ 17, 19. *Obs.*), *nobīs*, *vobīs*.
2. In Acc. Plur. of Third Declension (archaic for *es*); *as*, *omnīs* (or *omneīs*) for *omnēs*.
3. In Second Person Sing. of Present Indic. of Fourth Conjugation: *as*, *audīs* (= *audi* + *is*: see § 104).
4. Also in the contracted forms *velīs*, *nolīs*, *malīs*; *sīs*, *possīs*.

Obs. 1. In Fut. Perf. Indicative, the *is* of Second Person Sing. is common, as *fuctīs*.

Obs. 2. Monosyllables are mostly long: *as*, *vis* (noun and verb), *glīs*: but *is*, *quīs* (pron.), are short.

§ 753. **os** is almost always *long*: as, puerōs, honōs (ōris), arbōs (ōris). (But arbōr, honōr, etc.: see § 760.)

os is only *short*:

1. In the Nom. Sing. (archaic) of the Second Declension: as, avōs servōs (= avus, servus); see § 19. *Obs.*
2. In impōs (ōtis), compōs (ōtis).
3. In the Gen. Sing. of Greek Substantives: as, Thetidōs: and in some Greek Noms., as Argōs (nent.): besides ōs, ossis, already mentioned.

§ 754. **us** is usually *short*: as, dominūs, gradūs, sumūs.

It is *long* only:

1. In the Nom. Sing. of the Third Declension, which have long *u* in the penultimate of the Genitive: as, virtūs, ūtis: but pecūs, pecūdis.
2. In the Gen. Sing., and Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. of the Fourth Declension: as, manūs.
3. In contractions from the Greek, as Sapphūs: but we have polypūs, Oedipūs, from ποῦς.

§ 755. **ys** in some Greek words is *long*: as Phorcys, Erinnys: in Tethys it is common (Tethys).

§ 756. Final syllables in **b, d, t** are short: as, āb, apūd, amāt.

EXCEPTIONS. Some (rare) contracted forms of verbs ending in **t**: as, irritāt for irritavit (Lucr. 1, 71): see § 110, 1.

§ 757. **c**. Final syllables in **c** are mostly short: as, nēc, donēc.

EXCEPTIONS. Lūc, milk; hūc (adv.), here (the pronoun hūc is doubtful); hūc, hither; sic, thus: the Imperatives dīc, dūc (shortened from dīce, dūce). Fāc is short (for fācē).

§ 758. **l**. Final syllables in **l** are short: as, semēl, animāl.

EXCEPTIONS. Monosyllables: as, sōl, sāl, nil.

§ 759. **n**. Final syllables in **n** are short: as, carmēn, tamēn, ūn.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Monosyllables: as, rēn (a kidney), sūn (= ai non, but if not), splēn (the spleen), ēn (to), nōn (not).

2. Greek Accusatives from nouns in **as** and **es** (First Decl.): as, Aeneān, Anchisēn, Penelopēn.

3. Greek Nominatives of the Third Declension: as, Laec-lacmon, Titān, Actaeōn.

§ 760. *r*. Final syllables in *r* are short: *as*, *puēr*, *vīr*, *sempēr*.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Most monosyllables: *as*, *fūr* (*a thief*), *pār* (subs. and adjct.), *lār*, *vēr*, *cūr*. (But *cōr*, *the heart*, is short.)

2. A few Substantives in *er* taken from the Greek: *as*, *aēr* (*ἀήρ*), *the air*; *aethēr* (*αἰθήρ*), *the sky*.

N.B. *Celtibēr* is common. (Mart.)

CHAPTER LXVIII.—METRE.

§ 761. RHYTHM (*ῥίθμος*, *ῥυθμός*) consists in the recurrence of accent or stress of voice at regulated intervals; as in the following lines:

Quādrupē | dāntē pū|trēm sōnī|tū quātīt | ūngulā | cāmpūm.—Virg.

Pāssēr | dēlicī|āē mē|āē pu|ēllae.—Catullus.

Flūmīnā | cōnstītē|rīnt ā|cūtō.—Hor.

§ 762. This stress of the voice is called **Arsis** (*ἄρσις*, *ictus*), and is denoted by the sign '. It nearly always falls on a long syllable, or on two short syllables, representing one long: as, *vīdimus*, *ārma*, *tēnūia*, *dēerat*. The unaccented syllable is called **Thesis** (*θέσις*), and is denoted by the sign `: as, *ārmā*.

Obs. Sometimes, though rarely, the Arsis falls upon a short syllable, which is thereby made long: as, *Itāllam* (Virg. *Æn.* I. 2). The Grammarians call this *Diastolē*.

§ 763. The subdivisions or measures of a metrical line are called *feet* (*pēdēs*): thus the first of the above lines contains *six* feet; the second *five*; and the third *four*.

The following are all the feet which have distinctive names:

1. OF TWO SYLLABLES.

~ ~ Pyrrhichius (Pyrrhic)... *pātēr*, *bōnē*.

~ ♭ Iambus *ādēst*, *mēō*.

♭ ~ Tröchaeus (Trochee).... *ārmā*, *flēbīt*.

-- Spondēus (Spondee)..... *ōrās*, *ēmī*.

2. OF THREE SYLLABLES.

~ ~ ~ Tribrāchys *hōmīnās*, *rēcīpē*.

♭ ~ ~ Dactylus (Dactyl)..... *ōmnīā*, *fēcīmūs*.

— — —	Anapaestus (Anapaest) .	<i>ābēō, lēgērēs.</i>
— — —	Amphibrachys	<i>āmābūt, diēbūs.</i>
— — —	Creticus or Amphimacer, .	<i>ēxplēō, sērviūtūs.</i>
— — —	Bacchius	<i>āmicōs, sūpēllēx.</i>
— — —	Antibacchius	<i>aūdīrē, rēxissē.</i>
— — —	Molossus	<i>haūsistī, divīnaē.</i>

3. OF FOUR SYLLABLES.

— — — —	Procelousmaticus	<i>inītiā, cēlērītēr.</i>
— — — —	Ionicus a Minore	<i>ōnērābūt, gēnērōsī.</i>
— — — —	———— a Majoro	<i>ūlcīscītūr, sōlāmīnē.</i>
— — — —	Choriambus	<i>ērīpiūt, simpliciās.</i>
— — — —	Antispastus	<i>inēchaustūs, pērillūstrīs.</i>
— — — —	Paeon Primus	<i>ēxīgūūs, rēspīcīt.</i>
— — — —	———— Secundus	<i>ōbēdiēt, dōmēsticūs.</i>
— — — —	———— Tertius	<i>inīmicūs, pēpālērē.</i>
— — — —	———— Quartus	<i>inītiō, mīsericōrs.</i>
— — — —	Epitritus Primus	<i>lūlōrāndō, salūtāntēs.</i>
— — — —	———— Secundus	<i>ādministrāns, impēratrīs.</i>
— — — —	———— Tertius	<i>ductōritās, intēlligēs.</i>
— — — —	———— Quartus	<i>assērtātōr, infīnitūs.</i>

Obs. Two Iambi, Trochees or Spondees together, are sometimes called Dilambus, Ditrochaeus, and Dispondeus respectively.

§ 764. Verses are called Monometer, Dimeter, Trimeter, Tetrameter, Pentameter, or Hexameter, according to the number of measures (*μέτρα*) which they contain.

Obs. A Dactyl or Choriambus constitute each one measure: an Anapaest, Iambus, or Trochee only a half-measure.

Hence a line consisting of six Dactyls is called *Hexameter* (ἑξ, six); while a line consisting of the same number of Iambi or Trochees, is called *Trimeter* (τρῆς, three); and a line consisting of four Anapaests, *Dimeter* (δις, twice).

§ 765. *Elision* (έλλισις) or *Synaloepha* (συναλοιφή) is the striking-out of a vowel, or a syllable ending with *m*, at the end of a word, when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*, and is indicated by the sign ~: as,

Contestāre omnes (reud, cōntēs|ār'ōmni|ās)

Mō mīserūm exclāuāt (mō mīser'|ēxclām|āt).

Pêrque hîēmēs (pêrqu'hîē|mēs).

Ūmbrârūm hæec sēdēs (ūmbrâr'|hæec sēd|ēs).

Obs. 1. Monosyllabic words are rarely elided, and least of all at the beginning of a verse : as,

Sî ad vitulam spectas.—Virg.

Obs. 2. The Elision of a long vowel before a short one is rare : as,

intimū āmore.

Obs. 3. The Elision of an iambus is avoided : as,

disce mēō exemplo.

Obs. 4. If *est* follows a final vowel, the *e* of *est* is elided, and not the final vowel : thus,

nostra est, nostri est, nostrum est, should be written and read
nostra'st, nostri'st, nostrum'st.

Obs. 5. Sometimes a final long vowel remains in *Hiatus*, and is not elided : as,

Ter sunt | conat|I im|ponere | Peliō | Ossam.—Virg.

Obs. 6. The Interjections ô, heu, ah, proh, are not elided : as,

Ō pater | ō hūmān|uni di|vumque aet|erna pot|estas.—Virg.

Āh ĕgō | non alit|er trist|es e|vincere | morbos.—Tib.

Obs. 7. Occasionally a long vowel or diphthong at the end of a word becomes short before a word beginning with a vowel : as,

Te Cory|dōn, ō Āl|exi ; tra|hit sua | quemque vol|uptas.—Virg.

Īnsūlāē | Ioni|o in mag|no quas | dira Ce|laeno.—Virg.

N.B. This is an imitation of the Greek usage.

Obs. 8. Earlier writers sometimes elide *s* : as,

Nam si de nihilo fierent, ex omnibu' rebus.—Lucr.

§ 766. *Synaerēsis* (συναίρεσις) is the combination of two vowels into one, and is indicated by the sign \frown , \smile . It is admissible only in the case of words which metrical laws would otherwise exclude, and more especially in the case of proper names at the end of a verse. as,

Seu len|to fue|rint al|vēria | vimine | texta.—Virg.

Caucase|asque refert volu|eres fur|tumque Pro|methēi.—Virg.

So Orpheā, Typhoēā.

Synaeresis is chiefly found in the following words.
dēinde, prōinde, abiēte, ariēte, dēesse and its derivatives, antēhāc, and in the whole verb antēire.

§ 767. *Diaerēsis* (διαίρεσις) is the separation of a diphthong into two syllables : as, pictai.

I. DACTYLIC HEXAMETER METRE.

§ 768. The Dactylic Hexameter, usually called simply Hexameter, is employed especially in epic poetry, whence it is also termed the Heroic Verse. It consists properly of six dactyls ($\text{—} \cup \cup$), the last of which is shortened by one syllable, so that the place of the last syllable is supplied by a trochee ($\text{—} \cup$), or, as the final syllable of each verse is common, by a spondee ($\text{—} \text{—}$). Instead of the first four dactyls, spondees may be used, but the fifth foot is regularly a dactyl. Hence, the following is the scheme of the verse:

1	2	3	4	5	6
$\text{—} \cup \cup$	$\text{—} \cup \cup$	$\text{—} \cup \cup$	$\text{—} \cup \cup$	$\text{—} \cup \cup$	$\text{—} \text{—}$
$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$

§ 769. The following are examples of the different combinations of the first four feet:

1. *Four Dactyls.*

- (a) Rádlit Itér líquídúm cēlērēs nēquē commovet alas.

2. *One Spondee and Three Dactyls.*

- (b) Īmpēnsūquē súi pōtērít sūpērare cruoris,
 (c) Tēmporā lābūntúr tātītísquē sēnescimus annis,
 (d) Nītīmúr ín vētītúm sēmpēr cūpimusque negata,
 (e) Asplētúnt ōcūlís sūpēri mōrtalia justis;

3. *Two Spondees and Two Dactyls.*

- (f) Dúm virēs ānníquē sinúnt tōlērato labores,
 (g) Quárúm quāe mēdiá'st nōn ést hābitabilis aestu,
 (h) Cūrvāríquē mánús et adúncōs crescer' in unguēs,
 (i) At pātēr út tērrās mūdúmquē rūbescero vidit,
 (k) NūmInā nēe spērní sinē poenā nostra sinamus,
 (l) Cōntīgērānt rāpídās limōsī Phasidos undas;

4. *Three Spondees and One Dactyl.*

- (m) Nātūram expēllās fūrēū tāmēn usque recurret,
 (n) Ut dēsint virēs tāmēn ést laudanda voluntas,
 (o) Aut prōlēsē vōlūnt aut dēlectare poetae,
 (p) Pártiārlūnt mōntēs nāscētūr ridiculus mus;

5. *Four Spondees.*

- (q) Ēx ūequō cūptis ardēbānt montibus ambo.

§ 770. Sometimes, but rarely, the fifth foot is a spondee, but then the fourth foot is a dactyl. Such a verse is called **Spondæic**. It usually concludes with a word of four syllables or one syllable: as,

Constitit atque oculis Phrygia Ægimnâ circumspexit:
 Cars deum soboles, magnûm Jovis incrementum:
 Cum patribus populosque, penatibus et magnis dis.

Obs. Very rarely indeed do we find such a line as,

Aut levīs pœças lentō dūcunt argento.—Virg. *Æn.* VII. 631.

§ 771. Every Hexameter verse must have at least one **Caesura** (from *caedo*, “to cut”) which is a division of the foot, so that one part of it is in one word, and another part of it in another word. Hence the following line has five **Caesuras**:

Dūce || eris || felix || multos || numerabis || amicos.

§ 772. The **Caesura** may be either **strong** or **weak**. The **strong Caesura** is when the foot is cut after its first *long* syllable: as,

Arma virūmq; canō || Trojæ qui primus ab oris.

The **weak Caesura** is when the foot is cut after the first *short* syllable of a Dactyl: as,

Ô passi graviōra || dabit deus his quoque finem.

§ 773. The **Caesuras** are named after the number of the half feet in Greek (*ἡμι-* and *μῆρος*): hence, **Triemimeral**, after the first three half feet; **Penthemimeral**, after the first five half feet; **Hephthemimeral**, after the first seven half feet; **Ennehemimeral**, after the first nine half feet.

Obs. The two short syllables of the Dactyl are counted as one half foot.

§ 774. Every Hexameter verse has either the **Penthemimeral**, or **Hephthemimeral Caesura**. The **Penthemimeral strong Caesura** is the most common. The **Hephthemimeral** is generally used along with the **Triemimeral**: as

Fēma malūm || quo nōn aliūd || velocius ūllum.

§ 775. Besides the **Pause** of the **Caesura**, a Hexameter usually has another pause, when the foot terminates with the word. Thus, in the following line, there are two pauses in addition to the **Penthemimeral Caesura**: as,

Tāntæ | mōlis erāt || Romānam | cōndere gēntem.

§ 776. The last word of a Hexameter line usually consists of either two or three syllables. But a foreign word of four or more syllables is occasionally found in this position; especially if difficult to introduce elsewhere. Compare *Virg. Aen.* 3, 680 (*cŷpā | rissī*); *Bucol.* 8, 1 (*Alphēsi | boei*); etc.

Obs. 1. A monosyllable may end a line if closely connected with another preceding it. Hence such endings as *laus ēst* (*Hor.*), *ūsa ēst* (*Virg.*), are admissible.

Obs. 2. Also a single monosyllable may be chosen to end a line, with a view to a particular effect: as,

Vértitur intéreā coelum, ét ruit ōceanó Nox (*Virg.*).

§ 777. It is not usual except for the conveyance of a particular idea, to make the first four feet of a Hexameter exclusively dactyls or exclusively spondees. An accumulation of dactyls produces a rapid movement: an accumulation of spondees a heavy movement. These opposite effects are designedly produced by Virgil in the following lines:

Quādrupedānte putrēm sonitū quatit ūngula cāmpum.

Illi intēr sese magnā vi brāchia tollunt.

§ 778. *Hypermeter*.—Lines are thus designated which have a syllable over the full measure (*ὑπὲρ μέτρον*). But this is only allowed when the redundant syllable ends in a vowel (or *m*), and the following line begins with a vowel: as,

*Inseritur vero ex fetu nucis arbūtus hōrrida,
Et steriles, &c.—Virg.*

*Janque iter emensi turres ac tēctā Lātīnōrum
Ardua ceruebant, &c.—Virg.*

Obs. In Virgil, the redundant syllable is frequently the enclitic *-que*.

II. DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

§ 779. The Dactylic Pentameter is found only in conjunction with a Hexameter, the distich thus formed being called an Elegiac couplet: as,

*Pōstera lūx oritur. Līguis animisq̄ue favēte,
Nūnc dicēda bonā || nūnt bonā verba dicē.—Ov.*

It has the following scheme:

— — — | — — — | — || — — — | — — — | —

Hence it appears :

1. That it consists of two members, separated by a Pause (the Penthemimeral).
2. That each member consists of two *entire* feet, originally Dactyls, followed by an imperfect or *half* foot, consisting of a monosyllable. ($2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$. Hence the name Pentameter.)
3. That the first two Dactyls only may be replaced by Spondees.
4. That it has six arses, but only four theses (§ 762).
5. That the last syllable of the verse is common.

Obs. The best poets, however, generally take care that a short syllable at the close shall end with a consonant : as,

Vix Priamús tantí || tótaque Trója fuff.—Ov.

§ 780. The two Dactyls in the latter half of the verse are unalterable : the first half admits of the following four varieties :

1. Two Dactyls : as,
Crédidímús gēpērí || nómīnībúsque tuis :
2. A combination of a Spondee and a dactyl : as,
Trájectám gládió || mórte períre juvát :
Cúm mālā pēr lōngús || cónvaluere morás : (most usual form) :
3. Two spondees : as,
Súprēmám bellís || ímposuísse manum.

§ 781. The following are the principal rules observed by the most accurate poets in the structure of Pentameter Verse :

- (1.) The ending of the line is regularly a dissyllable.

Obs. But Catullus, Propertius, and others employ quadrisyllabic, and, *less frequently*, trisyllabic endings.

- (2.) A monosyllable at the close of either half of the line is avoided.

- (3.) Elision is avoided both at the end of the first half and altogether in the second.

Obs. The best model for Elegiac Verse is Ovid.

(For further particulars see Principia Lat. Part III.)

III. TRIMETER IAMBIC (ACATALECTIC) VERSE.

§ 782. The Romans called this Verse *Senarius* from its six feet; it originally consisted of three double-iambi (*ἑπιποδίου ιαμβικάι*), but amongst the best poets it has the following form:—

1 2 3 4 5 6
 — — | — — | — || — | — — | — — | — — |

§ 783. Hence it appears that the *odd* places (1, 3, 5) admit spondees instead of iambi: the 5th foot being regularly a spondee. The principal caesura is the penthemimeral: as,

Mētús pavórquē || fúnus ét frëndéns dolōr,
 Prōnást timóri || sémper ín pējús fidēs.

Obs. A Verse is called *Catalectic* (*καταλήγω, to leave off*), when the last foot wants one or sometimes two syllables; *acatalectic*, when it is complete; *hypercatalectic*, when there is a syllable over.

§ 784. As the long syllable can be resolved into two short (except in the case of the last syllable of the verse), we often find

- (A.) A tribrach in the 2nd and 4th place.
- (B.) An anapaest or a dactyl in the 5th place.
- (C.) A tribrach, an anapaest, or a dactyl in the 1st and 3rd place: as,

Quae poénā mǎnēat mémet ét sedés scio ;
 Hic laéva frénis dóctā mōdērandís manus ;
 Pyrrhí manú mactétur ét tūmúlum riget,
 Tu tú malórum máchinátrix fácinorum ;
 Ān āllíqua poénæ párs meae ígnotást mihí,
 Lǎcēraeve fíxis únguibús venaé fluant,
 Quín pōtíus íra cóncitúm pectús doma ;
 Fas ómne cédāt ābēat éxpulsús pudor,
 Evásit ét pēnētrále fúnestum áttigit,
 Parum ípse fidēs mīhímet ín tutó tua.

Obs. 1. The complete scheme of Iambic Trimeter, as used by Horace in his Epodes, is given below: § 807.

Obs. 2. Iambic *Dimeter* (acatalectic) corresponds with Iambic Trimeter, minus the first measure. See below, § 802, *Obs.*; 807.

§ 785. Very rarely both the long syllables in the same foot are resolved so as to make a proceleusmatic (— — —) : as,

Pāvēt ānīmus, ārtus hōrridūs quassāt tremor.

Obs. 1. By the less exact poets a spondee instead of an iambus is introduced into all the places except the 6th foot : as,

• *Ut mōs ēst vūlgi pāssim ēt cērtatīm ruit.*

Obs. 2. We sometimes find even in good authorities examples of the original pure *iambi* : as,

*Sābīnūs illē quēm vīdēbīs hōspītēs,
Gēnēr sōcērquē pērdīdīstīs ōmnīā.*

In *Hor. Epod. 16*, the *even* lines consist of pure *iambi* throughout.

§ 786. *Choliambus*.—A kind of *limping* movement is given to the *Senarius*, by substituting a trochee for an Iambus in the sixth foot. Such a verse is called *choliambus* (*haliambus*), *seazon* (σκαζω, *to limp*), or *senarius claudus* (Gr. χαλός, *limping senarius*). Being at the end of a line, a spondee (— —) may be used for the trochee. The scheme is,

1 2 3 4 5 6
 — — | — — | — — || — — | — — | — — | — —
*Quae tū volēbās || nec puēlla nōlēbat,
 An aémulātūr || improbi jocós Phaedrī.*

The *iambus* is indispensable in the 2nd, 4th, and 5th feet.

Obs. 1. The *choliambus* is only adapted for use in short poems.

Obs. 2. Rarely, instead of the penthemimeral caesura, we find a principal pause or verse-caesura at the end of the *iambus* in the 2nd place and a foot-caesura before the fourth *arsis*, as,

Quodeūmq; agīt || renīdet hūc habēt mōrbum.

Obs. 3. In this scheme the resolution of a long syllable into two short is allowed only in the commencing syllable and in those on which the *arsis* falls in the first four feet : examples are,

*Et cūpīt et īstat ēt p̄cātūr ēt dōnat,
 Et mūlta frāgrat tēsta sēnīb; aūtūmnis,
 Āquīlsq; sīmīles fūcēre nōctuās quāerīs.*

N.B.—The *seazon* is also called *Hipponactius* from its reputed inventor *Hippōnax*, and was employed in Greek by *Babrius* in his *Æsopian fabies*.

IV.—TROCHAIC TETRAMETER (CATALECTIC).

§ 787. *Còmic Tetrameter*.—This verse, also called *Quadratus* from having four measures (see § 764), *Octonarius Catalecticus*

from having eight feet all but a syllable, and *Septenarius* from having only seven *full* feet, has the following scheme:—

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
 — — | — — | — — | — — || — — | — — | — — | —

Pérecrēpā pūgnām Pōpilli || fāctā Cōrnēlī cānē,
 Nulla vōx hūmāna cōnstāt || absque sēptem lītteris.

§ 788. Consequently it has a pause or verse-caesura exactly in the middle, *i.e.* before the fifth *arsis*. In the 1st, 3rd, 5th, and 7th feet it preserves the pure trochee (which, however, may be resolved into a tribrach); but in the 2nd, 4th, and 6th feet it admits, instead of the trochee, a spondee (which can be resolved into a dactyl, an anapaest, or occasionally a proceleusmaticus); and the last syllable of the verse is common: as,

Rōtā rēsistat mēmbrā tórquens || tāngāt Íxiōn hūmum,
 Méque ōvāntem scēlērē tānto || rāpīte In áltos gúrgitēs,
 Ímplūm rāpīte átquē mērsum || prēmītē pērpētāís mālís,
 Úndā mīseris grātā Lēthes || vósquē tórpentēs lācūs.

V.—ANAPAESTIC DIMETER.

§ 789. The Anapaestic Dimeter Acatalectic Verso consists regularly of *four* anapaests (which are interchangeable with spondees), and has always a principal caesura exactly in the middle of the line: we obtain, therefore, the following varieties:—

1. *Four Anapaests.*

(a.) Fāglāt trēpīdī || cōmēs éxīlī.

2. *One Spondee and Three Anapaests.*

(b.) Jām nōn stābīlīs || rūēt áretōphýlāx,

(c.) Sōlītao mūndī || pērlērō vīcēs,

(d.) Phrýglūmqū nēmūs || mātρίς Cýbēlēs,

(e.) Áltárquē sītīs || lātice íngestō.

3. *Two Spondees and Three Anapaests.*

(f.) Signūm cēlsī glāciālē pōlī,

- (g.) Jām caerūlēis ēvēctūs āquīs,
 (h.) Intēr sūbītōs stētīt hōrrōrēs,
 (i.) Plācidūs fessūm lenisque fōvē.
 (k.) Vōlūcēr mātris gēnūs Āstrācae,
 (l.) Sēnīs īn jūgūlō telūm Pýrrhī.

4. *Three Spondees and One Anapaest.*

- (m.) Lāxōs aurā cōmplēntē sīnūs,
 (n.) Ērrāt cūrsū lēvis īncertō,
 (o.) Hīc quī nitidō taurūs cōrnū,
 (p.) Pātēr ō rerūm pōrtūs vitac.

5. *Four Spondees.*

- (q.) Nūnc vélōcēs figīs dāmās.

The spondees in the 1st and 3rd feet (but not elsewhere) may be resolved into dactyls (which dactyls, however, must not be immediately followed by an anapaest), so that we obtain the following:

6. *One Dactyl and Three Spondees.*

- (r.) Nōn cāpīt ūmquām māgnōs mōtūs,
 (s.) Ēt cōngestō paupēr īn aurō'st.

7. *One Dactyl, Two Spondees, and One Anapaest.*

- (t.) Sōrdidā pārvae fortūnā dōmūs,
 (u.) Sīvē fērōcīs jūgā Pýrēnēs,
 (v.) Mōllī pētūlāns haedūs īn hērbā,
 (w.) Libēt īnfaustōs mittērē quēstūs.

8. *One Dactyl, One Spondee, and Two Anapaests.*

- (x.) Pēctōrā lōngīs hēbētātā mālīs,
 (y.) Vācūac rēpārānt ūbērā matrēs.

9. *Two Dactyls and Two Spondees.*(z.) *Contrāhīt ignēs lūcē rēnātā.*

§ 790. The last syllable of each line is *not* common; for in the Anapaestic system there exists a *Synaphēa* (συνάφεια) or *connexion* of all the verses, so that a short syllable at the end of one line should (though exceptions may very rarely be found) itself end in a consonant, and be followed by a word in the next line beginning with a consonant: as,

Grege dimissó pabúla carpit
Ludit prató, etc.

§ 791. After a series of Dimeter Anapaestics it is usual to close the system with a monometer which for the most part takes the form of the *versus Adonius* (— ∪ ∪ | — ∪): as,

Nos é tantó visi populó
Digné premerét quos inversó
Cārdinē mūdūs.

Other forms are — — ∪ ∪ ∪: as,

cōmpēnsāt itēr; vicinā pōlō;

∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ ∪: as,

pěréuntē, mōri;

and (very rarely) — — —: as,

itē ad plānctūs.

This break may occur after a series of any length, and the last syllable is then common.

VI.—HENDECASYLLABIC VERSE.

§ 792. The Hendecasyllabic Verse (ἐνδεκά, *eleven*), also called Phalaecean (from the poet Phalaeccus, Φάλακκος), has in its most elegant form the following metre:—

— — | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ | — ∪ | — ∪ |

consisting of one spondee, one dactyl, and three trochees, for the third of which, as the last syllable of a verse is common, a spondee may stand. As,

Tām bell'úm mihī | pāsēr'em ábstúllētis,
Sóles | óccidē're ét rēd|frē | pōssunt.

Obs. 1. Occasionally the liberty is taken of commencing with a *trochee* or *iambus*: as,

Nē tibi libeat foras abire,
Minister vetuli puer Falerni.

Obs. 2. A still greater liberty, seldom indulged in, is the substitution of a spondee for the dactyl in the second part: as,

Quas voltū vidi tamen serenas.

§ 793. The monotony which might be apprehended from the uniformity of the measure is to a great extent obviated by the freedom it enjoys from any fixed laws of caesura and elision: as,

Frūstra blānditiāe || venitis ad me,
Dēfessus || tamen omnibūs || medullis,
Amicōs || medicōsque cōvocate,
Electīssima pessimī || poetæ,
Quōt sunt quōtque || fuēre Mārce Tulli.

Obs. Hypermeter lines (for the conditions relating to which see § 773) occur sometimes in this metre: as,

Quaenam te mala mens miselle Rāvide
Agit praecipitem.

VII.—CHORIAMBIC VERSE.

§ 794. Choriambic has usually a spondaic commencement or base (βάσις or ἀνάκρονσις) and an iambic conclusion (κατάληξις). The principal forms of it are—

(N.B.—The term *anacrūsis*, from ἀνα-κρούω, to beat upwards, denotes the syllable or syllables which precede the first *ictus* in a line.)

1. With one *choriambus*,

— — | — — — — | — —, as:

Audax | omnia per peti,
Cui frons | turgida cornibūs.

2. With two *choriambi*,

— — | — — — — || — — — — | — —, as:

Seu ru'pit teretes || Marsus aper | plagūs,
Myrto,um pavidus || nauta sec,et marē.

Obs. This and the following form (3) are called *Asclepiadean* (from the grammarian Asclepiades). The latter is called long *Asclepiadean*.

3. With three *choriambi*,

— — | — — — — || — — — — || — — — — | — —, as:

Morda'ces aliter || diffugiunt || sollicitu'dinēs,
Quae mens | est hodie || cur eadem || non puero | fuit.

§ 795. By Catullus (but not by Horace and the more correct poets) the spondaic commencement in the first form is changed for a trochaic or iambic: *e. g.* :

Mōnti|um domina ut | fores,
Pūell|ac et pueri in|tegri.

This form is called GLYCONIAN (from the poet Glycon), and Catullus closes a series of them with what is called (from the poet Pherecrates) a PHERECRATIAN verse, of which the scheme is

— ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘,

and an example,

Lūtē|ūm pēdē sōc|cum.

Horace, however, uses the first form only in connexion with other rhythms, as in the following stanzas:—

(1). Ó fons Bándūs|ac || spléndidior vitrō, } (2nd chor. form) :
Dūlei digne mēro || nōn sine flōribūs, }

Crās dōnābēris haedō (Pherecratian verse) :

Cui frōns tūrgidā cōrnibūs (1st chor. form) :

(2). Scrībēris Vāriō || fōrtis et hōstium } (2nd chor. form) :
Vīctor, Macōnī || cārmīnis ālitē }
Quām rēm cūnque fērox || nāvibūs aut ēquīs }
Mīlēs, tē dūcē, gēssērīt (1st chor. form).

And (3) the couplet,

Quēn tū Mēlpōmēnē sēmēl (1st chor. form) :

Nāscēntēm plācidō || lūmīnē vīdēris (2nd chor. form) :

Obs. 1. Neglect of the verse-caesura, or division of the line at the end of a foot, in the second and third forms (see preceding page) is very rare: *e. g.* :

Dum flagrantia de — torquet ad oscula,
Non incendia Car—thaginis impiae.
Arcanique fides || prodiga per — lucidior vitro.—(Hor.)

Obs. 2. In the second form it may be noticed :

1. That division after the verse-caesura causes nothing unpleasant to the ear,
e. g.

Anditam modere re arboribus fidem :

2. That each foot may consist of a single word : as,
Quassas indocilis || pauperiem pati :

3. That a short syllable is (rarely) lengthened by *arsis*.
Perrupit Acheronta Hercules labor.

Obs. 3. The following are examples of Hypermeter lines (see § 778, in a system of Choriambic (Glyconian) verses of the first form :

Unguentate glabris mūrte
abstinere.

Munere assidue valentem
exerceat juventam.

Sancta nomine Rōmūlique
antique.

Saluumque recōnditōrum
omniumque sonantum.

VIII.—MINOR IONIC AND GALLIAMBIC VERSE.

§ 796. There is but one ode in Roman literature written in *Ionic à minori* verses (Horace Od. lib. iii. 12): it appears to have four divisions, each consisting of ten connected *Ionic à minori* feet without *hiatus* or *common* syllable at the end of a foot: the scheme is

$\cup \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}}$
 $\cup \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}}$
 $\cup \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}}$

Miserūrum est neque amōri | dare lūdum neque dūci,
Mala vīno lavere: aut exanimāri metuētes
Patruae verbera linguae.

One short ode is not sufficient to enable us to ascertain the laws of this metre.

§ 797. An offshoot of the *Ionic à minori* verse is the Galliambic (so named from the Galli or priests of Cybele, for whose rites its vibratory rhythm was well adapted). The general scheme is,

$\cup \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}}$

Examples are :

Itaque ūt domūm Cybēbes || tetigēre lassulāe,
Aliēna quāe petētes || velut exulēs locā.

Then by the change, at the beginning of each half-verse, of the two pyrrhics ($\cup \cup$) into a long syllable, and the resolution of the long syllable at the 1st, 2nd, 4th, and (especially) the 5th *arsus* into two short, we obtain

$\text{—} \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}} \cup \acute{\text{—}}$, as :

Jām jān dolēt quod ēgi || jān jānque poenitēt.

— — — — — || — — — — —, as :

Ego vīrīdis ālgīda īdae || nīve amīcta lōcā colām.

— — — — — || — — — — —, as :

Dea māgna dēā Cybēbe || dea dōmīna Dīndymī.

Lastly there occurs, but rarely, a partial return to the original *Ionic à minori* form by changing the *iambus* after the first *beat* (ictus) in each half-verse into a *trochee* (never, however, in both halves at once), so that we obtain either

— — — — —, — — — — — ||

for the first half, as in

Hīlārāte aerē citātīs || errōribūs animūm ; or

|| — — — — —, — — — — —

for the second half, as in

Aberī foro palāestra || stādīo ēt gŷmnāsīa.

Obs. The 'Atys' of Catullus is written in this metre.

IX.—LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

§ 798. Logaoedic Verse (λόγος, ἀοιδή) consists of Dactyls succeeded by Trochees. The following species are used by Horace:—

(1.) — — — — — || — — — — — || — — — — —

(2.) — — — — — || — — — — — || — — — — — || — — — — — || — — — — —

Frōnde novā puer || ūm palūmbes

Sōlvitur aeris hiēms gratā vīce || vērīs ēt Favōnī.

It will be seen that in the latter, the first three Dactyls may be replaced by Spondees, but not the fourth; which moreover must end with a word. The final Trochee may be replaced by a Spondee.

The Logaoedic metres are found only in combination with others. (§§ 802, 811.)

X.—ASYNARTETE VERSE.

§ 799. An asynartete (ἀσυνάρτητος) or heterogeneous verse is one combining two dissimilar rhythms; as Dactylic

and Iambic, or Iambic and Trochaic. The following kinds occur, but only in combination with other metres:—

— ◡ — | — ◡ — || — ◡ — | — ◡ — | —
 — ◡ — | — ◡ — | — || — ◡ — | — ◡ — | —

Nivésque deducúnt Jovem || núnc mare núnc silvae
 Móllobus ín puerís || aut ín puéllis úrere.

Obs. The Logaoedic is less correctly regarded as an asynartete metre.

XI.—SAPPHIC VERSE.

§ 800. The Sapphic Strophe or Stanza, so called from Sappho of Lesbos, was Latinized by Horace, who adopted the following scheme:

— ◡ | — — | — ◡ — | — ◡ | — — (thrice)
 — ◡ — | — —

Cláre | Maéce'nás eques | út pa'térni
 Flúmi'nís ri paé simul | ét jō,cósā
 Rédder'et laud'és tibi | Vátí,cáni
 Móntis | imágo.

§ 801. The following may serve as illustrations of the caesura:—

1. Cláre Maécenás || eques út patérni.
2. Mércurí || facúndē nēpós || Atlántis.
3. Laúreá || donándus Ápollinári.
4. Férvet immensús-quē ráit || profúndo.
5. Lénis lithyíā túere mátres.

Obs. 1. The caesura with elision should not be imitated, *e.g.* :

Ímbriúm divína ávis imminentum.

Obs. 2. Once a short syllable is lengthened by *arsis* at the caesura :

Angulus ridēt, ubi non Hymetto.

Obs. 3. Of Hypermeter lines (see § 778) the following are specimens:—

Romulae genti date remque prôlēmque
 et decus omne.

Mngiunt vaccae tibi tollit hñnñtūm
 apta quadrigis equa.

Dissidens plebi numero bēātūrum
 eximit virtus.

Obs. 4. In the Sapphic stanza there is a close connexion between the third line and the Versus Adonius; hence Horace sometimes divides a word between them: as,

Labitur ripa Jove non probante ux-
 orius amnis.
 Thracio bacchante magis sub inter-
 lunia vento.

Obs. 5. Horace differs from his model Sappho in making the fourth syllable always long instead of short.

XII.—ALCAIC VERSE.

§ 802. The Alcaic Strophe or Stanza, so called from Alcæus, of Lesbos, was Latinized by Horace, who adopted the following scheme:—

≡ | ≡ ≡ | ≡ - || ≡ ≡ ≡ | ≡ ≡ ≡ (twice) (Alcaic line).
 ≡ | ≡ ≡ | ≡ - | ≡ ≡ | ≡ ≡ | (Trochaic Dimeter with anacrusis ≡)
 ≡ ≡ ≡ | ≡ ≡ ≡ | ≡ ≡ | ≡ ≡ (Logaoedic).

It should be observed, however, that the *long* anacrusis is preferable; and that the concluding syllable of each line, if not in itself long, usually ends with a consonant: as,

Nūn | sēmp̄er | im̄bres || nūbibus | hispidōs
 Mā | nant in | āgros || aut̄ maro | Cāspid̄m
 Fēx | ant in | aequā | les pro | cellas
 Usque nec | Armeni | la in | ōria.

But a short syllable is found in both places: as,

Vidēs ut | alta || stēt nive cādidum
 So | riete | nēc jam || sustineant on̄da
 Sil | vāē lab | ōran | tēs ge | hūquē
 Flūmina | cōstitit | int̄ a | cūto.

Obs. The third line may also be scanned as Iambic Dimeter Hypercatalectic:—

≡ ≡ ≡ - | - ≡ ≡ - | ≡

But the fifth syllable is invariably long: comp. § 794, *Obs. 2.*

§ 803. The practice of Horace, after he himself had become more perfect in his metres (*i. e.* in his later Odes), should both in Sapphic and Alcaic verse be chiefly imitated. The following appear to be the best caesural verse divisions:

1. In the first two lines.

Dissolve frigus || ligna super foco
 Large reponens: || atque benignus.

Obs. An elision here does not interfere with the verse-caesura : as,
Regum timendorum in proprios greges.

2. In the third :

- (a.) Non vultus instantis || tyranni.
Quos inter Augustus || recumbens.
Deprome quadrimum || Sabina.
(b.) Spargent || olivetis || cupressi.
(c.) Si fractus illabatur orbis.

3. In the fourth, in order of frequency :

- (a.) Impavidum || ferient ruinae.
(b.) Nec virides || metuunt colubros.
(c.) Flumina constiterint || acuto.
(d.) Aut digito || male pertinaci.
(e.) Levia personuere saxa.
(f.) Cuneta supercilio || moventis.

Obs. 1. Once a short syllable is made long by *arsis* at the second *arsis* of the fourth line :

Caeca timet aliunde fata.

Obs. 2. A monosyllable at the place of the caesura in the first two lines is unusual, though sometimes found in Horace :

Non est meum, si || mugiat Africae,
Carthagini jam || non ego nuntios,
Quid debeas, o || Roma Neronibus,
Te copias, te || consilium, et tuos,
Te fontium qui || celat origines.

Obs. 3. *Et* is frequently—but not in the fourth Book of the Odes—found (usually with an elision) at the end of a line; but a monosyllable in the last place is generally (esp. if preceded by another) disagreeable to the ear; e.g.,

Cur non sub alta vel platano vel hac.

Cy., O quae beatam diva tenes Cyprum et } and Aedesque labentes deorum et
Memphim carentem Sithonia nive : } Foeda nigro simulacra fumo.

Obs. 4. A short syllable is never found at the place of the caesura in the first two lines, and the resolution there of the long syllable into two short, as in

Hinc omne principi || um huc refer exitum

is very exceptional.

Obs. 5. The verse-caesura is hardly ever neglected : such a line as

Mentémque lymphat — am Mareotico

is altogether abnormal.

Obs. 6. Hypermeter lines are occasionally admitted : e.g. :

Sors exitura et nos in aeternum
Exilium, etc.

Obs. 7. The *genit.* case in *ii* is not admitted: *i* is the form: *e. g.* :
vis consili expers, etc.

Obs. 8. The hiatus in jam Daedaleo || oclor Icaro, is not to be imitated.

XIII.—DOUBLE OR ALTERNATING VERSES.

§ 804. This system, to which the Elegiac verse belongs, has been carried out by Horace in great variety.

§ 805. There is one ode (Od. I. 8) in which the odd lines have the following scheme (choriambic without base):

⏏ ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ ⏏, as:

Lŷdiā, dic | pŷr ōmnēs:

and the even the following (also choriambic, with Trochaic Dimeter base: sometimes called *long Sapphic*):

⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ || ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ ⏏, as:

Tē dē ōs ōrō Sŷbārīn || cūr prŷpērās | āmāndo.

§ 806. Horace has also one ode (Od. II. 18) in which a Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic verse in the odd lines is followed by an Iambic Trimeter Catalectic in the even. The latter verse has such a pause (or verse-caesura) that the rhythm of the latter half becomes trochaic. The scheme is:

⏏ ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ ⏏
⏏ ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ || ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ ⏏, as:

Nŷn ēbūr nēq̄ue aūrēum,
Mēā rēnīdēt || īn dŷmō lācūnār.

Obs. 1. The metre is called by the schollast Aeron *Hipponactean* from the already-mentioned poet Hippŷnax.

Obs. 2. The last syllable is common; and there is no synaphea, as may be seen from

Rapacis Orci || fine destinata
Aula divitem manet.

§ 807. Horace has imitated Archilochus in many instances: in the first ten Epodes we have after his model the following scheme:

⏏ ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ (Trimeter Iambic Acatalectic),
⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ (Dimeter Iambic Acatalectic), as:

Beātūs illē | quī prēcūl nēgōtīs,
 Ūt | prīscā gēns mōrt | ālium :
 Pōsītōsque vernās | dītīs exāmēn domus :
 Sēn'ile guttur fregerit :
 Nēc mūnūs hūmēris | effīcācīs Hēreulīs :
 Viderē prōpērāntes domum :
 Pavidumque lēporeni ēt | advenam *lāquēō gruem :
 Jucunda captat praeemia :
 Quid dixit aut quīd taceāt, etc.
 Quod si pudicā mūlier in partem juyet.

Obs. A diphthong is (very rarely) shortened before another vowel, as :

Ēt|Ēsquīnāē ālites (§ 765, *Obs.* 7).

§ 808. Another combination, after Archilochus, is (once *Od.* IV. 7) formed by the *second* half of a Pentameter appended to a Hexameter verse, as :

Diffūgēre nivēs ; redēunt jam gramina cāmpis
 Ārboribūsque comae.

Obs. The Hexameter may be varied according to the rules already laid down, but the even lines must always correspond to the *second* half of the Pentameter.

§ 809. Another, after Archilochus (*Epod.* XIII.), consists of a Hexameter, to which is appended an *asynartete* line made up of a Dimeter Iambic and the second half of a Pentameter : as,

Horrida tempestas coelum contraxit, et imbres
 Nivēsque dedūcūnt Jōvēm || nūnc mare, nūnc siluāē ;
 Threīcio Aquilone sonant ; rapīamus, amīci,
 Ōccasionem de die || dumque virent genuā ;
 Cetera mitte loqui : deus haec fortasse benigna
 Redueet in sedem vicē . || Nunc et Achaemenio.

Obs. The even line in the above is the even line *reversed* of *Epode* XI.

§ 810. Another, after Archilochus (*Epod.* XI.), consists of a *senarius* (see TRIMETER IAMBIC ACATALECTIC), to which is appended an *asynartete* line made up of the *second half* of a Pentameter together with an Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic (see § 784, *Obs.* 2) : as,

Amore qui me praeter omnes expedit
 Mōllībūs | in pūēr|īs || aut īu pūēll|īs ūrērē :

Hic tertius December, ex quo destiti,
 Inachia fure|rē, || silvis honorem decutit
 Unde expedire non amicorum queant,
 Libera consili|ā || nec contumeliae graves.

Obs. The hiatus in

Vincere mollitiē || amor Lycisci me tenet

is explained, as is the short syllable at the verse-caesura, by the fact of the two halves of the line being composed in distinct measures, in each of which the last syllable of the verse is common.

§ 811. Another (Od. I. 4), after Archilochus, consists of a logaoedic line (§ 798, 2), followed by an Iambic Trimeter Catalectic: as,

Pállidā | mōrs aeq̄uō pūls|āt pēdē || paup̄rūm tābērñās,
 Rēgūmq̄e tūrrēs. Ó bēātē Sēxti:
 Altern|o terr|am quat|unt pede || dum graves Cyclopum,
 Vulcanus ardens urit officinas.

§ 812. Moreover, Horace has (Od. I. 7, 28; Epod. XII.) a Hexameter followed by a line made up of three dactylic feet (of which the last must be pure) and a spondee or trochee (Dactylic Tetrameter Catalectic), the scheme of which is,

⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏, as:

Laudabunt aliū claram Rhodon aut Mitylenen,
 Aut Ēphēs|ōn bīmār|īsē Cōr|inthī;
 Mocnia, vel Baccho Thebas vel Apolline Delphos
 Insīgn|ēs, aut | Thēssālā | Tēmpē:
 Nec tam Larissae percussit campus opimae,
 Quām dōmūs | Ālbūnē|ae rēsōn|āntīs.

§ 813. And, lastly, Horace has (Epod. XIV. and XV.) a Hexameter followed (1) by an Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic: as,

Nox erat et coelo fulgebat luna sereno
 Intēr minōra sīdērā;

Or (2), by a pure *senarius* (Epod. XVI.): as,

Altera jam teritur bellis civilibus actas
 Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit.

Obs. This metre is called Pythiambic.

XIV.—THE PRIAPEAN VERSE.

§ 814. The Priapean Verse (Catull. XVII., XVIII., and XIX.) consists of the placing together (unintermingled) of a Glyconic and Pherecratian verse, so that the scheme is

— ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡ — | ◡ ◡ || — ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡ — ◡ ;

Paup̄er|is tūgūrī | pātēr || fili|ús-quē cōlōnī,

Hūjūs | nām dōmīnī | cōlūnt || mē dē|úmquē sālūtānt,

Quērcūs | āridā rūst|icā || cōntōrmātā sēcūrī,

Altēr | āssidūā | cōlēns || dilig|éntiā ūt hērbā.

Obs. 1. The spondee of the Pherecratian half of the verse becomes more frequently than not an Iambus.

Obs. 2. Catullus occasionally makes a short syllable long at the pause (or verse-caesura) || : *e. g.* :—

Nutrio magis et magis || et beabo quotannis.

XV.—THE SATURNIAN VERSE.

§ 815. The Saturnian was the oldest native Roman verse, and it remained in use till the Hexameter was introduced by Ennius. Its rhythm is controlled not by the quantity of syllables as long or short, but by word-accent only.

It consists of two members, each of which has three accents. The first member has a monosyllabic anacrusis. The following two lines may serve as specimens; the former ascribed to the poet Naevius, the latter a retort upon him by one of the 'Metelli':—

Fatō Romae¹ Metēlli || fiunt cōsulēs.

Dabūnt malūm Metēlli || Naevio² poētac.

§ 816. The Saturnian line has been described as Iambic Trimeter Hypermeter, or Trochaic Trimeter with anacrusis; but it is better to regard it as a distich written in a single line, as in the old English ballad metre.

Obs. The oldest English metre consists in like manner of a distich regulated only by word-accent, often treated as a single line : as,

In a sōmer sēson,
When sōfte wās the sōnne. (Piers Plowman).

§ 817. In the Saturnian metre Naevius wrote his poem on the First Punic War, the first line of which was,

Virūm mī (mihī) Casménā || inseré (*i. e.* insequere, verūtum).

The song of the Arval Brothers (Donaldson, *Varron*. p. 194), some fragments of Salian hymns, and probably certain inscriptions and epitaphs are also in this metre.

Obs. An old Latin translation of the inscription of Pyrrhus has been thought to show a mixture of Saturnian and Hexameter verse :—

Qui antedhac invicti | fuvēre viri || pātēr | ōptīme Ōl|ympī
 Hos ego in pūgna vici ||
 Victūsq̄e sūm ab isdem || (see *Varron*. p. 228).

Or, as we may perhaps write the lines,

Qui antedhac invicti || Fū|vērē vīr,ī pātēr | ōptīm' Ōl|ympī ||
 Hos ego in pūgna vici || Vic|tūsq̄e sum ab | isdēm ||

XVI.—THE TELIAMBIC OR MURIC VERSE (*dock-tailed* ; from μειῶ, οὐρά).

§ 818. The Teliambic Verse is a Hexameter terminated by an Iambus (τέλος, ἱαμβος) instead of a Spondee (⌋ ⌋ for ⌋ ⌌). As the last syllable of the line is common, the Iambic may become a Pyrrhic (⌋ ⌋). As,

Dīrīge ōd|ōrīs ēq|uōs ad | cērtā cūb|illā | cānēs.

Obs. The effect of this line is similar to that of the Choliambic (§ 786), the rhythm being suddenly interrupted.

PART IV.—ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER LXIX.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 819. The Latin Language is a member of that great family of languages known by the name of Indo-European or Aryan. At some remote period a race migrated from the East, embracing the ancestors of both the Greeks and Italians. From this race the Italians branched off, and were themselves divided into two stocks, the *Latins* on the west, and the *Umbro-Samnites* on the east, the latter including the Umbrians, Sabines, Samnites, and their numerous colonies.

Obs. 1. The term *Indo-European* points to the eastern and western limits of the languages so designated. It includes the Indian, Persian, Slavonian, Lithuanian, Greek, Latin, Gothic or German, and Celtic languages. The term *Aryan* is derived from one of the most ancient names of nations included in the above family (*Gr.* Ἄριοι, *Lat.* Arit), and contains the root *Ar-* (ἀρετή), *noble, brave*.

Obs. 2. The *Umbro-Samnite* branch, though more closely related to Latin than to Greek, was distinct from the Latin. It was itself divided into two main dialects, the *Umbrian* and the *Oscan*, the latter being spoken by the Samnites. Of both of these dialects some remains have come down to us.

§ 820. The Latin Alphabet was derived from the Dorian Greeks of Cumae and Sicily. Of the 24 letters of the Grecian Alphabet, the Latins omitted θ , ϕ , and χ , and changed the Digamma or Vau (φ), having the power of V or W, into F. The Latin Alphabet consisted originally of 20 letters, to which X, making the whole number 21, was added at a very early period:

1. A.	8. H.	15. P.
2. B.	9. I (J).	16. Q.
3. C.	10. K.	17. R.
4. D.	11. L.	18. S.
5. E.	12. M.	19. T.
6. F.	13. N.	20. V (U).
7. Z.	14. O.	21. X.

Hence Cicero mentions an alphabet of 21 letters, of which α was the last (*Nat. Deor.* ii. 37).

Obs. 1. Z, corresponding to the Greek Zeta, was found in the earliest Roman Alphabet, and it occurred in the *Carmen Saliare*. At what time it disappeared is unknown. It is not found in the Twelve Tables. It first came into use again in Cicero's time, but then only in writing Greek words. At the same time Y was introduced for the same purpose. (Further, v. 336.)

Obs. 2. The Latins originally wrote CS instead of X. The letter X appears to have first come into use in the time between the Decemviral legislation and the capture of Veii; but the first document in which it is found is the *Senatus Consultum de Bacchanalibus*, B.C. 186.

Obs. 3. It appears that when the Dorian Alphabet was introduced among the Latins, C was the Guttural Media, corresponding to the Greek γ, and K the Guttural Tenuis, corresponding to the Greek κ. But at a very early stage of the Latin Alphabet, the difference between the Guttural Media and Tenuis disappeared, so that C and K came to have the same sound. C was thus used to express both the Tenuis and Media. Hence in the Twelve Tables, *ni cum eo pacit* and *ni pacunt* occur, from the same verb as *pango*, *pepigi*. So on the Columna Rostrata we find the forms *leciones*, *maci-stratos*, *ecfociont*, *puenandod*, *Cartocinienses*, equivalent to *legiones*, *magi-stratus*, *exfugiant*, *pugnando*, *Carthaginienses*. In like manner C and Cn., the ancient representatives of the names Gaius and Gnaeus, were retained down to the latest times. As K gradually went out of use, being only retained in a few words, of which the chief were *Kaeso*, *Kalendae*, *kalumnia*, *kaput*, the difference between the Tenuis and Media again became marked, and a new letter G, formed from C by adding a tail to the latter, was introduced to indicate the Media. This letter is found in the time of the First Punic War, on the sarcophagus of L. Scipio Barbatus, and was placed in the alphabet between F and H by a freedman of Sp. Carvilius Ruga, the old letter Z having by this time become obsolete. (Plut. *Quaest. Rom.* c. 59.)

Obs. 4. The Emperor Claudius introduced three new letters; namely, an inverted Digamma, J, to distinguish the consonant *r* from the vowel *u*; the Antisigma, O, to express the sounds *bs* and *ps*, answering to the Greek ψ; and the sign of the Greek aspirate T, to express the intermediate sound between the vowels *i* and *u* (v. § 840, 3). These letters were used in inscriptions, some of which are extant; but they soon went out of use (Tacit. *Annal.* xi. 14); and Priscian and the other grammarians mention therefore an alphabet of only twenty-three letters, in which *x* and *y* are included.

(A.) THE CONSONANTS.

§ 821. Consonants are divided :—

I. According to the part of the mouth, where they are produced, i.e. according to their *organ*, into—

1. GUTTURALS—*c* (*k*), *g*, *q*, *h*, *n*, *x*.
2. DENTALS—*t*, *d*, *n*, *l*, *r*, *s*, *z*.
3. LABIALS—*p*, *b*, *f*, *v*, *m*.

II. According to their *power*, that is, whether they can be pronounced with or without a vowel, into :

1. MUTES :—	Gutturals.	Dentals.	Labials.
(a.) <i>Tenues</i> (sharp)	<i>c</i> , <i>k</i> , <i>q</i> ,	<i>t</i> ,	<i>p</i> .
(b.) <i>Mediae</i> (flat)	<i>g</i> ,	<i>d</i> ,	<i>b</i> .
(c.) <i>Aspiratae</i> (aspirates)	<i>h</i> ,	none.	<i>f</i> .

2. VOCALS:—

(a.) *Liquids*—*l, m, n, r.*(b.) *Sibilants*—*s, x, z.*(c.) *Semivowels*—*j, v.*

I. Gutturals.

§ 822. **K. C.** (1) The early history of these letters has been already explained (§ 820, *Obs.* 3). The Latin *C*, except at an early period, has the same sound as *k* in the cognate languages. Hence it stands in place of *g* and *h* before the tenuis *t* and the sharp sibilant *s*:

rectum,	rexī [rec-si],	from rego.
auctum,	auxī [auc-si],	„ augeo.
tractum,	traxī [trac-si],	„ traho.
vectum,	vexī [vec-si],	„ veho.

C represents *d* before a guttural tenuis: as,

iccirco,	for idcirco	quicquam,	for quidquam
quicquid,	„ quidquid	nequicquam,	„ nequidquam.

Obs. The forms with *c* are the orthography of the best MSS.; but we generally find *quidquid* (relative).

(2) *C* disappears:—i. Before *n*: as,

ara-nea	[=arac-nea]	comp. δρᾶχνη	de-ni	[=dec-ni]	comp. decem
la-ua	[=lac-na]	„ λᾶχνη	qui-ni	[quinc-ni]	„ quinquē.
lu-na	[=luc-na]	„ lucco			

ii. Before *t* when the nasal precedes: as,

quin-tus	[=quinc-tus]	Quin-tius	[=Quinc-tius].
----------	--------------	-----------	----------------

iii. Before *t* and *s* if *C* is preceded by the liquids *r* or *l*: as,

ar-tus	[=arc-tus],	comp. arceo
far-tus	[=farc-tus],	„ farcio
tor-tus	[=torc-tus],	„ torqueo
hor-tus	[=horc-tus],	} herctum
co-hortes	[=co-horctes],	
cor-tis	[=core-tis],	„ ἔρκος
mul-si	[=mule-si],	„ mulceo
mul-ta	[=mule-ta]	„ mulco.
au-tor	[=auc-tor],	„ augeo
au-tumnus	[=auct-umnus],	„ augeo

(3) *C* had its hard or *K* sound even before *e* and *i* (with the single exception mentioned below), and was not sibilated as it is in

English. Hence we find that C in Latin words before *e* and *i* is always expressed in Greek by K: as, *ensor*, κήνωρ: *Cicero*, Κικέρων; and that the Romans, in writing Greek words in Latin, always expressed K by C: as, *Cecrops*, *Cilix*, *Cineas*, *Cybele*.

On the other hand, the fact that in several Latin words *ci* and *ti* before a vowel were written indifferently, proves that these sounds must have been pronounced similarly. Thus we find in inscriptions, *tribunitiae* and *tribuniciae*; and on the other hand, *mundicie* for *munditie*; the sound being in either case that of a sibilant. So likewise in inscriptions we have both forms in proper names: as,

Larcus	and	Lartia,	Accius	and	Attius,
Marcus	„	Martia,	Abucius	„	Abutius,
Mucius	„	Mutius,	Neracius	„	Neratius.

In the oldest MSS. we have a similar fluctuation: thus we find,

solacium	and	solatium,	suspicio	and	suspitio,
convicium	„	convitium,	secius	„	setius.

It must be observed, however, that this interchange of *ci* and *ti* takes place only before *u* vowel: we never find, for instance, *milicis* instead of *militis*, or *felitis* instead of *felicis*. From the sibilant sound of *ti* arose in modern Italian such forms as *palazzo* from *palatium*; *Piacenza* from *Placentia*, &c.

A similar sibilation before *i* occurs in Greek: thus πάσων, θάσων, μάσων, represent παχίων, ταχίων, μακιων; and βράσων, κρέσων or κρείσων represent βραδίων, κρετίων: in like manner φυλάσσω, τάσσω, ταρασσω represent φυλακίω, ταγίω, ταρακίω. (See Curtius, *Gr. Gr.* § 57).

Obs. Still the fluctuation between *ci* and *ti* with a vowel following did not really occur in many words in which it is usually given. For example:

1. *Contio* (not *concio*) is the only form found in the oldest MSS. of Plautus and Gaius. The former orthography is in accordance with the etymology; for the form *coentionid* (= *coventione*) in the S. C. de Bacchanalibus proves that *contio* is a contraction of *co(n)ventio*.
2. *Nuntius* (not *nuncius*) alone occurs in the best inscriptions and MSS. This form also is in accordance with the etymology. The old form was *nountios*, connected with *nocus*. From *nocus* was derived a verb *novere*; from the present participle of which, *novens*, *novent-is*, came, with the suffix *ius*, the word *norentius*, just as *Florus*, *florere*, *Florentia*. Then *norentius* was shortened into *nountius*, as *noventinae* into *noundinae* (*nundinae*).
3. *Indutiae* (not *induciae*) (Gell. t. 25).
Fetialis (not *Fecialis*), comp. Gr. φητιαίος.
Otium and *Negotium* are the only correct forms.
4. *Condicio*, on the other hand, alone occurs in the best inscriptions and MSS. It is doubtful, however, whether the word is derived from *condicere* or *condere*; and consequently whether *condicio* or *conditio* is etymologically the more correct.

§ 823. **Q.**—The Guttural Tenuis Q is, as a general rule, used only in the combination of QV, followed by a vowel, with which it forms one syllable. It is a Guttural tenuis followed by a labial semivowel, and forms a transition between the Guttural tenuis *k* and the Labial tenuis *p*. The close connexion of QV with these sounds is seen by a comparison of the same word in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and the Italian dialects:—

K.	Q V.	P.
<i>Sansk.</i> kis,	<i>Lat.</i> quis,	<i>Oscan,</i> pis,
„ kat,	„ quod,	„ pod,
<i>Gr.</i> κόση,	„ quanta,	<i>Umbrian,</i> panta,
		<i>Gr.</i> πόση,
<i>Sansk.</i> çatvar,	„ quattuor,	<i>Umbrian,</i> petur,
		<i>Gr.</i> πίσυρες,
	„ quinque,	<i>Gr.</i> πέμπε,
		<i>Sansk.</i> pañcan,
<i>Lat.</i> cocus,	„ coquo,	<i>Lat.</i> popina,
<i>Lat.</i> secundus,	<i>Lat.</i> sequor,	<i>Gr.</i> ἐπομαι.

Obs. 1. In inscriptions of the Republican period, the relative pronoun generally has QV in forms written subsequently with a C: as, quouis, quoci, quom; later, ejus, cui, cum, &c. It must not, however, be inferred from this, that QV was more ancient than C. In many Latin words C appears in the roots and QV in the derivatives: as,

Quirites	from Cures (curis),
inquilinus	„ incola,
sterquilinium	„ stercus,
querquetulanus	„ quercetum,
inquinare,	„ cunire.

Obs. 2. Instead of QV, when the word *u* followed, Q was frequently written alone, especially from the time of the Gracchi: thus we find in Inscriptions:

qura	instead of cura,	peqndes	instead of pecudes,
pequnia	„ pecunia,	persequio	„ persecutio.
pequlatu	„ peculatu,		

§ 824. **G.**—(1) The late introduction of the medial G into the Latin Alphabet (taking the position of the obsolete *z*) when C became exclusively a Tenuis, has been already mentioned (§ 820, *Obs. 3*).

In many words *c* is softened into *g* before vowels and the liquids *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*: as,

1. Before vowels:

Sigambri	for Sicambri,	gurgulio	for curculio,
negotium	„ nec-otium,	triginta comp.	τριάκοντα,

2. Before liquids:

neglego	for nec-lego,	Gnossus	for Cnossus,
gloria (see <i>Obs.</i>)	comp. cluo, κλύω,	Gnidus	„ Cnidus.

Obs. From the Stem *clur*, with the suffix *or*, came a Substantive *clu-or* (like *hon-or*, &c.), from which with a second suffix *ia*, was formed *cluoria* (like *uxorius* from *uxor*). *Clurria* was shortened into *cloria* (*gloria*), as *puer* into *por* in *Marci-por*.

(2) G often disappears:—

i. At the beginning of words, and followed by the liquids: as,

lamentum compare	clamare,	navus compare	i-gnavus,
lactis	„ γάλακτος,	noscō	„ co-gnosco.
natus	„ gnatus,		

ii. Before *s*, when it is preceded by the liquids *r* or *l*: as,

spar-si, spar-sum,	from spargo,	mul-si	from mulgeo,
ter-si, ter-sum	„ tergeo,	ful-si	„ fulgeo.
al-si	„ algeo,		

iii. Sometimes before *m*: as,

conta-minari	from ta(n)go,	exa-men	from exago.
--------------	---------------	---------	-------------

In other words, such as *agmen*, *tegmen*, the *g* remains.

iv. Often before *v*: as,

nives (nigves),	comparo	ninguo,
fruo(r) (fruguo(r)),	„	fruges, fructus,
fluvium (flugvium),	„	fluxi,
conniveo (connigveo),	„	connixus; cf. nico, niecto,
vivo (vigvo),	„	vixi, victus.

Obs. 1. In the same way the following words seem to have had originally a *G*, which disappeared before *v*:

brevis, comp.	Gr. βραχύς.	
levis, „	„ ελαχύν.	Sansk. laghu,
pravus, „		„ orahvas,
malva, „	„ μαλάχη	

Obs. 2. G followed by the semivowel *i* with an accompanying vowel often disappears (the *i* in such cases was pronounced as *e y*, though written *j* in English): as,

ma-lor, major (orig. mag-lor)	comp. mag-la,
Ma-lus (orig. Mag-lus)	„ mag-nus,
me-lo (orig. mig-lo)	„ mingo, μήιχα.

Ma-lus signifies the "growing-month," as the root *mag*, Sansk. *maś*, signifies originally "to grow."

Obs. 3. In like manner *d* disappears, when followed by the semivowel *i* and an accompanying vowel, as *Joris* instead of *Dioris*, *Janus* instead of *Dianus*.

§ 825. **II.**—(1) *H* was originally a Guttural aspirate; the traces of which are still retained in *trasi*, *tractum*, from *traho*, and *veri*, *rectum*, from *veho*. But in all other cases, *H* in Latin is only the rough breathing, corresponding to the Greek spiritus asper.

(2) H often represents *f*, a sound peculiar to the Italian languages: as,

hoedus	for	foedus,	haba	for	faba,
hordus	„	fordus,	hircus	„	fireus,
hostis	„	fostis,	hariolus	„	fariolus,
horreum	„	farreum,	hebris	„	febris, &c.

(3) H at an early period was often dropped in pronunciation. Hence we find in Inscriptions and MSS., the following words written both with and without the aspirate:

harundo	and	arundo,	heres	and	eres,
haruspex	„	aruspex,	hora	„	ora,
hoedus	„	oedus,	humerus	„	umerus,
hasta	„	asta,	Hamilcar	„	Amilcar,
harena	„	arena,	Hasdrubal	„	Asdrubal,
hedera	„	edera,	Hannibal	„	Annibal,
herciscere	„	erciscere,	Hammon	„	Ammon.

The form without the aspirate is in most cases the more correct. The tendency was to drop the *h*, until at length it completely disappeared, as in the modern Italian.

(4) H in the middle of words between two vowels was frequently dropped; but the older form was also retained along with the more modern. Thus, while *nemo* always occurs instead of *nehemo*, we find in use at the same time:

Ahala	and	Ala,	nihil	and	nil,
vehemens	„	vemens,	cohors	„	cors,
prehendo	„	prendo,	dehibeo	„	debeo,
mihi	„	mi,	prachibeo	„	praebeo.

II. Labials.

§ 826. P.—(1) It has been already remarked that in the Indo-European languages the Guttural Tenuis C or K frequently passes into the Labial Tenuis P, and that the Latin QV, which is a Guttural with a Labial semivowel attached, formed the transition between them (§ 823).

Obs. In the Oscan and Umbrian *p* often represents an original *k*: see examples in § 823. In Latin this is rarely the case; and even the few Latin words, which have *p* instead of the original *c*, are probably all borrowed from other dialects. Thus *porina* is the Oscan form of *coquina*, from *coquo*; *palumbes* probably comes from the Oscan, *columba* being the pure Latin form. *Epona*, which is usually derived from *equus*, is unquestionably a Celtic word. *Lupus* is the Greek λύκος, but it probably comes immediately from an Italian dialect. If *limpidus* be the same as *liquidus*, the former must be regarded as a dialectical variety, *liquidus* being the pure Latin form.

(2) *P* at the end of a word, when the final vowel was dropped, was, as a general rule, softened into the medial *b*: as,

ab	Gr.	ἀπό	Sansk.	ápa,
sub	"	ὑπό	"	úpa,
ob	"	ἐπι	"	úpa.

(3) *B* before the tenuis *t* and the sharp sibilant *s*, was pronounced as *p*. Hence there arises a fluctuation in the orthography, some writing *ps*, *pt* according to the pronunciation, and others *bs*, *bt* according to the etymology. Down to the Augustan age, the orthography according to the pronunciation was the more usual; and hence we find, in the inscriptions of the two last centuries of the republic, such forms as *apstulit*, *apstinere*, *opsignetur*, *opsidione*, *optinebit*, *supsignent*. In the perfects and supines the orthography according to pronunciation prevailed: as,

nub-o	nup-si	nup-tum,
scrib-o	scrip-si	scrip-tum.

(4) *P* is sometimes inserted between *m* and *s* or *t* to facilitate the sound: as,

emptus	from	emo,
sumpsi, sumptus	"	sumo,
comptus	"	como,
contempsi, contemptus	"	contemno,
hiemps	"	hiems.

Obs. The form *tempto*, which also occurs in the best MSS. instead of *tento*, is opposed to both etymology and analogy. *Tento* comes from *tentus*, the participle of *tendo*; consequently no *m* precedes requiring the insertion of a *p* to facilitate the sound. It would seem that a confusion was made between the participle *temptus* from *temno* and the participle *tentus* from *tendo*; and that the orthography of the former word was erroneously transferred to the latter.

§ 827. **B.**—(1) *B* was pronounced as *p* before *s* and *t*, as already remarked (v. § 826).

(2) *Du* in the older language became *b* in the words:

duellum	..	..	bellum,
duellicus	..	..	bellicus,
Duellius	..	..	Bellius,
duis	..	..	bis,
duidens	..	..	bidens,
duonus	..	..	bonus.

So *dv* became *v* in the words:

dvi-ginti (comp. duo)	..	..	..	..	viginti,
anadvia (comp. suadeo, Gr. ἡδύς)	..	..	..	..	anavia.

But these examples do not prove that *b* and *v* simply were interchangeable, since the preceding *d* exercises a disturbing influence.

(3) The Romans avoided the juxtaposition of *b* and *f*, as the forms *aufero* and *aufugio* shew. Hence *afui*, *afuturus*, *afore*, &c., are strictly the correct forms, not *abfui*, *abfuturus*, *abfore*, &c.

§ 828. **F.**—(1) *F* was a sound peculiar to the Italian languages, and may be described as the Labial Aspirate. In the Etruscan, Umbrian, and Oscan alphabets it was represented by a peculiar character, **8**; but in Latin it was expressed by the so-called Aeolic digamma (*F* or **F**).

In the middle of Latin words the *f* underwent two changes: (1) the aspirate was lost and the labial alone remained; or (2) the labial sound was lost and the aspirate only remained.

(1) *Loss of the aspirate in f:*

Gr.	ἄμφω	comp. with Lat.	ambo,
	ὀμφαλος	„	umbilicus.

In the same way the Sanskrit suffix *-bhyam* (as in *tu-bhyam*, *Dat. sing.* of 2nd personal pronoun) corresponds to the Gr. *-φι*, and the Oscan *-fe*, and the Latin *-bi* instead of *fi*. Hence *b* has arisen out of *f* in *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, *i-bi*, *u-bi*.

So also *b* has arisen out of *f* in the terminations *-bam* and *-bo* of the Imperfect and Future, which come from the root *FU* in *fui*, as *eram* and *ero* come from the root *ES* in *est*.

In the Perfect terminations *-vi*, and *-ui*, for *fui*, the *f* has been disturbed by the following semivowel, like the *d* in *viginti* (v. § 827) and the *g* in *nives* (v. § 824).

(2) *Loss of the labial in f:* as, *hoedus* for *foedus*, &c.: see examples in § 825 (2).

In *mi-hi* the *f* has become a mere aspirate, while in the corresponding forms it has become *b*: as *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, &c.

So also in the pronominal adverbs in *-im*, as *ill-im*, *ist-im*, &c., the original termination was *-fim*, corresponding to the Sanskrit *-bhyam*. The *f* first became *h*, so that from *illo-fim*, *isto-fim*, arose *illo-him*, *isto-him*: then *h* disappeared between two vowels, according to the general practice; and *illo-im*, *isto-im* were then contracted into *illim*, *istim*.

Obs. The forms *ex-im*, *i-n-de*, *u-n-de*, *ali-cu-n-de*, &c. are of the same origin; the old forms *i-fim* and *(c)u-fim* coming from the pronominal roots *i* (*is*) and *cu* (*qui*), *f* sinking into *h*, and disappearing between the two vowels.

III. Dentals.

§ 829. **T.**—*T* had a weaker sound at the end than at the beginning and middle of words. Hence we find the *t* of the 3rd Person of verbs sometimes dropped in Latin, as it regularly is in Greek. Even in

old Latin inscriptions we have the 3rd persons *dede, dedro, dederi, censuere*. In the 3rd Person Plural of the Perf. Active the termination *ere*, instead of *erunt*, occurs in the best period of the language.

On the sibilant of *t* followed by *i* and another vowel v. § 822 (3).

§ 830. D.—(1) The Dental Media D at the end of words was pronounced nearly like the Tennis *t* (Comp. Quint. i. 7, § 5). Hence we find in the best MSS., *t* at the end of words instead of *d*, and in the same MS. both forms often occur side by side: as,

it	and id,	at	and ad,
quot	„ quod,	aput	„ apud,
quit	„ quid,	set	„ sed,
istut	„ istud,	haut	„ hand.
aliut	„ aliud,		

(2) By a comparison with the Sanskrit, we learn that *t* was the original termination of the Neuter of the Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives: thus *quod* corresponds to the Sanskrit *kat*. So, also, the Preposition *ad* or *at* corresponds to the Sanskrit *ati*. The termination of the Ablative Singular in Sanskrit is *t*, which was in like manner softened in old Latin into *d*, and finally dropped. Hence we find on the Columna Rostrata, the old Ablatives *altod, murid, dictatored, navaled*; and similar forms in other inscriptions.

(3) The softening of a final *t* into *d*, and then the disappearance of the latter, appears in many other Latin words.

1. We have the three forms *haut, haud, and hau*.

2. In the Imperative, the *d* arising out of *t* is regularly dropped in Latin: comp.

esto	with the Oscan	estud,	facito	with the Oscan	factud,
agito	„	actud,	liceto	„	licitud.

Obs. It has been already noticed that the *t* of the 3rd Person of Verbs is frequently dropped (v. § 829). That the *t* was in such cases first softened into *d* appears from forms found in inscriptions, such as the Latin *fecid, exead*, and the Oscan *fefacid, hipid, fuid, &c.*

In the middle of Latin words there was also a fluctuation in the pronunciation and orthography of *d* and *t*, especially after *r* and *u*.

Compare	quatuor	and	quadratus,
	quatrídium	„	quadraginta,
	mentiri	„	mendax.

(4) On the disappearance of *d* followed by *v* at the beginning of words, as *duellum* (bellum), *duis* (bis), *duonus* (bonus) *dviginti* (viginti); and on its disappearance followed by *i*, as *Janus* (Dianus), *Diovis* (Jovis), v. §§ 827, 824, *Obs.* 3.

(5) On the change of *d* into *l* and *r*, v. §§ 831, No. 2; 832. No. 2.

IV. Liquids.

§ 831. L.—(1) L had its *fullest* sound at the end of words, like *sal, mel, consul, vigil*. This is the reason why *l* always retains its place at the end of Latin words, while so many other consonants in the same position disappear.

(2) L had a *lighter* sound at the beginning of words, as in *latere, laetari, lectus, lotus*, &c., and in the middle of words between vowels, as in *tulis, fidelis, facilis, hostilis*. Since the *l* in this position was pronounced only lightly with the tongue, it was frequently interchanged with *r*. Thus the suffixes *-alis* and *-aris* (§ 187, No. 9) are the same; *-alis* being used when *r* precedes, and *-aris* *l* precedes : as,

austr-alis	vall-ar ^{is} ,	mur-alis	proeli-ar ^{is} ,
rur-alis	sol-ar ^{is} ,	corpor-alis	regul-ar ^{is} .

For the same reason we have *caeruleus* instead of *caeluleus* from *caelum*, and *Parilia* instead of *Palilia* from *Pales*.

In consequence of the lighter sound of *l* in the beginning and middle of words, we find it interchanged in these positions with *d* : as,

lacrima	instead of	dacrima,	Gr. δάκρυον,
levir	„		δάφνηρ,
lautia	„	dautia	(Fest. p. 68),
lingua	„	dingua,	Goth. tuggo, Eng. tongue,
oleo	comp.	odor,	Gr. ὄδωδα.

D represents *l* in the forms :

cadamitas	for	calamitas	(Mar. Victor. p. 2456),
Capitodium	„	Capitolium	(ib. p. 2470).

(3) L had its lightest sound when it was the second *l* of *ll*. The difference in sound between *l* and *ll* seems to have been so slight, that in inscriptions many Proper Names were written both with one *l* and with two : as, *Ofilius* and *Ofillius*, *Silius* and *Sillius*, &c.

For the same reason we find in the best MSS. both *mille* and *mīle*, *millia* and *mīlia*. The more correct orthography of these two words is *mille* and *mīlia*. The reason for this is that *i* before *a* was pronounced as *y*; and as the second *l* seems to have had nearly the same sound (like a second *l* in French), the combination of sound *millia* (= milyya) was nearly impossible.

Obs. 1. On the same principle, we may understand how in Greek βάλλω arises from βαλλω, τίλλω from τιλλω, &c. (See Curtius, *Gr. Gr.* § 252.) In the same way in Latin :

percello	arises from	percelio	Perf. perculi,
pello	„	pelio	pepuli,
tollo	„	tolio	tetuli.

Obs. 2. Words in *-ela*, when a short vowel precedes, ought to be written with a double *l*: as,

loquella,	not loquela,	luella,	not lucla,
querella,	„ querela,	fugella,	„ fugela.
sequella,	„ sequela,		

But when a long vowel precedes the *-ela*, the single *l* is the correct orthography: as, *custodela*, *clientela*, *suadela*, *candela*, &c. See Lachmann, ad *Lucret.* 3, 1015.

§ 832. **R.**—Of all the liquids, and indeed of all the consonants, *R* is the most closely related to the vowels. In Sanskrit there is a vowel *r* sound distinguished by a separate character from the consonantal *r*.

(1) In Latin an original *s* constantly becomes *r* between two vowels: as,

Lares	for Lases,	Spurius	for Spusius,
arae	„ asae,	Valerius	„ Valesius,
feriae	„ fesiae,	Papirius	„ Papisius,
arena	„ asena,	quaero	„ quaeso.

In the same way :

aeris	from aes,	Veneris	from Venus,
cruris	„ crus,	Cereris	„ Ceres,
generis	„ genus,	pulveris	„ pulvis,
temporis	„ tempus,	cineris	„ cinis.

So also in composition :

dir-imere	for dis-imere,	dir-ibere	for dis-hibere.
-----------	----------------	-----------	-----------------

The termination *-rum* of the Genitive Plural is instead of *-sum* in such words as *fuba-rum*, *bono-rum*, *dic-rum*, *bove-rum*, &c.

Even at the end of words *s* sometimes becomes *r*: as,

arbor	for arbos,	honor	for honos,
labor	„ labos,	lepor	„ lepos.

The *r*, which is the sign of the Passive, arises in like manner from the *s* of the Reflective Pronoun *se*.

Obs. The time at which *s* began to be changed into *r*, is partly indicated by the statement of Cicero (*ad Fam.* ix. 21), that L. Papirius Cursor, who was consul B.C. 336 (consequently in the time of the Samnite wars), was the first of his family named Papirius, while all his ancestors were called Papii. Compare Livy, iii. 4, *init.*

(2) *D* was also changed into *r*, especially in the preposition *ad* in composition. Thus we find in the grammarians and in inscriptions :

arvenae	for advenae,	arfinae	for adfinae,
arvocati	„ advocati,	arfuissae	„ adfuissae.
arvorum	„ advorum,		

So also in the usual forms :

arbit^{er} for adbit^{er} (comp. adbit^{ere}),
arcesso „ adcesso,
meridies „ medidies (from medius dies).

§ 833. **N.**—(1) **N**, at the beginning of all words, had a sharp, full sound. Hence we find no examples in which **N** in this position undergoes any change.

(2) **N**, at the end of words, was pronounced more feebly, as is clear from its frequent disappearance in this position; as, for instance, in the Nominative case of all Stems in *on*: as *leo* from *leon*, in the *homo* from *homon*, &c. So also in such forms as *ceteroqui* for *ceteroquin*, *alioqui* for *alioquin*.

(3) **N**, in the middle of words, when it represents *m* and stands before *d* and *t*, had a full sound; as, *eorundem*, *tandem*, *duntaxat*, *septentrio*. It had the same sound in the middle of words between two vowels. Hence the orthography in this position often fluctuates between a single and double **N**: as, *Porsena* and *Por-senna*, *Caecina* and *Caecinna*, &c. In the oldest MSS. of Plautus, Virgil, Lucretius, and Gaius, words are sometimes written with a single *n*, where etymology would require two: as, *conubium*, *conectere*, *conexus*; which forms are most readily explained on the supposition that **N** in this position had so full a sound as to render the two letters unnecessary.

(4) But **N**, in the middle of words, had a very faint sound before the aspirate *h*, the semivowels *j* (= *y*) and *v*, and the sibilant *s*, and hence frequently disappears before these letters:

i. Before *h*: as,

cohaereo,	cohors,
coheres,	cohortari.
cohibere,	

ii. Before *j* (= *y*) and *v*: as,

coicio	compared with	conicio (conjicio),
cojectura	„	conjectura,
cojunnx	„	conjunnx,
cojuncti (whence cuncti)	„	conjuncti,
coventionid (in S. C. de Bacch.)	„	conventio (whence contio, v. § 822, Obs. 1.).

iii. Before *s*, which occurs still more frequently:

(a.) In the Suffix *-iens*: as,

quoties	instead of	quotiens,
toties	„	totiens,
quinquies	„	quinquiens.

(b.) In the Suffix of the Ordinal Numbers *-esimus* for *-ensumus*: as,

vicesimus	instead of	vicensumus,
quadragesimus	„	quadragensumus,
duodevicesimus	„	duodevicensumus.

(c.) In the Suffix of the Gentile Adjectives in *-ensis*: as,

Apulesis	instead of	Apulensis,
Ostesis	„	Ostensis,
Narbonesis	„	Narbonensis.

(d.) In the Stems of some words: as,

cesor	instead of	censor,
cosul	„	Consul,
mesis	„	mensis,
mostrum	„	monstrum,
tosor	„	tonsor.

(e.) In Lucretius, Plautus, and early Inscriptions, the *n* of the *nt* of the termination of the Imperfect Participles sometimes disappears; namely, when the *t* of the Stem has been dropped before *s*, the sign of the Nominative: as,

animas	instead of	animans,	lacrimas	instead of	lacrimans,
cogitas	„	cogitans,	dormies	„	dormiens,
curas	„	curans,	obedies	„	obediens.

(5) N had a guttural sound before the gutturals *c*, *g*, *ch*, *x*, and was probably pronounced like the French *n*. Some of the ancient writers, as we learn from Varro (ap. Prisc. i. 39), sought to express this sound by *g*, as in Greek, writing

Agchises	instead of	Anchises,
agceps	„	anceps,
aggulus	„	angulus.

Hence we can explain the forms

ec-ce	instead of	en-cē,
ec-quis	„	en-quis,
ec-quando	„	en-quando.

(6) N is changed into *m* before labials, and is assimilated before the liquids, *l*, *r*: as,

im-peritus	instead of	in-peritus,
im-modicus	„	in-modicus,
col-laudo	„	con-laudo,
col-ligo	„	con-ligo,
cor-ripio	„	con-ripio,
cor-ruo	„	con-ruo.

§ 834. **M.**—(1) **M**, at the beginning of Latin words, had the same full sound as it had in the cognate languages.

(2) **M** had a weaker sound in the middle of words before the labial consonants, as in *umbra*. Further, in the middle of words **M** was changed into:—

- i. The guttural *n* before the guttural *c*: as, *anceps* (for *ambi-ceps*).

Obs. On the other hand, *m* generally remained before *q*: as, *quemquam*, *tamquam*.

- ii. Into the dental *n* before the dentals *d*, *t*: as, *tantundem*, *veruntamen*, *eandem*. The only exception to this rule is *circumdo*.

- iii. Into a faint nasal sound (which frequently was not written), before *j* (= *y*), *v*, and *s*: as, *conjunx* or *cojux*, *consul* or *cosul*, &c. (v. § 833, No. 4).

- iv. In composition, the *m* of *circum* and of *com* frequently disappears before a vowel: as,

circuire, circuitus,	coagulum,	coactus,
coemptio,	coire,	cooptare, &c.

(3) **M**, at the end of words, was pronounced so faintly as to be almost inaudible. In Latin verse, a word ending in a vowel and **M**, was for metrical purposes regarded as ending only in a vowel. Hence **M** was frequently not written at the end of words. Its disappearance is of importance for the history of the Latin Declensions and Conjugations.

Obs. 1. In the Verb, the *m*, which is the sign of the first Person Sing., is dropped in most tenses of the Indicative, but retained in the Subjunctive. This *m* must have disappeared very early, as it is also dropped in Greek in the present tense of verbs in *-ω*, and retained only in verbs in *-μι*. In Latin, the *m* is preserved in only two verbs in the Present Indicative, *s-u-m* (= *es-u-m*, comp. Gr. *ἐσ-μι*) and *inqu-a-m*.

Obs. 2. In Nouns, the final *m* is sometimes written and sometimes omitted in inscriptions of the time of the Punic wars: thus we find such forms as *dono* and *donom*, *viro* and *sacrom*, &c. From the time of the S. C. de Bacchanalibus, the final *m* of the nouns regularly appears. But that it still continued to be omitted in the popular dialect, is evident from the inscriptions scribbled by the populace on the walls of Pompeii, in which the *m* of the Accusative is usually wanting: as, *tota*, *puella*, &c., for *totam*, *puellam*, &c. From the third century A.D., the *m* of nouns and other words is constantly omitted in inscriptions, because it had by this time ceased to be pronounced in the popular dialect. This dropping of the *m* first in pronunciation and then in writing, seems to have been one of the main causes of the destruction of the Latin Declensions in the popular language.

V. Sibilants.

§ 835. **s.**—(1) The grammarians give us hardly any information respecting the pronunciation of S; but it clearly had more than one sound in Latin.

(2) S, at the beginning of words, had a sharp sound. It is found, at the beginning of words, only before consonants, in the combinations *sp, sc, st*: as, *spargere, scindere, stare*. On account of its sharp sound, it disappeared before *f* at the beginning of words: as, *fallo* compared with *σφάλλω*, *fungus* with *σφύγγος*, *funda* with *σφενδόνη*, *fidis* with *σφίδη*.

(3) S, in the middle of words, was pronounced sharply both before and after consonants. This is shown by the change of the Labial Media into the Tenuis before *s*: as, *nup-si, lap-sus*, &c. (v. § 826, No. 3): and also by the fact that *s* is retained only before sharp sounds, while it is dropped before *m, n, l, d*: as,

ca-mena,	po-no,	corpu-lentus,	ju-dex,
(cas-mena),	(pos-no),	(corpos-lentus),	(jus-dex),
o-men,	ce-na,		i-dem,
(os-men),	(ces-na),		(is-dem),
po-moerium,	ahe-neus,		di-duco,
(pos-moerium),	(ahes-neus),		(dis-duco),
du-mosus,	vide-n',		tre-decim,
(dus-mosus),	(vides-n'),		(tres-decim).

Obs. In the same way *s* disappears before *b*: as, *ju-beo* (= *jus-beo*), which is a contraction of *jus-hibeo*.

Sometimes S is changed into *r* before the same sounds: as,

car-men,	veter-nus,	diur-nus,
(cas-men),	(vetes-nus),	(dius-nus).

(4) S, in the middle of words, had a softer sound between two vowels, as it has in the Romance languages: as, Lat. *rosa*, Ital. *rosa*, French *rose*. This is also shown by the change of *s* into *r* between two vowels (v. § 832, No. 1), which could not have been of such frequent occurrence had not the *s* in this position been the softer sibilant.

Obs. In *spes* and *dies*, the *s* belongs to the Stem, and has been dropped in the Gen. and Dat. cases Sing., *spe-i* = *spes-i*, *die-i* = *dies-i*. That the *s* of *spes* belongs to the Stem is proved by the Nom. and Acc. Pl. *speser* in Ennius, and by the verb *spero*. That the *s* of *dies* belongs to the Stem appears from the forms *diur-nus* = (dius-nus), *ho-dier-nus* (= ho-dies-nus), and *Dies-piter*.

(5) S, at the end of words, was from the earliest times very

faintly sounded in Latin. In many of the Case-endings, *s* was dropped altogether. Thus it disappeared in the Nom. Sing. of such words as *Numa, poeta, puer, vigil*; in the Gen. Sing. of the 1st, 2nd, and 5th Declensions, originally ending in *a-is, o-is, e-is*, from which arose the later forms *ae, i, ei*; in the Nom. Pl. of the 1st and 2nd Declensions, where *a-is* and *o-is* were the original forms of the later *ae* and *i*. In verbs, in like manner, the *s*, which was the sign of the 2nd Person Sing. of the Imperative, was dropped, *rege, mone, audi* having at one time ended in *s*. So also in the 2nd Person Sing. of the Pres. and Imperf. Indic. and Subj., and of the Fut. Indic. Passive, we have the forms *amare, amere, amabare, amarere, amebere*, together with *amaris, ameris, &c.* The adverbs *magis* and *potis* were also at an early period written *mage* and *pote*.

Obs. In the inscriptions of the time of the Punic War, we find words of the 2nd declension in the Nominative case without *s*: as, *Terentio, Albanio, &c.* In the Roman poets down to the time of Cicero, the final *s*, followed by a word beginning with a consonant, did not make the preceding vowel long, which proves that it was not then pronounced. Cicero styles this pronunciation *subrusticum* (*Orat.* 48, 161), which shows that the *s* was still dropped in his time in the country dialect. In the later Imperial inscriptions the final *s* in the case-endings usually disappears. This omission of the final *s*, like the similar disappearance of the final *m*, was one of the main causes of the destruction of the Latin Declensions.

§ 836. **Z.**—(1) *Z* was found in the oldest Roman alphabet and occurred in the *Carmen Saliare*. At what time it disappeared is unknown. It is not found in the Twelve Tables, and we are told that the tragic poet Attius did not use it. It first came into use again in Cicero's time, but then only in Greek words.

(2) The Romans, in the time of Plautus and Pacuvius, expressed the Greek *z* at the beginning of words by *s*, and in the middle of words by *ss*: hence they wrote and pronounced *Saguntum, Sethus, sona, badisso, Atticisso, &c.* Such forms in the present MSS. of Plautus, as *zona, Zacynthus, badizo, trapezita* were introduced in the recension of the text by the grammarians, in accordance with the orthography of their time.

Obs. It would seem that at a later period the Roman *z* had in it something of *d* sound as well as of a sibilant. Hence in the Imperial times, when *di* followed by a vowel was sibilated, it was sometimes expressed by *z*: thus we find *diabolus, diaconus, &c.*, written *zabolus, zaconus, &c.*

§ 837. **X.**—(1) Whether *X* is classed among the gutturals or the sibilants is immaterial, as it represented both sounds united. It is here placed with the sibilants, because in course of time it degenerated into a mere sibilant.

Obs. It has been already shown that *X* did not belong to the earliest Roman Alphabet; yet still it was written at a period earlier than the most ancient inscriptions (v. § 820, *Obs.* 2). It can be only an accident that we do not

find it in the short inscriptions of the earliest times. It first appears in the S. C. de Bacchanalibus in the words : *exdeicendum, exdeicatis, extrad.*

(2) From the time of the Gracchi, that is from the time of Lucilius and Attius, who did much to fix the Latin orthography, *x* was frequently written *xs*: as, *saxsum, maxsume, proxsimum, deduxsit, lexs*, &c. This orthography is found even in monuments of the Augustan age. Hence it is clear that the sibilant was pronounced very strongly. From this predominance of the sibilant we may account for the fact, that before consonants, the guttural part of *x* disappeared and the sibilant *s* alone remained; whence we find in inscriptions *sescentas, Sestius, praetestati*. The remaining *s* then disappeared before those consonants with which it did not harmonize, that is, before *d, n, m, v* (v. § 835, No. 3): as, *se-decim, se-ni, se-mestris, se-vir*.

VI. Semivowels.

§ 838. J.—(1) The same character, namely *I*, was used by the Romans to express the vowel *i* and the semivowel *j*.

The semivowel *J* had its simplest sound at the beginning of simple words, and at the beginning of the second member of compound words: as,

ab-judico	ad-jungo	con-jectus
e-juro	de-jectus	di-judico.

In such cases *J* was pronounced like the English *y*. If the *J* was followed by *i*, the *J* was dropped: therefore the correct orthography is—

eicit <i>not</i> ejicit,	proicit <i>not</i> projicit,
reicit „ rejicit,	coicit „ cojicit.

A short vowel thus preceding *J* in composition remained short, just as before a simple consonant: as,

bijugus,	quadrijugus,	trijugus,	altijugus.
----------	--------------	-----------	------------

(2) *J* in the middle of simple words between two vowels had a fuller sound, more similar to a vowel. Hence, as we learn from Quintilian (i. 4, § 11), this sound was represented by a double *i* by Cicero, who wrote, for example, *aiio* and *Maiia* (cf. Prisc. i. 18; vii. 19). We find in inscriptions such forms as *Pompeiius, eiIus, cuiIus, maiIorum*, the second *I* in some cases being written higher than the other letters.

(3) The guttural is omitted before *J* in:

māior, mājus	for māgior,
Mājus (Māius) „	Māgius,
pulējum	„ pulēgium,
mējo	„ mīgio (cf. mingo),
āio	„ āgio (cf. Sansk. <i>ah</i> , “dicere”).

v is omitted before *J* in :

Gājus (Gāius) for Gavius.

r in :

pē-jero for perjero (cf. perjurium)

s in :

dI-judico for disjudico.

s with *n* preceding in :

trā-jicio for transjicio

s with *c* preceding in :

sē-jugis for sexjugis.

Obs. In the later popular pronunciation *J* was sibilated and pronounced nearly like the English *j* and the Italian *gi*. In a very late inscription we find *coniuncta*, written for *conjuncta*. Hence the Italian words *giunto*, *giovane*, *giogo* from *junctum*, *juvenem*, *jugum*.

§ 839. V.—(1) The same character, namely *V*, was used by the Romans to express the vowel *u* and the semivowel *v*.

Obs. The semivowel *v* was reckoned by Cicero among the labial consonants. (Mar. Victorin. p. 2162.) The Emperor Claudius, as already remarked (v. § 820, *Obs.* 4), introduced for this sound the character Δ , which, however, after his death fell into disuse.

(2) Many Greek words, which originally began with a Digamma, begin in Latin with a *v*: as,

vomo,	ἐμέω,	vitulus,	ἵταλος,
voco,	εἶπον, rt. εἶπ-,	ver,	ἦρ,
volvo,	εἴλω,	vestis,	ἐσθής,
vinum,	οἶνος,	vespera,	ἐσπέρα,
viola,	ῥον,	Vesta,	Ἑστία.

Obs. The Latin *v* was expressed in Greek, after the disappearance of the Digamma, by either *ou* or *β*; and the same word is sometimes written indifferently in either way; as,

Varro,	Οὐάρρων.	Βάρρων.
Vala,	Οὐάλης,	Βάλης.
Valentia,	Οὐαλεντία.	Βαλητία.
Valerius,	Οὐαλέριος.	Βαλεριανός.
Venusia,	Οὐενουσία.	Βενουσία.

This fluctuation in the orthography between *ou* and *β* proves that *v* in Latin occupied an intermediate sound between the vowel sound *ou* and the consonant *β* in Greek, which was the case with the Greek *F*. *V* would therefore seem to have been pronounced in the beginning of words like the English *v*.

V rarely comes into contact with a preceding consonant, except the liquids *r* and *l*. It either (1) drives out the preceding consonant, or (2) is changed into *u*, or (3) disappears altogether.

(1) *D* disappears before *v* (v. § 827, No. 2) in :

viginti,

suavis.

G disappears before *v* (v. § 824, No. 2, iv.) in :

nives, fruor, fluvium, conniveo, vivo.

F, having previously become *h*, disappears before *v* (v. § 828) in :

proba-vi for proba-fui, &c.

(2) V is changed into *u* in the suffix *-vus* after Mutes and *n* : as,

vacuus,	perpetuus,
mortuus,	ingenuus.

But if *r* or *l* precedes, the suffix *-vus* retains its original form : as,

alvus,	acervus,
calvus,	curvus.

(3) V disappears altogether before *d*, *t*, and *s* : as,

te, tibi, comp.	tu, tuis, . . .	Sansk. tvam,
se, sibi, „	sui, suis, . . .	„ svas.

Obs. A comparison of these pronouns with the Sanskrit shows that *v* was the original form, subsequently changed into *u*, and then dropped.

(4) In like manner V rarely comes into contact with a consonant following ; for, when a vowel following is dropped, *v* becomes *u*, and then coalesces with the preceding vowel into a diphthong. Thus *av* becomes *au*, when the vowel following is dropped : as,

fautor	from	favitor,
nauta	„	navita,
auceps	„	aviceps,
andeo	„	avideo ; comp. avidua.

So *ov* becomes *ou* (afterwards written *u*), when the vowel following is dropped : as,

nuper	for	novumper (v. <i>Obs.</i> 1),
nunc	„	novumee (v. <i>Obs.</i> 2),
Jupiter	„	Jovipiter,
Juno	„	Jovino,
jucundus	„	juvicundus,
prudens	„	providens.

In such cases *v* was probably pronounced like the English *w*.

Obs. 1. In *nuper* for *novum-per*, the preposition is added as an enclitic, like *parum-per*, *sem-per*, *paullis-per*, *tantis-per*, *aliquantis-per*.

Obs. 2. *Novum-ee* becomes first *novum-ee*, *nun-ee*, and then *nun-e* ; just as *Ann-ee* becomes *Ann-e*, and *Iun-ee* becomes *Iun-e*.

(5) V between vowels is frequently dropped : as,

petil	for petivi,	malo	for mavolo,
commorunt	„ commoverunt,	aetas	„ aovitas,
amirunt	„ amaverunt,	ditior	„ divitior,
nolo	„ novolo,	vita	„ vivita.

The *v* in the Perfect of the First Conjugation seems to have been usually omitted in the popular pronunciation; hence the perfect forms of the modern Italian *lavorai, amai, chiamai, &c.*

(B.) THE VOWELS.

§ 840.—(1) The vowels appear to have been pronounced in Latin much as they are in the modern Italian. According to the organs with which they are pronounced, A has the nearest relation to the Gutturals, I to the Dentals, and U to the Labials; while E has an intermediate sound between the Guttural *a* and the Dental *i*, and O an intermediate sound between the Guttural *u* and the Labial *u*.

(2) We learn from Quintilian that *e* in some cases had an intermediate sound between *e* and *i* ("in here neque *e* plane neque *i* auditur," i. 4, § 18), which sound was expressed in the prae-Augustan period by *ei*.

(3) There was in Latin an intermediate sound between *i* and *u*, very nearly equivalent to the sound of the Greek *υ*, the French *u*, and the German *ü*. This sound is frequently mentioned by grammarians. It is stated by them to have occurred in the following words:—

Before *m* in :

ⁱ maxumus,	ⁱ pulcherrumus,	ⁱ sumus,
ⁱ intumus,	ⁱ acerrumus,	ⁱ contumax,
ⁱ extumus,	ⁱ justissumus,	ⁱ contumelia,
ⁱ lacrumac,	ⁱ volumus,	ⁱ existumat,
ⁱ optumus,	ⁱ nolumus,	ⁱ monumentum,
ⁱ minumus,	ⁱ possumus,	ⁱ alumenta.

Before *b, p, and f* in :

ⁱ manubiac,		
ⁱ lubido,	ⁱ aucupium,	ⁱ aurufex.
ⁱ intubus,	ⁱ mancupium,	
ⁱ artubus,	ⁱ aucupare,	
ⁱ manubus,	ⁱ manupretium,	

And there are many words of a similar kind. This variation in the orthography is found chiefly before Labials. In the old inscriptions all such words appear with *u*, but in the inscriptions in the time of Caesar, Cicero, and Augustus, with an *i*. We are expressly told by the ancient grammarians that Caesar and Cicero employed the *i*,

though the country-people used the more ancient pronunciation with the *u*.

The Emperor Claudius attempted to introduce the new character **†**, for this intermediate sound between *i* and *u* (v. § 820, *Obs.* 4); but it is curious that, in inscriptions, this character does not occur in any of the words already mentioned, but only as a representative of the Greek *υ*, as in: Aeg **†**pti, C **†**cnus, Bath **†**llus, &c.

Even in late inscriptions we sometimes find the *u* in such words; so that the intermediate sound between *u* and *i* seems never to have passed completely into *i*. In modern Italian the *i* is the most frequent, as in *ottimo*, *massimo*, *prossimo*, *intimo*, *libidine*, &c. But the *u* is still retained in *monumento* and *documento*.

(4) The following arrangement shows the comparative weight of the vowels in Latin, *a* being the heaviest and *i* the lightest:

a, o, u, e, i.

CHAPTER LXX.

FORMATION OF THE CASES.

§ 841. There appears to have been originally but one mode of declining Nouns in Latin—namely, by adding to the Stem a certain suffix for each case. The present “Five Declensions” have arisen through the changes undergone by these suffixes in combination with the final letter or letters of the Stem. In the following chapter it is shown in what way these changes were probably developed.

The origin of the case-suffixes is for the most part quite unknown. Their ultimate form is ascertained by comparison of the oldest known languages of the Indo-European or Aryan family. Yet it must not be supposed that Latin any more than Greek is *derived* from Sanskrit or any other known language. Only by approaching nearer to the source from which the streams of the Indo-European languages have diverged, we obtain their original elements in a less altered and corrupt form.

§ 842. Instead of the ordinary “Five Declensions,” nouns may be classed according to the final letter of their Stem into Two Principal Declensions:

I. The Consonant Declension;

II. The Vowel Declension: the latter being subdivided into the

A = Declension,

E = ”

I = ”

O = ”

U = ”

§ 843. The "Five Declensions" correspond to these in the following way:—

1 Declension.	2 Declension.	3 Declension.	4 Declension.	5 Declension.
A Decl.	O Decl.	Consonant and I Decl.	U Decl.	E Decl.

The case-endings appear for the most part in their original forms in the Consonant Declension; while in the Vowel Declensions they undergo various changes through the combination of the vowels of the Stems with the vowels of the case-endings.

1. The Nominative Singular.

A. MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

§ 844. The suffix of the Nominative Singular of Masculine and (in most cases) Feminine Nouns is *s*, added immediately to the Stem: as,

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
(Aenea-s).	avo-s	trab-s, avi-s.	gradu-s.	re-s

§ 845. *Third Declension*.—(1) In the Consonantal Stems, the ordinary euphonic changes must be observed. Thus: *cs*, *gs* = *x*; while *t*, *d*, and *s* disappear before the suffix: as, *dux* = *duc* + *s*; *lex* = *leg* + *s*; *aetās* = *aetat* + *s*; *vas* = *vad* + *s*.

Obs. In *nix*, *nivis*, the Stem was *xiqv*, which accounts for the *x* in the Nominative, while the *g* disappears in the oblique cases (v. § 24, No. 2, iv.).

(2) Stems ending in *n* mostly reject *s*: as, *tubīcen*, for *tubīcen* + *s*; *flamen*, for *flamen* + *s*. But in some cases the *s* is retained and the *n* dropped: as, *sanguis* for *sanguin* + *s*.

(3) Stems ending in *on* reject both *n* and *s*: as, *natio*, for *natio* + *s*; *virgo*, for *virgon* + *s*; *homo*, for *homon* + *s*.: v. § 833, No. 2.

(4) Stems ending in *l* and *r*, reject the suffix: as, *pater*, *dator*, *fur*, *consul*, *vigil*.

Obs. Stems ending in *ant* and *ent* frequently reject the *n* as well as the *t* before *s* in the more ancient writers, as: *cogitas* instead of *cogitans*. For further examples, v. § 833, No. 4, iii.

(5) Many Stems have changed the earlier *s* of their Stem into *r*: as, *arbos*, *arboris*; earlier, *arbos*, *arboris*. Similarly *honos* for *honor*; *labos* for *labor*, etc. (v. § 832, No. 1). Even the *s* of the Nominative is in one instance changed into *r*: namely, *quirquir* for *quisquis* (Varr. *L. L.* vii. 8, Müller).

§ 846. *Third Declension*:—I-stems.—(1) Many Stems in *I* have lost the *i* before the *s* of the Nominative, so that they apparently

belong to the Consonant Declension; but the majority have *-ium* in the Genitive Plural, thus retaining their original vowel. Stems of Adjectives in *-ati*, *-eti*, *-iti*, *-ti*, mostly formed from Substantives, and signifying belonging to a place, had in the time of Naevius, Ennius, Plautus, and Cato, the full Nominatives in *-atis*, *-etis*, *-itis*, *-tis*; but subsequently *-as*, *-es*, *-is*, *-s*, the *i* disappearing and the *t* being then elided according to euphonic laws: as,

Later Forms.	Old Forms.	Later Forms.	Old Forms.
Arpinas	Arpinatis	infinas	infinatis
Capenas	Capenatis	nostras	nostratis
Ardeas	Ardeatis	cujas	cujatis
Ferentinas	Ferentinatis	Samnis	Samnitis
Ravennas	Ravennatis	Quiris	Quiritis
Lavinias	Lavinatis	Caeres	Caeretis
primas	primatis	„	Caeritis
optimas	optimatis	Laurens	Laurentis
summas	summatis	Tiburs	Tiburtis.

§ 847. In like manner a great number of Nouns formed by the suffix *ti*, drop the *i* before the *s* of the Nominative: as,

mens	mons	ars
dens	pons	pars
ingens	sons	mors
fons	frons	cohors, &c.

Obs. The Nom. in *is* in many of these words occurs in old writers: as Nom. *mentis* in Ennius quoted by Varr. *L. L.* v. 59; Nom. *sortis* in Plaut. *Cas.* ii. 6, 28.

§ 848. If a liquid precedes the *i*, the *s* of the Nominative is dropped as well as the *i*: as,

mugil	for mugilis
pugil	„ pugilis
vigil	„ vigilis
linter	„ linteris
Arar	„ Araris (Prisc. v. 13)
par	„ paris (Prisc. vii. 64)
vomer	„ vomeris (Cat. <i>R. R.</i> 135)
caro(n)	„ carnis (Prisc. vi. 17).

Obs. Hence the original form of the Nom. of *caro* must have been *caroni-s*, which became both *caro* and *carnis*. The Gen. Pl. *carni-um* is explained by the Stem being *car(o)ni*.

§ 849. Adjectives ending in the Nominative Masculine and Feminine in *er*, *ris* (v. § 58), as, *acer*, *acris*; *pedester*, *pedestris*, have Stems ending in *eri*. In such forms as *acer* and *pedester*, the *is* is

dropped altogether; while in *acri-s* and *pedestr-is*, the *e* disappears before the *r* as in the oblique cases.

§ 850. *First or A Declension*.—The Nominative of Masculine nouns of the A Declension must have originally ended in Latin in *s*, as they do in Sanskrit and Greek; but the frequent disappearance of *s* at the end of Latin words has been already pointed out (v. § 835, No. 5). *S* appears never to have been added to form the Nominative of Feminine Nouns of this Declension, as it is not found either in Sanskrit or Greek in Feminine Nouns in A. The final *a* of Feminine Stems was originally long in the Indo-European languages, as it is always in Sanskrit, and usually in Greek. In Latin it is short in the latter time of the Republic, and in the Augustan age; but it was long in the earlier poets, as in Ennius (*Annal.* 484, ed. Vahlen)—

Multo foro ponit et ageñ longa repletur.

§ 851. *Second or O Declension*.—The Nominative originally ended in *o-s*, whence we find in inscriptions such forms as *filiös* and *primös* in the Nominative. Subsequently this *o* was softened into *u*; but since the combination *vu* and *uu* was avoided in Latin, the final *o* was retained, when preceded by *v* or *u*, even in the time of Augustus: as *Nom.* *avös*, *servös*, *mortuös*, &c.

§ 852. If an *r* precedes the final *o* of the Stem, both the *o* and *s*, the sign of the Nom., are usually dropped: as *puer* for *puerüs* (comp. *Voc.* *puere*, Plaut. *As.* 2, 3, 2).

§ 853. The same omission takes place in one instance, where the *o* is preceded by *l*: as, *famul* instead of *famulus* (Enn. *Ann.* 317; Lucret. iii. 1035, ed. Lach.). Compare the omission of *is* in I nouns, when the final *i* of the Stem is preceded by *r* or *l* (§ 843).

Obs. Only a few Substantives and Adjectives retain *us* after *r*: as *numer-us*, *humer-us*, *vesper-us* as well as *vesper*, *uter-us* (Gr. *oûthap*), *moriger-us* (as compared with *laniger*, *armiger*, *opifer*).

§ 854. In some of the pronominal Stems in *o*, the Nom. *s* is omitted, and the *o* or *u* is softened into *e*. In this way came *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, from *illus* (*ollus*), *ipsus*, *istus*. In like manner the *o* of the Vocative is softened into *e* (v. § 859)

B. NEUTER NOUNS.

§ 855. All Neuter Nouns have the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative cases alike in each number. There are three forms for these cases in the Sing.: they are either (1) the same as the Stem; or (2) formed by adding *m*; or (3) by adding *d*, which is confined to pronouns.

§ 856. *Nom., Acc., and Voc., the same as the Stem*.—This is the case with Nouns of the Consonant and U Declensions: as, Stem and

Nom. *fulgur*, *genu*. In such Nominatives as *corpus* and *crus*, the *s* is part of the Stem and not the sign of the Nom., as is proved by the Gen. *corpor-is* and *crur-is*, in which the *r* represents the original *s* (v. § 832, No. 1). In *corpus*, the *o* of the Stem is softened into *u* as in the Nom. of the O Declension. In like manner, in such words as, *genus*, *gener-is*, the original Stem was *genos* as in Greek (*γένος*, softened *γενεσ-*), the *o* being softened into *u* in the Nom., and into *e* in the oblique cases. In Greek, the *σ* disappeared between two vowels, which then were contracted into one. Thus from an original Dative form *genos-i*, we have Lat. *gener-i*, and Gr. *γένει*.

So also the *o* has been softened into *u* in *ebur*, *femur*, the suffix *-ur* being a weakened form of *-os* and *-us*.

Obs. In such Adjectives as *capax*, *amans*, the Neuter, contrary to all analogy, retains in the Nom. the sign of the Masc. and Fem. Nom.; and the same form is used for the Neut. Acc.

In Stems in *I*, the final *i* either sunk into *e*: as, *mare*, *facile*; or, it was dropped altogether, especially in the terminations *ali* or *ari*. In the following words both forms occur:

animal	animale	cochlear	cochleare
tribunal	tribunale	torcular	torculare
puteal	puteale	exemplar	exemplare
pulvinar	pulvinare	lacunar	lacunare.

§ 857. *Nom., Acc., and Voc., with the case-ending m.*—This occurs only in the 2nd or O Declension: as, *dono-m* or *donu-m*. It is evidently the sign of the Accusative transferred to the Nominative; probably on the ground that a Neuter Substantive cannot be a true Subject, but is naturally regarded as Object.

§ 858. *The Nom., Acc., and Voc., with the case-ending d.* This is confined to pronominal stems, ending both in *o* and *i*: as, *istu-d*, *illu-d*, *quo-d*, *aliu-d*, *i-d*, *qui-d*. By comparing the similar forms in Sanskrit, we learn that *t* was the original termination; and even in Latin these Neuters are frequently written with a final *t* instead of *d* (v. § 830, No. 1).

2. The Vocative Singular.

§ 859. The Vocative seems to have been originally the same as the stem, since in merely calling a person there was no occasion for a case-suffix to mark the relation of the word to other words in the sentence. But this form of the Vocative is retained only in the 2nd or O Declension, in which, however, the *o* ordinarily sinks into *e*: as, *eque*, *lupe*. In all the other Declensions the Voc. is the same as the Nom.; and even in the 2nd Declension the old Latin often exhibits the termination *us* in the Voc.: as, *Populus Albanus*, *O thou*

people of Alba. Also, *deus* is used as a *Voc.* (comp. Gr. *Θεός*, *Voc.* *Θεός* · later, *Θεέ* · *N. Test.*).

3. The Accusative Singular.

§ 860. The suffix of the Accusative Singular of all masculine and feminine nouns is *m*. When the stem ends in a vowel, the *m* is added to it immediately; when in a consonant, a connecting vowel (*ē*) is used: as,

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and 1 Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
<i>musa-m</i>	<i>avo-m</i>	<i>reg-em</i>	<i>gradu-m</i>	<i>re-m</i>
	<i>dominu-m</i>	<i>navi-m.</i>		

Obs. On the change of *o* into *u* in the 2nd Declension, see § 851.

§ 861. In the I Declension the old form *-im* is for the most part softened into *em*, though some words always, and others generally, retain the *i* (v. § 31).

Obs. 1. The termination *im* is almost always retained in Accusatives in *tim* and *sim*, used as adverbs: as,

<i>conjunctim,</i>	<i>praesertim,</i>
<i>strictim,</i>	<i>cautim,</i>
<i>punctim,</i>	<i>grezati-m,</i>
<i>partim,</i>	<i>acervati-m, &c.</i>

The suffix *tim* is softened into *sim*, when preceded by a dental or a liquid: as,

<i>caesim</i> (<i>caedo</i> '),	<i>sensim</i> (<i>'sentio</i> '),
<i>divisim</i> (<i>'divido</i> '),	<i>sparsim</i> (<i>'spargo</i> '),
<i>cursim</i> (<i>'curro</i> '),	<i>expulsim</i> (<i>'expello</i> ').

In one adverbial accusative the *im* becomes *em*; namely, *saltem*.

Obs. 2. In the Accusative of consonant stems, the Latin preserves an older form than the Greek. Cf. Lat. *dentem*, Sansk. *dantam*, with Gk. *δ-δοντα*. The Greek sometimes even drops the *n* after stems in *o* or *ω* of the 3rd Declension: as, *αἰδώς*, *shame*; Acc. *αἰδῶα* (contr. *αἰδῶ*).

4. The Genitive Singular.

§ 862. The Suffix of the Genitive Singular was originally *is* for all Declensions.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and 1 Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
<i>musa-is</i>	<i>avo-is</i>	<i>reg-is</i>	<i>manu-is</i>	<i>re-is</i>
<i>musa-i</i>	<i>avo-i</i>	<i>nav(i)-is</i>	<i>manūs</i>	<i>re-i</i>
<i>musac</i>	<i>avi</i>			

§ 863. There was, however, a still older form, *os*, answering to the Greek *os*, which is found in inscriptions in some nouns of the 4th or U Declension:

<i>senatu-os,</i>	<i>magistratu-os,</i>	<i>domu-os.</i>
-------------------	-----------------------	-----------------

The form *domu-os* was used by Augustus (Suet. Oct. 87 vulg. *domos*).

In inscriptions down to the time of Marius, we also find Genitives in *us*: as,

nomin-us	Vener-us	
Castor-us	Cerer-us.	

We may therefore conclude that the original form was *-os*, first softened into *-us* (v. § 851), and then into *-is*: e. g. *Κάστωρ-os*, Castor-us, Castor-is.

Obs. The reason of the retention of the *o* in *senatu-os*, *magistratu-os*, *domu-os*, is because the combination *uu* was avoided in Latin (v. § 851).

§ 864. The ancient form of the Suffix *-us* is retained in such words as:

istius	illius	ipsius
unius	totius	alius
ejus	cujus	hujus, &c.

Obs. The reason for the retention of the *u* in such words is that the combination *ii* was avoided in Latin.

§ 865. *Third or Consonant and I Declension.*—In Consonant Stems the *-is* is added to the Stem unaltered; in I Stems the *i* is dropped, but the vowel is not lengthened: as, *navis*.

Obs. In the oldest inscriptions we also find a *Gen.* in *es*: as,

Solut-es	Apollon-es;
----------	-------------

but the form in *is* was in all periods of the language the usual one in this Declension. In later times the popular dialect returned to the form in *es*: hence we find Caesar-es, campestr-es, pag-es (A.D. 508) for *pacis*.

§ 866. *First or A Declension.*—In the 1st, 2nd, and 5th Declensions the final *s* of the termination *-is* is dropped, as is so frequently the case with a final *s* (v. § 835, No. 5). Then from the original form *a-is*, as *musa-is*, arose two sets of forms:

(i.) *āī*, *āī*, *ae* (-e).

Or retaining the *s*:

(ii.). *acs*, *as* (es).

(1) The final *s* was dropped, whence the forms which frequently occur in the old poets and even in Virgil:

vitāī,	pictāī,	acquāī.
--------	---------	---------

Both syllables were originally long, *āī*, which were first contracted into *āī* and subsequently softened into *ae*.

(2) Or the final *s* of *aīs* was preserved, and *ai* was then softened into *ae*, as *dimidiaes*: or the *i* was dropped, as *terras*.

The form in *aes* frequently occurs in both the Republican and Imperial inscriptions, especially in the names of females: as,

Pesceniaes,	dimidiaes,
Heraes,	suas.

The form in *as* is frequently found in the older poets: *as*,

terras	fortunas
vias	escas.

It is retained in later writers in the common word *paterfamilias*.

Obs. The further softening of *ae* into *e* occurred in the third century A.D., and is found frequently in inscriptions of that period: *as*,

bone (for <i>bonae</i>)	provincies (for <i>provinciae</i>).
mire (for <i>mirae</i>)	victories (for <i>victoriae</i>).

§ 867. *Second or O Declension*.—After dropping the *s* of *o-is*, the diphthong *oi* was contracted into *i*. This *i* forms an intermediate sound between the *E* sound and *I* sound, and was represented by *EI*. Thus we find in inscriptions such forms as:

Romanei	agrei
populei	vinei.

Obs. As this intermediate sounded *EI* was sometimes pronounced like *I* and sometimes like *E*, we find it represented by both *I* and *E*. Hence we have in the *Nom. Pl.* of the *O Declension* the ancient forms, *magistreis*, *magistris*, *magistres* = *magistri* (v. § 835); and in the *Acc. Pl.* of the *I Declension*, *naveis*, *navis*, *naves*.

§ 868. Stems in *io* form the Genitive in *i*, not *ii*, in order to avoid the combination of two similar vowels: *as*,

praemi	Septimi
mancipi	Virgili, &c.

This is the correct orthography even in the Augustan age, though in later writers we find *ii*. The Single *i* is often written taller than the rest of the word: *as*, VIRGILI.

§ 869. *Fourth or U Declension*.—The oldest form was *u-os*, afterwards *u-is*, contracted usually into *ūs*, sometimes into *i*, with the final *s* omitted. Genitives in *u-os* have been already mentioned (v. 863):

as, senatu-os, magistratu-os, domu-os.

Genitives in *u-is* occur in the ancient writers: *as*,

anu-is,	fructu-is	quaestu-is,
senatu-is,	domu-is	exercitu-is.

The diphthong *ui* is not only contracted into *u*, whence the common form *senatūs*, but also into *i*, as *senati*: just as *oi* is contracted into *i* in the *O Declension* (v. 867). The form in *i* is found in writers down to the time of Caesar: *as*,

victi	tumulti	flucti
gemitu	sumpti	soniti
quaesti	strepiti	exerciti.

§ 870. *Fifth or E Declension*.—From the original form *e-is*, as *die-is*, we have the forms:

-es,	-ei,	-e,	-ii.
------	------	-----	------

§ 871. The *Gen.* in *-es* is found in the old writers and grammarians: *die-s* (Enn. Annal. 401, Vahlen), *facie-s* (Claudius Quadrig. in Gell. ix. 14, § 6), *rabie-s* (Lucret. iv. 1083, Lachmann); and Gellius (*l.c.*) also found *die-s* in old MSS. of Cicero and Virgil. We likewise find in other old writers quoted by grammarians:

pernicie-s, *luxurie-s.*

§ 872. The form in *-e* occurs in Plautus, Sallust, and even in the poets of the Augustan age: as,

die *reque*
acie *fide.*

§ 873. There was also in ancient times a form in *-ii*. Gellius (*l.c.*) quotes the following instances:

facii *dii*
progenii *pernicii*
fami *acii*
luxurii *spectii.*

5. The Dative Singular.

§ 874. The Suffix of the Dative Singular was *-i* for all Declensions.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cona. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
<i>musa-i</i>	<i>avo-i</i>	<i>reg-i</i>	<i>manu-i</i>	<i>re-i</i>
<i>musae</i>	<i>avō</i>	<i>nav(i)-i</i>		

There was, however, a still older form *-bi*, which appears in

ti-bi *u-bi* *l-bi*
si-bi *alicu-bi* *i-bi-que*
u-bi-que *l-bi-dem*
u-bi-cunque

This Suffix corresponds to the Sanskrit *-bhiyam*, to the Greek *-φιν* or *-φιν*, and the Oscan *fe* (v. § 828, 2). The same Suffix appears in *mi-bi*. It has been already seen that, as the aspirate has been lost in *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, &c., so the labial has disappeared in *mi-bi* (v. § 828).

This old Suffix has been retained in the *Dat Pl.* *-bus*.

§ 875. *Consonant or I Declension.*—Instead of *i* we also find in old inscriptions:

(1) <i>-ei</i> : as,	<i>virtut-ei</i>	<i>Quirit-ei</i>
	<i>Mart-ei</i>	<i>action-ei</i>
	<i>Junon-ei</i>	<i>urb-ei</i>
(2) <i>-e</i> : as,	<i>patr-e</i>	<i>jur-e</i>
	<i>Junon-e</i>	<i>Jov-e</i>

Even in the flourishing period of Roman literature we find the datives *aer-e* and *jur-e*.

§ 876. *First or A Declension*.—The original form *a-i* was softened into *ae*, as in the Genitive. But the form *ai* frequently appears in inscriptions even in the time of Augustus and subsequently : as,

colonia-i	Julia-i
dea-i	Agrippina-i.

§ 877. *Second or O Declension*.—The lengthened *ō* (cf. Greek *ω*) is the only remaining trace of the original Suffix.

(1) But *o-i* is preserved in inscriptions and by the grammarians : as,

populo-i	quo-i (for cui)
Romano-i	ho-i-c (for hui-c).

Obs. *Quoi* and *hoi-c* became *cui* and *hui-c*, because the *U* sound is more nearly related to *i* than to *o*.

(2) The form *ci* occurs in inscriptions in words which form their genitives in *-ius* : as,

quoiei	= cui
eiei	= ci
ipsei	= ispi.

§ 878. *Fourth or U Declension*.—(1) Instead of the common form in *u-i* we find in an inscription *senatu-ei*.

(2) As *ui* passed easily into *u*, we find the latter form, which Caesar declared the preferable one (Gell. iv. 16), in all periods of the language. Thus it occurs in :—

Sallust.	Virgil.	Livy.	Tacitus.
luxu	metu	exercitu	luxu
exercitu	victu	usu	
usu	concubitu.		

It is the regular form in the Neuters : as,

cornu,	gelu.
--------	-------

§ 879. *Fifth or E Declension*.—In the same way in this Declension *ei* passed into *e*. Thus we find in the classical writers :

facie,	fide,	pernicie.
--------	-------	-----------

§ 880. In the first three Declensions, which include all names of places, the Dative has in almost every instance been confused with the old

Locative Case.—This case, which in Sanskrit is most frequently marked by the Suffix *i*, no doubt originally existed in Greek and Latin with the same termination. The Greek *οἶκοι* and *χαμαί* are genuine Locatives; and such Latin forms as *Romae* (= *Romai*), *at Rome*,

Mileti, at *Miletus*, are strictly Locatives and not Genitives (v. § 257, *Obs.*). In the same way, domi, at *home*, and humi, on *the ground*, are Locatives.

6. The Ablative Singular.

§ 881. The oldest Suffix of the Ablative in Latin was *d* or *ed*, a softened form of *t*, the termination of the Ablative Singular in Sanskrit. We find on the Columna Rostrata and in other ancient inscriptions the following forms :

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.
Hinnad	poplicod	dictatorid	senatud
ead	Gnaivod	conventionid	
sententiad	altod	marid	

The *d* was subsequently dropped and the final vowel of the Stem lengthened : as,

musā,	avō,	navī.	manū,	rē.
-------	------	-------	-------	-----

Though the final *e* of the 3rd Declension is short in the poets of the Augustan age, it is long in Ennius, and is represented by *ei* in the earlier inscriptions. Thus we find :

virtutei
partei
fontei.

In Greek this Ablative Suffix is preserved in Adverbs in *-ως* (= *ωτ*), as *ὁμῶς* from the Stem *ὁμο*, where we also find the long vowel.

Obs. 1. This old Ablative form is preserved in Latin in other words. *Mēd* and *tēd* are found in Plautus as Ablatives of *ego* and *tu*. *Sed* is also an Ablative of *sui*, signifying originally "by one's self," and then "apart," "but ;" in composition the *d* is dropped, as *sē-cerno*, *sē-cedo*, &c. In the same way *pro*, originally *prod* (cf. *prod-co prod-igus*), was an Ablative.

Obs. 2. Adverbs in *e* formed from Stems in O were originally Ablatives, which have lost their final *d*. This appears from the form *facilumed*, which we find in the *Senatusconsultum de Bacchanalibus*.

7. Nominative and Vocative Plural.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

§ 882. The Suffix of the *Nom. Pl.* is *s*, with some connecting vowel, which was probably added to the *Nom. Sing.* : as *avi-s*, *pl. avis-ēs* contracted into *avēs* ; *rex* (i. e. *reg-s*), *pl. regs-ēs*, contr. *regēs* ; *gradu-s*, *pl. gradūs-ēs*, contr. *gradūs*.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or I Decl.
musa-is	avos-is	regs-es	gradus-es	res-es.
musai	avis	reg-es	gradū-s	re-s.
musae	avi	avis-es		
		av(i)-es		

§ 883. *Consonant and I Declension.*—In both these classes of Stems, besides the Suffix *es* we have *eis* and *is*, though these terminations are more common in the Accusative than in the Nominative. Thus Varro (L. L. viii. 66, Müller) expressly says that the *Nom. Pl.* *puppis* and *restis* were used as well as *puppēs* and *restēs*; and we also find the *Nom. Pl.* in *is* in the best MSS.

§ 884. *The First or A Declension.*—The Suffix *s* was added to the Nominative by means of the connecting vowel *i*, so that the original form was *musa-is*. We find in the *Senatus-consultum de Bacchanalibus* and in a few old inscriptions, a *Nom Pl.* in *ai*: as,

tabulai	cai
datai	litterai, &c.

This diphthong *ai* was, however, early softened into *ae*. Though the form *a-is* as a *Nom. Pl.* is not found, the *s* must have originally existed, since it occurs in the O Stems down to the time of the Social War (v. § 885), and in all the other Stems down to the latest period of the language.

§ 885. *The Second or O Declension.*—The Suffix *s* was added to the Nominative by means of the connecting vowel *i*, so that the original form was (*avos-is*) *avo-is*. The *s* is preserved in inscriptions down to the time of the Social War, and the diphthong *oi* underwent the following changes, of all which we have examples in inscriptions:

oe=oi.	e.	ei.	i.
pilumnoc	magistre-s	magistrei-s	magistri-s
poploe	duomvire-s	gnatei-s	ministri-s
(both in	modie-s	liberei-s	magistri
Carmen	ploirume	filiei	ministri
Saliare)	plurume	oinvorsei	universi.

Obs. From the diphthong *OI* arose the sound *Ei*, which was intermediate between *i* and *e*, and which was sometimes written *I*, and sometimes *E* (v. 867, *Obs.*).

8. The Accusative Plural.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

§ 886. The Accusative Plural appears to have been originally formed by the addition of *s* to the Accusative Singular, before which the nasal (*n* or *m*) was elided.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and 1 Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musam-s	avom-s	regem-s	manum-s	rem-s
musā-s	avō-s	regē-s	manū-s	rē-s.
		avim-s		
		avī-s		

Obs. In Gothic the Suffix *ns* of the Acc. Pl. has remained entire : as, *culpa-nis* (= *lupō-s*), *gnsti-nis* (= *hosti-s*), *sunu-nis* (= *pecū-s*). Compare in Greek the Acc. Pl. *ἄγρους* (for *ἄγρως*), where the diphthong compensates for the omission of the final *n* : so, *τῦπτοις*, *ὄδους*, for *τῦπτοις-σι*, *ὄδους-σι*.

§ 887. In the Consonant and I Stems the Acc. Pl. was also written *eis* or *is* as well as *es*, as in the Nom. (v. § 883). From Stems in *i* the form in *is* was common, along with that in *es*, in the best periods of the language.

NEUTER NOUNS.

§ 888. Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plural of all neuter nouns end in *ā* : as,

corpor- <i>ā</i>	regn(o)- <i>ā</i>	cornu- <i>ā</i>
mari- <i>ā</i> .		

In Zend, Greek, and Gothic we have the same Suffix for these cases in the Neuter. The Sanscrit suffix is *-ni*.

Obs. The origin of this Suffix is doubtful. It is perhaps a vocalization of the *n*, which appears in Sanscrit ; as in Herodotus, *Καυβύσσα* for *Καυβύσσα-ν*. The light vowel *i* would then be readily absorbed.

9. The Genitive Plural.

§ 889.—(1) The original Suffix of the Genitive Plural was *-rum*, softened into *-rum*; the *s* or *r* is usually dropped in the Consonant, I and U Declensions.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musā-rum	avō-rum	bov-ē-rum	arcu-um	die-rum
		(v. § 390.)		
		reg-um		
		navi-um.		

Obs. The original form of the Genitive Plural in the Indo-European languages is *-sām* or *-sām*. In Sanskrit *-sām* is the Suffix of the Gen. Pl. of pronouns : as, *tū-sām* = *istā-rum*. In Greek the *s* is dropped, but the long *ō* preserved : as, *μουσάων* for *μουσάων-σι*. In Latin the *s* is changed into *r* (v. § 832, No. 1), and the *-rom* softened into *-rum*.

§ 890. Even in the Consonant Declension the *r* of the Suffix is preserved in some ancient forms, as *bov-e-rum*, *Jov-e-rum* (Varr. L. L. viii. 74, Müller), and *nuc-e-rum*, *reg-e-rum*, *lapid-e-rum* (Charis. i. p. 40, P.). On the other hand, the early poets frequently dropped

the *r* in the A and O Declensions: as, *meŭm factŭm* for *meorum factorum*, *duŭm virŭm* for *duorum virorum* (Cic. Or. 46, § 155, who quotes other instances). Even in later times, the *-um* was the more usual form in many nouns of the A and O Declension, especially with words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades, as *drachmŭm* for *drachmarum*, *nummŭm* for *nummorum* (v. § 17, Obs. 3; § 19, Obs. 4).

§ 891. Genitives in *-i-um*, as a general rule, come from Stems ending in *I*, and Genitives in *-um* from Stems ending in a *Consonant*. Such forms as *mentium*, *sortium*, *animalium*, are no exceptions to this rule, as the Stems of those words originally ended in *i* (v. §§ 847, 848). But there appears to have been some confusion between the Stems in *I* and those ending in a *Consonant*, probably arising from the omission of the *i* in the Nom. Sing. Thus we find *civitatum* from a *Consonant* Stem, and *canum*, *panum*, *juvenum* from *I* Stems. In the same way Cicero has in one place (Sext. 20) *sedum* for *sedium*; Virgil (Æn. iv. 464), *vatum* for *vatum*; and Ovid (Met. viii. 500), *mensum* for *mensium*.

10. The Dative and Ablative Plural.

§ 892. The original Suffix of these cases appears to have been *-bhis*, corresponding to the Sanskrit *-bhyas*. From the contraction of the vowels arose the two forms *-bīs* and *-būs*, afterwards *-būs*. The form *bīs* occurs in *no-bis*, *vo-bis*, and in the A and O Stems, with elision of the *b*, as in the A Stems in Sanskrit. The form *būs* occurs in the other Stems.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musa-(b)is	avo-(b)is	reg-ī-bus	manū-bus	rē-bus
musīs	avīs	navī-bus	manī-bus.	

Obs. 1. The long *u* in *būs* is found in *omnibūs*, Plaut. Aulul. ii. 8, 8; *pectorbūs*, Virg. Æn. iv. 64.

Obs. 2. The form *-bus* occurs in some A Stems, as *dea-bus*, *filia-bus*, &c. (v. § 17, Obs. 4.)

Obs. 3. In the A and O Stems the vowels *a-is* and *o-is* have undergone several of the changes already mentioned (v. §§ 866, 885). In A Stems we find in inscriptions *eis* for the ancient *aīs*: as,

incolcis, vicis, tabuleis.

In O Stems the old forms,

sno-is, gnato-is,

are still preserved in inscriptions. Besides these we find *eis* for *oīs*: as,

amiceis, sueis, agreis.

CHAPTER LXXI.

FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

§ 893. There are two forms of the Comparative in Latin : (1) *-ior* (originally *-ios*) *Neut. -ius* and (2) *-ter*; the former corresponding to the Gr. *ιωv*, *ιωv*, and the latter to the Gr. *τεpos*.

§ 894. The suffix *-ios* (*-ior*) is sometimes shortened into *-us* and *-is*, just as from *-bius*, the original termination of the *Dat.* and *Abl.* Pl. arose the two forms *-bus* and *-bis* (v. § 892).

(1) The form in *-us* from *-ius* is seen in

minus,

plus.

(2) The form in *-is* from *-ius* is seen in *magis*; also in the following adverbs, which appear to have been originally Comparatives :

nimis,
aliquantisper,
paullisper,
pauxillisper,
tantisper.

§ 895. The suffix *-ter* appears only in words not usually recognised as Comparatives : as,

al-ter,

u-ter,

neu-ter,

dex-ter.

Also in the following words, which contain a double comparative suffix :

mag-is-ter,

min-is-ter,

sin-is-ter.

§ 896. The common suffix of the Superlative in Latin is *-issimus*, which appears to have arisen from a combination of the Comparative suffix *-is* (*ios*, *ior*) with the Superlative suffix *-timus* (Sanskrit *-tamas*): i. e. *is-timus*, by assimilation *issimus*.

The Superlative suffix *-timus* appears in

op-timus (rt. op : cf. op-es, *good things*, *riches*),

in-timus,

ul-timus,

ci-timus,

ex-timus,

dex-timus,

sin-is-timus (Fest. p. 74, Superlative of sinister, like dextimus of dexter).

soll-is-timus (Fest. p. 289, Superlative of sollus).

To this head may also be referred the forms in **-llimus** and **-rrimus**, by assimilation from **-lltimus** and **-rtimus**: as,

facil-linus	=	facil-tinus,
simil-linus	=	simil-tinus,
pulcher-rinus	=	pulcher-tinus,
veter-rinus	=	veter-tinus.

Obs. Also perhaps **maximus** = **mag-ti-mus**.

§ 897. The suffix **-timus** itself appears to be a combination of the suffixes **-tus** and **-mus**.

(1) **-tus** appears as a Superlative suffix in :

quan-tus,	quin-tus,	sex-tus,	quo-tus.
-----------	-----------	----------	----------

(2) **-mus** appears as a Superlative suffix in :

pri-mus,	min-i-mus,	supre-mus,	infi-mus.
----------	------------	------------	-----------

CHAPTER LXXII.

FORMATION OF THE PERSONS AND TENSES OF THE VERBS.

(A) ACTIVE VOICE.

Personal Endings.

§ 898. *Personal Endings of Singular.*—It has been already pointed out (§ 105) that these are the Personal pronouns in a mutilated form (**m, s, t**). These characteristic consonants are in Greek in the Present Tense (of verbs in **μι**), and in Sanskrit in the Present and Future Tenses of all verbs, followed by a short vowel. Compare the following :—

	Present.	
Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.
da-dā-mi.	δί-δω-μι.	do.
da-dā-si.	δί-δω-σ(ι).	da-s.
da-dā-ti.	δί-δω-τι (old form).	da-t.

In Latin the final short vowel has everywhere fallen away; and it has been followed by the **m** of the first person in all Present Tenses except **sum**, **inquam**, and those of the Subjunctive Mood; and in the Future Tenses without a single exception.

§ 899. *Personal Endings of Plural.*—These are perhaps derived from the corresponding forms of the Singular, by the use of a plural suffix: namely, **s** in the first and second persons, and **n** in the

third. Thus, *amamus* = *ama-mi* + *s*; *amatis* = *ama-ti* + *s* (the original form of the second personal pronoun being in *t* not *s*); *amant* = *ama-n-t* (the plural sign preceding the *t* for the sake of euphony).

Formation of the Tenses.

§ 900. *Present Indicative*.—The present Indicative has ordinarily no tense suffix. Thus the forms *am-o*, *ama-s*, *ama-t*, are formed immediately from the stem *ama*. In this respect the Latin differs from the Greek and Sanskrit, in which languages the tense prefixes and suffixes are constant. The following are the cases in which tense elements of formation have been either retained or added:—

(1) *Reduplication*: as,

gi-g'n-o (Gr. γι-γ'ν-ο-μαι),

si-st-o (Gr. ἴ-στη-μι, Sanskr. si-stâ-mi).

(2) The liquid *n* after *r*: as,

ster-no (Gr. στορέ-ννν-μι),

cer-no (Gr. κρί-νω).

(3) A liquid (*m* or *n*) before a mute: as,

fra(n)go,

rt. *fräg-*,

ta(n)go,

„ *täg-* (Gr. θιγ),

pa(n)go,

„ *päg-* (Gr. παγ),

fi(n)go,

„ *fīg-*,

pi(n)go,

„ *pig-*,

ju(n)go, *I join*,

„ *jug-* (Gr. ζυγ),

fi(n)do, *I cleave*,

„ *fīd-*,

sci(n)do, *I read*,

„ *scīd-*,

ru(m)po, *I burst*,

„ *rup-*,

[cu(in)bo], *I lie*,

„ *cūb-*.

(4) The lengthening of the root vowel: as,

dūco,

rt. *dīc-*,

fīdo, *confīdo*,

„ *fīd-* (as in *fīd-es*),

dico,

„ *dīc-* (as in *male-dīcus*, *in-dīc-o*, etc.).

Obs. Compare Gr. λαίπω, rt. λῑπ-; σπείρω, rt. σπερ- (as in σπερ-μα). The process is rare in Latin.

(5) The inceptive suffix *-sco*: as,

cre-sco,

rt. *cre-* (as in *cre-o*),

adol-e-sco,

„ (ad)-ol-

re-min-i-scor,

„ (re)-men- (as in *men-s*).

(6) The letter *t* after *c*: as,

plec-to,

rt. *plec-* (Gr. πλῑκ-ω),

plec-tor,

„ *plēc-* (Gr. πλῑττω).

The stem of the Present Indicative is used in forming the other Imperfect Tenses: as, *fi-u-do*, *Past-Imperf.* *fin-d-e-bam*, *ster-u-o*, *Fut.* *ster-u-am*.

§ 901. *Past-Imperfect Tense Indicative*.—The suffix of this Tense is *-bam*, added to the stem of the Present: as, *ama-bam*. Before it a short vowel is lengthened: as, *amā-bam*, *monē-bam*, *reg-ē-bam*, *audi-ē-bam*. The long connecting vowel in verbs of the third and fourth conjugations, is probably owing to analogy with verbs of the second conjugation. Verbs of the fourth conjugation originally ended in *-i-bam*, without the connecting vowel: thus we find in the older poets, and sometimes in the poets of the Augustan age, such forms as,

<i>sci-bam</i> ,	<i>nesci-bam</i> ,
<i>ai-bam</i> ,	<i>exaudi-bam</i> ,
<i>muni-bam</i> ,	<i>poli-bam</i> , &c.

I-bam from *eo* is the regular form in all writers.

The suffix *-bam* is probably a shortened form of *fi-am*, *I was*, from the root *fv*, like *er-am* from the root *Es* (*sum*). The aspirate is dropped in *-bam*, as explained in § 828.

Obs. 1. The Imperfect *er-am* (*es-am*) is the only remaining instance of the original formation of the tense. Compare Sanskr. *as-am*, from *rt. as* (*to be*); Gr. *ἔ-τε-ον*, from *τε-ω*.

Obs. 2. The form *fu-am*, assumed as formative element above, corresponds with Gr. *ἔ-φ-υ-ν*.

Obs. 3. No trace remains in Latin of the Augment of the Greek and Sanskrit Past Tenses.

§ 902. *Future Tense Indicative*.—The suffix of this tense is *-bo*, added to the stem of the present: as, *amā-bo*, *monē-bo*. It is probably a shortened form of *fuo*, the future of the stem *fv*, like *ero* from the root *Es* (*sum*).

The third and fourth conjugations had originally the same suffix as the first and second: besides *i-bo* from *eo*, and *sci-bo* from *scio*, we frequently find in the older language the suffix *-bo* in the fourth conjugation: as,

<i>nesci-bo</i> ,	<i>audi-bo</i> ,	<i>expedi-bo</i> ,
<i>aperi-bo</i> ,	<i>oboedi-bo</i> ,	<i>servi-bo</i> ,
<i>saevi-bo</i> ,	<i>grandi-bo</i> ,	<i>operi-bo</i> ,
<i>veni-bo</i> ,	<i>subveni-bo</i> ,	<i>dormi-bo</i> .

This form is rarer in the third conjugation, but we find the following Futures in the older writers, the *-bo* being affixed by means of the connecting vowel *e*: as,

<i>viv-e-bo</i>	instead of <i>viv-am</i> ,
<i>dic-e-bo</i>	„ <i>dic-am</i> ,
<i>exsug-e-bo</i>	„ <i>exsug-am</i> .

§ 903. But in the third and fourth conjugation the formation in *-bo* was in course of time lost, and the defect supplied by the substitution of the Potential form

a-m,	e-s,	e-t,
e-mus,	e-tis,	e-nt.

The formative element is *-ya* or *-ia*, the suffix of the Optative. The suffix is contracted into *ê*, except in the first person, which follows the first person of the Present Subjunctive. See further, § 907.

§ 904. *Perfect Tense Indicative*.—There are four ways of forming the Perfect :

(1) By added *-vi* and *-ui* to the stem, which is the most common form, and the usual way of forming the Perfects of the first, second, and fourth conjugations : as, *ama-vi*, *mon-ui*, *audi-vi*. This suffix is the same as the Perfect *fui* of the auxiliary verb, the *f* disappearing before the *v* and the *u*, like *d* before the *v* in *viginti*, and *g* before the *v* in *nives* : v. § 827, No. 2; § 824, No. 2. In some of the kindred Italian dialects we find the full form of the auxiliary verb preserved : as in the Umbrian perfects *pila-fei* and *ambre-furent*.

Obs. 1. The Perfect of the root *fu* was probably formed by adding the Present tense of *sum*, as the Past-Perfect, and Future-Perfect of *fu* were formed by adding the Imperfect and Future tenses of the same verb : as, *fu-eram*, *fu-ero*. The root of '*s-um*' is *es*, which appears in the Perfect of *fu* in the shortened form *is* (comp. English *is*). We may, therefore, suppose the oldest form to have been :

fu-is-(m)	(Comp. Gr. <i>ἑσ-μῖ</i>),
fu-is-ti	(„ <i>ἑσ-σῖ</i>),
fu-is-t,	
fu-is-mus,	
fu-is-tis,	
fu-is-unt.	

This accounts for the forms *fu-i*, *fu-is-ti*, and *fu-er-unt*, where the *er* represents *is*, as in *pulvis*, *pulver-is*. It also accounts for the fact that the final vowel of the third person singular of the Perfect is often long in the poets, since *-it* was originally *-ist*.

(2) By adding *-si* to the stem, which corresponds to *-σα*, the characteristic of the Greek First-Aorist : as, *scrip-si*, *plexi* (cf. Gr. *ἔ-πλεξα*).

Obs. 2. The original form of this suffix is seen by comparison of the parallel forms in Greek and Sanskrit, *-σα* and *-sam*. It is the imperfect tense of the verb '*s-um*', namely, *es-am* (*er-am*) ; which was added to the stem, with elision of the initial vowel. Compare Lat. *scrip-s-i*, with Gr. *ἔ-δεξ-α*, and Sanskr. *a-dik-śham*.

(3) By *Reduplication*, which is the regular mode of forming the Perfect in Greek : as, *te-tend-i*.

Obs. 3. The most ancient form of the Reduplication was probably a repetition of the root syllable of the verb, denoting completeness of action.

(4) By *lengthening the vowel* of the stem : as, *mōvi* from *mōveo*.

Obs. 4. This may have been also a reduplicated form originally : *mō-mōvi* becoming *mōvi*.

§ 905. *Past-Perfect and Future-Perfect Indicative.*—These tenses are formed by adding to the stem of the Perfect, the Imperfect and Future of *sum* : as, *amav-eram*, *amav-ero* (v. § 904, *Obs. 1*). But in the Future-Perfect there was a still older suffix *-so* instead of *eso=ero*. This form was preserved in the ordinary language of the classical age only in *faxo=fecero*; but it occurs in many other words in the older writers. In verbs of the first and second conjugations the *s* is doubled, hence it appears in the forms *asso* and *esso* : as,

amasso	= amavero,	prohibesso	= prohibuero,
indicasso	= indicavero,	capso	= cepero,
enicasso	= enicavero,	accepso	= accepero,
levasso	= levavero,	occepso	= occepero,
liberasso	= liberavero,	recepso	= recepero,
peccasso	= peccavero,	rapso	= rapuero.
observasso	= observavero,		

In the same way *-sim* occurs instead of *-erim* in the Perfect Subjunctive : v. 909.

§ 906. *Imperative Mood.*—(1) The short (Present) form of the Imperative Singular anciently ended in *s* (softened form=*Sansk.* *-dhi*; *Gr.* *-θι*), which was subsequently dropped : as *ama-s*, *mone-s*, *audi-s*, *reg-e-s*, afterwards *ama*, *mone*, *audi*, *reg-e* : v. § 835, No. 5. In like manner *τύπτ-ε* was originally *τύπτ-ε-s*.

(2) The longer (Future or Emphatic) form of the Imperative is strengthened in the second and third Persons Singular by the suffix *-to* (*Sansk.* *-tu*; *Gr.* *-τω*), originally *-tod*. *Es-tod* occurred in the laws of the kings (*Festus*, p. 230, *Müller*). This suffix corresponds to the Oscan *-tud* : as, *es-tud*, *ac-tud*, *fac-tud*, &c. : v. § 830, No. 3.

§ 907. *Present Subjunctive.*—In Latin the Subjunctive and Optative are united in one mood. The formative element of the Subjunctive appears to be *-a* in the Aryan languages : and this is the sign of the Present Subjunctive in Latin, in verbs of the second, third, and fourth conjugations : as, *mone-a-m*, *reg-a-m*, *audi-a-m*. This vowel element also accounts for the length of the final syllable in the Greek Subjunctive : as, *τύπτ-τω*, *-ης*, *-η*, &c.

The formative element of the Optative appears to be *-ya* or *-ia*, and sometimes simply *-i*. In Greek it appears in the form *-ι*.

Thus from the Sanskrit *as*, “to be,” and the Greek *τίπτω*, “I strike,” we have :

Sing. 1. <i>s-yâ-m</i> from <i>as-yâ-m</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι-μι</i> ,
2. <i>s-yâ-s</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι-ς</i> ,
3. <i>s-yâ-t</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι</i> .
Plur. 1. <i>s-yâ-ma</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι-μεν</i> ,
2. <i>s-yâ-ta</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι-τε</i> ,
3. <i>s-yus</i> ,	<i>τίπτο-ι-εν</i> .

In Latin we have the formative element of *i* in the Subjunctives :

<i>sim</i> (old form <i>siem</i>),	<i>duim</i> ,
<i>velim</i> ,	<i>adduim</i> ,
<i>nolim</i> ,	<i>interduim</i> ,
<i>malim</i> ,	<i>perduim</i> ,
<i>edim</i> ,	<i>creduim</i> .
<i>comedim</i> ,	
<i>exedim</i> ,	

Also in the first conjugation :

<i>amem</i> = <i>ama-im</i> ,
<i>ames</i> = <i>ama-is</i> ,
<i>amet</i> = <i>ama-it</i> , &c.

The same formative element appears in the Future Indicative of the third and fourth conjugations : v. § 903.

§ 908. *Imperfect Subjunctive*.—The suffix of this tense is **-rem** (originally **-sem**), and with the connecting vowel **-ĕrem** : *as*, *ama-rem*, *monc-rem*, *audi-rem*, *reg-ĕrem*.

The form **-sem** is seen in *es-sem* ; and in the following words the *s* assimilates to the preceding liquid :

<i>vel-lem</i> = <i>vel-sem</i> ,
<i>mal-lem</i> = <i>mal-sem</i> ,
<i>nol-lem</i> = <i>nol-sem</i> ,
<i>fer-rem</i> = <i>fer-sem</i> ,

§ 909. *Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctives*.—These tenses are formed by adding to the stem of the Perfect **-erim** and **-issem**, which are the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive respectively of the verb *sum* : **-erim** being the same as *esim* or *'sim*, and **-issem** as *essem*.

In the Perfect Subjunctive the suffix **-sim** is used in some older forms, like **-so** instead of **-ero** in the Future-Perfect Indicative. This form was preserved in the ordinary language of the classical age only in *faxim* = *fecerim*, and *ausim* from *audeo* ; but it occurs in many other words in the older writers. In verbs of the first and second conjugations the *s* is doubled. Several of these

verbs are given in § 905. The following are a few more examples:—

appellassis = appellaveris,	habessit = habuerit,
amassint = amaverint,	prohibessint = prohibuerint,
intrassis = intraveris	serpsit = serpsit.

§ 910. *Imperfect Infinitive*.—The suffix is **-re** (originally **-se**), and with connecting vowel **-ē-re**: as, ama-re, mone-re, audi-re, leg-e-re. The *s* of the original suffix appears in *es-se*.

This suffix differs not only from the Greek and Sanskrit, but also from the Oscan. The Greek Infinitive ends in **-μεναι** or **-μεν**, in some cases shortened into **-ναι**, in others into **-ειν**; the Sanskrit Infinitive is the Accusative of a verbal substantive, and ends in **-um**; also the Oscan Infinitive ends in **-um**. This corresponds to the Latin first supine.

§ 911. *Perfect Infinitive*.—The suffix is **-isse** added to the Stem of the Perfect, and is the same as *esse*, the Infinitive of *sum*: as, amav-isse.

§ 912. *The Imperfect Participle*.—The suffix is **-nt**, or with connecting vowel **e-nt**, of course in the Nom. **-ns**: as, ama-n-s, ama-nt-is. It is the same with the Sanskr. **-ant** (Nom. masc. **-an**); Gr. **-οντ**; Germ. **-end**; Anglo-Sax. **-and**; Eng. **-ing**.

§ 913. *The Gerund and Gerundive*.—The suffix is **-undo**, **-endo**, **-ndo**. The oldest form of the suffix is **-undo**, of which there was a still more ancient form **-ondo**, which occurs in inscriptions: for instance, *faci-ondam* and *vere-condus*. The form **-undo**, except in the case of a few words, was supplanted by that of **-endo**.

There have been various conjectures as to the origin of this suffix, but that of Corssen is the most probable; that it consists of two parts, *un-do*, of which the **-un**, originally **-on**, is the same as the **-on** in the verbal nouns:

ger-on,	Nom. gero,
ed-on,	„ edo,
com-bib-on,	„ combibo.

From this the gerund was perhaps formed by adding the passive adjectival suffix **do-s**: whence

ger-on-do-s,	afterwards ger-un-du-s,
ed-on-do-s	„ ed-un-dn-s,
com-bib-on-do-s,	„ com-bib-un-du-s.

Corssen shows clearly that the notion of necessity or duty does not

belong originally to the gerund, but that it is a verbal adjective or noun: for instance, *ori-un-dus* signifies simply *rising from*, *sec-un-dus* (from *sequor*), *following*. (Compare § 714.)

§ 914. *The Future Participle*.—The suffix is *-turu-s*, which is probably the same as the suffix *-tor*, with an adjectival termination: as, *da-tor*, *da-tur-u-s*, *ama-tor*, *ama-tur-u-s*.

Obs. From the Future Part. is formed the Desiderative suffix *-sûrio*, in which the addition of a new formative element (*ya*, § 907), has caused the shortening of the antepenultima.

§ 915. *The Supines*.—The suffixes are *-tum*, *-tu*, sometimes *-sum*, *-su*, which are verbal substantives in the Accusative and Ablative Case respectively. (Compare § 910.)

(B) Passive Voice.

§ 916. The Latin Passive Verb is formed in a totally different way from the Greek and Sanskrit. Those languages exhibit in the Middle (or Passive) a double form of the Personal Pronouns: thus, Gr. *τύπτομαι* = *τυπτ-ο-μα-(μ)-ι*, *I strike myself*; *τύπτεσθαι* (old form of *τύπτεαι* or *η*) = *τυπτ-ε-σα-σι*, *Thou striketh thyself*; &c. In Latin, the Passive (or Reflective) is formed by adding to the corresponding forms of the Active the Reflective Pronoun *se*, *oneself*. Thus *amor* = *amo-se* (*s* becoming *r*, according to § 832); *amaris* (afterwards shortened into *amare*) = *amas-(i)-se*; *amatur* = *amat-u-se*. Similarly, in the plural, *amamur* = *amamus-se*; *amantur* = *amant-(u)-se*. The form *amamini* (*estis*) has been already explained (§ 105, note).

Similarly in the Past-Imperf. and Future, *amabar* = *amabam-se*, *m* being lightly sounded in Latin, and therefore readily elided (cf. § 834, No. 3); *amabaris* = *amabas-(a)-se*; *amabatur* = *amabat-(u)-se*; &c.

In the Imperative Mood, *amare* is equivalent to *ama-se*. The second pers. plur. *amamini* is used with an ellipsis of the Imperative Mood *este*. The form *inor* (second pers. plur.) is obscure, but is probably formed from an archaic second pers. sing. in *ino*, according to the analogy of *amato-r*, *amanto-r*, etc. Comp. *præfaminô* (= *præfaminûs esto*), Cato, R. R. 141.

§ 917. *Infinitive Passive*.—The original termination of the Imperfect Infinitive Passive was in *-ier* (see § 111, 1), a form difficult to analyse. But the double vowel (*ie*) is probably due to the originally long final of the Infinitive Active (*ê*). Thus perhaps *amar-ê-r* may have resolved itself into *amar-ier*. The common form in *i* is an abbreviation of this.

§ 918. *Perfect Participle*.—The participial ending in **-minus** (Gr. **-μενος**) has ceased in Latin to retain its original function. Instead of it is used the suffix **-tus** (Sansk. **-ta-s**, with same function; Gr. **τός**, usually with force of a Latin adjective in **-bilis**).

Obs. 1. But the participial termination **minus**, **menus**, has left various traces of itself: as,

(1.) In the second pers. plur. of all uncompound tenses in the Passive Voice (§ 105, note): as, **amamini**, **amabamini** (formed after the analogy of the Present), etc.

(2.) In a few substantives in **-umnus** (syncopated for Gr. **-όμενος**); as, **aiumnus** (from **alo**), *one who is being nurtured, a nursling*; **Vertumnus** (vector), *the deity who constantly turns and changes, the god of the seasons*.

(3.) In a large number of substantives in **-men** (§ 181, 7), some of which have retained their passive force, while in others it can no longer be traced: as, **ag-men** (**ago**), *that which is being led, an army in motion*; **gesta-men** (**gesto**), *anything that is wont to be carried*; **se-men** (**sero**), *that which is sown, seed*: also, **flu-men**, *that which flows*; **ful-men**, *that which flashes*, etc.

Obs. 2. The termination **-men** is further lengthened by the addition of the element **-tum**: as, **monu-men-tum**, from **monco**; **in-cre-mentum**, from **cre-sco**: Also probably we may recognise the same element in such words as **matri-mon-ium**, **natri-mon-ium**. (Schleicher.)

Another passive participial suffix is **-nus** (Sansk. **-nas**), equivalent to **-tus**. This is found after only a few verbal roots in Latin: as, **dig-nus**, lit. *shown, pointed at* (rt. **dig**—Gr. **δεικ**, *to show, point*), hence, *worthy*; **mag-nus**, (*made*) *great* (rt. **mag-**).

Obs. But the same suffix is probably to be recognised in adjectives in **-i-nus** (Gr. **ivos**), **-a-nus**, **-nus**: as, **quer-nus**, *made of oak*; **salig-nus**, *made of willow-wood*; **hum-a-nus**, *of the nature of man, human*; **femin-i-nus**, *of woman*, etc.

APPENDIX I.—LATIN AUTHORS.

§ 919. A. *Præ-classical Period* (B.C.).

- CN. NÆVIUS (3rd cent.):—Epic poem on the First Punic War; and other poetry.
- Q. ENNIUS (239-169); born at Rudiae in Calabria:—Epic poem on Roman History; Dramas, Satires, etc.
- M. PACUVIUS (cir. 220-130); probably born at Brundisium:—Tragedies.
- L. ATTIVS or ACCIVS (170-cir. 90); son of a freedman:—Tragedies.
- M. PORCIUS CATO (234-149):—History of Rome (*Origines*); Treatise *De Re Rustica*.
- CAECILIUS STATIVS (ob. 168); born at Mediolanum (Milan), and a slave by birth:—Comedies.
- LUCILIUS (148-103); Satires.
- L. AFRANIUS (flor. 94):—Comedies.
- T. ACCIVS (more properly MACCIVS) PLAVTUS (254-184, B.C.); born at Sarsina in Umbria:—Comedies, twenty in all extant, besides fragments.
- P. TERENCEIVS AFER (195-159, B.C.); a freedman, and said to have been a native of Carthage:—Comedies (*six*).
- Obs.* With the exception of the treatise on farming (*De Re Rustica*) by M. Porcius Cato, and the Comedies of Plautus and Terence, only fragments of the works of the above authors have come down to us.

§ 920. B. *Golden Age*.

- M. TERENCEIVS VARRO (116-28, B.C.); born at Rome:—wrote *De Lingua Latina*, and *De Re Rustica*; besides a work on Roman History and some Satires, not extant.
- M. TULLIVS CICERO (106-43, B.C.); born at Arpinum:—Rhetorical works; Speeches in private and public cases; philosophical and ethical works; Letters.
- C. JULIVS CAESAR (100-44, B.C.); born at Rome:—Commentaries or memoirs of his own times, viz., the Gallic and Civil Wars.
- T. LUCRETIVS CARVS (95-52, B.C.); born at Rome:—Poem in six books, expounding the Epicurean philosophy ("*De Rerum Natura*").
- C. VALERIVS CATVLLVS (87-47, B.C.); of Verona:—Lyric and elegiac poetry.

C. SALLUSTIUS CRISPUS (86-35, B.C.); born at Amiternum:—Historical works; of which the *Catiline* and *Jugurtha* are extant.

P. VERGILIUS (or VIRGILIUS) MARO (70-19, B.C.); born at Andes near Mantua:—*Bucolics*, *Georgics*; *Aeneid*; also some short pieces.

Q. HORATIUS FLACCUS (65-8, B.C.); born at Venusia:—*Odes*, *Satires*, familiar and critical *Epistles* in Verse.

CORNELIUS NEPOS (flor. cir. 30, B.C.); of Verona; *Lives of eminent men*.

ALBIUS TIBULLUS (? 54-18, B.C.); born at Pedum near Tibur:—*Elegiacs*.

SEX. AURELIUS PROPERTIUS (? 51-19, B.C.); born in Umbria:—*Elegiacs*.

T. LIVIUS PATAVINUS (59-19, B.C.); of Patavinum (Padua):—*History of Rome*; of which only about one-fourth part is extant.

P. OVIDIUS NASO (43 B.C.-18 A.D.); born at Sulmo:—*Elegiacs*; "*The Metamorphoses*," a poem in 15 books, and other works.

M. VITRUVIUS POLLIO (? temp. August.):—work on architecture.

M. MANILIUS (? temp. August.):—Astronomical poem.

T. PHAEDRUS (flor. cir. 15, A.D.); freedman of Augustus:—*Fables*.

§ 921. C. *Silver Age*.

M. ANNAEUS SENECA, father of L. Seneca (60 B.C.-15 A.D.); born at Corduba (Cordova), in Spain:—*Rhetorical works*.

L. ANNAEUS SENECA (? 5 B.C.-65 A.D.); born at Corduba:—*Philosophical and ethical works*; also *Tragedies*; unless the author of these be a third Seneca.

C. VELLEIUS PATERCULUS (cir. 19 B.C.-31 A.D.); probably born at Rome:—*Roman History*.

L. JULIUS MODERATUS COLUMELLA (flor. cir. 20 A.D.); born at Gades (Cadiz):—*Agriculture*.

A. PERSIUS FLACCUS (A.D. 38-65); born at Volaterrae in Etruria:—*Satires (six)*.

C. SILIUS ITALICUS (A.D. 25-100):—Epic poem ("*Punica*").

M. ANNAEUS LUCANTIS (A.D. 38-65); born at Corduba:—Epic poem ("*Pharsalia*").

C. PLINIUS SECUNDUS (A.D. 23-79); born either at Verona or Comum:—*Natural History (37 books)*.

C. PLINIUS CAECILIUS SECUNDUS, nephew of the foregoing (61-?); probably born at Comum:—Epistles and Orations.

VALERIUS MAXIMUS (1st cent.?):—Historical Anecdotes.

C. VALERIUS FLACCUS (1st cent.); born at Padua:—Poem ("Argonautica").

Q. CURTIUS RUFIUS (date and place of birth unknown):—History of Alexander the Great.

M. FABIUS QUINTILIANUS (ob. 88 A.D.); born at Calagurris in Spain:—Work on Rhetoric.

P. PAPINIUS STATIUS (ob. A.D. 95); born at Naples:—Poetry.

M. VALERIUS MARTIALIS (A.D. cir. 43-105); born at Bilbilis in Spain:—Epigrams (14 books).

JUNIUS JUVENALIS (latter part of 1st cent. A.D.); born at Aquinum:—Satires.

L. ANNAEUS FLORUS (?):—Summary of Roman History.

C. CORNELIUS TACITUS (cir. A.D. 60-120); place of birth unknown:—History of Rome from Augustus; Life of Agricola; Treatise on Germany; Dialogue on Oratory.

C. SÆTONIUS TRANQUILLUS (latter part of 1st and beginning of 2nd cent. A.D.); place of birth not known:—Lives of the Caesars, and others.

POMPONIUS MELA (latter part of 1st cent.); born in Spain:—First systematic writer on Geography in Latin.

T. PETRONIUS ARBITER (ob. 66, A.D.):—Satiric Romance.

AULUS GELLIUS (fl. 150, A.D.):—"Noctes Atticæ," a kind of literary miscellany.

L. APULEIUS or APPULEIUS (2nd cent.); born at Madaura in Africa:—Philosophical and imaginative works.

GAIUS or CAIUS (fl. 160, A.D.):—Law.

D. MAGNUS AUSONIUS (4th cent.); born at Burdigala (Bordeaux):—Poetry.

JUSTINUS (?):—History.

AUR. THEODOSIUS MACROBIUS (ob. 395):—Critical and antiquarian works.

APPENDIX II.—THE CALENDAR.

§ 922. The months in the Roman (Julian) Calendar corresponded to our own. But *Julius* and *Augustus* were called *Quintilis* and *Septilis* down to the time of the emperor Augustus. The names of the months were adjectives, with which *mensis* was understood or might be expressed.

The days of the month were not, as with us, counted straight on from the beginning of the month to the end. Instead of this, three fixed points were taken in each month, and any particular day was reckoned as so many days from the nearest of those points in advance of it.

These three points were called,

- (1.) *Kālendae*, arum; *the Kalends*: being the 1st day of the month.
- (2.) *Nōnae*, arum; *the Nones*: being in certain months the 5th and in others the 7th day of the month, i. e., *nine* days before the Ides.*
- (3.) *Īdūs*, um (*f.*); *the Ides*: being either the 13th or 15th day of the month. Thus the Ides divided the month into two nearly equal parts.

* The following lines contain the names of the months in which the Nones (and consequently the Ides) fall late:

“In March, July, October, May,
The Nones fall on the seventh day.”

In the remaining eight months they fall on the fifth.

§ 923. The first day of a month being called its “*Kalends*,” the last day of the preceding month is called *the day before the Kalends* (*prīdie Kālendae*). Thus, the 31st of December is called *the day before the Kalends of January*: often written *prīdie Kal. Jan.* Then the day before that, is the 3rd of the Kalends, and so on back to the Ides, and from thence again to the Nones, which form fresh points of calculation, as seen in the following table:—

CALENDAR FOR THE MONTH OF DECEMBER.

1. KALENDIS DECEMBRIBUS.	17. XVI. ante Kalendas Januarias.
2. IV. ante Nonas Decembres.	18. XV. “ ”
3. III. “ ”	19. XIV. “ ”
4. Prīdie Nonas Decembres.	20. XIII. “ ”
5. NONIS DECEMBRIBUS.	21. XII. “ ”
6. VIII. ante Idus Decembres.	22. XI. “ ”
7. VII. “ ”	23. X. “ ”
8. VI. “ ”	24. IX. “ ”
9. V. “ ”	25. VIII. “ ”
10. IV. “ ”	26. VII. “ ”
11. III. “ ”	27. VI. “ ”
12. Prīdie Idus Decembres.	28. V. “ ”
13. IDIBUS DECEMBRIBUS.	29. IV. “ ”
14. XIX. ante Kalendas Januarias.	30. III. “ ”
15. XVIII. “ ”	31. Prīdie “ ”
16. XVII. “ ”	

§ 924. In order to reduce an English to a Roman date, the number of the day in the English Calendar must be subtracted from that of the nearest fixed point in advance of it in the Roman Calendar of the same month. And as the Romans counted inclusively from one day to another, a unit must be added to the number thus obtained. Thus, the 10th of December is not the 3rd before the Ides, but the 4th, &c. Also, as the Kalends form an extra day, beyond the month, a unit must be added to the number of days in the month, in counting on to them.

Obs. Hence the rule,—After subtracting, add *one* for the Nones or Ides, and *two* for the Kalends.

§ 925. In giving the day of the month as a date, the Ablative was used (§ 322): as, Kalendis Martiis, Idibus Martiis, die quinto ante Kalendas Martias. Both *die* and *ante* were often omitted, as XIV. Kal. Mai., which may be either Accusative or Genitive. But another very common way was to begin with *ante*, when the Ablative became changed into the Accusative under the government of the preposition: as, ante diem decimum quartum Kalendas Maias, usually written ad. XIV. Kal. Mai. In this construction, the Accusative Kalendas remained unchanged, as if it were still governed by *ante*.

§ 926. The expression *ante diem* must be considered as an indeclinable Substantive, since we find it often preceded by prepositions which govern the Accusative or Ablative: as,

In ante diem octāvum et septimum Kāendas Octōbres cōmītiis dicta dies. *The time was fixed for the comitia for the eighth and seventh days before the Kalends of October.*—Liv. 43, 16.

Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octobres. *A public thanksgiving was appointed (to begin) from the fifth day before the Ides of October.*—Liv. 45, 2.

§ 927. When a day needed to be intercalated in the Julian Calendar, it was done by reckoning the 6th of the Kalends of March twice. Hence the name for Leap-year, Bissextile (*bis-sextus*). The two *sixths* (24th and 25th February) appear to have been distinguished as *prior* and *posterior*.

NOTE.—A complete Calendar for an ordinary year is given on the following page:—

§ 928. KALENDARIIUM.

Our days of the Month.	March, May, July, October, have 31 days.	January, August, December, have 31 days.	April, June, September, November, have 30 days.	February has 28 days, and in Leap Year 29.
1.	KALENDIS, VI.	KALENDIS, IV.	KALENDIS, IV.	KALENDIS, IV.
2.	V.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
3.	IV.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
4.	III.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
5.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
6.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
7.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
8.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
9.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
10.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
11.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
12.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
13.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
14.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
15.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
16.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
17.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
18.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
19.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
20.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
21.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
22.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
23.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
24.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
25.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
26.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
27.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
28.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
29.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
30.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.
31.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.	III. } ante Nonas.

APPENDIX III.—MONEY.

§ 929. The original monetary unit of the Romans was the *as assis*, or *pound*, viz., of *copper*. The fractions of the *as* were designated as follows:—

Unctia,	one ounce;	$\frac{1}{12}$	of an <i>as</i> .
Sextans, ntis,	two ounces;	$\frac{2}{12}$, that is, $\frac{1}{6}$	”
Quadrans, ntis,	three ”	$\frac{3}{12}$ ”	$\frac{1}{4}$ ”
Triens, ntis,	four ”	$\frac{4}{12}$ ”	$\frac{1}{3}$ ”
Quincunx, ncis,	five ”	$\frac{5}{12}$ ”	”
Semis, issis,	six ”	$\frac{6}{12}$ ”	$\frac{1}{2}$ ”
Septunx, ncis	seven ”	$\frac{7}{12}$ ”	”
Bes, besis,	eight ”	$\frac{8}{12}$ ”	$\frac{2}{3}$ ”
Dodrans,* ntis	nine ”	$\frac{9}{12}$ ”	$\frac{3}{4}$ ”
Dextans,† ntis,	ten ”	$\frac{10}{12}$ ”	$\frac{5}{6}$ ”
Deunx, ncis,	eleven ”	$\frac{11}{12}$ ”	”

* = de-quadrans

† = de-sextans.

Obs. The substantive *as* and its fractions are used of other units. Thus *terna jugera et septunces* (Liv.), is *three acres and seven-twelfths (a-piece)*: *hæres ex asse, heir to the entire estate, ex dodrante, to three-fourths, etc.* So *fenus ex triente factum erat bessibus* (Cic.), *interest had risen from $\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. (per month) to $\frac{2}{3}$; or from 4 to 8 per cent.* (Madvig.)

§ 930. From being originally a full pound in weight, the *as* was gradually reduced, till, in the time of Augustus, it was a small coin, of little more than nominal value (comp. “*vilem redigatur ad assem*,” Hor. Sat. 1, 1, 43). The *dénarius* was a silver coin, first coined five years before the first Punic war, and was originally equal to 10 asses. But in the later times of the republic the unit of business calculations was the *sestertius* (*sesterce*), being the fourth part of a denarius, and equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses, or a little more than 2*d*. The *sesterce* was also a silver coin, and both it and the denarius maintained a uniform value, notwithstanding the depreciation of the unit on which both were based.

Obs. *Sestertius* is a contraction for *semis tertius*, lit. *the third is minus a half*, i. e. $2\frac{1}{2}$. This was often written *IIS*, whence the common abbreviation *IIS* or *HS*.

§ 931. Sums of 1000 sesterces and under are counted regularly: *as, mille sestertii*, 1000 *sesterces*; *trecenti sestertii*, 300 *sesterces*. But in expressing several thousand sestertii, the neuter plural *sestertia* was employed, with which *millia* must be understood, unless expressed: *as duo sestertia* or *duo millia sestertiũ*, 2000 *sesterces*.

§ 932. To express sums of a million of sesterces and upwards the multiplicative Numeral Adverbs, *décies*, &c., are used with *sestertium* or *IIS*, the words, “*centēna millia*” being understood. Thus

dēcies sestertium (= decies centēna millia sestertium, *ten times a hundred thousand sesterces*) is *one million sesterces*. (Sometimes we find only decies centena, "millia sestertium" being understood.) In like manner sexāgies sestertium is *six millions of sesterces*.

In such expressions sestertium must have been originally a Gen. Pl.; but it came to be regarded as a Neuter Substantive in the Singular, and was declined accordingly: as,

Argenti ad summam sertertii dēcies in aerārium rettūlit, *he brought into the treasury up to the sum of one million of sesterces*.—Liv. 45, 4.

Serviliae sexāgies sestertio margaritam mercātus est, *he bought Servilia a pearl for six millions of sesterces*.—Suet. Caes. 50.

Greater and smaller sums may be combined in one statement; as, accēpi vicies dūcenta triginta quinque millia quadringentos dēcem et septem nummos, *2,235,417 sesterces*.—Cic. Ferr. 2, 1, 14.

APPENDIX IV.—ROMAN NAMES.

§ 933. A Roman citizen had ordinarily three names, as Marcus Tullius Cicero, Caius Julius Caesar. Of these the middle one was properly called *nōmen*, being *the name of his gens*; the third, *cognōmen*, being that *of his family* (fāmilia); the first, *praenōmen*, or *fore-name*, being that by which he was known from the other members of the same family, and answering to our "Christian name."

In addition to these, some persons had what was called *agnōmen*, or *an appendage* to the name proper: as, Publius Cornelius Scipio *Africanus*. When a person was adopted into another gens, he took the entire name of the individual adopting him, but appended to it that of his former gens as an *agnomen*, with the adjectival termination, -anus. Thus, the son of L. Aemilius Paullus, adopted by P. Cornelius Scipio, became P. Cornelius Scipio *Aemilianus*.

Obs. 1. The same individual might have more than one *agnomen*. Thus the P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus mentioned above, was also called P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Aemilianus.

Obs. 2. The name of father and grandfather were often added by way of distinction. Thus C. Fannius (Cic. Am. 1, 3) is called M. F., *i. e.* Marci filius; and Cn. Pompēius Strabo, father of the triumvir, is called Cn. Pompēius, Sex. F., Cn. N. (nepos) Strabo; *i. e.* son of Sextus, grandson of Cnaeus.

Obs. 3. Women are designated by the gentile name of their family, as Julia, Pompēia, Semprōnia.

Obs. 4. In some cases an individual had only two names: as, C. Marius.

§ 934. The whole of a man's name was of course rarely, if ever, used in speaking to him, though it was employed in the headings of letters, and in documents generally. The family name (cognomen) was mostly used in addressing those not of the same family; the use of the gentile name (nomen) had something formal and respectful about it; that of the fore-name (praenomen) was confined to members of the same family or intimate friends. Even an honourable agnomen, like *Magnus*, *Africanus*, was transmitted to his family by the person who bore it.

§ 935. When a slave was manumitted by a citizen, he took the praenomen and gentile name of his manumitter, and added to it some other appropriate name (often that by which he was before called), as cognomen. Thus Cicero's freedman, *Tiro*, is called *M. Tullius Tiro*. As additional names of freedmen, may be mentioned, *Q. Horatius Flaccus* (the father), *P. Terentius Afer*; *L. Cornelius Chrysogonus*, etc.

APPENDIX V — ABBREVIATIONS.

§ 936. A. PRAENOMINA.

A.	Aulus.	Mam.	Mamereus.
App.	Appius.	N. or Num.	Numerius.
C.	Caius.	P.	Publius.
D.	Decimus.	Q.	Quintus.
Cn. (Gn.)	Cnaeus.	S. or Sex.	Sextus.
K.	Kaeso.	Ser.	Servius.
L.	Lucius.	Sp.	Spurius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M'.	Manius.	Ti.	Tiberius.

§ 937. B. TITLES, &c. (ANCIENT).

Aed.	Aedilis.	O. M.	Optimus Maximus
Con.	Consul.		(surnames of Jupiter).
Coss.	Consules.	Pont. Max.	Pontifex Maximus.
Des.	Designatus.	Quir.	Quirites.
D.	Divus (applied to deceased emperors).	S.P.Q.R.	Senatus Populusque Romanus.
Imp.	Imperator.*	Tr. Pl.	Tribunus Plebis.
P. C.	Patres Conscripti.		

* In republican times this was an honorary title, bestowed by the Senate upon victorious generals. By the emperors it was used to signify their possession of supreme power. In the former case it was used after the name: as, *M. Tullius Cicero Imperator*; in the latter it was prefixed, as *Imperator C. Julius Caesar*.

938. C. MISCELLANEOUS (ANCIENT).

A.	Absolvo, ¹ Antiquo. ²	F. F. F.	Felix, faustum, fortunatum.
C.	Condemno. ¹		
N. L.	Non liquet. ¹	II. C. S. E.	Ille conditus, situs est. ²
U. R.	Uti Rogas. ²	II. M. II. N. S.	Hoc monumentum heredes non sequitur. ³
A. U. C.	Anno urbis conditae.		
D. D.	Dono dedit.	L.	Libertas.
D. D. D.	Dat, dicat, dedicat.	M. P.	Mille Passuum.
D. M.	Dis Manibus. ³	N.	Nepos.
D. O. M.	Deo optimo, maximo.	Ob.	Obiit.
F.	Filius.	Resp.	Respublica.
S. D. or S. only.	Salutem dicit.	S. C.	Senatus consultum.
S. P. D.	Salutem plurimam dicit. ⁴	S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales bene est, ego valeo. ⁴
F. C.	Faciendum curavit. ³	Pot.	Potestas.
		V.	Vixit. ³

¹ Judicial formula.² Used in voting (with respect to laws).³ Sepulchral.⁴ Epistolary.

§ 939. D. MODERN.

A.B. or B.A.	Artium Baccalaureus.	leg.	lege, legendum.
A.M. or M.A.	Artium Magister.	LL.B.	Legum Baccalaureus.
A.C.	Ante Christum.	LL.D.	Legum Doctor.
cet.	cetera.	M.B.	Medicinae Baccalaureus.
cf.	confer, conferatur.	M.D.	Medicinae Doctor.
cod. codd.	codex, codices.	MS., MSS	Manuscriptus (liber), or pl.
D.	Doctor.		
del.	dele, deleatur.	Mus. D.	Musicae Doctor.
ed., edd.	editio, editiones.	N.B.	Nota bene.
e.g.	exempli gratiâ.	N.T.	Novum Testamentum.
etc.	et cetera.		
h.e.	hoc est.	Obs.	Observe.
I.H.S.	Jesus Hominum Salvator.	P.S.	Post scriptum.
I.N.R.I.	Jesus Nazaraeus Rex Judaeorum.	q.v.	quod vide.
J.C.	Jesus Christus.	sc.	scilicet.
I. ctus (Ictus).	Juris consultus.	sq., sqq.	quod sequitur, or pl.
ibid., ib.	ibidem.	S.T.B.; S.T.D.; S.T.P.	Sanctae Theologiae Baccalaureus, Doctor, Professor.
id.	idem.	V. cel., V. cl.	Vir celeberrimus, clarissimus.
J.U.D.	Juris Utriusque Doctor.	V.D.M.	Verbi Divini Minister.
l.c., ll. cc.	locus citatus, loci citati.	V.T.	Vetus Testamentum.

N.B.—A doubled letter denotes the plural: see examples given above.

INDEX.

(The Numbers indicate the Sections. The Words in *Italics* are contained in the Accidence.)

- A changed to e in comps., 206, 1, 2.
 to i " 206, 1.
 to u " 206, 3.
- a, ab, 557, 1;—in sing., 715.
- abine, constr. 325, obs. 2.
- abbreviations, 936.
- ablative, of 1st Decl., in *abus*, 17, obs. 4.
 of 3rd Decl., in i, 32.
 of 3rd Decl., in i and e, 33.
 of 3rd Decl. (pl.), in is, 45.
- Ablative, syntax of, 102, *sqq.*; of Separation, 303, *sqq.*; of motion from, 261; after opus, 308; of Origin, 309, *sq.*; after ortus, etc., 310; of Cause, etc. 311, *sqq.*; after pass. verbs, without ab, 311, obs.; after verbs denoting feelings, 313; of Price, 316; of duration, 249, obs. 2; Absolute, 312, *sqq.*; absol. without subs., 313; without participle, 314; of Quality, 318; of comparison, 319; of comparison, after alius, 630, obs.; measure, 321; Time when, 322; Time, within which, 323; Time, how long ago, 324; Place, 326, *sqq.*
 formation of, 881 (*sing.*), 892 (*pl.*)
- Absque, 557, 2.
- Abstract subs. in plur., 591, 594;—in Tac., 721, 6.
- Abstract, expr. by *plur.* of concrete, 591.
 for concrete, 592; 610, obs.; in Tac. 724, 1.
- ac, atque, 563.
- acatalectic verse, 782, obs.
- accent, where placed, 8.
- accusative of 3rd Dec., in *im*, 31.
 (pl.), in *is* and *es*, 37.
 Greek, in u, 40, 1.
 in *im*, 40, 2.
 in *en* (2nd Dec.), 40, 3.
 (pl.), in *as*, 41.
 syntax of, 214, *sqq.*; cognate, 215; double, 241; after intrans. verbs, 216; 251; after passives, 243, obs. 4; 244, obs. 3; 251 obs. 1 after verbs comp. with prep. 219; fictive, 241; of motion towards, 249; in Tac. 729, 1; of time, space, 249, in exclamations, 250; of closer definition, 251; Greek, 252; of neuter pron., 253; used adverbially 254; after verbs of remembering, etc., 274, obs. 1.
 and infinitive, 407, *sqq.*
 formation of, 860 (*sing.*), 866 (*pl.*)
- acer, aeris, acre, 48.
- aceus, term. of adj., 187, 2 obs.
- acum, 163, 1.
- ad, 536, 1; in Livy, 715; used adverbially, 556, 1, obs.
- adeo, emphatic, 614, 3; 653.
- adipiscor, 171, 16.
- p. part. in pass. sense, 101, obs. 1.
- Adjectives, 55, *sqq.*
 in *er* (e)ra, (e)rum, 56, obs. 1.
 in *ur*, 56, obs. 2.
 derivative, 186, 190.
 governing genitive: of capacity, 276; of guilt, 279, obs. 3; of fulness, etc., 276, 317; of price, 316; of origin, 310; of feeling, 314.
 governing dative; of advantage, etc., 298.
 peculiarities of: equiv. to subs. (imus, summus), 341; equiv. to genitive case, 611, 1; in Tac., 721, 5; in neuter = abstract subs. 342; with force of adverbs, 343; neuter = adverbs, 344.
 compared together, 350.
 position of, 671; when emphatic, 672.
 two, requiring conjunction, 340.
- Adonian verse, 791.
- adulor, constr. of, 291, obs. 3.
- Adverbs, termin. of, 196, *sqq.*
 compared, 129; irregular, 130.
 classified, 133.
 derivative, 196.
 derived from numerals, 72, 73.
 pronouns, 133.
 joined with subs., 546; compared together, 549.
 position of, 678.
- adversus (prep.), 546, 2.
- ae (diphthong), 6, obs.
 changed to i in compounds, 206, 5.
- aedes, sing. and pl., 41.
- aemulor, constr. 291, obs. 4.
- agnomen, 913.
- agnosco, 167.
- ago and comp., 158, 41.
- ago, agito, in Sall., 694.
- agio, 121.
- al term. of subs., 182, 6.
- Alcaic verse, 802.
- algos, 114, 12.
- alienus, constr. of, 298, obs. 5.
- alepuz, 82, obs. 1.
- aliquis and quis, 182.

-*alis*, term of adj., 187, 5.
alius, 57.
alius, . . . *alius*, 390, 629.
alius in diff. cases, 629.
 sequence of, 630; foll. by abl., 630, *obs.*
alo, 160, 1.
 Alphabet, 819, *sqq.*; whence derived, 820.
alter, 57.
 alternating verse, 804.
alteruter, 82, *obs.* 6.
ambage, 52, 3.
ambio (irr.), 116, *obs.* 5.
amicio, 168, 13.
 amphibrachys, 763.
 amphimacer, 763.
 amplexus in pass. sense, 101, *obs.* 1.
amplius, constr. of, 349.
-anus, term. of adj., 187, 8; 188; 189, 3;
 190, *obs.*
an, in direct double questions, 414.
 in simple questions, 415.
 after *hanc scio*, etc., 438.
anacrusis, 794.
anapaest, 763; *anapestic verse*, 789.
ango, 158, 21.
anhelo, with acc., 236.
animi, constr. of, 237, *obs.*
ante, 556, 3.
 verbs comp. with, 292, *obs.* 3.
 or post. constr. of, 325, *obs.* 1.
antequam, 300, 501.
antibacchius, 763.
antispastus, 763.
antithesis, in Sallust, 690.
apage, 124.
aperio, 168, 14.
apiscor, 171, 16.
apodosis, what, 424; expr. by *debeo*, etc.,
 428, *obs.*; suppressed, 426.
apposition, 214; of adjectives, 216; in case
 of *urbs*, *civitas*, 215 (comp. 229); equiv.
 to *as*, *when*, 217.
apud, 556, 4; = *at*, *ib.*, *obs.*
aqua, -ae, 51.
-ar, term. of subs., 182, 6.
ar = *ad*, 832, 2.
arceo and comps., 156, 1.
arcesso, 162, 6.
Archilochus, imitated by Hor., 807, *sqq.*
ardeo, 154, 4.
arguo, 163, 2.
-aris, term. of adj., 187, 5, *obs.*
-arium, term. of subs., 182, 2.
-arius, term. of adj., 187, 9.
 of subs., 182, 1.
arsis, 762.
 Article, none, 10.
 Arval brothers, chant of, 817.
 Aryan family of lang., 819.
-as, term. of adj., 189, 4.
as, parts of, 929.
 Asclepiadean verse, 794, *obs.*
 asking, verbs of, 244.
assentior, 172.
assis, 281, *obs.* 2.
assuefacio, *assuesco*, constr. of, 292, *obs.* 2.
asynartete metre, 799.
asyndeton, 565, *obs.* 2; in Sall., 689.
at, 575; in sudden transitions, 576.
atque, ac, 563.
 after compar., 352.

atqui, 577.
 attraction of dative, 295, *obs.*; 296, *obs.* 1, 2.
 of relative (in gender), 380; in
 case, 180, *obs.*
 after infinitives, 513.
-atus, term. of subs., 182, 4.
 of adj., 187, 12.
audeo, 119, B.
augeo, 154, 1.
ausim, 111, 3.
aut and *vel*, 570.
autem, 572.
 authors, Latin, 919, *sqq.*
auxilium, -a, 51.
ave, 124.
aveo, 156, 2, 1.
-ax, term. of adj., 186, 4.
 B, power, and changes of, 827.
bacchius, 763.
Bartharia, -ies, 53, 3.
 being, verbs of, constr., 232.
belli, constr., 258; *bello*, 328.
bene (compar.), 131.
biho, 157, 13.
-bilis, term. of adj., 186, 3.
bonus (compar.), 66.
bos, 30.
-bulum } term. of subs., 181, 9.
-brum }
-bundus, term. of adj., 110, 3.
 C, original power of, 822; lost before *n*, *nl*,
 etc., 822, 2; = *t* before *ia*, *io*, etc., *ib.* 3.
Cado and comps., 159, 13.
caedo and comps., 159, 14.
Caesar, style of, 693; his commentaries, 695,
obs.; his freq. use of abl. absol., 698; long
 periods, 699.
caesura, in hexameter, 771; penthemimeral,
 etc., 773; in pentameter, 773; in iambic
 trimeter, 783. (See under the diff. metres.)
calendar, Roman, 922, *sqq.*
calleo, 156, 2.
 calling, verbs of, in passive, 232.
callus, -lum, 53, 1.
calveo, 156, 2, 2.
cando and comps., 159, 20.
coneo, 156, 2, 3.
cano and comps., 160, 14.
capesso, 162, 7.
capiō and comps., 157, 11.
capite, *capitis*, constr., 280.
carbasus, -a, 54.
carcer, -eres, 51.
 cardinal numerals, 69, 73.
carpo and comps., 157, 1.
 Cases, meanings of, 15; formation of, 841,
sqq.
castrum, -a, 51.
 catalectic verse, 783, *obs.*
 cause, in abl., 311.
caveo, 153, 1.
caveo, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 7-
 -ce, with prons., 78, *obs.* 1.
cedo, *cette*, 124.
cedo, 159, 10.
celo, constr. of, 243; see *obs.* 3.
censco and comps., 150, 6.
cerno, 111, 1.
certe and *certo*, 659.
ceterum, 573.
 change of *a* to *i*, *e*, *u*, in comp., 206.

- change of *ae* to *i* in comp., 206, 5.
au to *o* in comp., 206, 6.
e to *i* in comp., 206, 4.
e to *i* in subs., 21, *obs.* 2.
e to *u* in subs., 28, *obs.* 2.
i to *e* in subs., 29, *obs.* 1.
o to *i* in subs., 25, *obs.* 1.
o to *u* in subs., 28, *obs.* 2.
u to *i* in subs., 28, *obs.* 3.
 consonants: see the several letters.
- choliambus, 786.
 choriambic metre, 794, *sqq.*; the foot, 763.
ci, how pronounced, 822, 3.
- Cicero, style of, 700, *sqq.*; doubles words, 701; uses abstr. subs. for concrete, 702; his diminutives, 703; various senses of *versor* ratio, 704, 705
- cico*, 151, 6.
cingo, 158, 4.
circa, circum, 556, 5.
circiter, 556, 7.
circum, in comp., 240, 246.
circumdo, constr., 272, *obs.* 3.
cis, *citra*, 556, 8.
citerior, compar., 66.
civitas, constr. of, 215; 257, *obs.* 2.
clam, 558, 5.
 Claudius, adds to alphabet, 824.
claudio and comps., 159, 1.
coelum, -i, 54.
coeno, -atus, 119, B. *obs.*
coepi, 120.
 cognate accusative, 235.
cognosco, 167.
 collective subs., constr., 222.
 collective use of sing., 590.
colo, 160, 2.
 comic tetrameter, 787.
commentarius, -um, 53, 1.
commisiscor, 171, 17.
como, 160, 15.
 comparative degr., 63; formation of, 893, *sqq.*
 of adj. in -ius, 64, IV.
 = "too" or "somewhat," 351.
 of adv., constr. of, 548.
- comparison of adject. and adv. together, 350, 549; in Tac., 720, 2.
 composition of words, 204-208.
 concealing, verbs of, 243.
 concord, 218.
 of Verb, 219, *sqq.*; of Adj., 223, *sqq.*; of Rel., 228.
 concrete for abstr. subs., 589.
 conditio, etym. of, 822, *obs.* 4.
congruo, 163, 15.
 conjugations, how distinguished, 89.
 1, 2, 3, 4, 92-98; 3 and 4, 100.
 periphrastic, 102.
- conjunctions, 139.
 with subj., 483, *sqq.*
 connective, 561, *sqq.*
 adversative, 571, *sqq.*
 hypothetical, 579.
 causal, 581.
 conclusive, 582.
 final, 586.
 temporal, 587.
 as particles, 652.
- conniexo*, 153, 8.
 consonants classified, 821.
- consulo*, 160, 3.
consulo, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 7.
contentas, with *abl.*, 314.
contio, orthog. of, 822, *obs.* 1.
contra, 556, 8.
 contracted verbs, 104, 106.
 syllables; quant. of, 728.
- copula*, 213, *obs.*; omitted in Sall., 683, *obs.*
coquo, 158, 3.
coram, 557, 3.
correlatives, 83; syntax of, 379.
credo, 159, 18.
crepo and comps., 149, 1.
cresco, 167, 1.
creticus (foot), 763.
cubo and comps., 149, 2.
cudo, 159, 21.
cujas, 77, *obs.* 4.
cujus, -a, -um, 77, *obs.* 3.
(cumbo) and comps., 157, 9; 149, 2.
-cundus, term. of adj., 126, 4, *obs.*
cupio, 157, 16.
cupressus, -i and -us, 53, 4.
cum, 557, 4; plural Verb after, 220, *obs.* 3;
 denoting manner, 312.
cunque, 661; tmesis of, 661, *obs.*
cur, 133.
curo takes acc., 291, *obs.* 2.
curro and comps., 161, 6.
D, lost before *s*, 23, *obs.* 1.
 final nearly = *t*, 830.
 final often lost, 830, 3.
 termination of *Abl.*, etc., 881.
 changed to *l*, 831, 2.
 changed to *r*, 832, 2.
- dactyl, 763.
 dactylic hexameter, 768.
 pentameter, 779.
 tetrameter, 812.
- (*diaps*), 52, 1.
 dative in -abus, 17, *obs.* 4.
 -is for -ibus, 45.
- dative, syntax of, 287, *sqq.*: of remeter object, 287, 292; of advantage, 288; after Adjectives, 298; *dativus ethicus*, 290; after various Verbs, 291, *sqq.*, after *sum* = *habeo*, 296 denoting agent after Passive Verbs, 293; esp. after gerundive, 294; after Impers. Verbs, 295; double, after licet, etc., 295, *obs.*; of names, by attraction, 296, *obs.* 1; of purpose or result, 297; esp. in Tac. 721, 2; after idem, 620; after adverbs, 299; exceptional uses of Greek dative, 300; denoting motion towards, 301; of reference, 288, *obs.* 1.
 formation of, 874, *sqq.* (sing.), 892 (pl.).
- dativus ethicus*, 290.
de, 557, 5.
decei, 126; constr. of, 242.
 declensions, 17, *sqq.*
dedecet, constr. of, 242.
 defective comparison, 66.
 substantives, 52.
 verbs, 120.
- defetiscor*, 171, 19.
definition, genitive of, 275.
 accus. of closer, 251
- deleo*, 151, 1.
demon, 160, 16.
 demonstrative pronouns, 364, *sqq.*

antrum, 66a.
 antratus, 93a.
 dentata, 819, app.
 deponent, what, 84.
 conjugated, 101.
 derivative, 192.
 note of, 169, 172.
 deponents, p. part. of, in pass. sense, 101, obs. 1.
 verb, 101, obs. 3; 119.
 depon, 162, 1.
 derivation of subs., 181, app.
 desideratives, 194, 1.
 deterior, 66a.
 determinative pron., 79; constr. of, 170, app.
 deus, 19, obs. 6.
 dextra, 118.
 di, syllabified, 816, obs.
 diarsia, 767.
 diastole, 761.
 diem, 118, 1.
 dies, m. and f., 54.
 stem of, 891, obs.
 different forms of same word placed together, 674.
 digamma, how represented, 819, 2.
 dignus, with abl., 120; foll. by qui, 480; by infin. mood, 480, obs.
 diameter, etc., 764.
 diminutive subs., 182.
 verbs, 194, 4.
 diminutives, use of, 600, 701.
 diphthongs, short, 765, 7.
 discen, 118, 3a.
 dissyllable pret. and supine, quant. of, 735.
 distributives, 71, 72.
 use of with plurals differing in sense from sing., 71, obs. 1.
 (ditio), 52, 1.
 diu (compar.), 131.
 dives, 60, obs. 2.
 divido, 159, 2.
 do and compa., 149, 3, 1; 159, 18.
 doces, 150, 1.
 constr. of, 242, obs. 2.
 domi, constr. of, 218.
 dominor, constr. of, 291, obs. 6.
 domo, 149, 3.
 domum, constr. of, 260.
 domus, 53, 4.
 donec, constr. of, 499.
 double or alternating verse, 804.
 du becomes d, 810, 4.
 dubito, constr. of, 418.
 ducum, 158, 2.
 dusas (from do), 111, 2.
 dum with pres. indic., 293, obs. 2; with Indic. or Subj., 497.
 dummodo, 498.
 duntaxat, 658.
 duo (num.), 68.
 dupli, etc., constr. of, 280, obs. 2.
 E changed to I, etc.; see CHANGE.
 e term. of adj., 196.
 e, ex, 517, 6.
 ecoror, edepol, 113.
 ecor, ecorum, 79, obs. 1.
 ecor, en, constr. of, 190, obs. 1.
 eccillem, 78, obs. 2.
 equi as interr. particle, 413.
 equus, 81, obs. 2.

editus, with abl., 110.
 edo, 114.
 subj. edim, 111, 2.
 edo, 119, 18.
 egeo, 156, 3.
 elision, 761.
 ellum, 78, obs. 2.
 ellipse, of son or daughter, 266, obs. 3; of action, 266, obs. 4; of various substantives, 101; of verb, 618.
 emo and compa., 160, 11, app.
 en and ecce, constr. of, 150, obs. 1.
 enim and nam, 501.
 enim as particle, 664.
 ennis, term. of adj., 189, 1; 197, obs.
 eo, 116.
 compa. of, 116, obs.
 pass. of, 116, obs.
 epiclesis, 141.
 epistolary style, 198, 404.
 eptitulus, 763.
 ester (from edo), 115, obs. 1.
 equidem, 616, obs. 3.
 eram in aor. sense, 197.
 erga, 516, 9.
 ergo, with genitive, 264.
 as conjunction, 183.
 est mihi = habeo, 296.
 et, 561; et... et, 562; et... neque, 564.
 ethicus: see dativus.
 etel, etiamel, 501.
 -etum, term. of subs., 182, 7.
 eumpae, etc., 79, obs. 2.
 -eus, term. of adj., 187, 1; 188, obs.
 eus, 188, obs.
 eentus, -um, 53, 4.
 expedit, constr. of, 295.
 experior, 171, 20.
 exterior, 172, 2.
 expens, constr. of, 307, obs. 2.
 exterior (compar.), 66.
 extra, 196, 10.
 exuo, 163, 5.
 F peculiar to Italian language, 838; its power and changes, id.
 facio, 161, 8.
 facio and compa., 158, 42; (also 205, obs.).
 pass. of, 119, obs. 1.
 factitive accusative, 245.
 fallit, constr. of, 242, obs.
 fallo and compa., 163, 12.
 farcio and compa., 168, 1.
 fari, 113.
 falcor and compa., 170, 1.
 p. part. in pass. sense, 101, obs. 1.
 feet, metrical, 763.
 ferveo, 153, 7.
 fetialis, orthog. of, 822, obs. 3.
 focus, -i, and -us, 53, 4.
 fido, 119, 8.
 fido, with dat., 291; with abl., 113.
 figo, 158, 30.
 final consonants, quant. of, 750, app.
 vowels, quant. of, 745.
 findo, 159, 32.
 fingo, 158, 23.
 fio, 119.
 quantity of, 119, obs.
 first word, emphatic, 666.
 first person, precedence of, 121, obs.
 flavo, 156, 2, 4.

- flecto*, 153, 31.
fleo, 151, 2.
(fugo) in comps., 153, 5.
fucci, con-tr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.
floren, 156, 4.
fuo, 158, 51.
fodio, 159, 24.
foet-o, 156, 2, 5.
foras, 132.
(fors), 52, 2.
fortuna, sing. and pl., 51.
foveo, 153, 3.
frango and comps., 153, 47.
fremo, 160, 7.
frendo, -eo, 159, 34.
frenum, -i and -a, 54.
frequentative verbs, 194, 1.
fretus, with abl., 314.
frico, 149, 9.
frigo, 154, 14.
frigo, 153, 6.
frigor, with abl., 315.
(fruz), 52, 1.
frugi (as adj.), 60, *obs.* 3.
 compared, 66.
fruor, 171, 1.
funit, constr. of, 242, *obs.*
fulness, or want, Adjectives denoting, 276, 317.
fungor, with abl., 315; with acc., 315; *obs.* 3.
future tense, 390; = Imperative, 420, *obs.* 2.
future Infinitive, bow expr., 518.
future-perfect, 405; of what is to be done instantly, 406; sign of often not expr. in English, 407.
O, when added to the alphabet, 820, *obs.* 3; when elided, 824, 2.
Galliambic verse, 797.
gaudeo, 119, B.
geno, 160, 8.
genders of subs., 141.
generalization with rerum, 595.
generic plural, 591.
genitive sing. -as, -ai (1 Dec.), 17, *obs.* 2.
 pl. -um (1 Dec.), 17, *obs.* 3.
 pl. -um (2 Dec.), 19, *obs.* 4.
 sing. -i = li (2 Dec.), 19, *obs.* 2.
 pl. -on, 20, 4; 47.
 -ium and -um, 21, *obs.* 1; also 35, 36; and 891.
 (Greek). -i, 39, 1.
 -os, 39, 2.
 -us, 39, 3.
genitive, constr. of, 263, *sqq.*; after substantives, 261; of the possessor, 265; after sum, 266; Subjective, 267; Objective, 268; Objective after Adjectives, 276, *obs.* 1; Partitive, 269; of Quality, 274; of Definition, 275; after Adjectives, 276, *sqq.*; after Verbs, 278, *sqq.*; after *to accus.*, etc., 279; Genitive of price (tantum, etc.), 281; (flecti, etc.), 281, *obs.* 2; after verbs of feeling, etc., 282; with interest and refert, 283. Exceptional uses of, 284; of separation, 284; Greek genitive, 285; in apposition with possessive Pronoun, 267, *obs.* 2; in Tac. after Adjectives, 721, 1; in Livy, 703.
genitive, formation of, 862, *sqq.* (*sing.*), 889, *sqq.* (*pl.*).
gero, 161, 4.
gerund, 86, 3.
gerund, constr. of, 532; governs a case, 533; foll. by genitive, 540; converted to Gerundive, 537; where preferred to Gerundive, 537, *obs.* 2; as abl. absol., 541.
Gerundive in undus, 110, 3.
gerundive, ord. use of, 534; as imperf. part. pass., 522, *obs.* 2; with est, imperis, 536; of Purpose or Result, in dat., 538; also in gen., 539.
gerundive and gerund, freq. use in Livy, 714.
gignentia, intrans. in Sall., 694, 2.
gigno, 160, 11.
glisco, 167, 2.
gloria, etym. of, 824, No. 2, *obs.*
glubo, 157, 2.
Glyconian metre, 795.
government, syntactic, 217.
gradior and comps., 171, 3.
grandinat, 126.
gratia, sing. and pl., 51.
gratia, constr. of, 264, *obs.*
gratis, 132.
Greek Subs. (1 Dec.), 18.
 (2 Dec.), 20.
 (3 Dec.), 38.
Greek usage of Genitive, 284, 285.
 of Dative, 300; (296, *obs.* 2).
guberno, governs acc., 291, *obs.* 6.
gutturals, 822, *sqq.*
H, power and uses of, 825.
habeo in Sall., 694.
haereo, 154, 5.
haurio, 168, 3.
hebeo, 156, 2, 6.
haud scio an, 438.
hei and *vae*, with dat., 250, *obs.* 2.
Hendecasyllabics, 792.
hendiadys, 602.
 in Tac., 724, 2.
heteroclita, 53.
heterogenea, 54.
hexameter verse, 768.
 endings of, 776.
hic (pron.), use of, 364.
hic and *ille*, 366, 367.
Hipponactean verse, 786 (*note*), 806, *obs.* 1.
historical present, 393; foll. by past-Subj., 423, *obs.*
historical Infinitive, 517; in Sall., 691; in Tac., 721, 7.
horreo, 156, 5.
humeo, 156, 2, 7.
humi, constr. of, 258.
hypercatalectic verse, 782, *obs.*
hypermeter lines, 778.
hypothetical sentences, 424, *sqq.*; with Indic., 424, 1; with Subj., 424, 2, *sqq.*; and Indic. in apodosis, 428, *obs.*; without regular protasis, 429.
I as vowel of connexion, 207.
 changed to e, 29, *obs.* 1.
 dropped in stems in -al, -ar, 29, *obs.* 2.
-ia, term. of subs., 185, 1.
iambic trimeter, 781, 807; *scaron*, 786.
 dimeter, 784, *obs.* 2.
iambus, 763.
-ianus, term. of adj., 188.
-icius, or -ilius, do., 187, 2.
ico, 153, 45.

- icus, term. of adj., 187, 3; 188, *obs.*; 190.
 -icus, do., 187, 3, *obs.*
 id quod, constr. of, 230.
idem, 79.
idem, attendant of qui, 372, 379, *obs.*; 3;
 emphatic after Relative, 373; = *also*, and
yet, 375; sequence of, 620; foll. by dat.,
 620.
 -idus, constr. of, 186, 2.
 -ies, term. of subs., 181, 10.
 igitur, 584; often first in its sentence in
 Sall., 693.
 -ile, term. of subs., 182, 8.
 -ilis, term. of adj., 186, 3; 187, 4.
 ille, of celebrity, 365; distinguished from
 hic, 366, 367; repeated pleonastically,
 615; with adj. or adv., 616; position of,
 675.
 -im, term. of adv., 861, 8, *obs.*
imbuo, 163, 3.
impedimentum, -a, 51.
 Imperative, Pres., 417.
 Future, 418.
 imperfect: see Past-imperf.
 imperfect part., 523; as substantive, 638.
 impero, foll. by acc. and infin., 451, 3.
impersonal verbs, 125.
 impersonal verbs, with acc., 241, 242; with
 dat., 295.
 in, prep., 558, 1.
 -ina, term. of subs., 182, 3.
inceptives, 164-167; 194, 2.
 indeclinable subs., 42; gender of, 141, 3.
 indef. pronouns, use of, 383, *sqq.*
 Indicative, used predicatively, 392, *sqq.*;
 interrog., 408; for Subj. in oratio obliqua,
 710.
 indirect questions, 434.
 Indo-European lang., 819.
indulgeo, 154, 2.
induo, 163, 4.
indutiae, orthog. of, 822, *obs.* 3.
inferior, 66.
Infinitive in ier, 111, 1.
 Infinitive, as Subject, 505; as Object, 506;
 Accusative and Infinitive, 507, *sqq.*; after
 verbs of *willingness, ability, etc.*, 512, *sqq.*;
 in exclamations, 516; Historical, 517;
 circumlocution for future Inf., 518; in
 oratio obliqua, 465; in questions in oratio
 obl., 469; after adjectives, 506, *obs.* 2.
infra, 556, 11.
ingratis, 132.
inquam, 122.
inquit, ellipsis of, 635, 2.
instar, constr. of, 264, *obs.* 3.
 instrument, in abl., 311.
inter, 556, 12; repeated, 650.
interest, constr. of, 283 (see *obs.*).
interior, 66.
 interjections, 140.
internecio, 52, 1.
 interrogative particles, 409.
 sentences: see questions.
intra, 556, 13.
intransitive verbs, of 2nd Conj., 193;
 of 3rd Conj., 195.
 in pass., 84, *obs.* 2; 234.
 obs. 2.
 with trans. sense, 256.
 -inus, term. of adj., 187, 7; 188; 183, 2.
 invidio, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 3.
 invitus, used adverbially, 343.
 -io, term. of subs., 181, 3.
Ionius = *minor*, 796.
ipse = *very just*, 376.
ipse, constr. of, 377, 617.
 (et) *ipse*, 618.
 is, ea, id, use of, 370; dative and acc. of,
 omitted, 371; the attendant on qui, 372,
 379, *obs.* 3; et is, isque, 374, 619.
 iste, force of, 368; used contemptuously,
 369.
 ita, use of, 551; = *very*, 644, 1; in adjura-
 tions, 644, 2.
itaque, 585.
 J, power and changes of, 838.
Jacio and comps., 158, 46.
jam dudum, *pridem*, with pres., 392, *obs.*
 cf. 394, *obs.*
Janus = *Dianus*, 841.
jocus, -i and -a, 54.
Jovis = *Diovis*, 841.
jubeo, 154, 6.
jubeo, takes acc. and infi., 451, *obs.* 2.
jugerum, 53, 6.
Jungo, 158, 7.
Jupiter, 30.
juro, -atus, 119, B, *obs.*
 jussive. see Imperative.
jussu, etc., 313, *obs.* 1.
juvat, constr. of, 242, *obs.*
juvenis (compar.), 66, *obs.* 1.
juvo, 149, 2, 1.
juvo, takes acc., 291, *obs.* 2.
juxta, 556, 14.
 K, when used, 5, *obs.*
 L, power of, 831, changed to r after another
 l, 831, 2.
 labials, 827, *sqq.*
labor, 171, 4.
laccio, 162, 9.
lacio and comps., 158, 20.
lacio and comps., 159, 3.
lambo, 157, 14.
 last word in sent. emphatic, 667.
lateo, 156, 6.
latet, constr. of, 242, *obs.*
 Latin, when and where spoken, 1.
 languages derived from, 819.
 Latin authors, lists of, 919, *sqq.*
laurus, -i and -us, 53, 4.
lavo, 149, 2, 2; 163, 12.
lego and comps., 158, 47.
 -lentus, term. of adj., 187, 11.
 letters introduced by Claudius, 820, *obs.* 4.
libens, used adverbially, 343.
liber, constr. of, 307, *obs.* 2.
libet, 126.
liceor and comps., 170, 2.
licet, 126.
licet, *libet* with dat., 295.
 conj. with Subj., 502.
lingo, 158, 9.
lino, 160, 26.
linquo, 158, 48.
liquet, 126.
liquids, 867, *sqq.*
liquor (dep. verb), 171, 5.
littera, sing. and pl., 51.
liveo, 156, 2, 8.
Livy, style of, 706, *sqq.*; his Patavinity, 706,

- obs.; bis use of metonymy, 707; of the Genitive, 708; of collective singular, 709. of Indic. in *oratio obl.*, 710; of fut. part. hypothetically, 713; of Gerund and Gerundive, 714.
- ll, power of, 831, 3.
- locative, 256, *obs.* 1.
- locus, -i and -a, 54.
- locus, via, in abl., 329.
- logaoedic verse, 798.
- longe, with superlative, 354.
- loquor, 173, 6.
- luceo, 154, 16.
- lucescit, 136.
- ludo, 159, 4.
- lulus, sing. and pl., 51.
- lugeo, 154, 17.
- luc, 163, 16.
- luxuria, -ies, 53, 3.
- M, power and changes of, 834.
- maerco, 156, 2, 9.
- magni, parvi, constr. of, 281, *obs.* 1; 316, *obs.* 2.
- magnopere, (compar.) 131.
- magnus (compar.), 66.
- Maius, etym. of, 838, 3.
- male (compar.), 131.
- male = non, 646.
- malim, malle, 446, *obs.*
- malo, 113.
- malo, with subj., 447.
- malus (compar.), 66.
- mando (3 Conj.), 159, 26.
- maneo, 154, 7.
- manner, abl. of, 311.
- matrīa, -ies, 51, 3.
- meā, tuā, etc., 283, *obs.* 1.
- medeor, 170, 3.
- medeor, medicor, with dat., 291, *obs.* 3.
- mediocris, in Sall., 694.
- medius fidius } 133.
- mehercle }
- mei, tui, use of, 268, *obs.* 4.
- memini, 120.
- memini, constr. of, 278, *obs.* 1.
- men, term of subs., 181, 7.
- menta, -um, 53, 2.
- mentum, term of subs., 181, 8.
- mereor (-eo), and comps., 170, 4.
- mergo, 158, 27.
- met, with prons., 77, *obs.* 2; 614, 1.
- necior, 172, 7.
- meto, 159, 35.
- metonymy, 604; also, 592, 2; in Livy, 707.
- metres, 764.
- metuo, 163, 18.
- meus, tuus, position of, 673.
- mico and comps., 149, 7.
- middle use of verbs in Latin, 252.
- militiae, constr. of, 258.
- millē, 69.
- millia, orthog. of, 831, 3.
- mingo, 158, 24.
- minuo, 163, 6.
- minus = non, 646.
- miacco, 150, 3.
- miseror, 170, 5.
- miseret, 126.
- miseret, constr. of, 241; 282.
- miseror, with acc., 282, *obs.* 3.
- mitto, 149, 11.
- modal subs., constr. of in abl., 312, *obs.*
- moderor, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 6.
- (non) modo... sed etiam, 567.
- mollitia, -ies, 53, 3.
- molo, 160, 4.
- money, Roman, 939, *sqq.*
- monia, term. of subs., 185, 5.
- monometer, 764.
- moods, 85.
- mordeo and comps., 152, 5.
- morior and comps., 171, 7.
- mortales, in Sall., 694, 1.
- motion towards, in acc., 259; in dat., 301.
- moreo, 153, 4.
- mulceo, 154, 8.
- mulgeo, 154, 9.
- multiplicative numerals, 71, *obs.* 2.
- multum (compar.), 131.
- multum, etc., with gen., 270.
- multus (compar.), 66.
- (mungo), emungo, 158, 9.
- N, power and changes of, 833.
- nam, namque, 581; used elliptically, 581.
- obs. 1; = namely, 654, *obs.* 2; second in sentence, 581, *obs.* 2.
- names, Roman, 933; *sqq.*
- names of towns, constr. of, 256, *sqq.*
- nanciscor, 171, 22.
- nascor, 171, 23.
- national names used adjunct., 608.
- natus, with abl., 210; with acc., (annos), 249, *obs.* 3.
- nauci, constr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.
- nē, in single direct questions, 410; in double, 414, 416; in indirect questions, 436.
- nē, neve, with imperat., 417, *obs.*; with subj., equiv. to imperat., 420.
- nē, alter verbs of commanding, etc., 451; of purpose, 454; combined with ut, 455.
- ne... quidem, 656.
- nece, 414, *obs.*
- neco, 149, 11.
- necto, 158, 32.
- nemo = nullus, 599.
- neo, 151, 3.
- nequam, 60, *obs.* 3.
- compared, 66.
- neque, nec, 568; with plur. verb, 569.
- nequeo, 118.
- nequis, 82.
- nescio an, 438.
- nescio quis, 626.
- neuter, tra, trum, 57.
- neuter of adj. as adv., 199.
- neuter adj. in predicate, 227.
- neuter-passives, 119.
- neut.-pl. in -ia (3 Dec.), 34.
- ni (nisi), 425.
- nihil, as adv., 254; of persons, 624, *obs.*
- ningit, 126; 158, 22.
- niteo, 156, 7.
- nitōr (dep. verb), 171, 8.
- nitōr, foll. by infin., 451, *obs.* 2.
- nix, stem of, 22, *obs.*; 824, 2.
- "No"; how expr. in Lat., 133, C. *obs.*
- noctu, 132.
- noll, periphr. for imperat., 420, *obs.* 1.
- nolo, 113.
- nolo, foll. by subj., 447, 2.
- nam, pl. in -es, 42.
- nominative, as subject, 231; after Infin.,

233; by attraction with *Infan.*, 507, *obs.*
 nominative, formation of, 244, *sqq.* (*sing.*), 882, *sqq.* (*pl.*).
 non, position of, 678, *obs.*
 non modo (solum). . . sed, 567.
 nonne, 401.
 nos, precise meaning of, 221.
 nos, noster = ego, meus, 352.
 nosco and comps., 167.
 nostras, 77, *obs.* 4.
 nostri, nostrum, 359.
 nōvi, 120.
 novus (compar.), 66.
 nubo, 157, 2.
 nubo, with *at.*, 289.
 nullus, 57; gen. of in *-i*, 82, *obs.* 6.
 nullus = non, 612.
 num, in direct questions, 133; in indirect, 413; in double questions, 416, *obs.* 2.
 numerals, 73.
 numeral adverbs, 72, 73.
 nuntius, etym. and orthog. of, 822, *obs.* 2.
 nuo and comps., 163, 17.
 nuper (compar.), 131.
 nuper, etym. of, 839, 4.
 O, lighter than a, 917; changed to u, 28, *obs.* 2; dropped in *carnis*, 25, *obs.* 2; 848, *obs.*
 -o, term. of adv., 197.
 ob, 556, 15.
 object, case of, 234.
 objective genitive, 268; combined with subjective gen., 268, *obs.* 3.
 obliqua oratio, 464, *sqq.*
 obliuiscor, 171, 24.
 ocior (compar.), 66.
 odi, 120.
 oe (diphthong), 6, *obs.*
 oleo (to smell), 156, 8.
 oleo, constr. of, 237.
 oleo (to grow), in comps. 151, 5; see also, 165, *obs.*
 olī = illi, 78, *obs.* 3.
 omnis = ullus, 386.
 opera, sing. and pl., 51.
 operio, 168, 15.
 opis, sing. and pl., 51.
 oportet, 126.
 oportet, constr. of, 242, *obs.*
 opperior, 172, 4.
 (ops), 52, 2.
 opto, constr. of, 447, 1.
 opus, with abl., 308; as adj., 308, *obs.*
 -or, term. of subs., 181, 1.
 oratio obliqua, 464, *sqq.*; questions in, 468.
 order of words, 662, *sqq.*
 ordior, 172, 9.
 ordinals, 70, 73.
 orior (3 and 4 Conj.), 100, *obs.* 3; 172, 10.
 oriandus, with abl., 310, *obs.*
 ortus, with abl., 310.
 -osus, term. of adj., 187, 10.
 otium, orthog. of, 822, *obs.* 3.
 P, power and changes of, 826.
 paciscor, 171, 25.
 paeon, 763.
 pando, 159, 27.
 pango and comps., 153, 35.
 parco, 158, 36.
 pario, 161, 8.
 pars, sing. and pl., 51.

particip. form in *-bundus*, 110, 4.
 participles, 26.
fut. act., how formed, 109; irreg., 109, *obs.* 2.
 deficiency of in *Lat.*, 522; how supplied, 526; frequent use of, 530; used substantively, 637, *sqq.*; become adjectives, 277.
imperf. act., 523.
future act., 527.
 perfect: see perfect participle.
 gerundive: see gerundive.
 particles, 652, *sqq.*
 partim . . . partim, 547.
 partitive genitive, 269.
 parts of speech, 9.
 parum = non, 646.
 parvus, comp., 66.
 pasco, 167, 5.
 passive voice, inflected, 95, *sqq.*
 followed by a, ab, 234, *obs.* 1;
 used reflect., 251, 633.
 passive of intrans. verbs, 234, *obs.* 2; when used, 632.
 past tenses foll. by *pres.*, 473, 2.
 past-imperf. tense Indic., 394; of what is customary, 395; of what is attempted, 396; epistolary, 398.
 past-imperf. of sum = perf., 397.
 past-imperf. Subj. = past-perf., 429, *obs.*
 past-perfect or pluperfect Indic., 402; for Subj., 403; epistolary, 404.
 past-perf. Subj. in hypoth., 427; cf. 473, 1.
 patet, 156, 9.
 patior, 171, 9 (see comps.).
 patronymics, 184.
 patronymics, use of, 609.
 pause, in Hexameter, 775.
 pavo, 153, 6.
 pecto, 158, 33.
 pello and comps., 160, 13.
 pendeo and comps., 152, 6.
 pendo and comps., 159, 15.
 penes, 556, 16.
 pentameters, 779.
 per, 556, 17.
 percello, 160, 20.
 perfect Indic., its twofold meaning, 400;
 after postquam, simul atque, 401; for pluperf. subj., 428; used Aoristically, 634.
 perfect Subj. after past indef., 423 (note); in *Livy*, 712.
 perfect participles with act. sense, 524; of deponents, with pass. sense, 525; equiv. to verbal subs., 595; used substantively, 640, *sqq.*; neuter of = abstract subs., 528.
 personal ending, formation of, 898, *sqq.*
 Phalaecian metre, 792.
 Pherecratian metre, 795.
 piget, 126.
 piget, constr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.
 pinso, 162, 2.
 pinus, i and us, 53, 4.
 piso, 162, 3.
 placet, 126.
 plango, 158, 10.
 plaudo and comps., 159, 5.
 plebs, plebes, 51, 5.
 plecto, 158, 34; see also 171, 15.
 pleo and comps., 151, 4.

- plico* and comps., 149, 8.
pluit, 126; 163, 19.
 plural of 5th Decl., 47, *obs.* 4.
 with diff. meaning from sing., 51.
 pluperfect, see past-perfect.
 plural of concrete subs. for abstr. sing., 291.
 of abstr. subs., 593; 594,
 for singular, 603.
 nos = ego, 358.
 of verb after sing. subject, 222 (see
 obs.).
 pluris, minoris, constr. of, 281.
 plus, amplius, constr. of, 349.
poenitet, 126.
poenitet, constr. of, 241, 282.
polleo, 156, 2, 10.
 polysyndeton, 565, *obs.* 2.
 pone, 556, 18.
pomo, 162, 4.
 popina = coquina, 823.
 populares, in Sall., 694.
posco, 152, 40.
 position, syll. long by, 729.
 possessive pronouns, 77.
 poss. prons., constr. of, 363.
possum, 112.
 post, 555, 19.
posterior, compar., 66.
 postquam, with perf., 401; with pluperfect,
 401, *obs.*; with Indic. and Subj. 501.
 potential, Subj., 429.
potior, constr., 315.
potus, part., 119, B., *obs.*
prae, 557, 7.
 quant. of in comp., 727.
praedicate, 213; concord of, 315.
praenomen, 933.
praeter, 556, 20.
praeterit, constr. of, 242, *obs.*
prandeo, 152, 1.
pransus, 524.
precis (*prez*), 52, 2.
 prefixes, 178.
prehendo, 159, 28.
premo, 160, 25.
prepositions, 134, *sqq.*; inseparable, 138.
prepositions, gov. of, 533, *sqq.*; separated
 from case, 620; two prep., constr. of,
 649; repeated before 2nd subs., 651; go-
 vernment in comp., 238, *sqq.*; repeated
 after comp. verb, 329, *obs.* 2; 648.
 present tense, 392; historical, 393; after
 dum, 393, *obs.* 2; with jam dudum, 392, *obs.*
 present Subj. in hypoth., 426.
priapean verse, 814.
 primary words, 130.
primus, constr. of, 341.
prior, compar., 66.
prior, *primus*, with verb, 345.
prius, compar., 131.
prius-quam, constr. of, 500, 501.
pro, 557, 8.
 quant. of, in comp., 727.
proficiscor, 171, 26.
promo, 160, 17.
 pronouns, 74, *sqq.*
 pronouns, uses of, 357, *sqq.*; personal, not
 expr., 357; reflexive, 360; possessive,
 363; often not expr., 363, *obs.*; demon-
 strative, 364; determinative, 370; rela-
 tive, 378, indefinite, 383.
 peculiarities in use of, 614, *sqq.*
prope, compar., 131.
prope, prep., 556, 21.
 proper names, peculiarities in use of, 606.
propior, compar., 66.
 proportionals, 71, *obs.* 3.
propter, 556, 22.
prosody, 725, *sqq.*
prospicio, provideo, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 7.
protasis, 424; not fully expr., 429.
psallo, 160, 21.
 pyrrhic foot, 763.
 Pythiambic metre, 813, *obs.*
 Q, power of, 823; without u, 823, *obs.* 2.
quaero and comps., 161, 9.
quarso, 124.
 quality, gen. of, 274; abl. of, 318.
 quam qui, with superl., 355.
 quamvis with Subj., 502; with Indic., 502, *obs.*
 quando (causal), 495.
 quanquam, with Indic., 503; with Subj.,
 503, *obs.*
 quantity, 726; of contracted syllables, 728;
 of radical vowels, 731; of connecting
 vowels, 733; of derivatives and com-
 pounds, 734; of the reduplication of verbs,
 736; of final vowels, 745, *sqq.* of final
 consonants, 750.
 quantity, marks of, 7.
 -que, diff. from et, 563.
 questions, direct single, 408, *sqq.*; direct
 double, 414, *sqq.*
 indirect, 424; appy. so, 437.
 in oratio obliqua, 468, 469.
 qui, 81.
 comps. of, 82, *obs.* 5.
 qui, concord of, 228.
 with Subj.: hypothetical, 475; causal,
 476, 477; of purpose (= ut), 478;
 after dignus, etc., 480; after is, talis,
 tantus, 481; in such phr. as, sunt
 qui, 482; in parenthetical clauses,
 621.
 qui, adv., 81, *obs.* 2.
 quia, with Indic. and Subj., 486.
quicumque, 80, *obs.* 2.
 quid = "and then," 623; referring to per-
 sons, 624.
 quidam, use of, 385; as softening an expr.,
 385, *obs.*
 quidem, 656; after ille, 616.
 (ne) quidem, 656.
quiesco, 167, 6.
 quin, 461, *sqq.*
 quippe, 492; ironical, 493.
 quis and qui, 81, *obs.* 1.
 quis, comps. of, 81, *obs.* 3; 82, *obs.* 2.
 quis, as enclit., 383, 625; nescio quis, 623,
 si quis, 627; used impatiently, 622.
quisnam, 81, *obs.* 3.
quispiam, 384.
quisquam, 82, *obs.* 4.
quisquam and ullus, 386, 387.
quisque, plur. after, 222, *obs.* 2; with superl.,
 356; used distributively, 388.
quisquis, 80, *obs.* 2.
 quo, conj., 453; in connexion with comp.,
 453.
 quod, a quasi Rel., 491; after verbs, 488;
 after impers. expressions, 489; hypoth.,
 with subj., 492.

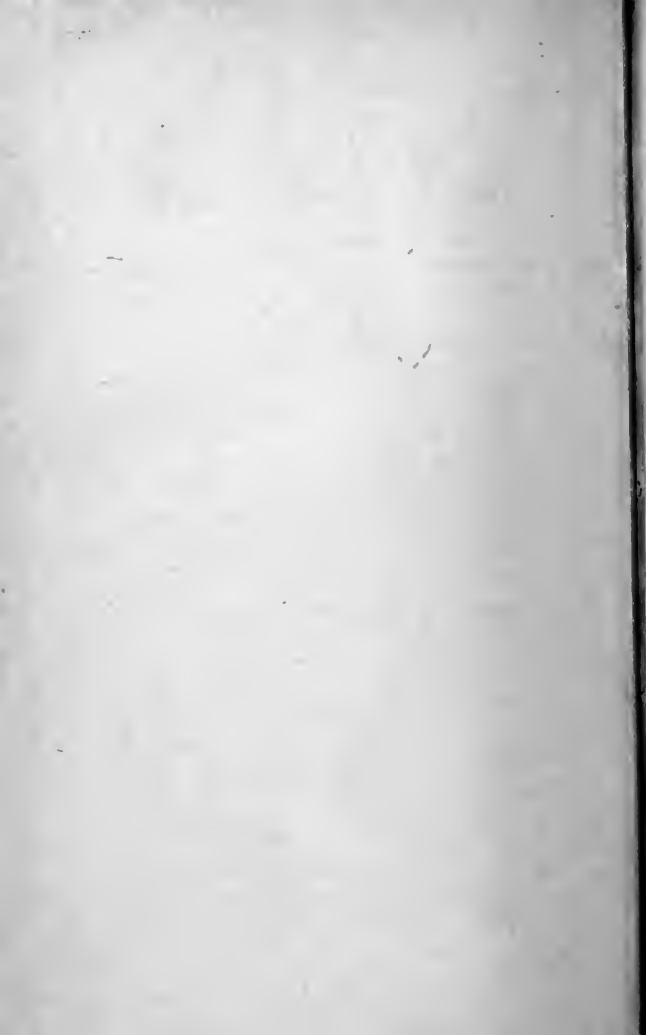
(non) quod (quo), 497.
 quod sciam, 475, *obs.*
 quodsi, quodni, 491, *obs.*; 572
 quoi, quouis, 80, *obs.* 1.
 quotus, use of, 628.
 quum with Subj., of historical sequence,
 484; causal, 483; with Indic., 485.
 quum. . . tum, 566.
 R, power and changes of, 832.
 radical vowels, quant. of, 731.
 rado, 159, 6.
 rapio and comps., 157, 2.
 ratio, in Cic., 705.
 rastrum, i and a, 54.
 re-, quant. of, 738.
 refert, constr. of, 283.
 reflect. pronouns, 360, *sqq.*
 verbs, 84, *obs.* 1; comp. 252.
 rego and comps., 158, 11.
 rego, with acc., 291, *obs.* 6.
 relative, concord of, 228; govt. of, 228, *obs.*;
 diff. gender from anteced., 229; with
 superl. clause, 381; has its ant. in a poss.
 pron., 267, *obs.* 3; attraction of, 380.
 relative adj., govt. of, 382.
 reliquus, constr. of, 341.
 remembering, verbs of, 278.
 reminiscor, 171, 12.
 renideo, 156, 2, 11.
 reor, 170, 7.
 repetition of verb, 636; in part. form,
 636, 3.
 repo, 157, 4.
 requies, 51, 5.
 result, dat. of, 297.
 rhythm, 761.
 rideo, 154, 10.
 rigro, 156, 10.
 ringor, 171, 11.
 rodo, 159, 7.
 roots, 176.
 rostrum, -a, 51.
 ruling, verbs of, 291, 17.
 rumpo, 157, 12.
 ruo, 163, 7.
 rure, ruri, rus, 252, *sqq.*
 S, power and changes of, 835.
 sacpe, compar., 131.
 saepio, 168, 7.
 salio and comps., 168, 10.
 Sallust, style of, 687, *sqq.*; brevity of, 687;
 asyndeton, 689; antithesis, 690; use of
 hist. inf., 691; of alins. . alius, 692;
 begins sentences with igitur, etc., 693;
 favourite words, 694; archaisms, 695.
 salve, 124.
 sancio, 162, 4.
 Sapphic metre, 800; long, 805; joined with
 Adonian, 801, *obs.* 4; in Sappho and Hor.,
 801, *obs.* 5.
 sapio and comps., 157, 17.
 sarcio, 168, 5.
 satis = admodum, 645.
 Saturnian verse, 815.
 satus, with abl., 310.
 scabo, 157, 13.
 scalpo, 157, 5.
 scando and comps., 159, 29; scateo, 156,
 2, 12.
 scazon, Iambus, 786.
 scindo, 159, 33.

scribo, 157, 6.
 se, sui, 360; in subord. propositions, 362
 seco, 149, 10.
 secundum, 556, 23.
 secus, compar., 131.
 sed, autem, 572.
 sedeo and comps., 152, 2.
 semideponents, 101, *obs.* 3.
 semivowels, 838, *sqq.*
 senarius, 782.
 senex, decl., 30; compar., 66.
 sentio, 168, 6.
 separation, abl. of, 303; gen. of, 284.
 sepelio, 168, 11.
 sequence of tenses, 423.
 sequor, 171, 12.
 sero, 161, 10.
 serpo, 157, 7.
 sestertius, 930.
 seu, sive, 570, *obs.* 3.
 sexcenti, indef., 613.
 si, 425, *sqq.*
 si quis, force of, 627.
 sibilants, 835, *sqq.*
 sic, 531; in adjuration, 644, *obs.*
 sideo, 159, 17.
 sileo, 156, 11.
 similis, constr. of, 298, *obs.* 2.
 simul atque, with perf., 401.
 sine, 557, 9.
 singular, wanting in subs., 50.
 after two or more subs., 210, *obs.*;
 equiv. to plur., 590, 607.
 sino, 160, 27.
 sino, with Subj., 447, *obs.* 1.
 sis = si vis, 113, *obs.* 3.
 sisto and comps., 159, 19.
 sitio, with acc., 236.
 sive, seu, 570, *obs.* 3.
 soleo, 119, B.
 solus, 57.
 solvendo esse, 538, *obs.* 2.
 solco, 163, 13.
 sono, 149, 4.
 sorbeo, 150, 5.
 spargo, 158, 28.
 specio and comps., 158, 12.
 sperno, 162, 2.
 spondaic lines, 770.
 spondee, 763.
 spondeo and comps., 152, 7.
 sponte, 52, 4.
 spuo, 163, 8.
 squaleo, 156, 2, 13.
 statuo, 163, 9.
 stems, 104, 179.
 sterno, 161, 3.
 sternuo, 163, 20.
 sterto, 159, 38.
 (stinguo), 158, 17.
 sto and comps., 149, 3, 2.
 strepo, 157, 10.
 strideo, 152, 4; and -o, 159, 30.
 stringo, 158, 26.
 struo, 158, 52.
 studeo, 156, 12.
 styles of prose authors, 687, *sqq.*
 suadeo, 154, 11.
 subject and pred., 210, 211; enlargement
 of, 210, *obs.*; case of, 231; position of,
 663.

- subjective gen., 267; 268, *obs.*
 subjunctive, 421; = Imperat., 419; hypo-
 thetical, 425; potential, 429; *optativus*,
 430; 443; *sqq.*; *concessivus*, 432; *dubi-*
tativus, 440; after *ut*, *ne*, 449. *sqq.*; in
 oratio obliqua, 467. *sqq.*; how translated,
 475, *obs.*; of repetition, 481.
 subordin. clauses, position of, 682.
 substantives, peculiarities in use of, 589,
sqq.; concr. for abstr., 529; abstr. for
 concr., 592; used collectively, 590; plur.
 = abstr., 591; governing case of verbs,
 597; used adjunct., 598; repeated after 2nd
 prep., 649.
subter, 558, 4.
suesco, 167, 7.
 suffixes, 177.
suggestus, -um, 53, 4.
sugo, 158, 13.
sui, *suus*, 360, 361.
sum, 90; stem of, *obs.* 2; comps. of, *obs.* 3.
sumo, 160, 18.
suo, 163, 10.
super, 558, 3.
superior, compar., 66.
superlative, 62; formation of, 896.
superlatives, use of, 353, *sqq.*; with *quam*,
 quantus, 353; with *unus*, 354; with *quis-*
que, 356; with *rel.*, 381.
supines, 86, 2; 108.
supines, constr. of, 542, 1;
supplico, constr., 289.
supra, 556, 24.
synaeresis, 766.
synaloepha, 765.
syncope in *perf.*, 110, 11.
synecdoche, 605.
 SYNTAX, 209, *sqq.*; of concord and govt., 212.
 SYNTAXIS ORNATA, 588, *sqq.*
T, power of, 829; sibilated before *i* and
 vowel, 822; lost in 3rd pers. sing., 829.
Tacitus, style of, 717; its variety, 720; pec-
 uliar idioms, 721; abruptness, 722; sug-
 gestiveness, 723; poetical complexion, 724.
tardet, 126.
tardet, constr. of, 241, 282.
tango, 158, 38.
tanti, etc., constr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.
tantum, etc., gen. after, 270.
Tartarus, -a, 54.
-tas, term. of subs., 185, 3.
-te, suffix of prons., 614, 2.
teaching, verbs of, 243.
tego, 158, 14.
telianbic verse, 818.
temno, 160, 19.
temperi, compar., 131.
temporo, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 6, 7.
tempestas, in *Sall.*, 694.
tempt., orthog. of, 826, *obs.* 2.
tendo and comps., 159, 16.
teneo and comps., 152, 2.
tenses, formation of, 900, *sqq.*
 sequence of, 423.
-ter, term. of adv., 198, 196, *obs.* 2.
tergeo, 154, 12.
tergo, 158, 29.
tero, 161, 12.
tetrameter, trochaic, 787.
tetrameter, dactylic, 812.
texo, 158, 50.
thesis, 762.
-tia, term. of subs., 185, 2.
-tim, term. of adv., 200.
timeo, 156, 13.
tingo, *tinguo*, 158, 17.
-tio, term. of subs., 181, 3.
tollo, 160, 33.
tonat, 126.
tondeo and comps., 152, 8.
tono, 149, 6.
-tor, -triz, term. of subs., 181, 2.
torqueo, 154, 23.
torreo, 150, 4.
totus, 57.
towns, constr. of names of, 256, *sqq.*
tribrach, 763.
trimeter, iambic, 782, 807.
trochaic dim., 806.
 tetram., 787.
trochee, 763.
-tudo, term. of subs., 185, 4.
tuor and comps., 170, 8.
tundo and comps., 159, 17.
tum, -ium, 566.
-tura, term. of subs., 181, 5.
turgeo, 156, 18.
-tus, term. of subs., 181, 4.
traho, 158, 18.
tremo, 160, 9.
tribuo, 163, 11.
trudo, 159, 8.
-trum, 181, 9.
u interchanged with *i*, 918.
ulciscor, 171, 27.
ullus, 57.
ultra, 556, 26.
ulterior, compar., 66.
-ulus, adjunct. term., 186, 4, *obs.*
ungo, *unguo*, 158, 16.
unus, 68; in plur., 68, *obs.*
-ura, term. of subs., 182, 4.
urgeo, 154, 19.
uro, 161, 5.
ut, of purpose, etc., 450, *sqq.*; concessive, 432.
ut non, 456.
ut qui, *utpote qui*, 477.
uter, 57.
utercunque, 80, *obs.* 3.
uterque, plur., after, 222, *obs.* 2.
utinam, 444.
utique, 637.
utor, 171, 3.
utor, with *abl.*, 315.
V, power and changes of, 839.
vaco, with *dat.*, 289.
vacuus, constr. of, 307, *obs.* 7.
vado, 159, 9.
vae, with *dat.*, 250, *obs.* 2.
vapulo, 119, 2.
vas, 53, 6.
-ve, *vel*, 568.
reho, 158, 19.
vello, 160, 22.
reneo, 119, 3.
renio, 168, 12.
venit in inement, constr. of, 278, *obs.*
verb, 84; irreg., 112; defect., 120; impers.,
 125; derivative, 191, *sqq.*
verbs, of being, etc., constr. of, 232; teach-
 ing, 243; concealing, 243; asking, 244;
 remembering and forgetting, 278; of ac-

- cusing, etc., 279, of assisting, resisting, favouring, envying, etc., 291 (and see the several cases) of fulness, want, 317.
- verbs with diff. constr., 271, *obs.*
 repetition of, 636.
- verberare*, 52, 3.
- vereor* and *comps.* 170. 9.
- vero*, *verum*, 573: *tum vero*, 660; *vero* affirmative, 574.
- verro*, 161, 13.
- versor*, in *Cic.* 705.
- versus*, prep., 556, 27.
- versus*, *Hipponacteus*, 786 (*note*).
octonarius, 787.
- verum* and *vero*, 573.
- vescor*, 157, 28.
- vescor*, with *abl.*, 315: with *acc.*, 315, *obs.* 3
- vesper*, *vespera*, 53, 2.
- vesperascit*, 126.
- vestras*, 77, *obs.* 4.
- vestri* and *-um*, 273, *obs.* 2.
- veto*, 149, 5.
- veto*, with *inf.*, 451, *obs.* 2.
- vicis*, 52, 2.
- video*, 152, 3.
- videor*, constr. of, 232, *obs.*; redundant, 704.
- vigeo*, 156, 14.
- vincio*, 168, 8.
- vinco*, 158, 49.
- vireo*, 156, 15.
- vis*, 52, 2.
- viso*, 162, 4.
- viro*, 158, 53.
- vocative of 2nd decl. in *i*, 19, *obs.* 3.
- vocative*, synt. of, 335; same as *nom.*, 337
 with *O*, 336; formation of, 848.
- volo*, 113.
- volo*, foll. by subj., 447, 2.
- romo*, 160, 10.
- roreo*, 153, 5.
- vowels, 840.
- wish, subj. of, 443, *sqq.*
- X, an addition to *alph.*, 820; where first found, 837, *obs.*; its changes, *ib.* 2.
- yes, how expr., 133, *obs.*; 574.
- Z, found in earliest *alph.*, 820, *obs.*; its power and uses, 836.
- zeugma, 643.

THE END.



MR. MURRAY'S LIST OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

THE STUDENT'S MANUALS:

A Series of Class-books for advanced Scholars.

FORMING A CHAIN OF HISTORY FROM THE EARLIEST AGES
DOWN TO MODERN TIMES.

"We are glad of an opportunity of directing the attention of teachers
to these admirable schoolbooks."—*The Museum*.

THE STUDENT'S OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. FROM THE CREATION OF THE WORLD TO THE RETURN OF THE JEWS FROM CAPTIVITY. With an Introduction to the Books of the Old Testament. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 40 Maps and Woodcuts. (630 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY. With an Introduction, containing the connection of the Old and New Testaments. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 30 Maps and Woodcuts. (680 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY. A HISTORY of the CHRISTIAN CHURCH from the TIMES of the APOSTLES to the FULL ESTABLISHMENT OF THE HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE AND THE PAPAL POWER. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH CHURCH HISTORY. From the ACCESSION of HENRY VIIIth to the Silencing of Convocation in the EIGHTEENTH CENTURY. By G. G. PERRY, M.A. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S ANCIENT HISTORY OF THE EAST. From the Earliest Times to the Conquests of Alexander the Great, including Egypt, Assyria, Babylonia, Media, Persia, Asia Minor, and Phœnicia. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 70 Woodcuts. (608 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF GREECE. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ROMAN CONQUEST. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 100 Woodcuts. (640 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d. * * * *Questions on the "Student's Greece."* 12mo. 2s.

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF ROME. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By DEAN LIDDELL. With 80 Woodcuts. (626 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S GIBBON; AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF THE DECLINE AND FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE. By EDWARD GIBBON. Incorporating the researches of recent historians. With 200 Woodcuts. (700 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d. [Continued.]

MURRAY'S STUDENT'S MANUALS.

- THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY. By REV. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. With 150 Woodcuts. (710 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY, MATHEMATICAL, PHYSICAL, AND DESCRIPTIVE. By REV. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. With 120 Woodcuts. (684 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF EUROPE DURING THE MIDDLE AGES. By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. (650 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND. FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII. TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE II. By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. (630 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S HUME; A HISTORY OF ENGLAND, FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE REVOLUTION IN 1683. By DAVID HUME. Incorporating the Corrections and Researches of recent Historians, and continued to 1863. With 70 Woodcuts. (730 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- * * Questions on the "Student's Hume." 12mo. 2s.
- THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF FRANCE. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE SECOND EMPIRE, 1832. With Notes and Illustrations on the Institutions of the Country. By REV. W. H. JERVIS, M.A. With Woodcuts. (724 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. By GEORGE P. MARSH. (538 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. By T. B. SHAW, M.A. (510 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. Selected from the BEST WRITERS. By THOS. B. SHAW, M.A. (560 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S ELEMENTS OF GEOLOGY. By SIR CHARLES LYELL, F.R.S. With 600 Woodcuts. (692 pp.) Post 8vo. 9s.
- THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY. With Quotations and References. By WILLIAM FLEMING, D.D. (440 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S BLACKSTONE. AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE ENTIRE COMMENTARIES. By R. MALCOLM KERR, LL.D. (670 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- THE STUDENT'S EDITION OF AUSTIN'S JURISPRUDENCE. Compiled from the larger work. By ROBERT CAMPBELL. Post 8vo. 12s.
- AN ANALYSIS OF AUSTIN'S LECTURES ON JURISPRUDENCE. By GORDON CAMPBELL, of the Inner Temple. Post 8vo. 6s.

DR. WM. SMITH'S SMALLER HISTORIES.

These Works have been drawn up for the lower forms, at the request of several teachers, who require more elementary books than the STUDENT'S HISTORICAL MANUALS.

A SMALLER SCRIPTURE HISTORY OF THE OLD AND NEW TESTAMENTS. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 40 Woodcuts. (370 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

"Students will know the value of Dr. Wm. Smith's larger Scripture History. This abridgment omits nothing of importance, and is presented in such a handy form that it cannot fail to become a valuable aid to the less learned Bible Student."—*People's Magazine*.

A SMALLER ANCIENT HISTORY OF THE EAST, from the EARLIEST TIMES to the CONQUEST OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 70 Woodcuts. (310 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

"Designed to aid the study of the Scriptures, by placing in their true historical relations those allusions to Egypt, Assyria, Babylonia, Phœnicia, and the Medo-Persian Empire, which form the background of the history of Israel. The present work is an indispensable adjunct of the 'Smaller Scripture History;' and the two have been written expressly to be used together."—*Preface*.

A SMALLER HISTORY OF GREECE, from the EARLIEST TIMES to the ROMAN CONQUEST. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 74 Woodcuts. (268 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

A SMALLER HISTORY OF ROME, from the EARLIEST TIMES to the ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 70 Woodcuts. (324 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

A SMALLER CLASSICAL MYTHOLOGY. With Translations from the Ancient Poets, and Questions on the Work. By H. R. LOCKWOOD. With 90 Woodcuts. (300 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

A SMALLER MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY. By Rev. W. L. BEVAN, M.A. With 36 Woodcuts. (240 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

A SCHOOL MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY, PHYSICAL and POLITICAL. By REV. JOHN RICHARDSON, M.A. (400 pp.) Post 8vo. 5s.

A SMALLER HISTORY OF ENGLAND. From the EARLIEST TIMES to the year 1868. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 68 Woodcuts. (400 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

A SMALLER HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE; giving a sketch of the lives of our chief writers. By JAMES ROWLEY. (276 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

SHORT SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. Selected from the chief authors and arranged chronologically. By JAMES ROWLEY. With Notes. (368 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

DR. WM. SMITH'S DICTIONARIES.

BIBLICAL, CLASSICAL, AND LATIN.

DICTIONARY OF THE BIBLE; ITS ANTIQUITIES, BIOGRAPHY, GEOGRAPHY, and NATURAL HISTORY. With Illustrations. 3 vols. Medium 8vo. 5*l.* 5*s.*

CONCISE BIBLE DICTIONARY. Condensed from the above. With Maps and 300 Illustrations. (1030 pp.) Medium 8vo. 2*1**s.*

SMALLER BIBLE DICTIONARY. Abridged from the above. With Maps and 40 Illustrations. (62c pp.) Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

DICTIONARY OF CHRISTIAN ANTIQUITIES. COMPRISING HISTORY, INSTITUTIONS, AND ANTIQUITIES, FROM THE TIME OF THE APOSTLES TO THE AGE OF CHARLEMAGNE. With Illustrations. Vol. 1. (910 pp.) Medium 8vo. 3*1**s.* 6*d.*

DICTIONARY OF CHRISTIAN BIOGRAPHY, LITERATURE, SECTS, AND DOCTRINES. FROM THE TIME OF THE APOSTLES TO THE AGE OF CHARLEMAGNE. Vol. I. (930 pp.) Medium 8vo. 3*1**s.* 6*d.*

DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. Including the Laws, Institutions, Domestic Usages, Painting, Sculpture, Music, the Drama, &c. With 500 Illustrations. (1300 pp.) Medium 8vo. 28*s.*

DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY. Containing a History of the Ancient World, civil, literary, and ecclesiastical. With 564 Illustrations. (3720 pp.) 3 Vols. Medium 8vo. 84*s.*

DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN GEOGRAPHY. Including the political history of both countries and cities. With 530 Illustrations. (2512 pp.) 2 Vols. Medium 8vo. 56*s.*

CLASSICAL DICTIONARY OF MYTHOLOGY, BIOGRAPHY, AND GEOGRAPHY. With 750 Woodcuts. (840 pp.) 8vo. 18*s.*

SMALLER CLASSICAL DICTIONARY. With 200 Woodcuts. (472 pp.) Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

SMALLER DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. With 200 Woodcuts. (474 pp.) Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

COMPLETE LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY. With Tables of the Roman Calendar, Measures, Weights, and Money. (1220 pp.) Medium 8vo. 2*1**s.*

SMALLER LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY: with Dictionary of Proper Names and Tables of Roman Calendar, etc. (672 pp.) Square 12mo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

COPIOUS & CRITICAL ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY. (976 pp.) Medium 8vo. 2*1**s.*

SMALLER ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY. (720 pp.) Square 12mo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

DR. WM. SMITH'S LATIN COURSE.

"The general excellence of the books included in Mr. Murray's educational series, is so universally acknowledged as to give in a great degree the stamp of merit to the works of which it consists.—*Schoolmaster.*"

PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART I. FIRST LATIN COURSE. A Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise Book, with Vocabularies. (200 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

* * This work contains the Accidence arranged as in the "ORDINARY GRAMMARS" as well as in the "PUBLIC SCHOOLS LATIN PRIMER."

APPENDIX TO PRINCIPIA LATINA. PART I.; being Additional Exercises, with Examination Papers. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART II. READING BOOK. An Introduction to Ancient Mythology, Geography, Roman Antiquities, and History. With Notes and a Dictionary. (263 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART III. POETRY. 1. Easy Hexameters and Pentameters. **2.** Eclogæ Ovidianæ. **3.** Prosody and Metre. **4.** First Latin Verse Book. (160 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART IV. PROSE COMPOSITION. Rules of Syntax, with Examples, Explanations of Synonyms, and Exercises on the Syntax. (194 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART V. SHORT TALES AND ANECDOTES FROM ANCIENT HISTORY, FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE. (140 pp.) 12mo. 3s.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY, arranged according to Subjects and Etymology; with a Latin-English Dictionary to Phædrus, Cornelius Nepos, and Cæsar's "Gallic War." (190 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S LATIN GRAMMAR. FOR THE HIGHER FORMS. (406 pp.) Post 8vo. 6s.

SMALLER LATIN GRAMMAR. Abridged from the above. (220 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

TACITUS. GERMANIA, AGRICOLA, AND FIRST BOOK OF THE ANNALS. With English Notes. (378 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

A CHILD'S FIRST LATIN BOOK, Including a Systematic Treatment of the NEW PRONUNCIATION; and PRAXIS OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, and PRONOUNS. By T. D. HALL, M.A. (68 pp.) 16mo. 1s. 6d.

DR. WM. SMITH'S GERMAN COURSE.

GERMAN PRINCIPIA, PART I. FIRST GERMAN COURSE. Containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercises, and Vocabulary. (164 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

GERMAN PRINCIPIA, PART II. A READING BOOK. Containing Fables, Stories, and Anecdotes, Natural History, and Scenes from the History of Germany. With Grammatical Questions, Notes, and Dictionary. (272 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

PRACTICAL GERMAN GRAMMAR. With a Sketch of the Historical Development of the Language and its Principal Dialects. (240 pp.) Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.

DR. WM. SMITH'S GREEK COURSE.

This Series has been prepared on the same plan as the 'Principia Latina.' The great object is to make the study of the Greek language as easy and simple as possible, by giving the grammatical forms only as they are wanted, and by enabling the pupil to translate from Greek into English and from English into Greek as soon as he has learned the Greek characters and the First Declension.

INITIA GRÆCA, PART I. FIRST GREEK COURSE, containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercise Book, and Vocabularies. (194 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

INITIA GRÆCA, PART II. READING BOOK ; containing short Tales, Anecdotes, Fables, Mythology, and Grecian History. With a Lexicon. (220 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

INITIA GRÆCA, PART III. PROSE COMPOSITION ; containing the Rules of Syntax, with copious Examples and Exercises. (210 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

STUDENT'S GREEK GRAMMAR FOR THE HIGHER FORMS. By PROFESSOR CURTIUS. (386 pp.) Post 8vo. 6s.

SMALLER GREEK GRAMMAR. Abridged from the above work. (220 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

GREEK ACCIDENCE. Extracted from the above work. (123 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

ELUCIDATIONS OF CURTIUS' GREEK GRAMMAR. Translated by EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

PLATO. THE APOLOGY OF SOCRATES, THE CRITO, AND PART OF THE PHÆDO ; with Notes in English from STALLBAUM and SCHLIERMACHER'S Introductions. (242 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

DR. WM. SMITH'S FRENCH COURSE.

FRENCH PRINCIPIA, PART I. FIRST FRENCH COURSE, containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercise Book, and Vocabularies. (180 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

FRENCH PRINCIPIA, PART II. READING-BOOK, containing Fables, Stories, and Anecdotes, Natural History, and Scenes from the History of France. With Grammatical Questions, Notes, and a copious Etymological Dictionary. (364 pp.) 12mo. 4s. 6d.

FRENCH PRINCIPIA, PART III. PROSE COMPOSITION, containing a systematic Course of Exercises on the Syntax with the Principal Rules of Syntax. 12mo. [In the press.]

THE STUDENT'S FRENCH GRAMMAR: a Practical and Historical Grammar of the French Language. By C. HERON-WALL. With an Introduction by M. LITTRE. (490 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

A SMALLER GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE. For the Middle and Lower Forms. Abridged from the above. (230 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

Dr. WM. SMITH'S ENGLISH COURSE.

PRIMARY HISTORY OF BRITAIN. FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. 368 pp. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

"The modest title of this history scarcely indicates its real value. It is an admirable work, one of the best short school histories of England we have seen."—*Educational Times*.

SCHOOL MANUAL OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR; with Copious Exercises. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L., and T. D. HALL, M.A. (256 pp.) Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"The use of this book will render unnecessary that of many others. It is really a serviceable school-book."—*Nonconformist*.

PRIMARY ENGLISH GRAMMAR FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS. With Exercises and Questions. Based upon the above work. By T. D. HALL, M.A. 76 pp. 16mo. 1s.

"We doubt whether any grammar could give an introduction to the English language more clear, concise, and full than this does."—*Watchman*.

SCHOOL MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY, PHYSICAL AND POLITICAL. By JOHN RICHARDSON, M.A., Diocesan Inspector of Schools. (400 pp.) Post 8vo. 5s.

"After a careful examination of Mr. Richardson's manual, we are bound to say that it is the most comprehensive, accurate, and methodical geography with which we are familiar."—*School Guardian*.

STANDARD SCHOOL BOOKS.

KING EDWARD VI.'s LATIN GRAMMAR; or, An Introduction to the Latin Tongue. (324 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

KING EDWARD VI.'s FIRST LATIN BOOK. THE LATIN ACCIDENCE. Syntax and Prosody, with an ENGLISH TRANSLATION. (220 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

OXENHAM'S ENGLISH NOTES FOR LATIN ELEGIACS, designed for early proficients in the art of Latin Versification. (156 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

HUTTON'S PRINCIPIA GRÆCA. AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF GREEK. A Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise Book, with Vocabularies. (154 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

MATTHIÆ'S GREEK GRAMMAR. Abridged by BLOMFIELD. Revised by E. S. CROOKE, B.A. 412 pp. Post 8vo. 4s.

LEATHES' HEBREW GRAMMAR. With the Hebrew text of Genesis i.—vi., and Psalms i.—vi. Grammatical Analysis and Vocabulary. (252 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

MRS. MARKHAM'S HISTORIES.

"Mrs. Markham's Histories are constructed on a plan which is novel and we think well chosen, and we are glad to find that they are deservedly popular, for they cannot be too strongly recommended."—*Journal of Education*.

A HISTORY OF ENGLAND, FROM THE FIRST INVASION BY THE ROMANS. By MRS. MARKHAM. Continued down to 1867. With Conversations at the end of each Chapter. With 100 Woodcuts. (528 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

A HISTORY OF FRANCE, FROM THE CONQUEST BY THE GAULS. By MRS. MARKHAM. Continued down to 1861. With Conversations at the end of each Chapter. With 70 Woodcuts. (550 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

A HISTORY OF GERMANY, FROM THE INVASION OF THE KINGDOM BY THE ROMANS UNDER MARIUS. On the plan of MRS. MARKHAM. Continued down to 1867. With 50 Woodcuts. (460 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

LITTLE ARTHUR'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By LADY CALLCOTT. Continued down to the year 1372. With 36 Woodcuts. (286 pp.) 16mo. 1s. 6d.

"I never met with a history so well adapted to the capacities of children or their entertainment, so philosophical, and written with such simplicity."—*Mrs. Marcett*.

ÆSOP'S FABLES. A New Version. By REV. THOS. JAMES. With 100 Woodcuts. (163 pp.) Post 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"Of ÆSOP'S FABLES there ought to be in every school many copies, full of pictures."—*Fraser's Magazine*.

THE BIBLE IN THE HOLY LAND: BEING EXTRACTS FROM DEAN STANLEY'S SINAI AND PALESTINE. With Woodcuts. (215 pp.) 16mo. 2s. 6d.

NATURAL PHILOSOPHY & SCIENCE.

NEWTN'S FIRST BOOK OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY; an Introduction to the Study of Statics, Dynamics, Hydrostatics, Light, Heat, and Sound, with numerous Examples. *New and enlarged edition.* Small 8vo. 3s. 6d.

NEWTN'S ELEMENTS OF MECHANICS, including Hydrostatics, with numerous Examples. (374 pp.) Small 8vo. 8s. 6d.

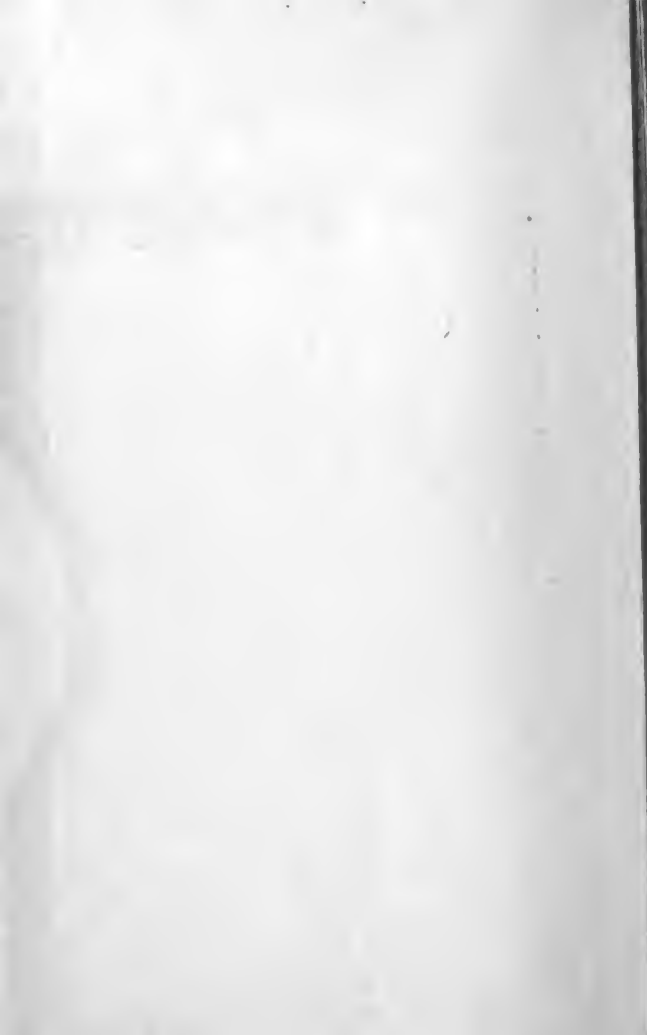
NEWTN'S MATHEMATICAL EXAMPLES. A Graduated Series of Elementary Examples in Arithmetic, Algebra, Logarithms, Trigonometry, and Mechanics. (378 pp.) Small 8vo. 8s. 6d.

BUCKLEY'S POPULAR HISTORY OF NATURAL SCIENCE, and Progress of Discovery from the time of the Greeks to the Present Day, for Schools. With 60 Illustrations, Post 8vo. 9s.

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.







LaL.Gr
56642g

Smith, (Sir) William and Hall, T.D.
A grammar of the Latin tongue. 18.2.

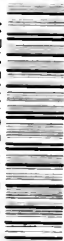
156

University of Toronto
Library

DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

UTL AT DOWNSVIEW



D RANGE BAY SHLF POS ITEM
39 12 03 05 06 009